





Gc  
977.7  
A45n  
v.1  
1272742

GENEALOGY COLLECTION



ALLEN COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 1833 01080 8530



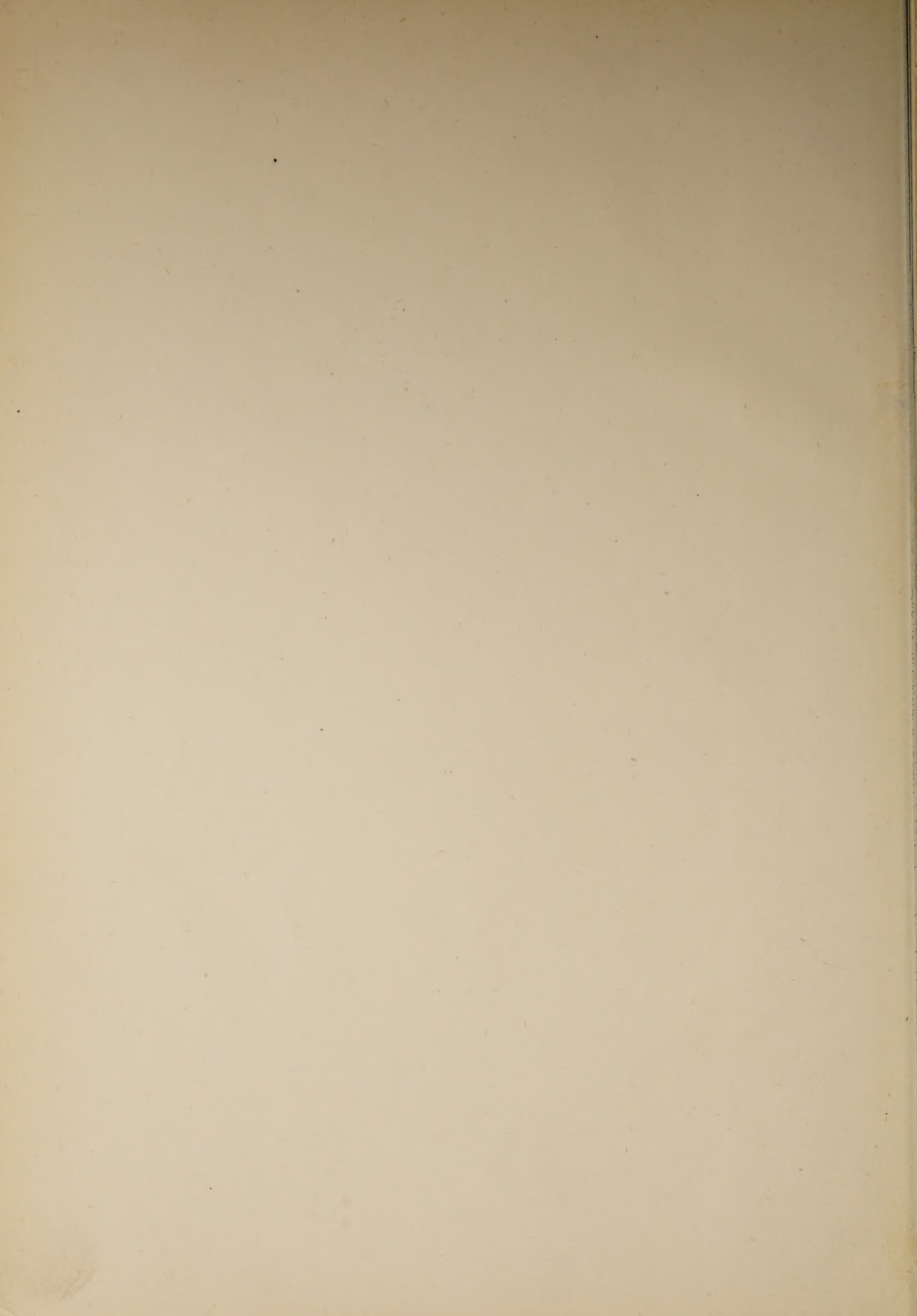




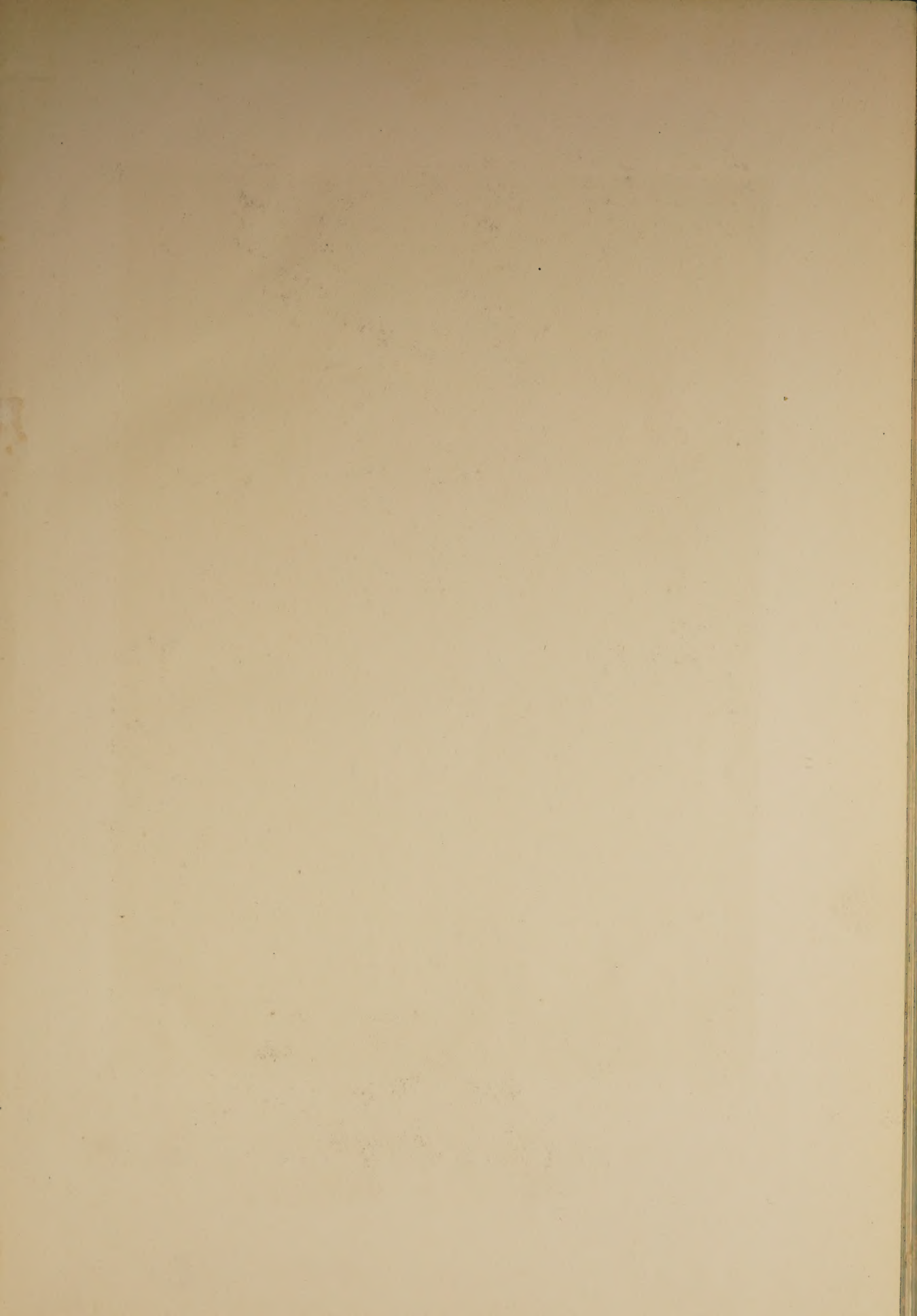
















Arthur F. Allen









Arthur F. Allen



# NORTHWESTERN IOWA

ITS HISTORY AND TRADITIONS

1804-1926

Comprising the Counties of Woodbury, Monona, Plymouth,  
Cherokee, O'Brien, Sioux, Lyon, Osceola, Sac, Buena  
Vista, Clay, Dickinson, Emmet, Palo Alto,  
Pocahontas, Calhoun, Ida, Crawford,  
Carroll and Greene.

ARTHUR FRANCIS ALLEN

Supervising Editor

VOLUME I

ILLUSTRATED

Chicago  
The S. J. Clarke Publishing Company  
1927







## FOREWORD

1272742

Northwestern Iowa was yet a wilderness, sparsely peopled by its aboriginal inhabitants, when Iowa became a state in the Union in December, 1846. It was the last section of the state to be conquered by the pioneer.

The first settlement of Iowa began at the Mississippi River in the early '30s and was extended slowly westward, but so slowly that in 1851, five years after statehood, substantially one-half of the area of the state was unoccupied and unorganized.

Twenty counties constitute the area treated in this work as follows: Woodbury, Ida, Sac, Calhoun, Monona, Crawford, Carroll, Greene, Pocahontas, Buena Vista, Cherokee, Plymouth, Sioux, O'Brien, Clay, Palo Alto, Emmet, Dickinson, Osceola and Lyon. This area comprises some of the most productive agricultural land in the state, abounding in prosperous communities and served by many lines of communication and all of it has been reclaimed from savagery within a space of seventy-five years.

Northwestern Iowa was included in the territory acquired by the purchase of Louisiana in 1803. Its boundaries were first touched by white explorers in 1804, when the Lewis and Clark expedition ascended the Missouri River. It became a part of the Territory of Wisconsin in 1834, and it was included in the Territory of Iowa when that territory was created in 1838. When, in December, 1846, Iowa became a state in the Union, Northwestern Iowa was still a wilderness occupied by the wild Indians. These Indians having been divested of their lands in 1851-1852 by treaties, the unorganized territory of the state was organized, forty-nine new counties being created. Included among these counties were the twenty whose history is related in this work. The only town of importance in Western Iowa at that time was Kaneshville, subsequently renamed Council Bluffs.



Following dispossession of the Indians in 1851-1852 the influx of settlers began, and between 1851 and 1857 settlements were established at various points in Northwestern Iowa. From that time on the inflow was continuous, being only slightly deterred by Indian depredations and other pioneer discouragements, like the grasshopper scourge of the early '70s. At first the United States Land Office was at Kaneshville, but in the fall of 1855, Sioux City having been established early in that year, the office was moved to Sioux City, and all subsequent entries of land were made there. Settlement was greatly accelerated by the building of the railroads, the first line to reach Northwestern Iowa being the Sioux City and Pacific Railroad, which was completed to Sioux City in 1868. Other lines from the east and north soon followed.

The history of Northwestern Iowa, brief though the period be, is of surpassing interest and importance. Here, within the span of a lifetime, a wilderness has been subdued and civilization established in its place. Contemplating Northwestern Iowa today, it is scarcely credible that the pioneer's plow first turned the prairie sod so recently as seventy-five years ago. The progress and achievements of three-quarters of a century have been no less than marvelous.

Woven into the history of this period is more than romance, for romantic as is pioneering in some of its aspects, it involves vastly more of peril and hardship. So through the narrative runs the thread of toil, deprivation, isolation, hardship, suffering, the menace of the Indian and the frequent sacrifice of death. The life of the pioneer was a hard life, but the men and women who came to Northwestern Iowa and conquered it were courageous and resourceful. It was because of their labor, their fortitude, their perseverance, that the land was won. It was they who laid the foundation of the empire that is today Northwestern Iowa. To them the present generation owes a debt that it can never hope to repay. The record of their achievements and sacrifices merits preservation.

The aim of this history has been to present to the student a background of such Iowa history as shall explain the development of the northwestern section of the state. This is



largely contained in the topical chapters. The separate county sketches embrace matters which are more of a local nature, and are given in deference to those who take an interest and a just pride in the progress of those political subdivisions and governments which are closer to them than the state at large. The editor and his coworkers have endeavored to draw the strong lines and picture the high lights of Northwestern Iowa without overburdening the narrative with details, which often serve more to confuse than to enlighten.

Finally, in the writing and progress of this work, the supervising editor acknowledges with thanks the assistance of Constant R. Marks, who contributed the chapter on the "Railroads in Northwestern Iowa," and of Dr. John N. Warren, who wrote the "History of Medicine." Many others who were members of our Reference and Advisory Board have been uniformly courteous and helpful. Both in that capacity and as head of the Sioux City Public Library, Clarence W. Sumner has been of indispensable assistance.

*Arthur F. Allen*







# CONTENTS

---

## CHAPTER I.

### THE RICH GIFTS OF NATURE.

NORTHWESTERN IOWA THE PRODUCT OF GLACIAL DRIFTS—ONLY A CORNER OF THE STATE DRIFTLESS—THE ICE FIELDS FROM THE NORTH—TRACINGS OF THEIR EDGES OR MORAINES—THE THREE GLACIERS WHICH INVADED NORTHWESTERN IOWA—THE NEBRASKA DRIFT—EXPOSURES OF THE BED ROCKS IN THE BIG SIOUX AND MISSOURI VALLEYS—THE SIOUX QUARTZITE—THE CRETACEOUS ROCKS OF THE GREAT PLAINS—HOW THE NEBRASKAN ICE SHEET GATHERED ITS TILL—THE WISCONSIN GLACIAL EPOCH—AREA COVERED BY THE ICE FIELD—HOW IT MOLDED THE EASTERN SECTION OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—DIVERTS THE DRAINAGE OF THE LAND WESTWARD—THE GREAT MISSISSIPPI-MISSOURI DIVIDE FIXED—THE KANSAN DRIFT COVERS A LARGE PORTION OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—THE RICH, BUT IRREGULAR LAYER OF LOESS—THE GREAT AREA OF THE KANSAN DRIFT REGION—DEPOSITS OF GRAVEL IN VALLEYS AND HILLS—THE RIVERS AND DRAINAGE OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—ITS LAKES—ALTITUDES OF VARIOUS LOCALITIES—PITCH OF THE REGION WHERE ALL VALLEYS MERGE INTO THE MISSOURI—WHY SOIL, RAINFALL, TOPOGRAPHY AND CLIMATE MADE NORTHWESTERN IOWA THE LAND OF PLENTY.....23

## CHAPTER II.

### THE EVOLUTION OF IOWA.

EARLY EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA—THE "RIGHT OF DISCOVERY"—MARQUETTE AND JOLIET—LA SALLE'S EXPEDITIONS—CONFLICTING INTERESTS—FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR—GEN. GEORGE ROGERS CLARK—LOUISIANA PURCHASE—TREATY OF PARIS—IOWA UNDER VARIOUS JURISDICTIONS—TERRITORY OF IOWA—THE FIGHT FOR ADMISSION—ORGANIZATION OF COUNTIES.....43



## CHAPTER III.

## EARLY EXPLORATIONS.

THE LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION IN IOWA—DEATH OF SER- GEANT FLOYD—FIRST RECORD OF A WHITE MAN'S BURIAL IN IOWA—PIKE'S EXPEDITION—THE FUR TRADERS—ANOTHER TRIBUTE TO SERGEANT FLOYD—THE FIRST FORT MADISON— KEARNY'S EXPEDITION FROM THE MISSOURI TO THE MISSIS- SIPPI—CATLIN AND MAXIMILIAN AT FLOYD'S GRAVE—THE AL- LEN-SCHOOLCRAFT EXPEDITION—KEARNY BUILDS FIRST FORT DES MOINES—TROOPERS FIGHT SIOUX IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA—LEA'S "NOTES ON WISCONSIN TERRITORY"—CAPTAIN ALLEN ENCIRCLES NORTHWESTERN IOWA—ESTABLISHES FI- NAL FORT DES MOINES—THE CAPTAIN STARTS ON HIS EXPEDI- TION—TRAVELS UP THE DES MOINES INTO THE LAKE COUN- TRY—FLOUNDERS AMONG "INTERMINABLE LAKES"—SEEKS HEADWATERS OF THE DES MOINES AND MINNESOTA—SIOUX FALLS AND THE SIOUX QUARTZITE—DOWN THE VALLEY OF THE BIG SIOUX—WHERE THE BIX SIOUX AND THE MISSOURI JOIN— THE SHORT CUT TO FORT DES MOINES.....	63
--	----

## CHAPTER IV.

## INDIAN OCCUPATION.

ORIGIN OF THE NAME "INDIAN"—THE MOUND BUILDERS—MOUNDS IN IOWA—THE INDIANS—THE IOWA—THE SAC AND THE FOX— KEOKUK AND BLACK HAWK—METANEQUA, THEIR LAST WAR CHIEF—THE POTAWATTOMI—THE WINNEBAGO—THE SIOUX— ACQUISITION OF THE INDIAN LANDS—TREATIES OF 1804 AND 1816—THE HALF-BREED TRACT—TREATY OF 1825—THE NEUTRAL GROUND—THE BLACK HAWK PURCHASE—TREATY OF CHICAGO —TREATY OF 1837—TREATY OF 1842—LAST OF THE TREATIES AFFECTING IOWA LANDS—INDIAN PROBLEM IN IOWA NOT SET- TLED—THE SIOUX THE LAST TO LEAVE—FORT DODGE ESTAB- LISHED AND ABANDONED—INDIAN DEPREDATIONS RENEWED —HENRY LOTT AND THE MURDER OF THE SIOUX CHIEF, SIDO- MINADOTA—SETTLERS MOVE UP THE DES MOINES AND LITTLE SIOUX RIVERS—THEY INVADE THE LAKE REGION, THE TRADI- TIONAL HOME OF THE SIOUX—INKPADUTA'S BAND OF BAD SIOUX PASS UP THE LITTLE SIOUX—THE TERRIBLE MASSACRE AROUND THE SHORES OF THE OKOBOJI LAKES—CAPTURE OF FOUR WOMEN AND THEIR AWFUL JOURNEY INTO DAKOTA— DEATH OF MRS. THATCHER AND MRS. NOBLE—RANSOM OF MRS. MARBLE AND ABBIE GARDNER—THE AFTER LIFE OF INKPA- DUTA—THE SIOUX FINALLY MOVED FROM MINNESOTA TO DA- KOTA TERRITORY.....	87
---	----



## CHAPTER V.

## ADVANCE OF THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER.

BONDS BETWEEN THE FLOYDS AND CLARKS—FLOYD'S BLUFF— BUILDING OF THE FLOYD MEMORIAL—THE FIRST SETTLER OF WOODBURY COUNTY—ORGANIZATION OF THE COUNTY—THE LAST OF THOMPSON—THEOPHILE BRUGUIER AND WAR EAGLE— JOSEPH LEONAI'S PURCHASES OF BRUGUIER—DIES AS A GENTLE- MAN FARMER—THE FOUNDING OF SIOUX CITY—HOW THE SITE OF THE CITY WAS SAVED—THE MORMON SETTLEMENTS OF 1849- 53—SMITHVILLE, WOODBURY COUNTY—FIRST SETTLERS IN CRAWFORD COUNTY—DELOIT AND DOW CITY—MORMONS STILL ACTIVELY ORGANIZED—THE FOUNDING OF DENISON—MORMON SETTLEMENT AT PREPARATION, MONONA COUNTY—TWO SET- TLERS PRECEDE THE MORMONS—THE WHITING SETTLEMENT FOUNDED—EARLY SETTLEMENT OF CALHOUN COUNTY—SET- TLEMENT AT WEST BEND, PALO ALTO COUNTY—THE IRISH COL- ONY—THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER STILL ADVANCING— CRITICAL END OF THE PIONEER PERIOD.....	129
---	-----

## CHAPTER VI.

## PIONEER LIFE AND CUSTOMS.

BEGINNING OF ANOTHER ERA—THE CIVIL WAR AND RAILROADS CLOSE THE ERA—PIONEERING IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA— MUSKRAT PELTS FOR MONEY—PRAIRIE BLIZZARDS AND FIRES— THE BURNING OF CORN FOR FUEL—EARLY CABINS, OUTSIDE AND INSIDE—FIRST HOMES FOR MERE PROTECTION—THE CLAIM CABINS MORE FINISHED—DOORS, WINDOWS AND THE CHIMNEY—THE SOUND OF THE NAIL HAMMER NOT HEARD— ROOMS AND FURNISHINGS—BREAKING PRAIRIE—OUTFIT FOR PRAIRIE-BREAKING—PRAIRIE-BREAKING BRIGADES—SAD PASS- ING OF THE OLD TIMES—WILD GAME FOR FOOD AND SPORT —CLOTHING OF THE PIONEERS—RECREATIONS AND AMUSE- MENTS .....	195
---	-----

## CHAPTER VII.

## AGRICULTURE AND ALLIED INDUSTRIES.

THE GRAIN TRADE AS THE NATION'S MAIN EXPANDING FORCE— COMPARATIVE VALUE OF WHEAT AND CORN—DRAWBACKS AND EXPANSIONS IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA—THE GRASSHOPPER AND CHINCH BUG PLAGUES—THE GRASSHOPPER INVASION OF 1873 AND 1874—RELIEF OF GRASSHOPPER-STRICKEN DISTRICTS— THE CHINCH BUG ALSO FIGHTS THE WHEAT FARMERS—CHANG- ING CONDITIONS—GOLDEN BELT OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—	
---	--

PLYMOUTH AND WOODBURY COUNTIES—CRAWFORD AND MONONA  
—SIOUX AND LYON—THREE RICH INTERIOR COUNTIES—IDA, CAR-  
ROLL AND GREENE COUNTIES—CHEROKEE AND BUENA VISTA—  
HALF A DOZEN REPRESENTATIVE NORTHERN COUNTIES—EMMET  
AND DICKINSON—OSCEOLA—THE MAIN DEDUCTION..... 219

## CHAPTER VIII.

### TRANSPORTATION BY LAND AND WATER.

SIOUX CITY AS A STEAMBOAT TOWN—SIOUX CITY IN 1868—THE  
COMING AND GOING OF A RIVER STEAMBOAT—STEAMBOAT  
TRAFFIC—ATTEMPTED NAVIGATION OF THE DES MOINES  
RIVER—THE SAWYER WAGON ROADS TO THE MONTANA GOLD  
FIELDS—RAILROADS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—CONGRESS EN-  
COURAGES RAILROAD BUILDING, 1850-55—FOUR IOWA RAILROADS  
PROJECTED—IOWA LINES TO CONNECT WITH THE UNION PA-  
CIFIC—SIOUX CITY & ST. PAUL RAILROAD—THE CHICAGO, MIL-  
WAUKEE & ST. PAUL—SECTION OF THE NORTHWESTERN BUILT  
—JOHN I. BLAIR, FATHER OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA RAILROADS  
—IOWA FALLS & SIOUX CITY RAILROAD—CEDAR RAPIDS & MIS-  
SOURI RIVER RAILROAD, 1866-68—COMPLETION OF IOWA FALLS  
& SIOUX CITY RAILROAD—ABSORPTIONS BY PRESENT-DAY RAIL-  
ROADS—HOW BLAIR NEARLY GOT CONTROL OF THE DAKOTA  
SOUTHERN—DES MOINES RIVER GRANT REVERTS TO RAILROAD  
PROJECTS—STIMULATING VALUE OF RAILROADS IMMEASUR-  
ABLE—THE AUTOMOBILE, A NEW PROBLEM—ELECTRIC AND  
AUTO-BUS LINES—IMPROVEMENT OF IOWA'S PUBLIC HIGHWAYS  
—THE FUTURE OF THE GOOD ROADS MOVEMENT..... 253

## CHAPTER IX.

### NORTHWESTERN BORDER INDIAN WARFARE.

PROTECTING THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER—THE MINUTE MEN—  
THE FRONTIER GUARDS—THE SIOUX CITY CAVALRY—THE  
SIXTH AND SEVENTH IOWA CAVALRY REGIMENTS—THE BAT-  
TLE OF WHITE STONE HILL—NORTHERN BORDER BRIGADE—  
FORT DEFIANCE, ESTHERVILLE—LAST MILITARY FORCE ON  
THE IOWA BORDER..... 279

## CHAPTER X.

### THEY DID THEIR PART.

IN THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR—VICTIMS OF TYPHOID FEVER—  
THE FIFTY-FIRST REGIMENT OF INFANTRY—THE FORTY-NINTH  
REGIMENT—TROOPS FOR THE MEXICAN BORDER..... 299



## CHAPTER XI.

## NORTHWESTERN IOWA IN THE WORLD WAR.

IOWA PROMPTLY SUPPORTS CONGRESS—ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTY-EIGHTH U. S. REGIMENT OFF FOR FRANCE—STATE FLAG PRESENTED TO THE "OLD THIRD"—IDENTITY OF STATE REGIMENTS LOST—PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE—AT THE BATTLE FRONT—SOME HEROES OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—GERMANS CHECKED AT THE MARNE—LIEUTENANT LAURENS C. SHULL—AMERICAN ARMY DRIVES GERMANS BEYOND THE MEUSE—CLEARING THE ARGONNE FOREST OF GERMANS—IOWA TROOPS SEIZE THE HEIGHTS OF SEDAN—NORTHWESTERN IOWA SOLDIERS HONORED—THE GOLD STARS FROM TWENTY COUNTIES—NORTHWESTERN IOWA IN WELFARE WORK.....	305
---	-----

## CHAPTER XII.

## EDUCATIONAL DEVELOPMENT.

COMMON SCHOOL SYSTEM BASED ON TOWNSHIPS—CHANGES IN SCHOOL GOVERNMENT—REVISION OF SCHOOL LAWS—COUNTY SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS—THE COMING OF THE INSTITUTES—BOARDS FOR THE EXAMINATION OF TEACHERS—SCHOOLS IN THE CIVIL WAR PERIOD—IN THE LATE '60s—EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS IN THE '70s—COUNTY SUPERINTENDENCY OPENED TO WOMEN—COMPULSORY ATTENDANCE—RISE OF THE SCHOOL LIBRARY IDEA—NORTHWESTERN IOWA ACADEMIES AND COLLEGES—NORTHWESTERN NORMAL SCHOOL AND BUSINESS COLLEGE—THE BUENA VISTA COLLEGE—MORNINGSIDE COLLEGE—COUNTY UNIFORMITY OF TEXT BOOKS—ASSOCIATIONS OF TEACHERS—LONG STEP TOWARD EDUCATIONAL DEMOCRACY—TOWNSHIP HIGH SCHOOLS—THE VALUE OF SCHOOL LIBRARIES—CONSOLIDATION OF SCHOOLS—THE NORMAL TRAINING HIGH SCHOOLS—THE STANDARDIZED RURAL SCHOOLS—A BUSY GENERAL ASSEMBLY—TEACHERS' MINIMUM WAGES—POST-WAR LEGISLATION—PART-TIME SCHOOLS—LATE LEGISLATION AND PRESENT LAWS—VOCATIONAL EDUCATION—ENROLLMENT AND AVERAGE DAILY ATTENDANCE.....	349
---	-----

## CHAPTER XIII.

## THE PRESS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

NEWSPAPERDOM GETS FOOHOLD IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA—THE SIOUX CITY JOURNAL AND GEORGE D. PERKINS—THE SIOUX CITY TRIBUNE—OTHER PAPERS PUBLISHED IN WOODBURY COUNTY—NEWSPAPER EXPANSION FROM THE SOUTHEAST—THE	
---	--

BOYER VALLEY RECORD, OF DENISON—THE DENISON REVIEW—THE DENISON BULLETIN—OUTSIDE OF DENISON—THE CARROLL HERALD—THE CARROLL TIMES—NEWSPAPERS OUTSIDE THE COUNTY SEAT—GREENE COUNTY NEWSPAPERS—ESTHERVILLE VINDICATOR AND REPUBLICAN—FRONTIER JOURNALISM—THE ESTHERVILLE DEMOCRAT AND ESTHERVILLE ENTERPRISE—OTHER NEWSPAPERS OF THE COUNTY—FRONTIER JOURNALISM OF THE '70s—THE SPIRIT LAKE BEACON—CLAY COUNTY'S NEWSPAPERS—PRESS OF CHEROKEE COUNTY—THE SECOND CHEROKEE CHIEF—A STIRRING SENTINEL—SAC AND MONONA COUNTIES—O'BRIEN A PIONEER NEWSPAPER COUNTY—NEWSPAPER KING OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—OSCEOLA COUNTY NEWSPAPERS—LYON COUNTY'S FIRST EDITOR—PRESS OF IDA AND SIOUX COUNTIES—INTERIOR NEWSPAPER COUNTIES—THE STORM LAKE PILOT—FIRST CALHOUN COUNTY NEWSPAPERS—JOURNALISTIC SPIRIT APPEARS IN PALO ALTO COUNTY—PIONEER NEWSPAPER CONVENIENCES—FONDA TIMES, POCAHONTAS COUNTY—REPRESENTATIVE WESTERN JOURNALISM.....393

## CHAPTER XIV.

### THE JUDGES AND LAWYERS.

PROFESSIONAL CONTRIBUTIONS FROM NORTHWESTERN IOWA—BIRTH OF JURISPRUDENCE AND PRACTICE—NEW ENGLAND DIGNITY SHOCKED—JUDGES MOORE AND HUBBARD—EPOCH IN NORTHWESTERN JUDICATURE—A JUDICIAL CONTRAST—CIRCUIT COURTS CREATED—ADDISON OLIVER—OTHER CIRCUIT COURT JUDGES—JUDGES OF THE THREE DISTRICT COURTS SINCE 1887—LOT THOMAS—JAMES P. CONNER—SUPREME COURT JUDGES FROM NORTHWESTERN IOWA—GIFFORD S. ROBINSON, SCOTT M. LADD AND FRANK R. GAYNOR—LESLIE M. SHAW, A NATIONAL CHARACTER—NORTHWESTERN IOWA LAWYER-CONGRESSMEN—ISAAC S. STRUBLE, ELBERT H. HUBBARD AND WILLIAM D. BOIES.....433

## CHAPTER XV.

### MEDICAL HISTORY.

By DR. J. N. WARREN.

DEVELOPMENT OF MEDICINE AND SURGERY—PIONEER DOCTORS—SIOUX CITY PHYSICIANS—SIOUX CITY COLLEGE OF MEDICINE—SIOUX VALLEY MEDICAL ASSOCIATION—SIOUX CITY HOSPITALS—PRACTITIONERS IN WOODBURY COUNTY—POCAHONTAS COUNTY (NOTES BY DR. A. W. PATTERSON)—THE PROFESSION IN BUENA VISTA COUNTY—MEDICAL MEN OF PLYMOUTH COUNTY—CLAY COUNTY—PRACTITIONERS OF THE O'BRIEN COUNTY MEDICAL SOCIETY—CARROLL COUNTY MEDICAL MEN—PALO



ALTO COUNTY—MEDICAL HISTORY OF OSCEOLA COUNTY—ITS PRACTITIONERS—DICKINSON COUNTY (NOTES BY DR. C. S. SHULTZ)—SIOUX COUNTY PHYSICIANS—DICKINSON COUNTY PHYSICIANS, 1886-1926—DOCTORS OF EMMET COUNTY—MEDICAL HISTORY OF SAC COUNTY—MONONA COUNTY—MEDICAL HISTORY OF IDA COUNTY (NOTES BY DR. G. C. MOORHEAD).....449

## CHAPTER XVI.

### CHURCH LIFE OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

WOODBURY COUNTY AS A RELIGIOUS CENTER—PIONEER PROTESTANT CHURCHES OF SIOUX CITY—METHODIST EPISCOPAL—THE ASSASSINATION OF DR. HADDOCK—OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES—THE METHODIST HOSPITAL—EARLY PRESBYTERIANISM—CONGREGATIONAL CHURCH—THE EPISCOPALIANS—BAPTISTS ESTABLISHED—CATHOLICITY IN SIOUX CITY—ST. JOSEPH'S HOSPITAL—ST. BENEDICT'S YOUNG LADIES' HOME—CONVENT OF THE GOOD SHEPHERD—THE EPISCOPAL CHURCHES—THE THRIFTY LUTHERANS—THE LUTHERAN GENERAL HOSPITAL—THE BAPTIST ORGANIZATIONS—DISCIPLES OF CHRIST AND OTHERS—SIOUX CITY'S AFFILIATED CHARITIES—EARLY CHURCHES OF MONONA COUNTY—THE METHODISTS OF CRAWFORD COUNTY—THE LUTHERANS IN THE COUNTY—PRESBYTERIAN CHURCHES—THE EPISCOPALIANS OBTAIN A FOOTHOLD—THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN CRAWFORD COUNTY—THE CATHOLICS OF MOUNT CARMEL—EXPANSION TO CARROLL AND ELSEWHERE—PIONEER PROTESTANT CHURCHES—THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH—TRINITY METHODIST EPISCOPAL CHURCH—OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES IN CALHOUN COUNTY—THE CONGREGATIONALISTS AND LUTHERANS—THE PRESBYTERIANS AND BAPTISTS—THE CHURCH OF CHRIST—THE CATHOLICS IN CALHOUN COUNTY—CHURCH PIONEERING IN CLAY COUNTY—"LONG TODD" AND "SHORT TODD"—RELIGIOUS OUTPOSTS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—ESTHERVILLE AND EMMET COUNTY—PIONEER METHODISM IN O'BRIEN COUNTY—OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES—THE CONGREGATIONALISTS AND FRIENDS IN O'BRIEN COUNTY—THE LUTHERANS AND ALLIED SECTARIANS—HOW PRESBYTERIANISM IS REPRESENTED IN O'BRIEN COUNTY—THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE COUNTY—OTHER CHURCHES—FIRST RELIGIOUS SERVICES IN PALO ALTO COUNTY—THE COMING OF THE METHODISTS TO SIBLEY—CATHOLICS ALSO PIONEERS IN OSCEOLA COUNTY—OTHER CHURCHES AT SIBLEY—THE GOSPEL IN LYON COUNTY—PRESBYTERIANS, PIONEER PROTESTANTS—THE LIZARD CATHOLICS—THE METHODISTS OF ROLFE—OTHER CHURCHES—UPRISING OF BUENA VISTA CHURCHES—METHODISTS AND CONGREGATIONALISTS IN CHEROKEE—PRESBYTERIAN CHURCHES IN THE COUNTY—THE CATHOLICS—EVANGELICAL, LUTHERAN AND OTHER ORGANIZATIONS—SWINGING AROUND THE CIRCLE—PLYMOUTH COUNTY CHURCHES.....503

## CHAPTER XVII.

## THE BACKGROUND OF THE COUNTIES.

THE CREATION OF COUNTIES—SIZE AND BOUNDARIES—CHANGING BOUNDARIES AND NAMING COUNTIES—DATE OF ORGANIZING ACT AND FIRST ELECTIONS—SESSIONS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY—POPULATION AND LAND AREA—MORE BACKGROUND OF THE COUNTIES -----571

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## BUENA VISTA COUNTY.

NATURAL FEATURES—ORGANIZED UNDER THE COUNTY JUDGE SYSTEM—THOSE WHO SETTLED PRIOR TO COUNTY ORGANIZATION—THE UNIQUE ABNER BELL—THE INDIAN RAID OF 1857—SIOUX RAPIDS OF 1858—THE COUNTY ORGANIZED—THE FIRST COUNTY SEAT—ISOLATION OF THE SETTLERS—THE DARK DAYS OF THE '60s—TRIUMPH OF GOOD GOVERNMENT—W. S. LEE AND ABNER BELL—FIRST SETTLEMENT AT STORM LAKE—COUNTY SHAPING ITSELF—A RAILROAD AND THREE NEW TOWNS—NEWELL, STORM LAKE AND ALTA—SIOUX RAPIDS AND THE COUNTY SEAT CONTESTS—OTHER TOWNS—THE COUNTY AS A WHOLE -----579

## CHAPTER XIX.

## CALHOUN COUNTY.

DRAINAGE OF THE COUNTY—STEPS TOWARD COUNTY ORGANIZATION—FIRST SETTLERS OF CALHOUN COUNTY—ORGANIZATION OF THE COUNTY—THE TOWNSHIPS OF THE COUNTY—CALHOUN, LINCOLN, JACKSON, CEDAR, GREENFIELD, WILLIAMS, SHERMAN, CENTER, BUTLER, READING, ELM GROVE, TWIN LAKES, UNION, LOGAN, LAKE CREEK, AND GARFIELD—LAKE CITY—POMEROY—MANSON—ROCKWELL CITY—THREE COURTHOUSES ERECTED IN ROCKWELL CITY—THE REFORMATORY FOR WOMEN—LOHRVILLE -----601

## CHAPTER XX.

## CARROLL COUNTY.

FORTY-NINE COUNTIES CREATED—STEPS TOWARD CARROLL COUNTY'S ORGANIZATION—A JUMPER AND A PERMANENT SETTLER—CARROLL COUNTY ORGANIZED—ESTABLISHMENT OF THE



COUNTY SEAT—POPULATION OF THE COUNTY, 1856—THE CITY OF CARROLL—THE TOWN OF MANNING—O. E. DUTTON AND D. W. SUTHERLAND—COON RAPIDS—GLIDDEN—OTHER TOWNS AND STATIONS -----625

## CHAPTER XXI.

## CHEROKEE COUNTY.

FIRST SETTLERS—THE MILFORD (MASS.) WESTERN EMIGRATION SOCIETY—FOUNDING OF ORIGINAL CHEROKEE—BLAIR CITY AND NEW CHEROKEE—DEVELOPMENT OF THE COUNTY ORGANIZATION—FIRST BRIDGE AND FERRY IN THE COUNTY—EXIT OF THE COUNTY JUDGE GOVERNMENT—THE BOARD OF SUPERVISORS GOVERNMENT—FIRST COURTHOUSE—THE FORMATION OF TOWNSHIPS—CHEROKEE, PILOT, WILLOW, SPRING, AFTON, CEDAR, PITCHER, AMHERST, LIBERTY, SHERIDAN, SILVER, TILDEN, DIAMOND, MARCUS, ROCK AND GRAND MEADOW TOWNSHIPS—CITY OF CHEROKEE—TOWN OF MARCUS-----641

## CHAPTER XXII.

## CLAY COUNTY.

THE COUNTY ORGANIZED—THE PIONEERS OF CLAY COUNTY—THE COUNTY SEAT AND THE COURTHOUSES—THE TOWNSHIPS OF CLAY COUNTY—PETERSON—THE CITY OF SPENCER-----663

## CHAPTER XXIII.

## CRAWFORD COUNTY.

STEPS IN COUNTY ORGANIZATION—FLITTING SETTLERS AND PERMANENT—THE MORMON IMMIGRATION—DELOIT AND DOW CITY—THE CITY OF DENISON—REGULAR COUNTY OFFICERS AND COUNTY SEAT—RAILROADS AND STATIONS—THE SWEDES OF OTTER CREEK VALLEY—KIRON—SCHLESWIG AND THE GERMANS—MANILLA—CHARTER OAK, VAIL AND WEST SIDE—FORMATION OF THE TOWNSHIPS-----683

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## DICKINSON COUNTY.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS—THE MASSACRE AND ITS MEMORIALS—MRS. SHARP'S DEATH AND THE GARDNER CABIN—SETTLEMENT AFTER THE MASSACRE—SETTLERS STILL UNEASY—DICKINSON

COUNTY ORGANIZED UNDER DIFFICULTIES—STATE AND JUDICIAL REPRESENTATIVES—THE LAYING OF TITLES—THE MILL CONTROVERSY—FOUNDING OF SPIRIT LAKE—THE COURTHOUSES—SPIRIT LAKE OF TODAY—MILFORD AND LAKE PARK—OTHER TOWNS—FORMATION OF TOWNSHIPS.....697

## CHAPTER XXV.

### EMMET COUNTY.

LAKES AND RIVERS—THOSE WHO CAME FIRST—EMMET COUNTY ORGANIZED—ESTHERVILLE, THE COUNTY SEAT—ADOLPHUS JENKINS AND ROBERT E. RIDLEY—THE FIRST COURTHOUSE—THE BUILDING OF FORT DEFIANCE—COUNTY SEAT SHIFTS BETWEEN SWAN LAKE AND ESTHERVILLE—COUNTY SEAT A FIXTURE—PROGRESS AND PRESENT STATUS OF ESTHERVILLE—ARMSTRONG AND RINGSTED—OTHER TOWNS AND RAILROAD STATIONS—THE TOWNSHIPS OF EMMET COUNTY.....717

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### GREENE AND SAC COUNTIES.

DRAINAGE AND NATURAL FEATURES OF GREENE COUNTY—SETTLEMENT BEFORE ORGANIZATION—EVOLUTION OF GREENE COUNTY—GREENE COUNTY ORGANIZED—JEFFERSON, THE COUNTY SEAT—HOLDING OF FIRST DISTRICT COURT—GREENE COUNTY TOWNSHIPS—THE TOWN OF JEFFERSON—GRAND JUNCTION—OTHER TOWNS—SAC COUNTY CLOSELY CONNECTED WITH GREENE—PRIOR TO SEPARATE ORGANIZATION—FIRST SETTLERS OF THE COUNTY—COUNTY ORGANIZATION AND COUNTY SEAT—SAC CITY—THE TOWN OF ODEBOLT—OTHER COUNTY TOWNS.....733

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### IDA COUNTY.

THE PIONEER SETTLERS—COUNTY AND TOWNSHIPS ORGANIZED—THE COUNTY SEAT LOCATED—FIXING OF THE NAME IDA—THE COMING OF THE MOOREHEAD FAMILY—FIRST SURGICAL OPERATION—TOWN SITE SURVEYED—WILD GAME OF ALL KINDS—FIRST TEACHERS AND MARRIAGES—FIRST MINISTER AND FIRST DEATH—ADDITIONS TO SETTLEMENT—VILLAGE OF IDA AND TOWN OF IDA GROVE—TOWN OF BATTLE CREEK—GALVA FOUNDED—TOWN OF HOLSTEIN—ARTHUR, THE GREAT POPCORN CENTER.....749



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

## LYON AND OSCEOLA COUNTIES.

NATURAL DRAINAGE OF LYON COUNTY—AS BUNCOMBE COUNTY—DEATH BY SAVAGE AND FLOOD—PERMANENT SETTLERS COME—BELOIT FOUNDED—DOON FOUNDED AT THE FORKS—ROCK RAPIDS OF THE NORTH—LYON COUNTY ORGANIZED—COUNTY SEAT PERMANENTLY LOCATED—DEVELOPMENT OF ROCK RAPIDS—OTHER TOWNS—PHYSICAL FEATURES OF OSCEOLA COUNTY—DEVELOPMENT OF THE COUNTY—SEPARATE POLITICAL ORGANIZATION—SIBLEY, THE COUNTY SEAT—OTHER TOWNS-----761

## CHAPTER XXIX.

## O'BRIEN AND SIOUX COUNTIES.

DRAINAGE OF O'BRIEN COUNTY—ITS POLITICAL BIRTH—THE FIRST CITIZEN AND HIS FAMILY—COUNTY SEATS AND COURTHOUSES—COUNTY SEAT MOVED TO THE PRAIRIE (PRIMGHAR)—FOUNDING OF SHELDON—SANBORN FOUNDED—A TRIANGULAR COUNTY SEAT CONTEST—FOURTH COUNTY SEAT CONTEST—THE CITY OF SHELDON—THE TOWN OF SANBORN—THE TOWN OF HARTLEY—PAULLINA AND OTHER TOWNS—SIOUX COUNTY—HOW OBTAINED FROM THE INDIANS—THE COUNTY'S POLITICAL DEVELOPMENT—FIRST COUNTY SEAT, CALLIOPE—DUTCH COLONIZATION AND ORANGE CITY—THE CITY OF HAWARDEN—THE TOWN OF ALTON—SIOUX CENTER AND ROCK VALLEY—HULL, IRETON AND OTHER TOWNS-----781

## CHAPTER XXX.

## PLYMOUTH AND MONONA COUNTIES.

DRAINAGE AND TOPOGRAPHY OF PLYMOUTH COUNTY—A COUNTY BEFORE HAVING SETTLERS—EARLY SETTLEMENT OF THE COUNTY—COUNTY SEATS AND TOWN SITES PROJECTED—PLYMOUTH COUNTY ORGANIZED—CITY OF LEMARS, THE COUNTY SEAT—COUNTY SEATS AND COURTHOUSES—THE ENGLISH COLONY AT LEMARS—THE TOWN OF AKRON—REMSSEN AND KINGSLEY—OTHER TOWNS—NATURAL FEATURES OF MONONA COUNTY—HOW OBTAINED AND POLITICALLY CREATED—PERMANENT SETTLEMENT AND POLITICAL ESTABLISHMENT—SHIFTING OF COUNTY SEAT—FIXING OF THE COUNTY BOUNDARIES—THE CITY OF ONAWA—THE TOWN OF MAPLETON—THE WHITING PIONEERS—THE TOWN OF WHITING—TOWN OF UTE—OTHER TOWNS -----805

## CHAPTER XXXI.

## POCAHONTAS AND PALO ALTO COUNTIES.

POCAHONTAS COUNTY IN GENERAL—ESTABLISHMENT OF THE COUNTY—EVENTS PRECEDING COUNTY ORGANIZATION—LAST INDIAN BATTLE IN POCAHONTAS COUNTY—FIRST SETTLEMENTS IN COUNTY—LIZARD AND DES MOINES SETTLEMENTS—POCAHONTAS COUNTY ORGANIZED—OLD ROLFE—BUILDING OF COURTHOUSE AND BRIDGE—DEVELOPMENT OF THE COUNTY SEAT—THE NEW COUNTY SEAT, POCAHONTAS—TOWN OF ROLFE—TOWN OF FONDA—GILMORE CITY AND LAURENS—OTHER TOWNS IN THE COUNTY—PHYSICAL AND POLITICAL SKETCH OF PALO ALTO COUNTY—WEST BEND AND EMMETSBURG BORN—ORGANIZATION OF THE COUNTY—PAOLI, THE FIRST COUNTY SEAT—OLD AND NEW EMMETSBURG—OTHER TOWNS IN PALO ALTO COUNTY .....	833
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXXII.

## WOODBURY COUNTY AND SIOUX CITY.

THE COUNTY'S PHYSICAL OUTLOOK—SETTLERS AND OTHERWISE, 1839-54 — EVOLUTION OF WOODBURY COUNTY — LOCATION OF COUNTY SEAT—STRIVINGS AFTER A COURTHOUSE—MONUMENTAL PILE OF TODAY—GROWTH OF SIOUX CITY—RAILROAD CONNECTION AT LAST—THE FIRST BLACK HILLS EXPEDITION—BRIDGES FINALLY BUILT—THE CORN PALACE CITY—PROGRESS OF THE MUNICIPALITY—SIOUX CITY OF THE PRESENT—WHAT THE CITY HAS TO OFFER—ORIGIN OF THE CITY'S GREATEST INDUSTRY—PROTECTORS OF COMMERCE, TRADE AND THE INDUSTRIES—A CITY OF HOMES AND HEALTHFUL PLEASURES—THE PARKS OF THE CITY—THE OFFERINGS OF PUBLIC SERVICE—THE UPLIFTING PUBLIC LIBRARY—CORRECTIONVILLE AND OTHER TOWNS.....	863
---	-----



# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

---

Allen, Arthur F.....	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Pilot Rock, Cherokee County.....	42
Floyd Monument.....	65
Monument Marking Camp-Site of Lewis and Clark Expedition, Onawa.....	65
Dr. Isaac H. Harriott.....	119
The Gardner Massacre.....	119
Views of Sioux City in 1864.....	137
The Sanborn & Follett Sawmill, Mouth of Perry Creek.....	137
Store of W. F. Faulkner & Co., Pearl Street.....	137
Northwestern Hotel, Second Street.....	137
Residential district.....	137
Balanger's Boarding House in Early Sixties.....	143
Looking Northwest from Jackson and Seventh Streets, Sioux City, in 1866.....	143
Buildings of 1866, Sioux City.....	143
Early Settlers of Sioux City.....	149
Dr. John K. Cook, 1854, Founder.....	149
T. J. Stone, Early Banker.....	149
George W. Chamberlain, 1854.....	149
Mrs. George W. Chamberlain, 1854.....	149
William L. Joy, 1857, Attorney.....	149
L. D. Parmer, Early Merchant.....	149
Dr. A. M. Hunt, Founder of Hunt School.....	153
C. K. Poor, Contractor and Builder.....	153
George Weare, 1855.....	153
J. P. Allison, 1856.....	153
W. F. Faulkner, Pioneer Merchant.....	153
J. E. Booge, 1858, Wholesale Grocer and Founder of First Packing House.....	153
Sioux City, Looking North on Pearl Street from Second Street, August, 1866	
—Ten Buildings by Name.....	157
Sioux City, Looking Southwest from Jackson and Seventh Streets, 1866	
—Nine Buildings Identified.....	157
Looking Southwest from Jackson and Seventh Streets, 1868—Eight Buildings Identified.....	161
Third Street between Pearl and Douglas Streets, 1869—Nine Business Places Named.....	161
The Levee in the Early Days, Sioux City.....	255
Hagy House and Hedges Store on the Levee, Early Sixties.....	255
The Levee, Early Seventies.....	255
Prairie Schooner.....	263
Fort Defiance, Estherville.....	295
Memorial Monument to Soldiers of Civil War, Onawa.....	298
Tablet in Iowa Historical, Memorial and Art Building, Sioux City, (World War Memorial).....	319
Bird's-eye View of Ida Grove Schools.....	351

Old Time Log Schoolhouse.....	351
Grade School, Rock Rapids.....	357
High School, Sibley.....	357
Northwestern Classical Academy, Orange City.....	363
Buena Vista College, Storm Lake.....	363
Central High School, Sioux City.....	371
High School, Pocahontas.....	371
High School, Jefferson.....	377
High School, Lake City.....	377
High School, Whiting.....	383
High School, Spencer.....	383
Manning High School.....	389
New High School, Sheldon.....	389
George D. Perkins.....	395
Smith, Rev. J. J.....	551
Storm Lake.....	593
High School, Storm Lake.....	593
Main Street, Looking North, Manson.....	615
Residence Scene, Manson.....	615
Calhoun County Courthouse, Rockwell City.....	619
View of Twin Lakes near Rockwell City.....	619
View of Coon River, Lake City.....	623
View of Business Section and Carroll County Courthouse, Carroll.....	627
Fifth Street, Carroll.....	633
Adams Street, North Carroll.....	633
State Hospital, Cherokee.....	659
Pavilion in Tourist Park, Cherokee.....	659
Carnegie Library, Spencer.....	669
Clay County Courthouse, Spencer.....	669
North Main Street, Spencer (2 views).....	677
Fair Grounds, Spencer.....	681
Crawford County Courthouse.....	687
Street Scene, Denison.....	687
Tourist Park, Denison.....	696
Indian Massacre Monument, Arnold's Park.....	699
Lake Okoboji, Arnold's Park.....	699
Soldiers Monument, Spirit Lake.....	711
Across the Lake from Templar Park, Spirit Lake.....	711
Post Office, Estherville.....	721
Sixth Street, North, Estherville.....	721
The Monument at Estherville.....	727
High School, Estherville.....	727
Eureka Ridge, Jefferson.....	737
Greene County Courthouse, Jefferson.....	737
American Legion Hall, Sac City.....	745
Sac County Courthouse, Sac City.....	745
Chautauqua Park, Sac City.....	748
Ida Grove Schools.....	751
A Street Scene, Ida Grove.....	751
Lyon County Courthouse, Rock Rapids.....	769
River View, Rock Rapids.....	769
Osceola County Courthouse, Sibley.....	777
Public Library, Sibley.....	777
Public Library, Sheldon.....	789
Country Club, Sheldon.....	789
Sioux County Courthouse, Orange City.....	797
City Park, Orange City.....	797



## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xxi

I. C. R. R. Depot and Eating House, LeMars, Burned in 1878.....	811
Methodist Church, LeMars.....	811
Old Plymouth County Courthouse and Jail, LeMars.....	815
Plymouth County Courthouse, LeMars.....	815
Monona County Courthouse, Onawa.....	823
Public Library, Onawa.....	823
Pocahontas County Courthouse, Pocahontas.....	845
Main Street, Pocahontas.....	845
East Shore, Medium Lake, Emmetsburg.....	853
Public Library, Emmetsburg.....	859
Broadway North from Tenth Street, Emmetsburg.....	859
Pearl Street, looking North and East, 1869, Sioux City.....	865
Woodbury County Courthouse, Sioux City.....	871
Public Library, Sioux City.....	877
An Artist's Sketch of the First Corn Palace, Sioux City.....	877
Fourth Street, looking East from Douglas Street, Sioux City.....	883
Pierce Street, looking North from Third Street, Sioux City.....	883
Scene in Grand View Park, Sioux City.....	889
Scene in Stone Park, Sioux City.....	889
Sioux City Federal Building.....	895





## CHAPTER I.

### THE RICH GIFTS OF NATURE

NORTHWESTERN IOWA THE PRODUCT OF GLACIAL DRIFTS—ONLY A CORNER OF THE STATE DRIFTLESS—THE ICE FIELDS FROM THE NORTH—TRACINGS OF THEIR EDGES OR MORAINES—THE THREE GLACIERS WHICH INVADED NORTHWESTERN IOWA—THE NEBRASKA DRIFT—EXPOSURES OF THE BED ROCKS IN THE BIG SIOUX AND MISSOURI VALLEYS—THE SIOUX QUARTZITE—THE CRETACEOUS ROCKS OF THE GREAT PLAINS—HOW THE NEBRASKAN ICE SHEET GATHERED ITS TILL—THE WISCONSIN GLACIAL EPOCH—AREA COVERED BY THE ICE FIELD—HOW IT MOLDED THE EASTERN SECTION OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—DIVERTS THE DRAINAGE OF THE LAND WESTWARD — THE GREAT MISSISSIPPI-MISSOURI DIVIDE FIXED—THE KANSAN DRIFT COVERS A LARGE PORTION OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—THE RICH, BUT IRREGULAR LAYER OF LOESS—THE GREAT AREA OF THE KANSAN DRIFT REGION—DEPOSITS OF GRAVEL IN VALLEYS AND HILLS—THE RIVERS AND DRAINAGE OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—ITS LAKES—ALTITUDES OF VARIOUS LOCALITIES—PITCH OF THE REGION WHERE ALL VALLEYS MERGE INTO THE MISSOURI—WHY SOIL, RAINFALL, TOPOGRAPHY AND CLIMATE MADE NORTHWESTERN IOWA THE LAND OF PLENTY-----23

Northwestern Iowa, which is typical of the state, is not a land of lofty peaks and tremendous gashes in the ground, but a gently swelling country with a broad matronly bosom suggestive of protection and nourishment. It is not a land of which its children are in awe, but which they love, and its expanses of mellow soil, sometimes varied along its water courses by rounded banks and hills, are a constant assurance of thrift, contentment and prosperity. Iowa is not a land in which to constantly admire the grandeurs of nature, or dream of its beauties, but a country in which to work and thrive, to enjoy the comforts and homely things of life, and to thank God for giving its men, women and children those physical bounties which enable them to prosper materially and to rise in a healthful way to high planes of thought and action.

The story of how nature has worked to mold this pleasant and bountiful land to the uses of an industrious and grateful race is a fascinating romance for those who desire to read it. From the foundations of the earth to the surface of the teeming soil, it was destined to produce great crops of corn and grasses, and to breed and maintain thousands upon thousands of droves and herds. The sun and the rains even have coöperated to make Iowa and its people among the select regions and children of the earth.

Northwestern Iowa is so purely an agricultural region that it is not necessary to more than mention iron, lead or coal in connection with her natural resources, although the coal fields of Dallas and Polk counties overlap her extreme southeastern territory. Some of the counties in the northwestern section of the state have valuable beds of gravel and clay, but they go to emphasize the fact that the economic wealth of the earth which covers that region lies comparatively near the surface and far above the primary rocks.

#### THE ICE FIELDS OF THE NORTH.

The section of Iowa covered by the twenty counties of this history owes its natural riches to several glacial drifts which came down from the north and covered the state with the exception of a small northeastern corner. A large portion of Canada was buried under a mile of snow. As the surface melted little by little, the water filtered down through the vast mass of snow and ice was formed. As the thickness of the ice field could not be uniform, a movement commenced in all directions which was determined by the inclination of its bed. It pushed slowly southward into the United States, bearing along great blocks of stone, some of which were frozen in when it started on its dramatic journey and others gathered on its way through what is now Minnesota, Wisconsin and New England. For ages this enormous ice-sheet, or glacier, crept southward, grinding loose rocks and polishing the more permanent formations which it encountered, forming vast deposits of powdered material (rock flour), wearing off the hilltops and scouring out the valleys. Thus it passed over the present State of Iowa, except the small



northeastern section mentioned, traveled beyond its southern boundary and only halted in Central Missouri.

#### TRACINGS OF THEIR EDGES OR MORAINES.

After a time, the climate grew warmer and the great ice-field commenced to melt along its thinnest or southern edges, and gradually all the area which is now Iowa was uncovered. As the glacier dissolved, its accumulations settled. In some places hills were made of the accumulations of boulders, broken rock, rock flour, gravel and pebbles. In other sections the glacial drift was spread more evenly. In some portions of the state, a layer more than a hundred feet thick was left on top of the bedrock, while in other parts only a few feet were deposited. Five times did these great fields of ice push into Iowa, either killing the elephants, mastodons and wild horses or driving them southward. The bones of some of them which were thus overtaken have been found in the gravels of Harrison and Monona counties and in other parts of the state.

It was by this slow and tedious process that the surface of Iowa was formed; nothing that is of lasting value is ever made in haste. As the glacier moved forward it left at the edge of the ice a ridge called a "lateral moraine." Where two glaciers came together a larger ridge called a "median moraine" was formed, and at the terminus of the ice-sheet, where all the residue carried by the glacier was deposited, the ridge thus formed is known as a "terminal moraine." In the western part of Emmet County the geologist can find abundant evidence that the ancient glacial river left there a median moraine, where it came in contact with another glacier that covered the County of Dickinson.

The boulders commonly called "nigger heads" that are to be seen in all parts of the state were deposited by one of these glaciers. They are found in large numbers all over Northwestern Iowa, particularly along the Little Sioux River, to which the Sioux Indians gave the name of Ea-ne-ah-wad-e-pon, or Stone River. In the southern part of Cherokee County is a red granite boulder, 40 feet wide, 60 feet long and 20 feet high. It is so conspicuous that it is called Pilot Rock.

## THREE GLACIERS WHICH INVADED NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

Three ice-sheets invaded Northwestern Iowa, and almost concealed the bedrock. The area covered by the first (Nebraskan) was completely overridden by the second (Kansan), and the drift of the first is exposed only in valleys that have been cut through the overlying drift-sheet. The drift-sheets of the second and of the third (Wisconsin) ice invasions appear at the surface outside the valleys. The Kansan drift sheet is therefore the oldest which is to be seen on the surface of Northwestern Iowa. The direction of the original water courses as they existed in the glacial period of the Nebraskan drift is largely a matter of speculation, although some geologists claim that it was toward the southeast. Careful observations made by the Iowa Geological Survey, however, indicate that the great Wisconsin ice drift turned a great volume of the accumulated waters toward the southwest and the valleys of the Missouri and the Sioux rivers, thus substantially fixing the divide and water shed of Western Iowa as it is today. (See "Geology of Northwestern Iowa," by J. Ernest Carman, Iowa Geological Survey, Vol. XXVI.)

## THE NEBRASKAN DRIFT.

The bedrock exposures of Northwestern Iowa occur chiefly in the slopes of the Big Sioux and the Missouri valleys along the west boundary of the state. Along the west line of Plymouth and Northern Woodbury counties, there are many small outcrops, along the west line of Southern Sioux County there are a few, and in Lyon County are two or three outcrops in the very northwest corner of the state. Away from these valleys only two small exposures of bedrock have been reported in Northwestern Iowa. Most of these outcrops are in steep valley slopes, evidently gouged away by the glacial action of a later (Wisconsin) drift.

Two widely separated divisions of the geologic column are represented by the bedrock outcrops in the Big Sioux Valley. The few exposures in Northwestern Lyon County are of the Proterozoic, or quartz-like rocks, while those of the counties to the south are of Cretaceous rocks. In the northwestern corner of Lyon County there are two exposures of what is



known as the Sioux quartzite. One of these lies near the Minnesota line, and the rock stands as a ridge twenty feet high and about a quarter of a mile long. The other outcrop is in a small valley two miles to the east. These two exposures in Iowa lie on the south border of a large area of quartzite, which extends north to Flandreau, South Dakota, a distance of forty-five miles, and has its eastern limit at Redstone Ridge, Cottonwood County, Minnesota, and its western limit at Mitchell, South Dakota. The rock is well exposed at Rowena, South Dakota, just north of the outcrops on the Iowa side, in and around Sioux Falls, and at many other places in Eastern South Dakota and Southwestern Minnesota. The area within which the Sioux quartzite directly underlies the drift in Northwestern Iowa cannot be definitely outlined. The Sioux quartzite and other ancient rocks of its geologic age form a basic foundation for Northwestern Iowa. Their upper surface dips southward from the outcrops at an altitude of more than 1,400 feet above sea level in the northwest corner of Lyon County, and, as shown by well borings, 878 feet at Hull, Sioux County, and 215 feet at LeMars, Plymouth County, and 135 feet below sea level, at Sioux City.

This basic stone of Northwestern Iowa, the Sioux quartzite, is a very hard vitreous rock, varying in color from pink to red. It consists of rounded quartz sand grains, so firmly cemented with silica that the whole resembles a mass of quartz.

#### SIoux QUARTZITE AND CRETACEOUS OUTCROPS.

Northwestern Iowa lies just within the eastern margin of the great area of Cretaceous rocks of the Great Plains, and the chief bedrock formations belong to the Upper Cretaceous system. Outcrops appear at intervals in the slopes of the Big Sioux Valley south from the mouth of Rock River, and in the bluffs of the Missouri Valley to a point about six miles south of Sioux City. Away from the large valleys on the west only two bedrock outcrops of the cretaceous nature have been reported. One of these is two miles northeast of Le Mars, Plymouth County, and the other in the southeast corner of Sac County. There is abundant evidence that the Cretaceous rocks underlie the drift of practically the whole area,

for they are the first bedrock penetrated by every deep well that is known within the region.

All the evidences of surface geology indicate that the Nebraskan ice-sheet which was the first to invade the Mississippi basin, covered the whole of Western Iowa and pushed southward into Missouri. It gathered material from all the formations over which it passed, but the most important deposits which it left in Northwestern Iowa comprise the shales of the Cretaceous age, which covered the Dakotas, Western Minnesota and Western Iowa. This source explains the very compact, somewhat calcareous clay, almost free from grit and pebbles, which characterizes the Nebraskan drift and which has been one of the manufacturing and economic assets of this section of the state. The thickness of the till formed by this drift era is not definitely known, for no exposures go completely through it, and well records are usually too indefinite to distinguish between the Nebraskan and the Kansan tills. In several exposures along the Little Sioux it rises fifty to seventy feet above the river, and the record of a well on the upland in the Cherokee State Hospital represents that boring to have penetrated 170 feet of Nebraskan drift below seventy feet of Kansan. It is probable that two hundred feet or more of the material which covers parts of Northwestern Iowa is Nebraskan drift.

In the region under consideration, the Nebraskan till is easily distinguished from the Kansan. Its surface color is gray, while that of the Kansan is brownish yellow. The Nebraskan till is more compact and tougher than the Kansan, and is the abomination of those who dig wells and grade roads. It contains less grit and fewer pebbles and boulders, and breaks into much smaller fragments.

#### THE WISCONSIN GLACIAL EPOCH.

The Wisconsin glacial epoch followed the Nebraskan and was all important in fixing the topography of Iowa. Thousands upon thousands of geological and topographical examinations made by experts from Canada to Iowa bear testimony to the grand voyage taken by the so-called Wisconsin ice-field. During that epoch a great lobe of ice, the body of which occupied Central Canada, filled the basin of the Red



River of the North, and, advancing southward, divided into two parts in what is now South Dakota. The Dakota lobe continued down the James River and reached the southeast corner of the state. The Minnesota-Des Moines lobe passed southeastward down the Minnesota River valley to its bend in South-central Minnesota; then pushed southward over the divide into the Des Moines River valley and across North-central Iowa to Des Moines. The Northwestern Iowa considered in this history was traversed by the Wisconsin glacier over the territory described by counties of the present, as follows: The northeast corner of Osceola County, three-quarters of Northern and Eastern Dickinson, Emmet and Palo Alto counties entire, a third of Eastern Clay County and two-thirds of Eastern Buena Vista, a third of Eastern Sac County and a half of Eastern Carroll, and all of Pocahontas, Calhoun and Greene counties. The Wisconsin drift region thus defined is generally a level, or gently undulating plain, with terminal moraines more or less well developed on its eastern and western margins. These are especially well marked around the lakes of Dickinson County, in Eastern Clay County and in Western Palo Alto and Emmet counties. The numerous lakes in this region, such as Okoboji, Diamond and Spirit, with distinct tracings of a belt of terminal moraines therein, have led geologists to conclude that they were formed by a minor lobe of moving ice. As the district around West Okoboji Lake presents the most pronounced evidences of morainic topography in the state, this ice-field is known to Iowa geologists as the Okoboji Lobe.

Most of the topographical features of the Wisconsin drift consist of moundlike hills and broad swales interspersed with numerous undrained depressions. The drainage of the region is youthful and lakes and marshes are numerous. Most of the broad swales have streams, but these streams did not make the valleys which they occupy. They made only the narrow channels in which they flow. Some of the larger streams have cut narrow, steep-sided valleys in the Wisconsin drift-plain, but even these streams have formed the topography of only a small part of the area they drain. The chief feature of the Wisconsin plain, however, consists of its large undulations, depressions and elevations of the ground

moraine type. The hills are large, some of them covering a quarter-section and their slopes are gentle. East of the center line of Buena Vista County the region passes into a slightly rolling to a flat glacial plain, and this continues eastward across Western Pocahontas County. Shallow depressions occupied by marshes or ponds once dotted this plain, but most of them have been drained by ditching or tiling and now form the richest of agricultural land.

The Wisconsin drift is a light yellowish gray clay, loose and sufficiently sandy to crumble when crushed in the hand. It contains many pebbles and boulders, which in the morainic areas make a considerable part of the whole. Boulders lie on the surface at many places and pebbles and gritty material appear in the soil. The till is calcareous, even to the surface, and at many places concretions of calcium carbonate are present for a few feet below the surface.

#### AREA COVERED BY THE ICE FIELD.

As a result of the Wisconsin glaciation the earlier drainage to the Mississippi was diverted westward over the divide at two places, and both diversions became permanent at the expense of the Mississippi drainage. As a result of the diversion to the Boyer Valley southwest of Wall Lake, the divide from Southern Sac County to Southern Buena Vista County was shifted five to seven miles to the east, and the drainage basin of the Boyer was increased by about 150 square miles. The diversion to the Little Sioux Valley was much greater, for the divide was shifted thirty to thirty-five miles to the east and the drainage basin of the Little Sioux was increased by almost 2,000 square miles. Within the area of Northwestern Iowa the divide is the same as during pre-Wisconsin times for only seven to eight miles to the north and south of Alta, in Southwestern Buena Vista County.

#### THE GREAT MISSISSIPPI-MISSOURI DIVIDE FIXED.

The great divide which sheds the waters of the Mississippi Valley toward the southeast and those of the Missouri toward the southwest, and which was definitely fixed by the prehistoric operations of the Wisconsin ice-sheet, has been traced in detail throughout Northwestern Iowa. Three-fourths of



the state is drained southeastwardly by long parallel streams to the Mississippi River. The western quarter of Iowa drains southwest-by-south through shorter streams to the Missouri River. The parallelism of the major streams both to the southeast and the southwest is a notable feature of the drainage of Iowa. The divide between these two great drainage basins has a northwest-southeast direction through Southwestern Iowa, but in Western Carroll County it takes a more northerly course which is followed to the Minnesota State line. From Western Carroll County, the divide intersects the south boundary of Sac County, crosses the east end of Wall Lake outlet and extends northward through Central Sac County, forming the divide between Indian Creek and Boyer River. It then passes westward along the south side of the Storm Lake basin and northward through the town of Alta, Buena Vista County. Four miles north of Alta it doubles back around the head of the small creek which enters the northwest corner of Storm Lake and extends southeast almost to that lake, rounding the head of Brooke Creek, which flows north to the Little Sioux. North of the head of Brooke Creek the divide is in the Wisconsin drift area and its course to the northward is less definite. It extends north and east through Central and Northeastern Buena Vista County between the headwaters of Raccoon River on the southeast and the tributaries of the Little Sioux on the northwest. It crosses the southeast corner of Clay County, follows north along the Ruthven moraine two to four miles east of the west line of Palo Alto and Emmet counties, crosses the northeast corner of Dickinson County and enters Minnesota about five miles west of the Des Moines River.

The divide continues northward in Southeastern Jackson County, Minnesota, for twelve miles and then bends westward around the headwaters of the Little Sioux, offsetting twenty-four miles to the west and in this distance swinging six miles to the south. Here, northwest of Worthington, Nobles County, Minnesota, the divide changes its direction to north-of-northwest and holds this course for more than a hundred miles along the crest of the Coteau des Prairies.

From the south line of Sac County to Storm Lake the divide is just west of the boundary of the Wisconsin drift-

region. North of Storm Lake the divide lies within that region, but as far as Ruthven it is only five to ten miles east of the boundary. The boundary then angles westward to such an extent that on the State line the divide is thirty-six miles within the Wisconsin drift area, but the westward course of the divide across the headwaters of the Little Sioux brings it back to within a few miles of the Wisconsin drift boundary northwest of Worthington, in which position it continues on to the northwest along the crest of the Coteau des Prairies.

It is therefore evident that, substantially, the Mississippi-Missouri divide corresponds with the western boundary of the Wisconsin drift region, and that the most marked variation occurs in Northwestern Iowa. There, it is believed, a large mass of the prehistoric waters were turned aside by the drift of that era and diverted toward the southwest. This theory is advanced thus in the last report of the State Geological Survey on Northwestern Iowa (1917): "The Mississippi-Missouri divide northwest of Worthington, Minnesota, agrees in direction with the part south of Storm Lake, Iowa. Between Worthington and Storm Lake a great reentrant carries the divide to the east about the headwaters of the Little Sioux River. But for this irregularity, the course of the divide would continue northward from Alta, through Western Clay or East-central O'Brien and Central Osceola counties; it would cross the State line just east of Bigelow, Minnesota, and would join the present divide where it changes its direction northwest of Worthington. This raises the question, may not this have been the real watershed of the State? In other words, may not the region now drained by the Little Sioux above Northeastern Cherokee County formerly have drained southeastwardly to the Mississippi River?"

#### THE KANSAN DRIFT.

The Wisconsin drift undoubtedly had most to do with fixing the present water-shed and topography of Northwestern Iowa. West of its borders is another distinct geological area known as the Kansan Drift Region. It covers more than twice the territory allotted to the Wisconsin drift in Northwestern Iowa and includes all of Lyon, Sioux, O'Brien,



Plymouth, Cherokee, Woodbury, Ida, Monona and Crawford counties, and parts of Osceola, Clay, Buena Vista, Sac and Carroll. To the south it broadens out into the great Kansan drift region of Southern Iowa and Northern Missouri. Northward it extends into Southwestern Minnesota and Eastern South Dakota. From the northwest corner of Lyon County, Iowa, southward to Canton, South Dakota, the Big Sioux Valley forms the boundary of the Kansan drift region; south of Canton, the Kansan plain extends into Southeastern South Dakota and Northeastern Nebraska.

#### RICH LAYER OF LOESS.

Preceding the Kansan epoch, Northwestern Iowa had been glaciated by the Nebraskan ice-sheet, which deposited a thick layer of till. As the Kansan ice-sheet advanced, it gathered great quantities of the underlying deposits and mixed them with such new materials as it brought down from the north. Gray limestone is the dominant rock material among the pebbles of the Kansan till. The vari-colored clays are also characteristic of this drift material. The yellow clay has been oxidized; the blue, unoxidized. A few fossils have been found in the valley gravels of Plymouth County, but are more plentiful farther south. The gravels of the Kansan till, which have much economic value, appear in large pockets or layers; some are found in broad valleys and other deposits are exposed in mounds or hills, swelling above the surface. The gravel hills are found chiefly in Lyon, Cherokee and Sac counties, and are stratified, the theory being that they were formed during the retreat of the Kansan ice-sheet. They are composed both of gravel and coarse sand. Most of the sand is of pure quartz. The valley gravels are found along the large rivers and medium sized streams and even along the small creeks nearly to their heads on the uplands. They also fill in certain broad areas on the headwaters of some of the streams. Their distribution is evidently independent of the size of the valley.

Several of the larger rivers head northeastward within or along the Wisconsin drift-margin, and therefore may have carried drainage from the Wisconsin ice. This is true of the Big Sioux, Rock, Little Sioux and Boyer rivers. Lyon, Osce-

ola, O'Brien, Cherokee and Woodbury counties have especially rich deposits of the valley gravels. They rest on the Kansan till, except where it has been entirely removed, as in the Little Sioux Valley and the lower courses of some of its tributaries, in which case they lie on the Nebraskan till.

The Kansan drift of Northwestern Iowa is covered with a mantle of fine-grained yellow clay known as loess. In the southwestern part of the area the loess has a considerable thickness, but it thins to the northeast until it is almost negligible. In the regions where the loess is thick, it is commonly calcareous to the surface and in many exposures contains calcareous concretions and snail shells. The region within which a well developed loess covering exists includes Woodbury County, and most of Ida, the southwest part of Sac County, and a belt along the east side of the Big Sioux Valley narrowing northward through Western Plymouth, Sioux and Lyons counties. Within this area, many road cuts on the slopes or on the crests of the hills expose ten to twenty feet of loess. A particularly rugged belt five to ten miles wide just east of the Missouri River valley in Woodbury and Plymouth counties is from thirty to fifty feet in thickness. This distinct belt continues southward along the Missouri River and across Western Iowa, and is particularly noticeable in the region north of Turin, in Central Monona County.

#### GREAT AREA OF THE KANSAN DRIFT REGION.

The Kansan drift region, or fully two-thirds of Northwestern Iowa, presents considerable diversity of topography. In its northeastern part in Osceola, Dickinson, O'Brien and Clay counties, the surface is slightly rolling. The largest of the level areas in this region is in western Clay County, between Willow Creek and Ocheyedan River. In that area, the surface is so level that the natural drainage is poor, but there is sufficient slope for successful tillage and, with artificial drainage, it has become a productive farm region. To the west and southwest of these slightly rolling areas, the relief and ruggedness of the country are more pronounced. The distinctly rolling topography includes most of Lyon and Sioux counties, Eastern Plymouth, Cherokee and Western Buena Vista and Sac counties. The slopes of this area are



definite, the region is therefore well drained and it includes the best farm land of Northwestern Iowa. Southwest of this rolling area, the country passes into what may be called rough or rugged. It includes a belt which widens southward along the Big Sioux in Lyon, Sioux and Plymouth counties, and embraces all of Woodbury, most of Ida and the southwest corner of Sac County. This topography is extended into Southern Iowa. An area just east of the Missouri River valley in Woodbury and Plymouth counties presents bold and rugged characteristics. There are steep slopes, almost bare of vegetation, pointed hills and narrow ridges.

1272742

#### DEPOSITS OF GRAVEL IN VALLEYS AND HILLS.

In contrast to this area are several level deposits of gravel and the dissection of valleys. In O'Brien and Osceola counties, are small areas of low and level land between streams which have been formed by the filling in of gravel. In the Little Sioux valley of Northeastern Cherokee and Southeastern O'Brien counties, on the other hand, are notable examples of the cutting processes. In this region there are places where the stream has cut below the upland from 175 to 200 feet. Smaller tributaries have dissected the area to a less depth, but the slopes of the minor streams are steep; the divides are level and project as spurs out to the very edge of the Little Sioux valley.

#### RIVERS AND DRAINAGE OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

Thus Mother Nature determined the courses of the rivers and formed the basins of the lakes of Northwestern Iowa. She also laid the bed of rocks over which the prehistoric glaciers ground the material beneath and within the icy masses, carrying along other debris on their way, and, with the coming of melting weather in the geological ages, leaving vast deposits on the earth of latent productiveness. The drainage basin of the Missouri is by far the most important watershed of Northwestern Iowa. The Big Sioux comes down from Minnesota and joins the parent stream in Northwestern Woodbury County, the Missouri River proper coming from South Dakota, bounding the remainder of Woodbury and all

of Monona County, and constituting the southern portion and the balance of the western boundary of Northwestern Iowa. There are four main tributaries which flow into the Big Sioux and the Missouri in a southwesterly direction and the courses of which lie mainly within the territory under consideration. They are the Rock River, which rises a short distance over the Minnesota line and flows into the Big Sioux in the western part of Sioux County; the Floyd River, which heads in Northwestern O'Brien County and joins the Missouri in Southwestern Woodbury County; the Little Sioux, the largest tributary of the Missouri system in Iowa, which has its sources in the marshes of Jackson County, Minnesota, and empties into the Missouri a short distance below Monona County's southern line, and the Boyer River, the headwaters of which are near the northern limits of Sac County, and in its course to the Missouri it diagonally traverses Crawford and Harrison counties and the northwest corner of Harrison.

The streams which flow southeastward to the Mississippi have their upper courses almost parallel with the divide, and draw away from it very gradually, while those which flow southwestward toward the Missouri have their headwaters almost normal to the divide. As a result of this difference almost the whole of the east side of the Mississippi-Missouri divide is drained by the tributaries of the Des Moines River, the longest and the largest of the southeastern flowing streams, while nearly every important stream of Southwestern Minnesota and Northwestern Iowa, except the Floyd, has its headwaters on the west slope of the divide. The glacial sources of the Des Moines were in Southern Minnesota as were those of the Big Sioux and, as stated, were divided in Northwestern Iowa. The upper valleys of the Des Moines River formed by its east and west forks traverse the extreme northeastern corner of Northwestern Iowa, while the Raccoon River, its only important western tributary, rises in Northern Buena Vista County and flows in a generally southeastern direction through that county, and Sac, cuts across corners of Calhoun and Carroll, and continues through Greene and Dallas and Southwestern Polk to the parent stream.



## THE LAKES.

The bodies of water in Iowa which may be designated as lakes are all located in the northern part and within the area covered by this history. Dickinson, Emmet and Palo Alto are especially favored in this regard, and it has already developed in the telling of this geological story what part was played by glacial action and deposits in their formation.

Dickinson County has the largest lake in Iowa. It was known to the Indians as Min-ne-wau-kon, or Spirit Water, and was supposed to be the home of evil spirits. In English it is known as Spirit Lake and has been associated for nearly seventy years with the terrible massacre perpetrated by the Sioux in its vicinity. Spirit Lake is about four miles in length and has an area of some ten square miles. For the most part its shores near the water line form a beautiful sandy beach, with a fringe of trees beyond. Immediately west of Spirit Lake are three smaller bodies of water which are connected and drain into it, and there are numerous other ponds which are called lakes. But the most picturesque of the Dickinson County lakes are East and West Okoboji lakes, south of Spirit Lake. Each is about six miles long and the shores, instead of being beautiful, gentle and sandy, are piled high with boulders of limestone and of granite, porphyry and quartzite, and ramparts of clay and drift. The eastern shores are especially rugged, probably because the prevailing winds are westerly and the waves have been constantly driven to that side of the lakes.

In Emmet County are numerous lakes, several of which deserve mention in these general paragraphs. Turtle, which is the largest, extends into Minnesota and Iowa Lake is on the line. Swan Lake is the largest lying wholly within Emmet County. It is near the center of the county and from its western end a fine view of the West Des Moines River and the country beyond may be obtained. There is also a Swan Lake in Dickinson County and another in Pocahontas County, both considerably smaller than the one in Emmet. Pelican, Lost Island and Medium lakes, in Palo Alto County, as well as Trumbull in Clay County and Wall Lake in Sac County, also nestle in this divide country between the West

Fork of the Des Moines River and the valley of the Little Sioux. The only other body of water of considerable size outside this area is Clear Lake in the Des Moines watershed of Cerro Gordo County.

#### ALTITUDES OF VARIOUS LOCALITIES.

At various times and by various surveyors the altitudes of numerous localities in Northwestern Iowa have been taken. On account of the variations in local and sectional topography, the data proves little even in demonstrating the general declination of the region of that section of the State from northeast to southwest toward the Missouri Valley. But we know that to be the fact, since the drainage is in that direction. It is conceded, however, that Dickinson, as a whole, occupies the most elevated position of any county in the State. It is recorded that Jean Nicollet, the explorer, in 1839 made an observation on the south shore of Spirit Lake and found the altitude to be 1,310 feet above the Gulf of Mexico. Modern surveyors have computed it to be more than a hundred feet higher.

Going from north to south, or toward the valleys of the Big Sioux and Missouri, the altitudes of various localities in Northwestern Iowa have been announced as follows: Spirit Lake, Dickinson County, 1,413 above sea level; Sibley, Osceola County, 1,502; Estherville, Emmet County, 1,298; Rock Rapids, Lyon County, 1,345; Orange City, Sioux County, 1,421; Primghar, O'Brien County, 1,450; Spencer, Clay County, 1,210; Emmetsburg, Palo Alto County, 1,237; Pocahontas, Pocahontas County, 1,225; Storm Lake, Buena Vista County, 1,420; Cherokee, Cherokee County, 1,338; LeMars, Plymouth County, 1,224; Idagrove, Ida County, 1,225; Sioux City, Woodbury County, 1,158; Sac City, Sac County, 1,196; Rockwell City, Calhoun County, 1,225; Jefferson, Greene County, 1,110; Carroll, Carroll County, 1,251; Denison, Crawford County, 1,230.

The pitch of the region where the Big Sioux and its tributaries merge into the valley of the Missouri is very slight, only a few feet to the mile. As they have been determined by geologists and surveyors the following are the facts, more in detail: On the north line of Plymouth County, at the cross-



ing of the West Fork of the Floyd River, the ground has an elevation of 1,284 feet, while directly west, about eighteen miles, the Valley of the Big Sioux is 1,150 feet, showing a descent westward of nearly seven and a half feet per mile. The Floyd descends southerly to Sioux City 171 feet, or about six feet per mile, and the Big Sioux falls thirty-seven feet to the Missouri near the mouth of the Floyd. The elevation of the ground where the valley of the Little Sioux merges in the Missouri bottom is 1,086 feet, making the descent from the north line of Plymouth County, where the West Fork of the Floyd enters, to the south line of Woodbury where the Little Sioux passes out, 198 feet, or a little more than four feet per mile. Even from a superficial examination of these altitudes of Northwestern Iowa from the Minnesota line to the Missouri Valley, it is evident that the rivers and streams of this wonderfully fertile region are still quite evenly distributing rich and productive alluvia over its plains.

#### SOIL, RAINFALL AND TOPOGRAPHY.

To generalize: The most recent and noticeable deposits form the bottom lands of the Missouri, which, along the western boundary of Iowa, constitute a belt of rich loamy soil 150 miles long and from five to twenty wide. Farther north, the Little Sioux contributes its share to the basic wealth of Northwestern Iowa. But by far the greatest source of agricultural opulence enjoyed by the farmers and live stock men of the country is found in the drift soils, the origin and composition of which have already been described. Generally speaking they are of a fine loamy mixture of clay and sand, with little gravel, and so rich as to need little fertilizing. The blanket of loess, covering the greater portion of Northwestern Iowa and varying in thickness, is a distinct type of soil; a fine yellowish silt, highly charged with carbonate of lime. The outstanding characteristics of the soil of this section of the State are its depth and its porous nature, by which the agriculturists withstand so effectually the extremes of wet and dry weather. The water does not remain long on the surface, but forms reservoirs at a convenient depth upon which to draw during a prolonged spell of dry weather.

As remarked by one who resided in one of the interior

counties of Northwestern Iowa, which was afterward subjected to drainage: "The surface soil is here very fine, very black and very rich; the subsoil either a fine calcareous clay overlying the gravel, or a more porous mixture of lime, gravel and sand. At any rate the subsoils of Buena Vista County seem to yield up to the growing crops in unusual measure the moisture needed at a time when other subsoils seem to fail entirely. It is a problem what effect the wholesale tile-drainage of Northwest Iowa is likely to have upon the region and the State at large in the matter of local precipitation. In the days when vast areas were yet undrained, but lay as pool and marsh and lake over hundreds of square miles, Northwestern Iowa acted as a water storage reservoir for the remainder of the State. All summer long the waters sucked up by the hot sun were passed on in clouds to descend as showers all up and down the eastern counties. But with the progress of our agriculture these surface waters have almost entirely disappeared, hurried away by our finer systems of drainage to the rivers and to the sea, and the immediate source of local showers for Iowa has disappeared as well."

Fortunately the great corn and grass crops, the harvests of wheat and oats and the raising of swine, horses, cattle and other livestock, do not depend on local conditions, although they do have their circumscribed effect. Iowa is near enough to the Gulf of Mexico to have plenty of rain brought to it by the south and southwest winds, and whether it comes in great currents of air or is generated in local areas, its porous soil holds it for the nourishment of the grains and the grasses, which draw also from the earth the requisite elements for their growth; and this truth will be developed more in detail when the chapter is reached which deals with the growth of agriculture and its allied industries.

It is important to know, in this connection, how Nature formed a most wonderful conspiracy to make Iowa, and particularly Northwestern Iowa, the greatest corn-producing country in the world. Corn requires a rich loam soil—one which is easily cultivated and has plenty of plant food—and an abundance of rain during the growing season. It needs a long, warm summer, with warm nights and at least five months free from frost. It grows best where there is some



frost just after ripening time. All these conditions of soil, rainfall and temperature are vouchsafed. Although the average rainfall of the State is about thirty-one and a half inches, most of it comes at the right time to stimulate the growing corn: in May, June and July. The rainfall is least during the ripening months.

The long, hot summer days, with bright sunshine and warm nights, give ideal conditions for raising corn, and the Iowa Weather and Crop Service which has long kept accurate records gives many facts as to why they are so. Some of these have already been produced. It is further learned that the Iowa year has an average of 170 days which are free from frost. There are great ranges of temperature; but, as a rule, they are not unseasonable. Summer is summer and winter is winter in the Hawkeye State. Since the weather records have been kept, the lowest temperature noted was in 1912, when the thermometer fell to forty-seven degrees below zero. The highest temperature recorded was in 1901, when the mercury jumped to one hundred and thirteen degrees above. Both sun and wind do their best to make Iowa a lively State.

As it was foreordained that corn should be crowned king in Iowa, and that its northwestern section should have a large part in the coronation, it followed that the lowly, homely and industrious hog should crunch and root itself to supremacy. Corn is the ideal food for swine, as it both fattens and strengthens them. Iowa has overtaken Illinois in the production of corn, and raises nearly twice as many swine as its eastern competitor. A large portion of Iowa's corn crop goes to fatten the hogs. The State raises a seventh of all the swine produced in the United States.

Cattle and horses follow swine as wealth producers, and the plains of Northwestern Iowa, with other sections of the State, furnish an abundance of nourishing grasses, stimulated by the lime and other ingredients of the soil. This all makes for well-nourished and hardy animals, abundantly fed and watered. It must also be remembered that the value of such crops as grasses, alfalfa and wild and tame hay, equals nearly one-half that of the corn crop.

Although Iowa is preeminently a prairie and an agricul-

tural State, considerable timber is still standing in the bottomlands of the Missouri, Big Sioux, Little Sioux and other large streams. Cottonwood, willow, honey locust, ash and elm, are chiefly found in such areas, while the less heavily wooded uplands show three or four varieties of oaks and butternut, ironwood and hackberry. In the scattered groves, oak, elm, cottonwood, hickory and maple predominate, while along some of the river bluffs is occasionally to be seen a scant growth of pine and cedar. Basswood, box elder, black walnut, red and black haw, wild cherry and wild plum also prove that Northwestern Iowa is not a treeless plain. Many tracts of timber have been cleared away by the early settlers, and many have been reforested and now present second and third growths; but timber is less than ever a source of wealth to any section of the State. As long as its wonderful soil, its drainage, its rains and its sunshine combine to bring its sons and daughters comfort, prosperity and happiness, Iowa will base her life on what nature has provided in such generous measure.



PILOT ROCK, CHEROKEE COUNTY  
Largest Rock in Western Iowa



## CHAPTER II.

### THE EVOLUTION OF IOWA.

EARLY EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA—THE "RIGHT OF DISCOVERY"  
—MARQUETTE AND JOLIET—LA SALLE'S EXPEDITIONS—CON-  
FLICTING INTERESTS—FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR—GEN. GEORGE  
ROGERS CLARK—LOUISIANA PURCHASE—TREATY OF PARIS—  
IOWA UNDER VARIOUS JURISDICTIONS—TERRITORY OF IOWA—  
THE FIGHT FOR ADMISSION—ORGANIZATION OF COUNTIES.

In order that the reader may fully understand how the State of Iowa came into existence, it is deemed appropriate to give a general account of the events that preceded and wielded an influence in its establishment. In 1493, the year following the first voyage of Columbus to the Western Hemisphere, the pope granted to Spain dominion over "all countries inhabited by infidels." As the entire continent of North America was then inhabited by savage tribes of Indians, who might be regarded as "infidels" from the Catholic point of view, this papal grant included in a vague way the region now comprising the State of Iowa.

Three years later (1496) Henry VII of England granted to John Cabot and his sons a patent of "discovery, possession and trade to all lands they may discover and lay claim to in the name of the English crown." During the next five years the Cabots explored a large part of the Atlantic coast. Their discoveries formed the basis of England's claim to all the central part of North America.

A little later the French Government sent Jacques Cartier on an expedition to America. He discovered and laid claim to the Valley of the St. Lawrence River and the country about the Great Lakes, whence the French pushed their explorations westward and southward to the Mississippi and Ohio rivers. Thus at the beginning of the Sixteenth Century three great European nations—Spain, England and France—were engaged in making explorations and claiming dominion over

certain portions of the newly discovered continent, each claiming title to the disputed lands "by right of discovery."

Spain's papal grant was supplemented and strengthened by the expedition of Hernando de Soto in 1540-42. In the spring of 1541 De Soto discovered the Mississippi River, not far from the present City of Memphis, Tennessee. While trying to reach the Spanish settlements in Mexico he was stricken with fever and died, his body being buried in the river he had discovered. A few of his men succeeded in reaching Florida and upon their report Spain laid claim to "all the land bordering upon the Grande River and the Gulf of Mexico."

Claiming land "by right of discovery" did not clearly define the boundaries and in course of time a conflict arose, each nation charging others with trespassing upon its rights. In 1620 the British Government, ignoring the grant of the pope and De Soto's explorations, issued a charter to the Plymouth Company, granting that concern "all the lands between the fortieth and forty-eighth parallels of north latitude from sea to sea." This grant included the entire present State of Iowa. A few years later the Massachusetts Bay Company received a grant to a tract of land "one hundred miles wide and extending from sea to sea." In making this grant the British crown not only failed to recognize Spanish claims, but also ignored its previous grant to the Plymouth Company. Had the lands of the Massachusetts Bay Company been surveyed, the northern boundary of the one-hundred-mile strip would have crossed the Mississippi near where McGregor now stands and the southern boundary a little below Davenport.

Thus Iowa, or at least a portion of it, was claimed by both Spain and England, but no effort was made by either nation to extend settlement into the interior. France was more aggressive in extending explorations and planting colonies. Port Royal was settled in 1604, Quebec was founded by Samuel Champlain in 1608, and as early as 1611 Jesuit missionaries were among the Indians on the shores of Lake Michigan. In 1634 Jean Nicollet, agent of the "Company of One Hundred," an organization authorized by the King of France to trade with the Indians, explored the western shore



of Lake Michigan. He is said to have been the first white man to make a report upon the region west of the Great Lakes.

#### MARQUETTE AND JOLIET.

During the first half of the Seventeenth Century the French—especially the Jesuit missionaries—were active in establishing friendly relations with the Indians in the Great Lakes country. In 1668 Fathers Allouez and Dablon founded the mission of St. Mary's, the oldest white settlement in the present State of Michigan. One of the most active and influential of the Jesuit Fathers in America was Jacques Marquette, who established the mission at Point St. Ignace in 1671. For many years this mission was regarded as the key to the great unexplored West.

From the Indians Father Marquette heard reports of a great river to the westward and was filled with a desire to test the truth of the rumors. It was not until the early part of 1673 that he obtained the consent of the Canadian authorities. He then hurried forward his preparations at Michilimackinac and on May 13, 1673, accompanied by Louis Joliet, explorer and topographer, and five voyageurs, with two large canoes, the little expedition left the mission. Ascending the Fox River to the portage, they crossed over to the Wisconsin River, down which they floated until June 17, 1673, when for the first time in history white men beheld the Iowa bluffs near the present City of McGregor. Turning their canoes down stream, they descended the great Father of Waters, noting the landmarks as they passed along. On the 25th they landed on the west bank of the river "sixty leagues below the mouth of the Wisconsin River." Sixty leagues below the mouth of the Wisconsin would throw the place of this landing about where the Town of Montrose, Lee County, now stands. It is generally believed that Marquette and Joliet were the first white men to set foot upon Iowa soil.

Marquette and Joliet continued on down the river to about the mouth of the Arkansas River, where they met with a tribe of Indians whose language they could not understand, when they returned to Canada. Joliet's papers were lost by the upsetting of his canoe, but he prepared from memory an

account of the voyage and a map of the river. When these were presented to the governor of Canada, that official became certain that the Mississippi was a reality, and it was not long until steps were taken to claim its basin in the name of France.

#### LA SALLE'S EXPEDITIONS.

In 1674, the year following the voyage of Marquette and Joliet, Robert Cavelier, Sieur de la Salle, was granted the seigneurie of Fort Frontenac, where the City of Kingston, Canada, now stands. La Salle was of an adventurous disposition and was anxious to explore the river discovered by Marquette and Joliet. On May 12, 1678, Louis XIV, then King of France, gave him authority to descend the river, "find a port for the King's ships in the Gulf of Mexico, discover the western parts of New France, and find a way to penetrate Mexico." Late in that year La Salle made his first attempt to reach and descend the river, but it ended in failure. Affairs at Fort Frontenac then claimed his attention until December, 1681, when he started upon what proved to be his successful expedition. He was accompanied by his lieutenant, Henri de Tonti; Jacques de la Metarie, a notary; Jean Michel, surgeon; Father Zenobe Membre, a Recollet missionary; and "a number of Frenchmen bearing arms."

It is not necessary here to recount all the trials and hardships of this little expedition while passing through a wild, unexplored country in the dead of winter. Suffice it to say that on April 8, 1682, La Salle and Tonti passed through two of the channels at the mouth of the river, both reaching the Gulf of Mexico. The next day La Salle took formal possession of "all the country drained by the great river and its tributaries in the name of France, and conferred upon the territory the name of Louisiana, in honor of Louix XIV." Under this claim, which was afterward acknowledged by the European powers, Iowa became a dependency of France.

In the meantime La Salle had sent Father Louis Hennepin in 1680 on an expedition from the mouth of the Illinois River to the headwaters of the Mississippi. In April of that year Hennepin reached the Falls of St. Anthony, where the City of Minneapolis, Minnesota, now stands. Later he spent some



time as a captive among the Indians. On April 8, 1689, Nicolas Perrot took formal possession of the upper Mississippi Valley (including Iowa), thus emphasizing the claim of La Salle seven years before. As early as 1682 small trading posts were established at Kaskaskia and Cahokia—the oldest settlements on the Mississippi. During the next fifty years Louisiana was managed under charters granted to Antoine Crozat and John Law. The latter's scheme is known in history as the "Mississippi Bubble." In 1732 he surrendered his charter and Louisiana again became a crown province of France.

#### CONFLICTING INTERESTS.

While France was trying to develop the resources of Louisiana through the activities of Crozat and Law, the English were gradually pushing the frontier of their civilization farther toward the west. In 1667 the Hudson's Bay Company was organized and on May 2, 1670, it was granted a charter by the British crown. Within a short time its traders and trappers were operating among the Indian tribes of the interior, in spite of the French claim to the Mississippi Valley and oblivious to the French protests against their trespasses. The rivalry between the French and English traders soon brought about a situation which embroiled the mother countries. The first open rupture between France and England did not come, however, until 1753, when the French began building a line of forts down the Ohio Valley to prevent the English from extending their settlements west of the Alleghany Mountains.

On the other hand, the British Government had issued a charter to an association known as the Ohio Company, including a large grant of land on the Great Miami River and the right to trade with the Indians. A fort was built by this company in 1750, near the site of the present City of Piqua, but it was quickly destroyed by the French. The company then began a new fort at the head of the Ohio River (now Pittsburgh), and again they were driven out by the French.

One of the French forts was located upon land claimed by Virginia and Governor Dinwiddie sent George Washington, then only twenty-one years of age, to demand an explana-

tion of this invasion of English territory while the nations were at peace. The reply was insolent and unsatisfactory. The following year (1754) Washington, now a lieutenant-colonel in the Virginia militia, was sent with a detachment of troops into the disputed territory. Part of his orders was "to complete the fort already commenced by the Ohio Company at the forks of the Ohio," and "to capture, kill or drive out all who attempted to interfere with the English posts." This order naturally aroused the indignation of France and in May, 1756, that nation formally declared war against Great Britain.

#### FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

The conflict which followed is known in European history as the "Seven Years' War," and in America as the "French and Indian War." It was concluded by the treaty of Fontainebleau (November 3, 1762), by which France ceded to Great Britain all that part of Louisiana lying east of the Mississippi River, "except the City of New Orleans and the island upon which it is situated."

On February 10, 1763, the treaty of Fontainebleau was confirmed by the treaty of Paris. At the same time it was made known that, by a secret agreement, "the City of New Orleans and the island upon which it is situated, and all that part of Louisiana lying west of the Mississippi, including the whole of the country to the headwaters of the great river and west to the Rocky Mountains, is hereby ceded to Spain."

Thus, through the French and Indian war, France lost all her possessions in that part of North America included in the United States and Iowa became a Spanish possession. Practically all the French inhabitants west of the river remained in the province as Spanish subjects. Many of them afterwards became active in business and public affairs. On the east side of the river it was different. Many of the French in that region refused to acknowledge allegiance to Great Britain and removed to the west side of the river.

#### GEN. GEORGE ROGERS CLARK.

When the Revolutionary war broke out in 1775, the British had military posts at Kaskaskia and Cahokia, Illinois,



and Vincennes, Indiana. Vincennes and Kaskaskia each numbered about eighty houses, Cahokia had about fifty, and there was a small settlement at Prairie du Rocher, just across the Mississippi from St. Louis. Virginia claimed the territory in which these posts were situated and upon the recommendation of Patrick Henry, then governor of that colony, the Legislature fitted out an expedition in 1778 for their reduction.

Gen. George Rogers Clark was selected to command the expedition and before the summer was over all the posts were in the hands of the Americans. Clark's conquest of the Northwest was one of the most thrilling campaigns of the Revolution. He was greatly aided by some of the French who had refused to acknowledge the authority of Great Britain and removed to the west side of the Mississippi fifteen years before. As soon as it became certain that the American colonies were to become involved in a war with the mother country, many of these French people recrossed the river and joined the colonists in their struggle for independence.

Although Clark's expedition had no direct effect upon the territory comprising the State of Iowa, the capture of the British posts had the effect of fixing the western boundary of the United States at the Mississippi River in the treaty of 1783, which ended the Revolutionary war and established the independence of the United States. By thus extending the limits of the new republic to the great Father of Waters, the way was opened for the acquisition of territory west of that river. This acquisition came just twenty years later in the

#### LOUISIANA PURCHASE.

To understand the reasons for the purchase of Louisiana by the United States, it will be necessary to go back and notice some of the events immediately following the Revolution. Soon after the United States became a nation, a controversy arose with the Spanish authorities of Louisiana over the free navigation of the Mississippi River. The lower portion of the river lay entirely within Spanish territory. Taking advantage of this, the Louisiana authorities assumed control of the navigation of the entire river. Posts were established at various places along the river and every de-

scending boat was compelled to land at these posts and submit to arbitrary revenue charges, which materially decreased the profits of the American trader. After much discussion and diplomatic correspondence, the question was settled, temporarily at least, by the treaty of Madrid, October 27, 1795, which provided that "The Mississippi River, from its source to the Gulf, for its entire width, shall be free to American trade and commerce, and the people of the United States shall be permitted, for three years, to use the port of New Orleans as a port of deposit, without payment of duty."

During the three years following the conclusion of this treaty the commerce of the settlements on the Ohio and Mississippi rivers greatly increased. At the end of that period Spain showed a disposition to return to the old order and the free navigation of the Mississippi again became a subject of paramount importance to the people of the United States. While the question was under discussion the secret treaty of San Ildefonso, between France and Spain, was concluded on October 1, 1800. By this treaty Spain agreed to cede Louisiana back to France under certain conditions. The secret treaty was confirmed by the treaty of Madrid (March 21, 1801), a copy of which was sent to President Jefferson by Rufus King, then the United States minister to England. It was received by the President on May 26, 1801.

The retrocession of Louisiana to France changed the whole situation, as it now became necessary for the United States to negotiate with France for the free navigation of the Mississippi. In August, 1801, Robert R. Livingston went to Paris as the American minister. Immediately upon his arrival in Paris he asked Talleyrand, the French prime minister, if Louisiana had been retroceded to France. Talleyrand replied in the negative and in one sense of the word he was correct, as the treaty of Madrid was not signed by the King of Spain until in October, 1802. For some time President Jefferson and his cabinet were kept in a state of suspense as to the status of Louisiana and no progress was made toward the settlement of the navigation question.

In his message to Congress at the opening of the session in 1802, the President stated that the change in ownership



of Louisiana would necessarily make a change in our foreign relations, but did not explain what the nature of that change was to be. On January 7, 1803, the lower house of Congress, acting upon the President's recommendation, adopted the following resolutions: "Resolved, That it is the unalterable determination of the United States to maintain the boundaries and rights of navigation and commerce through the Mississippi River, as established by existing treaties."

About a week later Mr. Jefferson wrote to Mr. Livingston that if France deemed Louisiana indispensable to her interests, she might still be willing to cede to the United States the Island of Orleans and the Floridas. Or, if unwilling to cede the island, she might be induced to grant the right of deposit at New Orleans and the free navigation of the Mississippi, as they had previously been under the Spanish regime, and directed him to open negotiations with that end in view. A few days after this letter was written, thinking the cession of the island could probably be more easily accomplished by sending an emissary direct from the United States for that purpose, the President appointed James Monroe minister plenipotentiary, to cooperate with Mr. Livingston. Monroe's appointment was promptly confirmed by the senate and Congress placed at his disposal the sum of \$2,000,000 to be used by him and Mr. Livingston to pay for the island.

Before the arrival of Mr. Monroe in Paris, Mr. Livingston had opened negotiations for the purchase of the Island of Orleans and West Florida (believing the Floridas had been included in the treaty of San Ildefonso). On April 11, 1803, Napoleon placed the entire matter in the hands of the Marquis de Marbois, minister of the French treasury. The same day Talleyrand startled Mr. Livingston by asking if the United States would not like to purchase the entire Province of Louisiana. Livingston replied in the negative, but Talleyrand insisted that the province would be worthless to France without the city and island and asked Livingston to make an offer for the whole of Louisiana. The next day Mr. Monroe arrived. That evening the two American envoys spent several hours in consultation, with the result that Mr. Livingston was selected to conduct any further negotiations.

It may be well to note, in this connection, that the ultimate success of Livingston and Monroe was no doubt furthered by a letter written some months before by Pichon, the French minister to the United States, to Talleyrand. Under date of April 18, 1802, President Jefferson wrote a long letter to Mr. Livingston, advising him of the situation in America, and concluded this letter by saying: "The day France takes possession of New Orleans fixes the sentence which is to restrain her forever within her low water mark. It seals the union of two nations who in conjunction can maintain exclusive control of the ocean. From that moment we must marry ourselves to the British fleet and nation. The first cannon which shall be fired in Europe will be the signal for tearing up any settlement she may have made, and for holding the two continents of America in sequestration for the common purpose of the united British and American nations."

Whether Pichon knew anything of the contents of this letter is not certain, but he wrote to Talleyrand that the people of the United States were thoroughly aroused over the suspension of the right of deposit at New Orleans, and that the administration might be forced by public opinion into an alliance with Great Britain. War had just been renewed between France and England and Napoleon saw it would be a difficult matter to hold Louisiana if an alliance should be made between Great Britain and the United States.

The Marquis de Marbois was averse to entertaining any proposition for the purchase of the Island of Orleans, but offered Livingston and Monroe the entire province for 125,000,000 francs (\$25,000,000) though it was afterward learned that Napoleon had directed him to accept 50,000,000 francs, provided a better price could not be obtained. After several days of negotiation the price finally agreed upon was 80,000,000 francs, three-fourths of which were to go directly to the French treasury and the remainder was to be used in settling claims of American citizens against the French Government. The next step was to embody these terms in a formal treaty. As this treaty gave to the United States a territory of nearly nine hundred thousand square miles, including the present State of Iowa, it is here given in full. It is known as the



## TREATY OF PARIS.

“The President of the United States of America and the First Consul of the French Republic, in the name of the French people, desiring to remove all sources of misunderstanding relative to objects of discussion mentioned in the second and fifth articles of the convention of the 8th Vendemiaire, an 9 (30 September, 1800), relative to the rights claimed by the United States, in virtue of the treaty concluded at Madrid, the 27th of October, 1795, between his Catholic Majesty and the said United States, and willing to strengthen the union and friendship which at the time of said convention was happily re-established between the two nations, have respectfully named their plenipotentiaries, to wit: The President of the United States of America, by and with the advice of the senate of said states, Robert R. Livingston, minister plenipotentiary of the United States, and James Monroe, minister plenipotentiary and envoy extraordinary of said states, near the Government of the French Republic; and the First Consul, in the name of the French people, the French citizen, Barbe Marbois, minister of the public treasury, who after having exchanged their full powers, have agreed to the following articles:

“Article I—Whereas, by the article the third of the treaty concluded at St. Ildefonso, the 9th Vendemiaire an 9 (October 1, 1800), between the First Consul of the French Republic and His Catholic Majesty, it was agreed as follows: ‘His Catholic Majesty promises and engages on his part to retrocede to the French Republic, six months after the full and entire execution of the conditions and stipulations herein relative to his royal highness, the Duke of Parma, the colony or province of Louisiana, with the same extent that it now has in the hands of Spain, and that it had when France possessed it; and such as it should be after the treaties subsequently entered into between Spain and other states,’ and

“Whereas, in pursuance of the treaty, particularly of the third article, the French Republic has an incontestible title to the domain and possession of said territory; the First Consul of the French Republic, desiring to give to the United States a strong proof of his friendship, doth hereby cede to the United States, in the name of the French Republic, in

full sovereignty, the said territory, with all its rights and appurtenances, as fully and in the same manner as they have been acquired by the French Republic in virtue of the above mentioned treaty concluded with his Catholic Majesty.

“Article II—In the cession made by the preceding article, are included the adjacent islands belonging to Louisiana, all public lots and squares, vacant lands, and all public buildings, fortifications, barracks and other edifices which are not private property. The archives, papers and documents relative to the domain and sovereignty of Louisiana and its dependencies, will be left in the possession of the commissioners of the United States, and copies will be afterward given in due form to the magistrates and municipal officers of such of the said papers and documents as may be necessary to them.

“Article III—The inhabitants of the ceded territory shall be incorporated into the Union of the United States and admitted as soon as possible, according to the principles of the Federal Constitution, to the enjoyment of all the rights, advantages and immunities of citizens of the United States; and in the meantime they shall be maintained and protected in the free enjoyment of their liberty, property and the religion which they profess.

“Article IV—There shall be sent by the Government of France a commissary to Louisiana, to the end that he do every act necessary, as well to receive from the officers of his Catholic Majesty the said country and its dependencies in the name of the French Republic, if it has not already been done, as to transmit it in the name of the French Republic to the commissary or agent of the United States.

“Article V—Immediately after the ratification of the present treaty by the President of the United States, and in case that of the First Consul shall have been previously obtained, the commissary of the French Republic shall remit all the military posts of New Orleans and other posts of the ceded territory, to the commissary or commissaries named by the President of the United States to take possession; the troops, whether of France or Spain, who may be there, shall cease to occupy any military post from the time of taking possession, and shall be embarked as soon as possible, in the course of three months after the ratification of this treaty.



“Article VI—The United States promises to execute such treaties and articles as may have been agreed between Spain and the tribes and nations of Indians, until by mutual consent of the United States and the said tribes or nations, other suitable articles shall have been agreed upon.

“Article VII—As it is reciprocally advantageous to the commerce of France and the United States to encourage the communication of both nations, for a limited time, in the country ceded by the present treaty, until general arrangements relative to the commerce of both nations may be agreed upon, it has been agreed between the contracting parties, that the French ships coming directly from France or any of her colonies, loaded only with the produce of France or her said colonies, and the ships of Spain coming directly from Spain or any of her colonies, loaded only with the produce or manufactures of Spain or her colonies, shall be admitted during the space of twelve years in the ports of New Orleans, and all other ports of entry within the ceded territory, in the same manner as the ships of the United States coming directly from France or Spain, or any of their colonies, without being subject to any other or greater duty on merchandise, or other or greater tonnage than those paid by the citizens of the United States.

“During the space of time above mentioned, no other nation shall have a right to the same privileges in the ports of the ceded territory; the twelve years shall commence three months after the exchange of ratifications, if it shall take place in France, or three months after it shall have been notified at Paris to the French Government, if it shall take place in the United States; it is, however, well understood, that the object of this article is to favor the manufactures, commerce, freight and navigation of France and Spain, so far as relates to the importations that the French and Spanish shall make into the ports of the United States, without in any sort affecting the regulations that the United States may make concerning the exportation of the produce and merchandise of the United States, or any right they may have to make such regulations.

“Article VIII—In future, and forever after the expiration of the twelve years, the ships of France shall be treated

upon the footing of the most favored nations in the ports above mentioned.

“Article IX—The particular convention signed this day by the respective ministers, having for its objects to provide for the payment of debts due to the citizens of the United States by the French Republic prior to the 30th day of September, 1800 (8th Vendemaire, 9) is approved and to have its execution in the same manner as if it had been inserted in the present treaty, and it shall be ratified in the same form and at the same time, so that one shall not be ratified distinct from the other.

“Another particular convention signed at the same time as the present treaty, relative to a definite rule between the contract-parties, is in like manner approved and will be ratified in the same form and at the same time, and jointly.

“Article X—The present treaty shall be ratified in good and due form, and the ratification shall be exchanged in the space of six months after the date of the signatures of the ministers plenipotentiary, or sooner if possible. In faith whereof, the respective plenipotentiaries have signed these articles in the French and English languages, declaring, nevertheless, that the present treaty was originally agreed to in the French language; and have thereunto set their seals.

“Done at Paris, the tenth day of Floreal, in the eleventh year of the French Republic, and the 30th of April, 1803.

“ROBERT R. LIVINGSTON (L. S.)

“JAMES MONROE (L. S.)

“BARBE MARBOIS (L. S.)”

From the vast territory acquired by this treaty have been carved the states of Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Kansas, Nebraska, Iowa, Minnesota, North and South Dakota, nearly all of Montana, three-fourths of Wyoming and Oklahoma, and about one-third of Colorado. The original cost to the United States was approximately three cents per acre, but McMaster says: “Up to June, 1880, the total cost of Louisiana was \$27,267,621.” In the purchase of the entire province, Livingston and Monroe exceeded their authority and Jefferson’s administration was criticized as “extravagant” by the Federalists, who declared the region purchased was “nothing but a desert and unfit for human habitation.” Yet



in 1924 the income of the State of Iowa alone—that is the value of crops and products for the year—was \$1,876,000,000 or more than sixty-eight times the cost as given by McMaster.

The treaty was ratified by the United States Senate on October 20, 1803. President Jefferson then appointed William C. C. Claiborne, governor of Mississippi, and Gen. James Wilkinson commissioners to receive the province from Pierre Laussat, the French commissary. The transfer was made on December 20, 1803, when the Stars and Stripes were raised at New Orleans in token of the extension of the United States domain to the summit of the Rocky Mountains.

#### IOWA UNDER VARIOUS JURISDICTIONS.

On March 26, 1804, President Jefferson approved an act of Congress dividing Louisiana on the thirty-third parallel of north latitude. The act provided that from and after October 1, 1804, all south of that parallel should be known as the Territory of Orleans, and that part north of the said parallel as the District of Louisiana, which was attached to the Territory of Indiana, of which Gen. William H. Harrison was then governor. Accordingly, on October 1, 1804, General Harrison made formal entry into St. Louis and assumed his duties as governor of the District of Louisiana.

Indiana was a free territory and the slaveholders objected to this arrangement. The result was that on July 4, 1805, the District of Louisiana was made the Territory of Louisiana and Gen. James Wilkinson was appointed governor thereof. No further change was made until 1812, when the Territory of Orleans was admitted to the Union as the State of Louisiana and the name of the upper district was altered to the Territory of Missouri. Iowa was then included in the territory of Missouri until March, 1821, when Missouri was admitted to statehood with its northern boundary as it is at present.

From 1821 to 1834 Iowa was a sort of "No Man's Land." With the exception of a few trading posts of the American Fur Company, the only inhabitants were the Indian tribes, numbering about ten thousand. This period may be called the darkest in the history of the state. Without the protection of the laws, the trading posts were abandoned, the In-

dians grew restless, and this unrest culminated in what is known as the Black Hawk war of 1832. On September 21, 1832, while Black Hawk and his two sons were held as prisoners in Fortress Monroe, a treaty was concluded with the Sac and Fox tribes, by which the United States acquired about six million acres of lands claimed by those Indians in Eastern Iowa. As this land was really taken as an indemnity for the expenses of the Black Hawk war, the tract was known as the "Black Hawk Purchase." It was the first of the Indian lands in Iowa acquired by the United States for white occupation. (For a further account of this treaty see Chapter IV).

The Black Hawk Purchase was opened to settlers on June 1, 1833. Says Doctor Salter: "There were some instances of strife and contention among the adventurers for town sites, mill sites, belts of timber and the best lands, but good feeling generally prevailed and rules and regulations as to claims were agreed upon in the interest of fair dealing and mutual protection."

By the close of the year 1833 there were several hundred families living upon the Black Hawk Purchase. In the absence of any established government the people took the law into their own hands and administered justice as they saw fit. An instance of this is seen in the trial and execution of Patrick O'Connor for the murder of George O'Keefe at Dubuque. The authorities of Missouri and Michigan both disclaimed jurisdiction, whereupon a citizens' court was organized. A jury was impaneled and the proceedings were conducted with all the dignity and solemnity of a regular court. The murder was committed on May 19, 1834, O'Connor was found guilty and the execution took place on the 20th of June.

This incident probably stirred the Federal authorities to action, for on June 28, 1834, President Jackson approved the act attaching Iowa to the Territory of Michigan, which then included all the territory between Lake Huron and the Missouri River. This attachment lasted less than two years, however, for the boundaries of Michigan were restricted, preparatory to admission into the Union as a state, and on April 20, 1836, the President approved the act creating the Territory of Wisconsin, to take effect on the 4th of July following. Gen. Henry Dodge was appointed governor of the



new territory, which extended from Lake Michigan on the east to the Missouri and White Earth rivers on the west. On October 1, 1836, pursuant to Governor Dodge's proclamation, the first election ever held in Iowa was held for the purpose of electing members of the Wisconsin Territorial Legislature.

#### TERRITORY OF IOWA.

Early in the fall of 1837 the question of dividing Wisconsin and erecting a new territory west of the Mississippi became one of great interest to the people of Iowa. The sentiment in favor of the movement found definite expression in a convention held at Burlington on November 6, 1837, which adopted a memorial to Congress asking that body to erect a new territory west of the Mississippi. In response to this expression of popular sentiment, Congress passed an act providing for the establishment of the Territory of Iowa, to include "all that part of the Territory of Wisconsin which lies west of the Mississippi River and west of a line drawn due north from the headwaters or sources of the Mississippi to the northern boundary of the territory of the United States."

The act was approved by President Van Buren on June 12, 1838, and became effective on the third of the following month. The President appointed Robert Lucas, of Ohio, as the first territorial governor; William B. Conway, of Pennsylvania, secretary; Charles Mason, of Burlington, chief justice; Thomas S. Wilson, of Dubuque, and Joseph Williams, of Pennsylvania, associate judges. These officials assumed their respective duties on July 3, 1838, and the people of Iowa now, for the first time, had a government which they could rightfully call their own.

#### THE FIGHT FOR ADMISSION.

If one hundred well informed citizens of Iowa were asked when their state was admitted, the chances are that ninety-nine would reply in December, 1846. While this answer would be correct, it is equally correct that a state bearing the name of Iowa was admitted more than eighteen months before that date. As early as 1840 Governor Lucas advocated

that a state government be formed, but the proposition was defeated at the polls. Two years later, upon the recommendation of Governor Chambers, the question was submitted to the voters and was again defeated, the people seeming reluctant to accept the responsibilities and expense of a state government.

On February 12, 1844, the Iowa Legislature passed an act providing for another expression of popular opinion and at the township elections the vote in favor of statehood was nearly twice as great as that of the opposition. At the August election seventy-five delegates to a constitutional convention were chosen. The convention met at Iowa City on October 7, 1844, and finished its work on the first day of November. The constitution was forwarded to Congress and C. A. Dodge, Iowa's territorial delegate, was requested to urge its immediate adoption. But Congress decided that the boundaries, as defined by the constitution, included too much territory. On March 3, 1845, President Tyler approved an act admitting a state called Iowa, with the boundaries as follows:

“Beginning at the mouth of the Des Moines River, thence by the middle channel of the Mississippi to a parallel of latitude passing through the mouth of the Mankato or Blue Earth River; thence west along said parallel of latitude to a point where it is intersected by the meridian line seventeen degrees thirty minutes west of the meridian of Washington City; thence due south to the northern boundary line of the State of Missouri; thence eastward following that boundary to a point at which the same intersects the Des Moines River; thence by the middle channel of that river to the place of beginning.”

Had these boundaries been accepted, Iowa would have included the eleven southeastern counties of Minnesota, but the thirty-one counties in the western part of the present State of Iowa would have been left out. The state would have been about one hundred and eighty miles wide from east to west, and about two hundred and fifty miles long from north to south. Delegate Dodge advised the people to accept the boundaries as the best that could be obtained and many Iowans were in favor of this course. But there were three men



who believed that the Missouri River should be the natural western boundary of the state and decided to wage war upon the proposed constitution. These men were: Enoch W. Eastman, a prominent lawyer of Eldora; Frederick D. Mills, of Lee County; and Theodore S. Parvin, who had come to Iowa in 1838 as Governor Lucas' private secretary.

Against great odds these three men began a campaign against the ratification of the constitution. A little later they were joined by Shepherd Lefler, who had been president of the constitutional convention of 1844, and James W. Woods, one of Burlington's leading attorneys. It was an uphill fight against a strong sentiment in favor of admission at any cost, but in the end they won. When submitted to the voters on August 4, 1845, the constitution was rejected by a majority of 996 votes.

A second constitutional convention assembled at Iowa City on May 4, 1846, and remained in session for two weeks. The result of its labors was submitted to the people on August 3, 1846, and was ratified by a vote of 9,492 to 9,036. The new constitution, which defined the boundaries of the state as they are at present, was then sent to Washington, where Iowa found a champion in Stephen A. Douglas, then a member of Congress from Illinois. The bill for admission passed both houses and was signed by President Polk on December 28, 1849. Since that date Iowa has been one of the sovereign states of the American Union.

#### ORGANIZATION OF COUNTIES.

The first counties in what is now the State of Iowa were created in September, 1834, by the Legislative Assembly of the Territory of Michigan. The act was as follows:

"Section 1. Be it enacted by the Legislative Council of the Territory of Michigan, That all that district or country which was attached to the territory of the United States west of the Mississippi River and north of the State of Missouri, to the Territory of Michigan, and to which the Indian title has been extinguished, which is north of a line to be drawn due west from the lower end of Rock Island to the Missouri River, shall constitute a county and be called Dubuque; said county

shall constitute a township which shall be called Julien, and the seat of justice shall be at the Village of Dubuque.

“Section 2. All that part of the district aforesaid which was attached to the Territory of Michigan situated south of said line to be drawn due west from the lower end of Rock Island, shall constitute a county and be called Demoine, said county shall constitute a township and be called Flint Hill; and the seat of justice shall be at such place as shall be designated by the judge of the county court of said county.”

Although the act provided that the line from the lower end of Rock Island should be extended to the Missouri River, the Indian title had been extinguished only to the tract known as the Black Hawk Purchase, which extended only fifty miles from the Mississippi. Twenty-two counties were created west of the Mississippi by the Wisconsin Legislature, twenty-three others were added when Iowa Territory was created, but the western part of the state remained unorganized until the act of January 15, 1851, which erected fifty new counties in that unorganized territory. The twenty counties embraced in this history were among the fifty then established. (See chapters on County History.)



## CHAPTER III.

### EARLY EXPLORATIONS.

THE LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION IN IOWA—DEATH OF SERGEANT FLOYD—FIRST RECORD OF A WHITE MAN'S BURIAL IN IOWA—PIKE'S EXPEDITION—THE FUR TRADERS—ANOTHER TRIBUTE TO SERGEANT FLOYD—THE FIRST FORT MADISON—KEARNY'S EXPEDITION FROM THE MISSOURI TO THE MISSISSIPPI—CATLIN AND MAXIMILIAN AT FLOYD'S GRAVE—THE ALLEN-SCHOOLCRAFT EXPEDITION—KEARNY BUILDS FIRST FORT DES MOINES—TROOPERS FIGHT SIOUX IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA—LEA'S "NOTES ON WISCONSIN TERRITORY"—CAPTAIN ALLEN ENCIRCLES NORTHWESTERN IOWA—ESTABLISHES FINAL FORT DES MOINES—THE CAPTAIN STARTS ON HIS EXPEDITION—TRAVELS UP THE DES MOINES INTO THE LAKE COUNTRY—FLOUNDERS AMONG "INTERMINABLE LAKES"—SEEKS HEADWATERS OF THE DES MOINES AND MINNESOTA—SIOUX FALLS AND THE SIOUX QUARTZITE—DOWN THE VALLEY OF THE BIG SIOUX—WHERE THE BIX SIOUX AND THE MISSOURI JOIN—THE SHORT CUT TO FORT DES MOINES.

Soon after the purchase of Louisiana from France in 1803, President Jefferson began making preparations to explore the territory thus acquired by the United States. He announced his intention to send an expedition up the Missouri River to discover its sources and to ascertain whether a water route to the Pacific coast was practicable. It was late in the year 1803 before the treaty of Paris was ratified, however, and the expedition was postponed until the following spring. Jefferson selected as leaders of the expedition Captains Meriwether Lewis and William Clark of the regular army. Both were natives of Virginia and the latter was a brother of Gen. George Rogers Clark.

#### THE LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION IN IOWA.

On May 14, 1804, Lewis and Clark left the mouth of the Missouri River and began the ascent of that stream. Their

company consisted of fourteen regular soldiers, nine young men from Kentucky, two French voyageurs or boatmen, an Indian interpreter, a hunter and a negro servant belonging to Captain Clark. Their main vessel was a keelboat fifty-five feet long, with twenty-two oars and drawing three feet of water. It was provided with a large square sail, to be used when the wind was favorable, and had a cabin, in which were kept the most valuable articles, such as the scientific instruments. They also had two pirogues, fitted with six and seven oars, respectively. Two horses were led along the bank, to be used in hunting game.

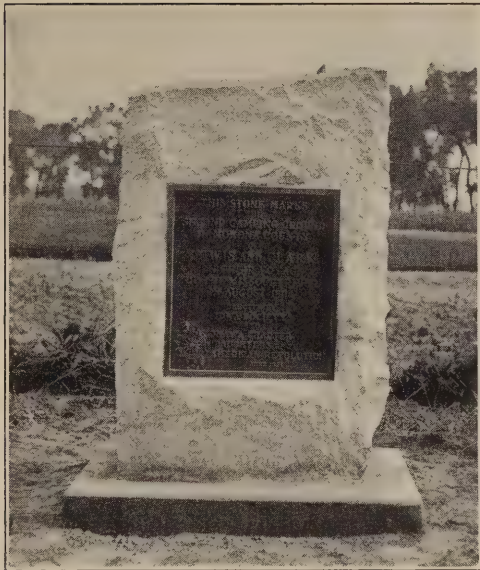
Between July 18 and August 22, 1804, the expedition encamped eleven times in what is now the State of Iowa. On the 22nd of July Lewis and Clark reached a "high and shaded situation" on the east side of the river, where they established a camp, "intending to make the requisite observations, and to send for the neighboring tribes for the purpose of making known to them the recent change in government and the wish of the United States to cultivate their friendship." It is generally believed that the site of this camp was near the present line between Mills and Pottawattamie counties. Two of the eleven camping places in Iowa were in what is now Monona County. At Onawa a monument has been erected, bearing a bronze tablet with the following inscription:

This Stone Marks  
the  
Second Camping Ground  
in Monona County  
of  
Lewis and Clark  
in their voyage  
up the Missouri River  
in August, 1804.  
Erected by  
Iowa Society  
and  
Onawa Chapter  
Daughters of the  
American Revolution





FLOYD MONUMENT



MONUMENT TO MARK THE CAMPING  
SITE OF THE LEWIS AND CLARK  
EXPEDITION, ONAWA





## DEATH OF SERGEANT FLOYD.

About the middle of August Sergt. Charles Floyd, a member of the company, became seriously ill. The following account of his death is taken literally from the journal of the expedition:

"20 Aug Monday 1804—We set out under a gentle breeze from the S. E. and proceeded verry well Sergt Floyd bad as he can be no pulse & nothing will Stay a moment on his Stomach or bowels. Passed two islands on the S. S. (south side) and at the first Bluff on the S. S. Serj. Floyd Died with a great deal of Composure, before his death he Said to me "I am going away" I want you to write me a letter." We buried him on the top of the bluff  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile below a Small river to which we Gave his name, he was buried with the Honors of War much lamented, a Seeder (cedar) post with the (1) Name Sergt. C. Floyd died here 20th of August 1804 was fixed at the head of his grave. This man at all times gave us proofs of his firmness and Determined resolution to doe Service to his Countrey and honor to himself after paying all honor to our Decesed brother then we camped in the Mouth of floyds River about 300 yds. wide, a butifull evening."

## FIRST RECORD OF WHITE MAN'S BURIAL IN IOWA.

This is the first record of a white man's remains being buried on Iowa soil. Brigham's History of Iowa (p. 54) says: "On their return, two years later, the explorers visited Floyd's Bluff, to find the grave had been disturbed and the body left half exposed. After re-burying the remains the explorers resumed their long voyage back to civilization." During the flood in 1857, not long after the first white settlements were made in the vicinity of the bluff, the Missouri River washed away a portion of the bluff, exposing part of the remains. The pioneers gathered and made a new grave farther from the river. A stately monument was afterward erected to mark the last resting place of this gallant soldier.

Lewis and Clark spent the winter of 1804-05 among the Mandan Indians, near the present City of Bismarck, North Dakota. In 1905 they reached the sources of the Missouri River, crossed the divide and descended the Columbia River

to the Pacific Ocean. On their return trip in 1806 they occupied several of their old camping sites, including Floyd's Bluff and the one near the line between Mills and Pottawattamie counties. They arrived at St. Louis in September, 1806, and their report gave to the country the first authentic information of the country and the Indian tribes living along the Missouri River.

#### PIKE'S EXPEDITION.

On August 9, 1805, Lieut. Zebulon M. Pike, then twenty-six years of age, left St. Louis with a sergeant, two corporals and seventeen privates, to explore the upper Mississippi River. He was instructed to hold councils with the Indian tribes, recommend sites for military posts, and report as to the value of the Government's new possession. In the latter part of August he held a council at a Sac village near the present village of Montrose, in Lee County, Iowa. On that occasion Pike addressed the assembled chiefs as follows:

"Your great father, the President of the United States, in his desire to become better acquainted with the conditions and wants of the different nations of red people in our newly acquired territory of Louisiana, has ordered the general to send a number of warriors in various directions to take our red brothers by the hand and make such inquiries as will give your great father the information required."

No attempt was made to conclude a treaty, but at the close of the council Pike distributed presents among the Indians. Lieutenant Pike seems to have been the first American with whom Chief Black Hawk came in close contact. Some years later the old chief gave the following account of Pike's visit to the Sac and Fox village on the Rock River, in Illinois:

"A boat came up the river with a young chief and a small party of soldiers. We heard of them soon after they passed Salt River. Some of our young braves watched them every day, to see what sort of people were on board. The boat at last arrived at Rock River and the young chief came on shore with his interpreter, made a speech and gave us some presents. We in turn gave them meat and such other provisions as we could spare. We were well pleased with the



young chief. He gave us good advice and said our American father would treat us well."

On August 23d Pike landed at a place which he describes as being "on a hill about forty miles above the River de Moyne rapids, on the west side of the river, in latitude 40° 21' north. The channel of the river runs on that shore. The hill in front is about sixty feet perpendicular, and nearly level at the top. About 400 yards in the rear is a small prairie, fit for gardening, and immediately under the hill is a limestone spring, sufficient for the consumption of a whole regiment."

From Pike's description and the location upon his map, this site is generally believed to be that where the City of Burlington now stands, known among the early voyagers on the Mississippi as "Flint Hills."

Passing on up the river from Flint Hills, Pike visited the settlement of Julien Dubuque, where he was "saluted with a field piece and with other marks of attention." This settlement was where the City of Dubuque now stands and was the first to be established on Iowa soil. It was founded by Julien Dubuque, a French-Canadian, who at a council held at Prairie du Chien on September 22, 1788, obtained from the Indians a grant "to work at the mine near Kettle Chief's village as long as he shall please. . . . Moreover, that they shall sell or abandon to him all the coast and the contents of the mine discovered by the wife of Peosta," etc.

Subsequently Baron Carondelet, Spanish governor of Louisiana, granted to Dubuque a tract of land "seven leagues up and down along the west bank of the Mississippi and extending three leagues into the interior." Here Dubuque worked the "Mines of Spain" until his death on March 24, 1810. On October 31, 1897, a monument to his memory was dedicated by the Dubuque County Early Settlers Association.

Another point selected by Pike for a military post was the bluff where the City of McGregor now stands (Clayton County, Northeastern Iowa), which he describes in his report as "a commanding spot, level on the top, a spring in the rear, most suitable for a military post." This height was known for many years as "Pike's Hill." Near the northeast corner of the present State of Iowa the young explorer

was met by the Sioux chief Wabasha and passed into what is now the State of Minnesota. In 1806 he returned to St. Louis and made a full report of his expedition, in which he made one serious error when he said: "It is my best judgment that the prairies between the Mississippi and Missouri rivers are incapable of cultivation and should be left to the wandering savages."

#### THE FUR TRADERS.

The expedition of Lewis and Clark up the Missouri, and that of Pike up the Mississippi, were the first official explorations made by authority of the United States after the Louisiana Purchase. These expeditions touched only the western and eastern borders of the Iowa, respectively, and the reports of the explorers gave no definite information regarding the interior of the state. However, white men had penetrated portions of Iowa long before the region became a part of the United States public domain. Early adventurers in America discovered that the country north of the thirty-fifth parallel of latitude abounded in fur-bearing animals, whose skins would bring almost fabulous prices in European cities. This discovery brought into the field the trader, who exchanged with the Indians cheap trinkets and bright colored cloth for their valuable peltries. In the early years of the seventeenth century the fur traders had a well defined trail from the vicinity of Spirit Lake to the Mississippi River a few miles below the present City of McGregor.

In this trade the French were the pioneers, but in 1667 some London merchants organized the Hudson's Bay Company, which was chartered by the British crown on May 2, 1670. In a short time its traders and trappers passed freely among the Indian tribes of the interior, ignoring French protests. This trespass upon territory claimed by the French was one of the principal causes of the French and Indian war nearly a century later. That war was ended in 1763 and the same year a fur company was organized in New Orleans for the purpose of trading with the Indian tribes living along the upper Mississippi and Missouri rivers. In this company Auguste and Pierre Chouteau were the most prominent fig-

ures. The following year Pierre Laclède founded the City of St. Louis, which was made the headquarters of the company, its representatives operating in what are now the states of Iowa, Nebraska, Kansas and Missouri, with occasional excursions into Minnesota, South Dakota, Illinois and Wisconsin.

There is a tradition that in Laclède's company was a man named Bowyer, who led a little band of trappers up the Missouri River and gave names to some of the streams flowing into it. This tradition is partially substantiated by a French writer in his "Travels in Louisiana," published in 1801, three years before Lewis and Clark began their historic voyage up the Missouri. He mentions by name the "Bowyer" and the "Soldier" rivers as emptying into the Missouri from the east. The journal of the Lewis and Clark expedition says they encamped for one night "at the mouth of Boyer's River," indicating that the stream had previously been so named.

Two years after Laclède commenced his settlement at St. Louis a number of independent English trappers and traders came into the upper Mississippi Valley and probably traded with some of the Iowa Indians. At first they operated without the sanction of the British colonial authorities and did not always strictly observe the laws in their dealings with the natives. To overcome this condition of affairs, give them greater prestige with the Indians, and at the same time render them amenable to law, they organized themselves into the Northwest Fur Company, which was a formidable competitor of the Chouteau Company for the Indian trade of the great Northwest until the beginning of the Revolutionary war.

The first recorded voyage across interior Iowa preceded the expeditions of Lewis and Clark and Pike by several years. It was made by Jean Baptiste-Faribault, a trader and adventurer in the employ of the Northwest Fur Company, presumably in the spring of 1800. He carried on a successful trade with the Sioux and, having collected a stock of furs, wended his way to the mouth of the Des Moines River, where he delivered them to an agent of the company. During the remaining three or four years' service with the company, Faribault is reported to have made annual tours from the sources to the mouth of the Des Moines. For more than thirty years



thereafter no record survives to indicate that any white man traversed the entire territory now known as Iowa by means of its principal river. Various fur traders, however, continued to make the Des Moines their avenue of travel. Many of them made their homes near the mouth of the Des Moines, married Indian wives, and their children usually adopted the habits of their red mothers as they matured. These inter-marriages generally occurred between the white traders and trappers and the Sac and Fox Indians and led to the establishment of the Half Breed Tract between the Mississippi and Des Moines rivers—over 100,000 acres in what is now Lee County, Southeastern Iowa.

Although the travels of these half-savage white men are virtually unrecorded, and they were pure adventurers with no thought of serving the best interests of their race, they are given the credit of useful pathfinders for those who had such aims. Hiram M. Chittenden, that noted writer on pioneer western themes, puts the matter thus succinctly in his "American Fur Trade in the Far West": "But if the fur trade was lacking in events of deep national significance—the Astorian enterprise always excepted—it was not without its influence upon the course of empire in the West. It was the trader and trapper who first explored and established the routes of travel which are now, and always will be, the avenues of commerce in that region. They were the pathfinders of the West, and not those later official explorers whom posterity so recognizes. No feature of Western geography was ever discovered by Government explorers after 1840. Everything was already known and had been, for fully a decade. It is true that many features, like the Yellowstone wonderland, with which these restless rovers were familiar, were afterward forgotten, or were rediscovered in later years; but there has never been a time until very recently when the geography of the West was so thoroughly understood as it was by the trader and the trapper from 1830 to 1840."

The fur traders were not interested in observing and reporting the character of the country in which they operated. They were concerned solely with the profits to be derived

from their trapping and their trade with the red men. The posts they established were usually temporary and were abandoned when the trade grew unprofitable. They kept no record of the different sections they visited, yet it is known that they traded with the Indians on the upper Des Moines and trapped along the sources of the Little Sioux in what is now Dickinson County, and, in all likelihood, they visited other portions of Northwestern Iowa.

#### ANOTHER TRIBUTE TO SERGEANT FLOYD.

It is a matter of distinct record that representatives and employees of those two great rival concerns, the American Fur Company and the Missouri Fur Company, passed up the Missouri and probably stopped at its picturesque junction with the Big Sioux. In the spring of 1811, when the rivalry was at its height, two expeditions sent out by the two companies started for the upper Missouri fur country at nearly the same time. The Astorian company was led by one Wilson P. Hunt and he was accompanied by the English scientist, John Bradbury. The boatsmen of the Missouri company were directed by Manuel Lisa, its founder and inspiration. Henry M. Brackenridge, a brilliant journalist and man of letters, was with Lisa and his men, and the grave of Sergeant Floyd, marked with a wooden cross, could be seen on the high bluff at the mouth of the little river which bore his name. The journalist, in fact, wrote as if he visited the historic spot, for he said: "The grave occupies a beautiful rising ground, now covered with grass and wild flowers. The pretty little river which bears his name is neatly fringed with willow and shrubbery. Involuntary tribute was paid to the spot by the feelings of even the most thoughtless as we passed by. It is several years since he was buried here; no one has disturbed the cross which marks the grave; even the Indians who pass, venerate the place and often leave a present or offering near it. Brave, adventurous youth! Thou art not forgotten—for although thy bones are deposited far from thy native home in the desert waste; yet the eternal silence of the plain shall mourn thee and memory will dwell upon thy grave."

## THE FIRST FORT MADISON.

When Lieutenant Pike was sent to the region of the upper Mississippi to explore the country, the military authorities instructed him to select a site for a fort somewhere between St. Louis and Prairie du Chien. In all this latitude of country, he selected "a site on a hill forty miles above the River De Moyné rapids on the west side of the river." Five years afterward, in 1808, the fort named in honor of President Madison was built; not, however, upon the site recommended by Lieutenant Pike, but at a location only nine miles above the rapids and on the lands belonging to the Sac and Fox. The City of Fort Madison, Lee County, now occupies its site. During the War of 1812, the fort was attacked three times by the Indians and finally burned and abandoned by the little garrison who narrowly escaped starvation and annihilation. This was the first fort built in Iowa. Fort Armstrong, at Rock Island, was not completed until four years after old Fort Madison had been deserted.

KEARNY'S EXPEDITION FROM THE MISSOURI TO THE  
MISSISSIPPI.

On Sunday, the 2nd of July, 1820, Capt. Stephen W. Kearny, afterward colonel of the First Regiment of Dragoons, with four other army officers, fifteen soldiers, four servants, an Indian guide with his wife and papoose, and eight mules and seven horses, were ferried from Council Bluff across the Missouri and the mouth of the Boyer and landed upon Iowa soil. They were dispatched as a Government expedition to discover a practicable route for the passage of United States troops between Camp Missouri and Camp Cold Water (later, called Fort St. Anthony and Fort Snelling) on the St. Peter or Minnesota River. After traveling northward about thirty miles they celebrated the Fourth of July "to the extent of our means; an extra gill of whiskey was issued to each man, and we made our dinner on pork and biscuit and drank to the memory of our forefathers in a mint julup (sic)." Following the course of the Boyer and the Little Sioux rivers, then east and northeast to Lake Pepin, and then northwest, the party arrived at the northern post



where, Captain Kearny declared, the officers "were a little astonished at the sight of us, we having been the first whites that ever crossed at such a distance from the Missouri to the Mississippi River." For various reasons, Captain Kearny reported that this circuitous route was impracticable and almost impassable throughout the entire year for more than very small military forces, and troops seem never again to have traversed this particular region.

#### CATLIN AND MAXIMILIAN AT FLOYD'S GRAVE.

In 1822, the Astors of New York established a branch of the American Fur Company at St. Louis, with the definite design of competing with the western merchants. Their ventures were so successful that they decided to replace their cumbersome and slow keel boats by steamboats. In 1831 the pioneer of the new craft, the "Yellowstone," made her maiden trip to the upper Missouri, and in the following year George Catlin, the noted Indian painter, in his explorations for savage subjects for his brush and pen, was one of its passengers. In one of his letters he thus describes his visit to Floyd's grave: "I landed my canoe in front of this grass-covered mound, and all hands being fatigued, we encamped a couple of days at its base. I several days ascended it and sat upon his grave, overgrown with grass and the most delicate wild flowers; where I sat and contemplated the solitude and stillness of this tenanted mound, and beheld from its top the windings infinite of the Missouri and its thousand hills and domes of green vanishing into blue in the distance."

On the third trip of the "Yellowstone," in 1833, Maximilian, Prince of Wied, accompanied the fur traders in the interests of science. He, too, in his book of travels, makes this mention of Floyd's grave: "A short stick marks the place where he is laid, and has often been renewed by travelers when the fires in the prairie have destroyed it."

#### THE ALLEN-SCHOOLCRAFT EXPEDITION.

Lieut. and Capt. James Allen, of the First Regiment of Dragoons, United States Army, comes in for a large share of the credit of the explorations which were slowly approaching

the territory of what is now Northwestern Iowa up the Des Moines and Little Sioux rivers. He was a West Point graduate and member of a class which numbered Robert E. Lee and Joseph E. Johnston. He was at once assigned to duty on the western frontier and while stationed at Sault Ste. Marie, Michigan Territory, was detailed to accompany Henry R. Schoolcraft, with a small escort, to make an expedition to the Indians of the Northwest. In June-August, 1832, they traveled nearly 3,000 miles in the upper country, but the fame of this expedition rests in the fact that the army officer and the scholar-explorer first gave to the world an intimate knowledge of the region around and beyond the headwaters of the Mississippi.

#### KEARNY BUILDS FIRST FORT DES MOINES.

Gradually, however, the importance of the Des Moines River as the great interior waterway between the Mississippi and the Missouri became pronounced in the consciousness of the military authorities of the country, and they harked back to the suggestion of Lieutenant Pike made thirty years before. By order of the War Department, Lieut. Col. S. W. Kearny was directed, in May, 1834, to establish a post near the mouth of the Des Moines River. The result was the establishment of the first Fort Des Moines in what is now Lee County. In June of the following year, under orders, he moved up the river to the Raccoon Fork, with parts of three companies to select a site for another military post in that locality. One of the commands was under Capt. Nathan Boone, a son of Daniel Boone, and another under Lieut. Albert M. Lea, the latter an accomplished draughtsman and hydraulic engineer. Lieut. H. S. Tanner, who figures in the narrative to a less extent than the other two, was in command of the third detachment. The Dragoons, numbering about 170 officers and men, were well mounted. Provisions were conveyed in five commissary wagons each drawn by two spans of mules. Beef was provided for the journey in the form of a herd of cattle. But there was such an abundance of game in the country through which they passed that the men had little need of the domestic animals.

## TROOPERS FIGHT SIOUX IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

The troopers followed a dividing ridge between the Skunk and Des Moines rivers, and their line of march led through that section of Iowa now embraced by the counties of Lee, Henry, Jefferson, Keokuk, Mahaska, Jasper and Polk. They camped at the mouth of the Raccoon River and spent some time in exploring the country. The expedition then turned northwestward until they reached the mouth of a beautiful river which entered the Des Moines from the east. It was called Boone after the captain who was in active command of the explorers. A northeastwardly course was then taken along the divide between the Boone and the Iowa rivers, when the Dragoons again turned westward through what are now Hamilton, Wright, Hancock, Cerro Gordo, Worth and other counties of Northern Iowa, and then north into what is now Southern Minnesota. A hat-shaped lake to which they gave the name Chapeau was afterward called Lake Albert Lea, after the talented young lieutenant of the expedition.

Until the 30th of June, 1835, Kearny's men had seen few Indians, but when in camp near the headwaters of the East Fork of the Des Moines River, probably in the eastern part of what is now Emmet County, the expedition was suddenly attacked by a large party of Sioux warriors. Being in the heart of the Sioux country, that fierce tribe determined to resist a march through their possessions. Captain Boone made a successful defense until darkness put an end to the battle. Knowing that his little command was far beyond the reach of reinforcements, he ordered a retreat, and during the night placed many miles between his men and the enemy.

By the 8th of August, the expedition had returned to the Raccoon fork of the Des Moines River, where Colonel Kearny had established a camp, and afterward spent some time exploring the country north and west. From this camp, Lieutenant Lea was ordered to descend the Des Moines to its mouth to ascertain its flowage and resources. Accompanied by one private and an Indian guide, he descended the river in a hollowed cottonwood log and shortly after having completed his work resigned from the army. In the following



year, as the immediate result of his participation in this expedition, he published a notable little book in Philadelphia. It was entitled "Notes on Wisconsin Territory: The Iowa District or Black Hawk Purchase." The title is somewhat misleading, as the Iowa District was still a portion of Michigan Territory. Lieutenant Lea's book is interesting as a literary curiosity, although its text does not apply closely to Northwestern Iowa. It is claimed that his book was the first record to be found in which the name Iowa is applied to the section of the country which became the state thus designated; although it is of political record that in 1829 the Legislature of Michigan Territory erected the County of Iowa which substantially covered the present State of Wisconsin.

The direct results of the expedition of 1835, as to the advisability of establishing a military post on the upper Des Moines, was an adverse report to the War Department by Colonel Kearny. If such a post were still deemed necessary, as he evidently questioned, he would locate it a hundred miles farther up the river. But a few years afterward, Kearny's recommendations were forgotten.

#### CAPTAIN ALLEN ENCIRCLES NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

And there now comes upon the scene of action, all tending to stabilize the valley of the Des Plaines and make it safe for the settlement and development of the whites, the lively Lieutenant Allen, who, in 1832, had accompanied Schoolcraft through the Upper Mississippi country. In the meantime—from 1832 to 1842—he had served at Jefferson Barracks, near St. Louis, at Fort Dearborn, Chicago, and at Fort Leavenworth; had reached the grade of a captaincy and at the age of thirty-six was considered one of the best posted and most alert officers in the Indian country. Captain Allen is more intimately connected with the explorations of the Northwestern Iowa covered by this history than any of the army officers or scientists who preceded him.

In the Iowa Journal of History and Politics for January, 1913, is a compilation by Jacob Van der Zee, the well known historical scholar and author, and a reproduction of Captain Allen's Journal, originally published in the Congressional

Documents, both of which indicate the services rendered by Allen to the development of the Des Moines valley and a better acquaintance with the comparatively unknown region of what is now Northwestern Iowa. Of the officer to whom so much credit is due, Mr. Van der Zee says: "During the summer of 1842, Captain Allen received orders to march to Fort Atkinson, Territory of Iowa, with Company I of the Dragoons. Taking a direct route from Fort Leavenworth, crossing the Des Moines River above the Raccoon Fork, he arrived at his post among the Winnebago Indians on August 7, 1842. Soon afterward he proceeded to the Sac and Fox Agency, twenty miles due west of Fairfield (now Jefferson County, Southeastern Iowa). By permission of Maj. John F. A. Sanford, of the American Fur Company, Captain Allen quartered his dragoons in eight log cabins then abandoned for purposes of Indian trade, and also built stables for his horses and huts for two officers. This temporary post he designated Fort Sanford, but the Government retained the name of the agency.

#### CAPTAIN ALLEN ESTABLISHES FINAL FORT DES MOINES.

"On November the 12th, 1842, the commandant conducted a small force on an expedition to the mouth of the Raccoon River. There, at the confluence of the Raccoon and the Des Moines, he established a new military post, evacuating his camp at the Sac and Fox Agency on May 17, 1843. The troops at once set about constructing officers' quarters, barracks, stables and corrals, and also laid out gardens. Allen chose the none too euphonious name Fort Raccoon for this western post, but General Scott of the War Department preferred to call it Fort Des Moines.

"Although Captain Allen was kept busy protecting the Sacs and Foxes in their treaty rights by driving squatters back across the Indian border, he found time to make the exploring expedition of which he rendered the Journal. \* \* \* In the summer of 1845 he was ordered to join Captain Sumner of Fort Atkinson on a visit to the Sioux dwelling along the St. Peter's or Minnesota River.

"Upon Captain Allen's recommendation, Fort Des Moines continued to be occupied until the spring of 1846, when the

troops marched out to serve as a military escort for the remnant of the Sacs and Foxes who had not removed to Kansas with their tribe in October, 1845. The site of Allen's post was, within a short time, destined to become the homes of hundreds of ambitious pioneer families, the county seat of Polk County, and in 1857 the capital of the State of Iowa."

#### THE CAPTAIN STARTS ON HIS EXPEDITION.

Captain Allen's Journal, ordered printed by the United States House of Representatives, covered the period from August 11 to October 3, 1844. It was submitted directly to Col. S. W. Kearny, then commanding the Third Military Department of the United States, with headquarters at St. Louis. Captain Allen took with him on his expedition Company I, First Regiment of Dragoons, and at his return to Fort Des Moines had traveled 740 miles up the Des Moines River to its sources, passed through Southwestern Minnesota and over the Sioux River into the present South Dakota, re-crossed it and then skirted the western and southern counties included in this history. He and his dragoons had journeyed all around this territory, and thus early gave it historic significance. As was customary in such reports Captain Allen introduces his paper with a summary of his travels, but the vital interest of it consists in following the journey of his command, day by day, as Mr. Van der Zee's footnotes enable the reader to approximately follow the route in the light of the present.

#### TRAVELS UP THE DES MOINES INTO THE LAKE COUNTRY.

The first few miles of the march from Fort Des Moines followed the historic Oregon trail, but soon the expedition took the dividing ridge between the Beaver and Des Moines rivers. Travel was much impeded by the mud, as it had rained hard, and the ox team and the mules pulled the heavy wagons with difficulty. Within a week, although rain continued and the country was hard to travel through, Captain Allen and his men had passed through what are now Dallas and Boone counties and were camped in Northern Webster County. There they remained a short time upon the site of what was called the Delaware Battle Ground, where three



years before, a band of Delawares were killed to a man by Sioux warriors, who had protested against the former hunting on the Neutral Ground. Toward the last of August, the march had led through Humboldt and Palo Alto counties. The route left the main valley of the Des Moines and was directed up the West Fork, until by the 22d of August the soggy expedition had reached the border of the lake country in Palo Alto County. The entry of that day indicates Captain Allen's impression of Medium Lake: "It took all this day to make six miles through this soft prairie, flooded by the rain of yesterday and last night; encamped at sunset on a pretty little lake 4 miles long and 300 or 400 yards broad, having a rich looking little island near the center; there are many small groves of fine timber skirting this lake."

Then came the next day, August 23. "Laid still today," the Captain records, "and sent back to bring up ox-team that had been left the day before yesterday about 8 miles from here; it could not be moved for the floods of the slues; abundance of swan, geese and ducks on this lake and much sign of otter all around it; one of the men shot an elk, but did not get him; killed plenty of fowl but no fish; I believe the otter frightened the fish from the shores."

#### FLOUNDERS AMONG "INTERMINABLE" LAKES.

Captain Allen rescued his mired ox team and continued his march northwest by north and a few days afterward the men and animals were floundering around in the lake region of Emmet County. The commandant is excusable for this entry, though his experiences may have clouded his judgment as to the intrinsic value of the country: "We spent the whole of this day in fruitless search of a way to lead us through these interminable lakes; determined finally at night to cross a strait between two of them (thought to be Swan Lake), and with that object encamped on the south side of it, six miles north of encampment of last night. The grass of this country is tall and luxuriant, remarkably so for so high a latitude, but the whole country is good for nothing, except for the seclusion and safety it affords to the numerous water fowl that are hatched and grown in it." On the 28th

of August, Turtle Lake, the source of the East Fork of the Des Moines was reached. It is partly in Iowa and partly in Minnesota, and is described in the Journal as "a lake seven or ten miles long, of beautiful character, with bright pebbled shores and well-timbered borders."

#### SEEKS HEADWATERS OF THE DES MOINES AND MINNESOTA.

Captain Allen's expedition then spent nearly two weeks in Southwestern Minnesota endeavoring to locate the headwaters of the Des Moines and the Blue Earth rivers, the latter a tributary of the St. Peter's or Minnesota. In the light of our present geographical knowledge, he missed the sources of the Blue Earth, which are in Kossuth County, just east of the Northwestern Iowa of this work. What he considered the true source of the Des Moines in Minnesota (West Fork of the river) he named Lake of the Oaks, from the forests of immense white oak trees that border it and cover its peninsulas. Captain Allen reached it on September 6, 1844, and with his sextant (in which he says he had "not much confidence") computed its latitude to be  $43^{\circ} 57' 42''$ .

#### SIOUX FALLS AND THE SIOUX QUARTZITE.

After exploring that region for a couple of days, the expedition took a due west course for the Big Sioux River. Over the Big Prairie the men journeyed for thirty-eight miles, entering the borders of Buffalo Land and killing several of the animals before they crossed the stream. They went down that river about eighty-six miles. They came across several bands of Sioux, who stole some of their horses, killed more buffalo and an antelope. On September 13th they were at Sioux Falls, South Dakota, which is described as "a great and picturesque fall of the river." Its rock is spoken of as "massive quartz," and as "the first rock formation, or rock in place" which had been seen since leaving the St. Peter's River. "It crosses the river here," the Journal continues, "north and south, and is not seen elsewhere, the bluffs or general level of the country covering it some 250 feet. \* \* \* The rock, in the course and on the borders of the stream is split, broken and piled up in the most irregular and fantastic shapes, and presents deep and frightful

chasms, extending from the stream in all directions." Thus did Captain Allen note the outcrops of the Sioux quartzite, or the primary rock of Northwestern Iowa which juts in from the country beyond the Big Sioux. Two days afterward, the troopers were passing through Lyon County and down Rock River, in what is now Sioux County, and again struck the Big Sioux. They were vainly searching for a trading house to which they had been directed by the wily Sioux on the other side of the river.

#### DOWN THE VALLEY OF THE BIG SIOUX.

From September 16th to September 20th, inclusive, Captain Allen and his command skirted the eastern shores of the Big Sioux River through the western portions of the present counties of Sioux and Plymouth, and there are a number of extracts from his Journal which are interesting. Under date of September 16th he says: "Crossed the clear stream (Rock River) near its mouth and again ascended the bluffs, which are near 300 feet high and much broken—the breaks running far out from the main river; the obstructions forced us to leave the river far on our right and made the line of our march very crooked. I sent two men to follow the river as closely as practicable, and look if there were any appearances of a trading house in the neighborhood. They found none, and so it is demonstrated that the Indians have basely lied and deceived us, in this respect, and for what purpose I am unable to conceive. It is said of the Sioux that they are prouder of, and more habituated to lying than truth-telling; and here is a pretty good evidence in support of the charge. Encamped on a slue at a bunch of willows far out on the prairie, horses and mules much fatigued. We have not seen any buffalo today, nor any fresh sign of them; we are apparently out of their present range."

On the following day a broad river was struck, but Captain Allen was not sure whether it was Floyd's River or the Big Sioux. For three days the route was through a wild country, the surface broken by steep bluffs and deep ravines. Not an easy land either for animals or men to travel. Comments the Captain: "Of course, we had all sorts of trouble,



upset one wagon twice, killed one mule and broke another wagon square off at the hounds. The romance of marching through a wilderness country is much abated."

#### WHERE THE BIG SIOUX AND THE MISSOURI JOIN.

Allen's one aim now was to find the mouth of the river which the expedition had traced so long, and on September 20th his wish was gratified. The Journal records: "We encountered bluffs, ravines, vine, valleys, tall grass and swamp, and plum bush and willow thickets, worse than any we had seen; but worked our way along, and, in the distance of seven miles, reached really the point where this river unites with the Missouri. It comes to the Missouri in a due south course, and the Missouri meets it perpendicularly (at right angles), as coming from the west. Both, at their junction, wash the base of a steep bluff, some 500 feet high, and the great river then pursues its general course to the southward and eastward. Opposite to this point, there appears to be a large island of the Missouri, but we could not see enough to know if it were really an island, or a peninsula, in one of the great bends of the river. I have learned all I can now of the river which we have followed down to its mouth. I shall consider it the Big Sioux until I shall be better informed. Tomorrow I shall march for home by the nearest route I can find. It has rained most of the day, and is cold and disagreeable."

#### THE SHORT CUT TO FORT DES MOINES.

Captain Allen did lead his men over the most direct route possible. They went through Southern Plymouth to the corner of Woodbury, crossed all the streams little and big in Northern Ida and Sac counties, and when they had reached the body of water which has been identified as Twin Lakes, Calhoun County, turned to the southeast down the valley of the Raccoon. Finally, they reached the ridge between the Raccoon and the Beaver, and arrived at Fort Des Moines in the afternoon of October 3, 1845, after an absence of fifty-four days.

This expedition under Captain Allen threw open the bor-

ders of Northwestern Iowa, and, with the establishment of Fort Des Moines, the settlers of the lower valley felt that a gateway had been erected as an approach to the north. Later, settlers moved up the valley to the lake region, which had been so maligned by Captain Allen, and were prospering there when slaughtered by the Sioux, while various fur traders and their families were locating in the picturesque region described by Captain Allen, where the Big Sioux is absorbed by the greater expanse of the Missouri.





## CHAPTER IV.

### INDIAN OCCUPATION.

ORIGIN OF THE NAME "INDIAN"—THE MOUND BUILDERS—MOUNDS IN IOWA—THE INDIANS—THE IOWA—THE SAC AND THE FOX—KEOKUK AND BLACK HAWK—METANEQUA, THEIR LAST WAR CHIEF—THE POTAWATTOMI—THE WINNEBAGO—THE SIOUX—ACQUISITION OF THE INDIAN LANDS—TREATIES OF 1804 AND 1816—THE HALF-BREED TRACT—TREATY OF 1825—THE NEUTRAL GROUND—THE BLACK HAWK PURCHASE—TREATY OF CHICAGO—TREATY OF 1837—TREATY OF 1842—LAST OF THE TREATIES AFFECTING IOWA LANDS—INDIAN PROBLEM IN IOWA NOT SETTLED—THE SIOUX THE LAST TO LEAVE—FORT DODGE ESTABLISHED AND ABANDONED—INDIAN DEPREDATIONS RENEWED—HENRY LOTT AND THE MURDER OF THE SIOUX CHIEF, SIDOMINADOTA—SETTLERS MOVE UP THE DES MOINES AND LITTLE SIOUX RIVERS—THEY INVADE THE LAKE REGION, THE TRADITIONAL HOME OF THE SIOUX—INKPADUTA'S BAND OF BAD SIOUX PASS UP THE LITTLE SIOUX—THE TERRIBLE MASSACRE AROUND THE SHORES OF THE OKOBOJI LAKES—CAPTURE OF FOUR WOMEN AND THEIR AWFUL JOURNEY INTO DAKOTA—DEATH OF MRS. THATCHER AND MRS. NOBLE—RANSOM OF MRS. MARBLE AND ABBIE GARDNER—THE AFTER LIFE OF INKPADUTA—THE SIOUX FINALLY MOVED FROM MINNESOTA TO DAKOTA TERRITORY.

For several years prior to 1492, Christopher Columbus sought aid from various sources to fit out an expedition to sail westward, insisting that it was possible to reach the eastern shores of Asia by circumnavigating the globe. After his first voyage European explorers in the New World, believing the country they visited to be India, gave to the inhabitants the name of "Indians." Subsequently it was learned that Columbus had really discovered a hitherto unknown continent. The error in geography was corrected, but the name given to the copper colored natives still remains.

#### THE MOUND BUILDERS.

About one hundred and fifty years after the first white settlements were founded along the Atlantic coast, relics were

found which led to the belief that the interior of the continent had once been occupied by a peculiar race of people. The relics referred to consisted of mounds, earthworks, stone weapons and implements, fragments of pottery and occasionally a copper tool or ornament. A report issued by the United States Bureau of Ethnology says:

“During a period beginning some time after the close of the ice age and ending with the coming of the white man—or only a few years before—the central part of North America was inhabited by a people who had emerged to some extent from the darkness of savagery, had acquired certain domestic arts, and practiced some well defined lines of industry. The location and boundaries inhabited by them are fairly well marked by the mounds and earthworks they erected.”

Beginning in 1845 two archaeologists named Squier and Davis undertook a systematic examination of the peculiar relics. During the next three years they explored over two hundred mounds, mostly in the lower Ohio Valley, where the center of this ancient civilization—if such it may be called—appears to have been located. The result of their investigations was published in 1850 by the Smithsonian Institution under the title of “Ancient Monuments of the Mississippi Valley.” Following Squier and Davis came a number of other writers, nearly every one of whom had his own pet theory as to the origin of the Mound Builders. About the only phases of the subject upon which they agreed were that the Mound Builders constituted a separate and distinct race, and that many of the relics were of great antiquity.

Soon after the United States Bureau of Ethnology was established it began a scientific and exhaustive investigation of the relics left by this ancient race. Cyrus Thomas, of the bureau, divides the region once inhabited by the Mound Builders into eight districts. In making this classification Mr. Thomas ignored all the proposed theories as to the origin or first location of the Mound Builders, as he begins in the northwestern part of the country and proceeds toward the east and south, to-wit:

1. The Dakota District, which includes the two Dakotas, Minnesota, Wisconsin and the northwestern part of Iowa.

2. The Huron-Iroquois District, embracing the lower peninsula of Michigan, the southern part of Canada, a strip across Northern Ohio and the greater part of the State of New York. 3. The Illinois District, which includes the middle and eastern parts of Iowa, Northeastern Missouri, Northern Illinois and the western half of Indiana. 4. The Ohio District, which embraces all the State of Ohio, except the strip across the northern part already mentioned, the eastern half of Indiana and the southwestern part of West Virginia. 5. The Appalachian District, including the mountainous regions of Southwestern Virginia, Western North Carolina, Eastern Tennessee and Northern Georgia. 6. The Tennessee District, which adjoins the above and includes Middle and Western Tennessee, the southern portion of Illinois, practically all the State of Kentucky, a small part of Northern Alabama and the central part of Georgia. 7. The Arkansas District, which contains the state from which it takes its name, Southeastern Missouri and a strip across the northern part of Louisiana. 8. The Gulf District, which includes the country bordering on the Gulf of Mexico. In each of these districts the relics are marked by certain features not common to the other districts.

Those who have made a careful study of the mounds in connection with the work of the Bureau of Ethnology are inclined to doubt the theory of great antiquity or that the Mound Builders belonged to a race now extinct. In the course of their investigations they learned that some of the southern tribes of Indians built mounds over their warriors slain in battle, or constructed an artificial mound upon which was built the house of the chief. Charlevoix found certain Canadian tribes engaged in building earthworks very similar to those in some parts of the United States. It was also discovered that the pottery made by some of the modern southwestern tribes closely resembles in texture and design that found in the oldest of the mounds. These discoveries, with other corroborative evidences, have led to the conclusion that the Mound Builder was nothing more than the ancestor, more or less remote, of the North American Indian found here by the white man.



## MOUNDS IN IOWA.

Iowa may be regarded as the western frontier of the region once occupied by the Mound Builders, as no relics of consequence have been found west of the Missouri River. Along the Mississippi from Dubuque southward a number of mounds have been opened by explorers. Nearly all were found to contain human skeletons, pottery, stone utensils and ornaments. In a mound near Davenport were found two stone pipes, each carved in the image of a bird, one having eyes of pearl and the other eyes of copper.

The mounds are almost always found upon a bluff near a stream of water, or upon a highland. This may account for the fact that they are absent in most of the level prairie counties of the state. A few miles above the City of Des Moines, on a bluff overlooking the Des Moines River, are several acres covered with mounds. Around Marysville, Marion County, have been found hundreds of arrow and spear heads, stone axes, celts and other utensils. Among the relics found here is a copper spear head about five inches in length. A large oval mound in Boone County—90 by 110 feet at the base—was opened in 1908. It was found to contain about 4,000 pieces of pottery, some of them indicating that they were vessels three feet in diameter, a few human skulls and a large quantity of charcoal and ashes. Near Lehigh, Webster County, are traces of an elaborate system of earthworks. Along the Little Sioux River a number of mounds, most of them in O'Brien, Cherokee and Woodbury counties, have been opened, but they contained very few relics of archaeological interest. Near Marathon, Buena Vista County, a large mound rises to the height of about 100 feet in the midst of a level plain. It is called the "Green Mound" and is believed by some to be of artificial origin, though geologists look upon it as a natural formation.

## THE INDIANS.

In his early contact with the Indians the white man regarded them as being all of one family and speaking the same language. Later it was learned that they were really divided

into several groups of tribal confederacies, each of which differed from the others in certain physical and linguistic characteristics. The Algonquian family, the most numerous and powerful of all the Indian groups, occupied a large triangle roughly bounded by the Atlantic coast from Labrador to Cape Hatteras and lines drawn from these points on the coast to the western end of Lake Superior. The best known tribes of this group were the Delaware, Miami, Ottawa, Sac, Fox, and Potawatomi.

Along the shores of Lake Ontario, in the very heart of the Algonquian domain, lived the Iroquoian tribes—the Cayuga, Mohawk, Oneida, Onondaga and Seneca. Among the early settlers of New York these tribes were known as the “Five Nations.” Some years later the Tuscarora tribe was added to the confederacy, which then took the name of the “Six Nations.”

South of the Algonquian country lived the Muskhogean group, the best known tribes of which were the Cherokee, Chickasaw, Choctaw and Creek. In the Northwest, about the sources of the Mississippi River and extending westward to the Missouri, was the territory occupied by the Siouan family generally referred to as the Sioux—a group composed of a number of tribes noted for their warlike disposition and physical prowess. South and west of this the great plains and the foothills of the Rocky Mountains were inhabited by the bold, vindictive Apache, Arapaho, Cheyenne, Comanche, Pawnee and other tribes, while scattered over the country, here and there were isolated tribes that claimed kinship with none of the great families.

Many volumes have been written about the North American Indians, their legends, traditions and customs, and the subject has not yet been exhausted. In a history such as this it is not the design to give an extended account of the entire Indian race, but to notice only those tribes whose history is intimately connected with the territory now comprising the State of Iowa, and especially the northwestern part. The most important of these tribes were the Sac and Fox, the Iowa, the Winnebago, the Potawatomi and some of the Sioux bands.

## THE IOWA.

Although the Iowa tribe was not the most numerous or of the greatest importance historically, it is first mentioned here because it gave name to the Hawkeye State, and they were among the first Indians to establish themselves in the territory included in this history. According to their traditions, they became allied with the Winnebago at an early date and lived with that tribe in the country north of the Great Lakes. They are first mentioned in history in 1690, when they occupied a district on the shores of Lake Michigan, under a chief named Man-han-gaw. Here they separated from the Winnebago and with the Omaha, Otoe and Ponca tribes moved toward the Southwest. At the time of this separation the Iowa received the name of "Pa-ho-ja," or "Gray Snow Indians." This name is said to have originated because they encountered a snow storm in which dust was mixed with the snow, giving them the appearance of being covered with ashes. They were also known as the "Sleepy Ones."

Schoolcraft says this tribe migrated no fewer than fifteen times. After leaving the Winnebago they took up their abode on the Rock River, in what is now the State of Illinois, where they were temporarily allied with the Sac and Fox Indians. From there they removed to the valley of the Iowa River. In 1848 an Iowa Indian prepared a map showing the movements of the tribe from the time they left the Winnebago. Connected with this map was a tradition giving the following account of their first appearance in the Iowa Valley: "After living on the Rock River for several years, the tribe wandered off westward in search of a new home. Crossing the Mississippi, they turned southward and reached a high bluff near the mouth of the Iowa River. Looking off over the beautiful valley spread out before them, they halted, exclaiming, 'Ioway! Ioway!' which in their language means 'This is the place!'"

After this the tribe lived successively in the Des Moines Valley, on the Missouri River, then in what is now South Dakota and Northwestern Iowa, about Spirit Lake and on the headwaters of the Des Moines and Big Sioux rivers. A Sioux tradition says that when they first came to the country



about the Falls of St. Anthony they found the Iowa Indians there and drove them out. This tradition is supported by the report of Le Sueur of his expedition up the Mississippi in 1700. He says he found some of them on the upper Mississippi and supplied them with firearms, though their principal villages were "at the headwaters of the River de Moyen."

In 1707 William de l'Isle prepared a map of the northwestern part of Louisiana, on which he showed a traders' trail marked "Chemin des Voyageurs," running all the way across Northern Iowa from the Mississippi River near Prairie du Chien to the Big Sioux River. On the shore of a small lake, the identity of which is uncertain, he marks a "Village des Aiaouez," and on the Big Sioux River are two more "Villages des Aiaouez," one on either side of the river. Jacob Van der Zee, in his "Reminiscences of the Northwest Fur Trade," mentions this trail. It is also referred to by Chittenden in his "American Fur Trade." Its existence, as well as Le Sueur's report, makes it practically certain that the Iowa Indians once occupied a considerable tract in what is now Northwestern Iowa. They remained in the state until 1825, when they ceded all their interest in Iowa lands to the United States.

#### THE SAC AND FOX.

These two tribes at one time inhabited the greater part of Iowa. They are generally referred to as one people, though they were two separate and distinct tribes of the Algonquian group. The Sac (also called Sauk or Saukie) were known as the "People of the Outlet." Their earliest known habitat was in the lower peninsula of Michigan, where they lived with the Potawatomi. The name Saginaw as applied to a bay and city in Michigan means "the place of the Sac" and indicates the region where they once dwelt. They are first mentioned as a separate tribe in the Jesuit Relations for 1640, though they were then associated with the Potawatomi, Fox, Miami, Winnebago and some other tribes.

Sac traditions tell how they were driven from the shores of Lake Huron by the Iroquois and their allies in the early part of the seventeenth century. About the middle of that century they found a new abode along the shores of Green

Bay, Wisconsin. Father Dablon, in the Jesuit Relations for 1671, says: "The Sacs, Pottawatomies and neighboring tribes, being driven from their own countries, which are the lands southward from Michilimackinac, have taken refuge at the head of this bay, beyond which one can see the Nation of Fire, with one of the Illinois tribes called Oumiami, and the Foxes."

In the same year that this was written the Huron and Ottawa Indians started out to invade the country of the Sioux. On the way they persuaded the Sac and Potawatomi warriors to join the expedition. They were defeated by the Sioux with heavy losses. The survivors returned to the shores of the Green Bay, where it seems they were content to remain quiet for several years.

The Indian name of the Fox tribe was Mesh-kwa-ke-hug (usually written Musquakie), signifying "People of the Red Earth." Their original dwelling place is somewhat uncertain. One of their traditions says that at a very early date they lived on the Atlantic coast, in the vicinity of the present State of Rhode Island. Later a portion of the tribe occupied the country along the southern shore of Lake Superior until driven out by the Chippewa. In the early part of the seventeenth century Nicollet found some of these Indians living on the Fox River, not far from the Green Bay, in Wisconsin. In his relations for 1676 Father Allouez speaks of "a Musquakie village with a population of about five thousand" on the Wolf River, in Wisconsin.

The name "Fox" originated with the French, who called these Indians "Reynors" or "Renards." They were the deadly enemies of the French and planned the attack on the post at Detroit in 1712. The timely arrival of reinforcements saved the post and defeated the assailants. Those who took part in this assault then went to the village mentioned by Father Allouez on the Wolf River. About 1730 the English and Dutch traders about the Great Lakes incited the Fox chiefs to make war on the French, hoping thereby to get rid of French competition. With the aid of friendly tribes the French were victorious. The Fox chiefs then led their defeated warriors to the neighborhood of the Green Bay, where they found shelter in the Sac villages. The governor of Can-

ada sent Lieutenant Colonel De Villiers with a detachment of French troops and Indian allies to demand the surrender of the fugitives. The demand was refused, whereupon De Villiers ordered an attack upon the village. In the hard-fought battle which followed, De Villiers, his son and a number of his men were killed. This was in 1733 and resulted in an alliance between the Sac and Fox and since that time they have been generally regarded as one people. The alliance, however, was more in the nature of a confederacy, each tribe retaining its identity, while one chief ruled over both.

The Sac village of Sau-ke-nuk, on the Rock River in Illinois, was founded in 1731. After the expedition of De Villiers the Sac and Fox living in Wisconsin were driven out by the Chippewa and Ottawa Indians, allies of the French, and joined those at Sau-ke-nuk. About 1780, or perhaps a few years earlier, some of these Indians crossed the Mississippi and established themselves about where the City of Dubuque now stands. In September, 1788, these Indians granted to Julien Dubuque a concession to work the lead mines and sold him part of the lands claimed by them. Before the close of that year Dubuque established the first white settlement within the limits of the present State of Iowa.

In many respects the Sac and Fox tribes resembled each other. Their dialect was so similar that it was easy for a member of one tribe to learn the other's language. Their religion was rich in myth and fable. There were fourteen Sac and twelve Fox clans. Those common to both were the Bass, Bear, Big Lynx, Eagle, Fox, Sea (or Lake), Sturgeon, Thunder and Wolf.

Two of the most noted chiefs in Indian history belonged to these allied tribes. They were Black Hawk and Keokuk, both born of Sac parents, but recognized as chiefs by both tribes. The former was a warrior and the latter was a politician. Black Hawk was born on the Rock River in 1767 and Keokuk was born near Rock Island, Illinois, in 1788. In the War of 1812 Black Hawk and some of his warriors fought on the side of the British and he was with the Shawnee chief, Tecumseh, when the latter was killed in the battle of the Thames. After the close of the war a large part of the allied tribes entered into a treaty of peace with the United



States and agreed to remove to the west side of the Mississippi River. Black Hawk and a few of his immediate followers opposed this policy and their obstinacy finally culminated in the Black Hawk war in 1832.

One of Keokuk's biographers says: "He was ambitious and while always involved in intrigue never openly exposed himself to his enemies, but cunningly played one faction against the other for his personal advantage." An instance of this is seen in his course at the time of the Black Hawk war. While not openly opposing the war party he built up a strong peace sentiment, which prevented many warriors from joining Black Hawk. In the negotiations which followed that war the United States representatives ignored Black Hawk and recognized Keokuk as the leading chief of the Sac and Fox confederacy.

Being thus unceremoniously deposed as chief, Black Hawk retired to his new village on the Des Moines River, near Iowa-ville, where he passed his last years in peace. He died there on October 3, 1838. By the treaty of 1832 Keokuk was granted a reservation of 400 square miles on the Iowa River. Four years later he sold this tract to the United States and removed to what is now Wapello County. After the treaty of October 11, 1842, he was given a new village about five miles southeast of Fort Des Moines. In 1845 he went with his people to Kansas, where he died in April, 1848. His remains were brought to Iowa in 1883 and interred in Rand Park at Keokuk, upon a high bluff overlooking the Mississippi. Thirty years later a monument was erected over his grave by the Daughters of the American Revolution. Black Hawk County and the City of Keokuk bear the names of these two great chiefs. Other Sac and Fox chiefs for whom Iowa counties have been named were Appanoose, Poweshiek and Wapello, each of whom was the leader of a considerable band and stood high in the tribal councils.

Matanequa, the last war chief of the Sac and Fox confederacy, deserves more than passing mention. He was born at Dubuque in 1810 and is said to have been a typical Indian, both physically and intellectually. He was not a member of the ruling clan, but, like Keokuk, won his chieftainship through his bravery and diplomacy. His high order of ex-

ecutive ability was recognized in July, 1857, when he was selected as one of the five men to determine a new place of residence in Iowa for his band. He and his four associates purchased eighty acres of land in Tama County. Other purchases were made from time to time until the band owned about 3,000 acres. Matanequa was the last survivor of the five who selected the location. He died on October 4, 1897, and so great was the esteem in which he was held by the white people that many of the citizens of Tama County closed their places of business to attend his funeral. He was called "The Warwick of the Musquakies"—a man who elevated others to positions of power but was never king himself.

#### THE POTAWATOMI.

At one time the Potawatomi was one of the powerful tribes of the Algonquian family. French missionaries and traders first came in contact with these Indians near the foot of Lake Michigan, where they were known as the "Nation of Fire." Nicollet met with some of them in Wisconsin as early as 1664. They were closely allied with the Sac and Fox, with whom a portion of the tribe once dwelt. Many of the early Sac and Fox treaties were ratified or approved by the Potawatomi before they became effective.

About the close of the Revolutionary war a part of the tribe moved eastward and in the early years of the nineteenth century occupied practically all that part of Indiana north of the Wabash River. By a treaty concluded on August 24, 1816, the tribe ceded to the United States the greater portion of its lands along the shores of Lake Michigan, including the site of the present City of Chicago, and received therefor some of the Sac and Fox lands in Western Illinois. In September, 1833, at a council held in Chicago, the Potawatomi relinquished all their lands in Indiana and Illinois and were granted a tract of 5,000,000 acres in Southwestern Iowa, to which they removed in 1835. Peter A. Sarpy established a trading post among them soon after they came to Iowa, and in 1838 Davis Hardin built a mill and opened a farm for them near Council Bluffs, which city is the county seat of a county bearing the tribal name, though their agency was located in Mills County.

At the time of their removal to Iowa, the Potawatomi tribe numbered about three thousand. In 1846 they relinquished their lands in Iowa for a reservation thirty miles square in Kansas. At that time a considerable number of Mormons were gathered in the vicinity of Council Bluffs and on May 8, 1846, one of the Mormon elders wrote: "No game or wild animal of any description is to be seen around here, having been thinned out by a tribe of Indians called the Potawatamies, whose trails and old camping grounds are to be seen in every direction."

By the latter part of the year 1847 all the Potawatomi were removed to Kansas, except a small band which insisted on remaining to hunt about the headwaters of the Des Moines River. After the removal to Kansas a few members of the tribe grew homesick for their old hunting grounds and, under the leadership of a minor chief known as "Johnnie Green," wandered back to Iowa. For several years they hunted, fished and roamed about, unmolested by the white people. During that time many of them died and the few survivors found a home with the Musquakies near Tama City. A remnant of the tribe still lives in Kansas.

#### THE WINNEBAGO.

Ethnologically, the Winnebago belonged to the Siouan family, though at some period far back in the past they became allied with the Algonquian tribes living about the Great Lakes, where they were found by Jesuit missionaries and French traders as early as 1669. Through their association with the Sac and Fox and other Algonquian tribes, many historians have classified them as belonging to that group. In the Revolutionary war many Winnebago warriors fought on the side of the British. A portion of the tribe was in the battle of Fallen Timbers in the summer of 1794, where the Indians were so signally defeated by Gen. Anthony Wayne, and Winnebago braves fought against General Harrison in the battle of Tippecanoe in November, 1811. The following year some of them joined the Potawatomi in the assault on Fort Dearborn (now Chicago). A large majority of the tribe was friendly to Black Hawk at the time of his uprising in 1832, though it was a Winnebago chief (De-co-



rah) who delivered Black Hawk a prisoner to the Indian agent at Prairie du Chien.

The connection of the Winnebago tribe with Iowa history began in September, 1832, when they ceded their lands east of the Mississippi to the United States and were given the Neutral Ground for a reservation. Here they served as a sort of a buffer between the Sioux on the north and the Sac and the Fox on the south, until 1846, when they were given a reservation near Mankato, Minnesota. One of the northeastern counties of Iowa bears the name of Winneshiek and its county seat the name of Decorah—two of the most prominent of the Winnebago chiefs. Three of the other counties of Northeastern Iowa are stamped with the musical nomenclature of their tongue—Winnebago itself, Allamakee and Chickasaw.

In 1859, the Winnebagos ceded the western portion of their Minnesota reserve; in 1863 were moved to a reservation in Dakota adjoining that of the Sioux of the Mississippi, and two years later occupied their permanent home which had been ceded to them by the Omahas.

#### THE SIOUX.

The principal branch of the Sioux or Dacotah nation, at least the one which figured most prominently in early Iowa history, was the Santee or I-san-yan-ti Sioux, which consisted of the Mdewakanton, Sisseton, Wahpekute and Wahpeton bands. French explorers and missionaries first came in contact with them in 1640, when they occupied a territory in what is now Central Minnesota. When Father Louis Hennepin ascended the Mississippi River in 1680, he found the region now comprising Minnesota and Northern Iowa occupied by the Sioux and estimated their numbers at "about forty thousand."

T. S. Williamson, who spent several years among these Indians, studying their language, customs and traditions, says: "Their original habitat was along the shores of the Lake of the Woods and the country north of the Great Lakes. From what was written on this subject by Hennepin, La Hontan, Le Sueur and Charlevoix, and from maps published under the superintendence of these authors, it is sufficiently

clear that in the latter part of the Seventeenth Century the principal residence of the Isanyanti Sioux was about the headwaters of the Rum River, whence they extended their hunts to the St. Croix and Mississippi rivers and down the latter nearly or quite to the mouth of the Wisconsin."

The Mdewakanton—This band claimed to be the parent stock, from which all other Sioux tribes originated. The name was derived from three Sioux words, to wit: Mde (lake), Wakon (sacred mystery), and Otonwe (village). They were therefore known as "The people of Mystery Lake Village." Maj. Stephen H. Long described them as "good-looking, straight, not overly tall and remarkable for symmetry of form." This band did not figure so prominently in the events of Northwestern Iowa as some of the others.

The Sisseton—Some writers credit the Sisseton with being one of the original seven Sioux tribes. In 1680 Hennepin found some of them near Mille Lacs (Minnesota), where their hunting grounds adjoined those of the Mdewakanton. When Lewis and Clark went up the Missouri River in 1804 they met some of the Sisseton chiefs in what is now the southeastern part of South Dakota. These explorers estimated the number of warriors belonging to the band at about two hundred. Neill says that in 1850 there were twenty-five hundred fighting men in the band. At that time they occupied Western Minnesota and Southeastern South Dakota. In their hunting expeditions they came into Northwestern Iowa, but there is no evidence that they ever claimed a permanent residence within the limits of the state.

The Wahpekute—In the Sioux language the name of this band meant "Shooters in the leaves," indicating that they lived by hunting in the forests. One of their early chiefs was White Owl, the Chippewa name of whom was "Wa-pa-cut," and some writers assert that the tribal name was derived from this similarity. They had no fixed villages, but lived in portable skin lodges, easily moved from one place to another. Carver met them on the Minnesota River in 1766. Forty years later Lieutenant Pike mentions them as "the smallest band of Sioux, residing generally between the Mississippi and Missouri rivers and hunting commonly at the head of the Des Moines."

When Maj. Stephen H. Long explored the Minnesota River in 1824 he met some of the Wahpekute, of whom he says in his report: "This tribe has a very bad name, being considered to be a lawless set of men. They have a regular chief, Wiahuga (the Raven), who is acknowledged as such by the Indian agent, but who, disgusted by their misbehavior, withdrew from them and resides at Wapasha's."

In the early years of the Nineteenth Century they occupied the region now comprising Northwestern Iowa and Southwestern Minnesota. Between the years 1830 and 1851 they entered into several treaties with the United States. Six years after the last named treaty some ten or fifteen lodges, under the disreputable chief, Ink-pa-du-tah, committed the Spirit Lake massacre, a full account of which will be found elsewhere in this volume.

The Wahpeton—Students of Indian history and tradition are almost unanimous in asserting that the Wahpeton was one of the seven primary tribes of the great Sioux nation. In 1680 their headquarters were near Mille Lacs, in what is now Central Minnesota, where they were encountered by Hennepin and Du Luth. From there they moved down to the lower Minnesota Valley, where they were visited by Major Long in 1824. He says:

"They wore small looking-glasses suspended from their garments. Others had papers of pins, purchased from the traders, as ornaments. We observed one, who appeared to be a man of some note among them, had a live sparrow-hawk on his head by way of distinction; this man wore also a buffalo robe on which eight bear tracks were painted. The squaws we saw had no ornament of value. The dress of the women consisted of a long wrapper, with short sleeves, of dark calico. Others wore a calico garment which covered them from the shoulders to the waist; a piece of broadcloth, wound around the waist, its end tucked in, extended to the knee. They also wore leggings of blue or scarlet cloth. Hampered by such a costume, their movements were not graceful."

Between the various Sioux bands and the Sac and Fox Indians there was a deadly enmity. Several vain attempts were made by the United States to establish a boundary between them to keep them from being at constant war. R. A.



Smith, in his History of Dickinson County, says the last hostile meeting between these two tribes was in Kossuth County, Iowa, in April, 1852, "between two straggling bands, both of whom at that time were trespassers and had no legal right on Iowa soil. The number engaged was about seventy on each side and the result was a complete Sac and Fox victory."

#### ACQUISITION OF THE INDIAN LANDS.

By the treaty of September 3, 1783, which ended the Revolutionary war, the western boundary of the United States was fixed at the Mississippi River. The Louisiana Purchase treaty (April 30, 1803), extended the boundary to the summit of the Rocky Mountains. Neither of these treaties, however, extinguished the Indian title to the lands. That problem was left to the United States Government for solution.

Under the authority conferred by the Articles of Confederation—the first organic law of the American Republic—Congress issued the order of September 22, 1783, forbidding all persons to settle upon the Indian domain. After the adoption of the constitution, Congress passed the act of March 1, 1793, which provided: "That no purchase or grant of lands, or any claim or title thereto, from any Indians, or any nation or tribe of Indians, within the bounds of the United States, shall be of any validity, in law or equity, unless the same be made by a treaty or convention entered into pursuant to the Constitution."

The first treaties between the United States and the Indian tribes were merely agreements of peace and friendship, but as the white population increased more land became necessary and treaties of cession were negotiated. The continuation of this policy gradually crowded the red man farther and farther toward the setting sun as the pale-face civilization advanced.

#### TREATIES OF 1804 AND 1816.

The Nineteenth Century was in its infancy when the white man began looking with longing eyes upon the broad prairies of Illinois, where lived the Sac and Fox and some other tribes. Immediately after the Louisiana Purchase was made in 1803, a clamor arose for the removal of all Indians

to the new domain west of the Mississippi. On November 4, 1804, Gen. William H. Harrison, then governor of Indiana Territory, met with some of the Sac and Fox chiefs at St. Louis and concluded a treaty by which the allied tribes ceded to the United States their lands east of the Mississippi, but retained the privilege of remaining thereon until the lands were actually sold to white settlers, when they were to remove to the west side of the river.

One faction, under the leadership of Black Hawk, claimed that the chiefs who entered into this treaty acted without the instructions required by the custom of the confederation and refused to confirm the agreement. The opposition to the St. Louis treaty was largely responsible for the alliance of Black Hawk and his band with the British in the War of 1812. At the conclusion of that war treaties of peace were made with several of the tribes who had fought against the United States. Black Hawk and his followers were among the last to enter into such a treaty.

On May 13, 1816, at St. Louis, a number of Sac and Fox chiefs and head men were induced to sign a treaty confirming that of 1804. One of the twenty-two chiefs who then "touched the goose quill" was Black Hawk himself. He never denied signing the treaty, though he afterward undertook to repudiate it.

In the treaty of 1804, in addition to relinquishing the title to all their lands in Illinois, Missouri and Wisconsin, the Indian signers also agreed to permit the United States to occupy "a tract two miles square for the establishment of a military reservation, either on the upper side of the Ouisconsin or on the right bank of the Mississippi River." Under this agreement Fort Madison was established on the site where the city of that name now stands.

#### THE HALF-BREED TRACT.

On August 4, 1824, at Washington, D. C., a treaty was concluded with the leading Sac and Fox chiefs, by which the confederated tribes relinquished claim to all lands in the State of Missouri. At the same time the "tract of land lying between the rivers Demoine and Mississippi rivers, \* \* \* is intended for the use of the half-breeds belonging to the

Sac and Fox nations, they holding it, however, by the same title and in the same manner that other Indian titles are held."

This half-breed tract included the triangle between the Des Moines and Mississippi, in the extreme southeast corner of the State of Iowa, and extended northward only as far as an east and west line corresponding to the boundary line between Missouri and Iowa.

#### TREATY OF 1825.

Continued conflicts between the Sac and Fox tribes on the south and the Sioux on the north, over the limits of their respective hunting grounds, led the Government to undertake a settlement of the controversy. William Clark and Lewis Cass were appointed commissioners for that purpose. A great council was called at Prairie du Chien, Wisconsin, attended by chiefs of the Sac and Fox, Sioux, Potawatomi, Chippewa, Ottawa, Winnebago and some minor tribes. On August 19, 1825, a treaty was concluded, which confirmed the treaties of 1804 and 1816, and defined a boundary line between the Sac and Fox and Sioux nations as follows:

"Beginning at the mouth of the Upper Iowa River, on the west bank of the Mississippi and ascending the said Iowa River to its left fork; thence up said fork to its source; thence crossing the fork of the Red Cedar River in a direct line to the lower fork of the Calumet (Big Sioux) River, and down that stream to its junction with the Missouri River."

#### THE NEUTRAL GROUND.

It soon became apparent that the line established by the above mentioned treaty was not sufficient to prevent the contending tribes from trespassing upon each other's territory. Accordingly another council was called to meet at Prairie du Chien, where on July 15, 1830, an agreement was reached by which the Sioux ceded to the United States a strip twenty miles wide immediately north of the line of 1825, and the Sac and Fox ceded a strip immediately south of the line, also twenty miles wide. This tract forty miles wide, extending from the Mississippi to the Des Moines River, was intended



to act as a sort of buffer between the warring tribes and was known as the "Neutral Ground." It remained neutral until the treaty of Fort Armstrong with the Winnebago tribe on September 15, 1832, when the Neutral Ground was given to that nation in exchange for their lands east of the Mississippi.

The council of Prairie du Chien of July 15, 1830, resulted in the negotiation of another treaty with the Sac and Fox, Sioux, Omaha, Oto, Iowa and Missouri tribes, in which those Indians ceded to the United States a tract of land bounded as follows:

"Beginning at the upper fork of the Demoine River and passing the sources of the Little Sioux and Floyd's rivers to the fork of the first creek (Rock River) which falls into the Big Sioux or Calumet River on the east side; thence down said creek and the Calumet River to the Missouri state line above the Kansas River; thence to the highlands between the waters falling into the Missouri and Demoine rivers, passing to said highlands along the dividing ridge between the forks of the Grand River; thence along said highlands or ridge separating the waters of the Missouri from those of the Demoine to a point opposite the source of the Boyer River, and thence in a direct line to the upper fork of the Demoine, the place of beginning."

Thus the Indian title was extinguished to all that part of Iowa between the Des Moines watershed and the Missouri River, south of the mouth of the Rock River. But the lands so ceded were not opened to white settlement. The treaty expressly provided that "The lands ceded and relinquished by this treaty are to be assigned and allotted under the direction of the President of the United States to the tribes now living thereon, or to such other tribes as the President may locate thereon for hunting and other purposes."

#### THE BLACK HAWK PURCHASE.

In 1831 the Sac and Fox Indians in Illinois were ordered to remove to the reservation set apart for them west of the Mississippi, in accordance with the treaties of 1804 and 1816. Black Hawk stubbornly refused to obey the order and General Gaines was sent with a force of troops to compel

obedience and the removal was made "under protest." The following spring (1832), Black Hawk decided to return to his beloved Rock River country. With his own band and a number of Potawatomi and Winnebago warriors—about eight hundred in all—he crossed the Mississippi, raised the British flag and brought on the Black Hawk war. Again troops were sent against the offender and the war ended in the defeat of the Indians in the battle of Bad Axe, August 2, 1832.

On September 21, 1832, Gen. Winfield Scott and Governor Reynolds, of Illinois, as United States commissioners, held a council with the Sac and Fox chiefs and head men at Davenport. Says Johnson Brigham: "Holding them responsible for not restraining Black Hawk from recrossing the Mississippi, the white men ungenerously demanded, as indemnity for the cost of the ensuing war, that they cede to the United States a portion of their superfluous territory." Under the heavy pressure brought to bear, those attending the council, under the leadership of Keokuk, finally agreed to cede to the United States a tract of land in Eastern Iowa, bounded as follows:

"Beginning on the Mississippi River at the point where the Sac and Fox northern boundary line, as established by article 2 of the treaty of July 15, 1830, strikes said river; thence up said boundary line to a point fifty miles from the Mississippi, measured on said line; thence in a right line to the nearest point on the Red Cedar of Ioway, forty miles from the Mississippi; thence in a right line to a point in the northern boundary line of the State of Missouri fifty miles, measured on said line, from the Mississippi River; thence by the last mentioned boundary to the Mississippi River, and by the western shore of said river to the place of beginning."

Although the Indians were virtually forced into surrendering this tract of land, the commissioners agreed to pay them \$20,000 annually for a period of thirty years. The cession was nearly two hundred miles long, from forty to fifty miles wide, and contained about six million acres. It included the present counties of Cedar, Clinton, Delaware, Des Moines, Dubuque, Henry, Jackson, Jones, Lee, Louisa, Muscatine and Scott, and portions of Buchanan, Clayton, Fayette, Jefferson,

Johnson, Linn, Van Buren and Washington. This Black Hawk Purchase was the first land in Iowa opened to white settlement.

#### TREATY OF CHICAGO.

On September 26, 1833, the chiefs of the Chippewa, Ottawa, and Potawatomi tribes met with United States commissioners at Chicago. After "much talk" these chiefs agreed to cede their lands west of Lake Michigan, in Illinois and Wisconsin, and accept reservations elsewhere. The Potawatomi received five million acres in Western Iowa. The grant included the greater part of the cession of July 15, 1830, the eastern boundary being the dividing ridge between the Des Moines and Missouri rivers, and the western boundary was fixed at the Little Sioux River.

By the treaties of June 5 and 17, 1846, this tract was retroceded to the United States and during the next eighteen months all the Indians in that part of the state were removed to reservations in Kansas.

#### TREATY OF 1837.

The Black Hawk Purchase was thrown open to occupation and entry on June 1, 1833, and within a few months the most desirable lands had all been taken by actual settlers. The irregular western boundary of the purchase soon led to disputes between the settlers and the Indians. To avoid these disputes the Government decided to purchase additional land on the west, sufficient to straighten the boundary to a due north and south line. Accordingly the principal Sac and Fox chiefs were invited to visit the Great Father at Washington, where on October 21, 1837, the chiefs agreed to cede 1,250,000 acres immediately west of the purchase of 1832. For this land they received about twenty cents an acre.

When the survey was made it was discovered that the cession was not large enough to straighten the boundary as intended. It was therefore not long until the Indians were again accusing the whites of encroaching upon their lands. These conditions led to the



## TREATY OF 1842.

John Chambers, then governor of Iowa Territory, was appointed commissioner on behalf of the United States to negotiate a new treaty which would straighten the boundary and end the disputes. Some of the leading chiefs, notably Keokuk, Poweshiek and Wapello, saw that it was only a question of time until the Indians would have to relinquish all their Iowa lands to the white men. In this they were encouraged by Governor Chambers. Early in October, 1842, a council met at the Sac and Fox agency, where Agency City, Wapello County, now stands.

On one side of the large tent was a platform, upon which sat Governor Chambers, dressed in the uniform of an army officer; Captain Allen and Lieutenant Ruff, of the First United States Dragoons; Antoine Le Claire and Josiah Swart, interpreters; and the Indian agent. The chiefs ranged themselves around the tent, leaving an open space in the center. This was occupied in turn by the Indian orators, and nearly every chief present had something to say. On the 11th a treaty was concluded by which the allied tribes agreed to cede all their remaining lands in Iowa to the United States. This cession embraced approximately one-third of the state. It extended from the Black Hawk Purchase on the east to the watershed between the Des Moines and Missouri rivers on the west, and from the southern boundary of the state to an irregular east and west line not far from Fort Dodge.

The chiefs who signed the treaty reserved the right to occupy for three years "all that part of the land above ceded which lies west of a line running due north and south from the Painted or Red Rocks on the White Breast fork of the Des Moines River, which rocks will be found about eight miles in a straight line from the junction of the White Breast and Des Moines."

The red sandstone cliffs, called by the Indians the Painted Rocks, are situated on the Des Moines River in the northern part of Marion County. The line described in the treaty forms the boundary between Appanoose and Wayne counties, on the southern border of the state, and extends due north to the northern limits of the grant. East of this line the lands

were opened for settlement on May 1, 1843, and west of it on October 11, 1845. Soon after the latter date all the members of the Sac and Fox confederacy were removed to Kansas.

#### LAST OF THE TREATIES.

By the treaties concluded at the Indian agency on the Missouri River on June 5 and 17, 1846, the Potawatomi, Chipewewa and Ottawa tribes relinquished their claims to "all lands to which they have claim of any kind whatsoever, and especially the tracts or parcels of land ceded to them by the treaty of Chicago, and subsequent thereto, and now in whole or in part possessed by their people, lying and being north and east of the Missouri River and embraced in the limits of the Territory of Iowa."

With the conclusion of those two treaties all that part of Iowa south of the country claimed by the Sioux became the property of the white man. It was not many years, however, until the Government extinguished the Sioux title, giving the paleface full possession. On July 23, 1851, at Traverse des Sioux, Minnesota, the Sisseton and Wahpeton bands ceded to the United States "All their lands in the State of Iowa, and also all their lands in the Territory of Minnesota east of the following line, to wit: Beginning at the junction of the Buffalo River with the Red River of the North; thence along the western bank of the said Red River of the North to the mouth of the Sioux Wood River; thence along the western bank of the said Sioux Wood River to Lake Traverse; thence along the western shore of said lake to the southern extremity thereof; thence in a direct line to the junction of Kampesa Lake with the Tchan-kas-an-da-ta or Sioux River; thence along the western bank of said river to its point of intersection with the northern line of the State of Iowa, including all the islands in said rivers and lake."

The treaty of Traverse des Sioux was agreed to by the Mdewakanton and Wahpekuta bands in a council held at Mendota, Minnesota, August 5, 1851. That portion of the territory ceded in the State of Iowa includes the present counties of Lyon and Osceola. In exchange for all lands claimed by the Sioux in Northwestern Iowa and Southwestern Minnesota, the Indians were granted a reservation described as

follows: "All that tract of land on either side of the Minnesota River from the western boundary of the lands herein ceded, east to the Tchay-tam-bay River on the north and to Yellow Medicine on the south side, to extend on each side a distance of not less than ten miles from the general course of said river; the boundaries of said tract to be marked out by as straight lines as practicable."

#### INDIAN PROBLEM IN IOWA NOT SETTLED.

But these treaties, these cessions of lands by the Sioux and the granting of a reservation by the Government along the Minnesota River, by no means settled the Indian problem for the people of Iowa. Renegade bands of Sioux and the Sac and Fox, traditional, historical and inveterate enemies, were still quarreling and fighting after the treaty of Traverse des Sioux was made, and the pioneer settlers of Northwestern Iowa were to have a terrible experience with the fierce Sioux before the Indians were finally expelled from the soil of the State. This last conflict between the white men and the red men within the limits of Iowa was precipitated by unprincipled characters of both races, and, as usual, the innocent were those who suffered most.

#### THE SIOUX THE LAST TO LEAVE.

By the treaty held at what is now Agency City, Wapello County, in 1842, the Sac and Fox as an Indian nation ceded the last of their lands in Iowa, and a few years later the remaining tribes who had claimed the soil submitted to the inevitable and were placed on Kansas reservations. The Sioux as a tribe were the last to depart, and from all accounts their greatest regret was to leave the beautiful lake region of Northwestern Iowa, and not a few of their bands refused to vacate permanently. Those who admitted that they were parties to the treaty of 1851 found that their reservation had already been cleared of game for their sustenance. Liquor was sold to them, often they became drunk and violent, and attacked settlers, not infrequently killing them. The Indians also found that they had unwittingly signed



away their annuities. They were robbed by traders, and often the Indian agents were powerless to right these wrongs.

#### FORT DODGE ESTABLISHED AND ABANDONED.

The establishment of Fort Dodge on the Des Moines River, in what is now Central Webster County, was brought about in May, 1850, by a detachment from Fort Snelling, near the mouth of the Minnesota River and was undoubtedly a great relief to the settlers of Northwestern Iowa. In June preceding the treaty of Traverse des Sioux the name of the fort was changed to Dodge. There were a few Indian disturbances in the valley of the Boyer, fifty miles to the southwest of Fort Dodge, in the fall of 1852, but, on the whole, the region of Western Iowa seemed so quiet since the capture and liberation of those "bad Indians," Inkpaduta and Um-pashota, that the military authorities took a step which has since been much criticised. They ordered the abandonment of Fort Dodge and the removal of the garrison to Fort Ridgely.

#### INDIAN DEPREDACTIONS RENEWED.

Soon after the step was actually taken, in June, 1853, the Indians inaugurated a reign of terror among the settlers as far east as the Cedar River. Not only were the lawless bands abroad, but parties of Indians frequently returned to their former hunting grounds, coming thither from their depleted reservation on the Minnesota River. War parties were in evidence in nearly every section, and the attitude of the Indians became one of defiance. Not only in Woodbury, Monona and Harrison counties, but in Buena Vista and what are now Humboldt, Webster, Kossuth, Palo Alto and Sac counties, the settlers were feeling the effects of Indian enmity. Not only was the military post of Fort Dodge abandoned, but the lands relinquished by the Sioux in 1851 were being thrown open to settlement, and settlers were rapidly pushing west of the Des Moines River, having been assured by the War Department that the Indians were established upon their reservation seventy miles north of Iowa's northern boundary. On the contrary, as stated by Thomas Teakle, in his "Spirit

Lake Massacre," they were invading Western Iowa in force. His words are: "Near Sergeant Bluff (Woodbury County) large bands of Sioux had gathered and expressed their determination to remain, while nearly five hundred Sioux were encamped in the vicinity of Fort Dodge. These Indians amused themselves by stealing hogs, cattle and other property of the settlers. Fears for the safety of the settlers were increased in view of the fact that the National Government was now preparing to chastise the Sioux near Fort Laramie for their manifold crimes committed along the California and Oregon trail in Nebraska and Wyoming. It was thought this action would cause the Sioux to seek refuge east of the Missouri and, as a matter of revenge, carry death and destruction with them as they fled toward the Mississippi Valley frontier." Under the threatening circumstances, the settlers appealed to Governor Grimes for protection.

#### LOTT AND THE MURDER OF THE SIOUX CHIEF, SIDOMINADOTA.

It often happens that far-reaching events originate not in sweeping causes, but in petty personal affairs leading often to bloodshed and individual vengeance. No sweeping causes led to the series of murders and the massacres which culminated in the Sioux horrors at Lakes Okoboji. The crimes and murders of a bad white man, whose victims were members of a roving band of Sisseton Sioux, forged the chain which finally was the means of sweeping the last of the Indians from Iowa soil. Nothing but evil was ever known of Henry Lott, who first appeared in Iowa as an Indian trader, a whiskey vender and a horse thief in 1845. In the following year he settled near the mouth of Boone River in Webster County. At that time, Sidominadota, a fierce and vindictive leader of the Sisseton band of Sioux, who had collected a force of several hundred kindred spirits, was frequenting that portion of the Des Moines Valley where Fort Dodge now stands. These red outlaws ranged a great expanse of country from the Des Moines westward beyond the Missouri and northward to the Minnesota River, although their favorite haunts were the headwaters of the Des Moines and the Little Sioux rivers and the region of the Iowa lakes. Lott's depredations among the Indians reached the ear of their leader,

and Sidominadota bore to the bad white man the decision of the Sioux council that he should leave the country. At first Lott refused to go, but when the Indians commenced to retaliate by stealing his property and abusing his family he fled with a stepson and left his wife and young children behind. His twelve-year-old son was frozen to death while in search of the cowardly father and husband, and his wife soon afterward died as a result of her mistreatment by the Indians and her cruel exposure.

Lott first settled farther down the Des Moines River, but in the autumn of 1853 he and his stepson passed through Fort Dodge on their way to settle at a new location. In November he selected his next cabin site, about thirty miles north of Fort Dodge, in Humboldt County, where a small creek (Lott's) joins the Des Moines River. There he reverted to the whiskey trade with the Indians, and business with his first three barrels of spirits was brisk, for at that time his was the only cabin of a white man in Iowa north of Fort Dodge with one exception—that of William Miller located about six miles from the abandoned military post.

In January following Lott's new settling (January, 1854) Sidominadota and his family—which comprised his squaw, mother, four children, and two orphan children—came up the Des Moines and encamped a short distance below the mouth of Lott's Creek. Being advised of the coming of the old chief, through whose influence Lott had been driven southward, his home pillaged and his son and wife died of exposure, the revengeful white criminal laid his bloody plans. How well he succeeded is thus narrated in the Teakle history: "Going to the lodge of Sidominadota, where he perceived that he was not recognized, Lott reported the presence of a large drove of elk feeding on the Des Moines bottom at a point known as the Big Bend. The chief's family being in sore need of food, the Indian was easily trapped by the ruse. Sidominadota, having been liberally treated to whiskey, mounted his pony and set out for the hunt; while Lott and his stepson followed. When a safe distance away from the Indian camp and beyond earshot, Lott and his stepson fired upon the Indian, killing him outright. Secreting themselves during the day, the murderers, at the coming of darkness,



disguised themselves as Indians, returned to the lodge of the murdered chief, raised a terrible warcry for purposes of deception, and then surprised and killed all the members of the family except a boy of twelve and a girl of ten years who escaped under cover of darkness. Completing the work of destruction, Lott returned to his own cabin, burned it to make the whole affair appear the work of Indians and, in the company of his stepson, fled down the Des Moines valley. Some years later, a report came back to Iowa that he had made his way to California and had there been lynched by a vigilance committee."

#### SETTLERS MOVE UP THE DES MOINES AND LITTLE SIOUX RIVERS.

Then came a lull in the clashings of the whites and the roving Indians along the Des Moines River, but, with the opening of the Sioux lands to settlement and the establishment of a land office at Fort Dodge, the invasion of the alien race commenced to move up the Des Moines and Little Sioux rivers. They passed up both branches of the Des Moines into what are now Kossuth and Palo Alto counties, and an Irish colony from Illinois settled south of Medium Lake on the site of the Emmetsburg of today. Up the Little Sioux came Yankees and others into what are now Cherokee, Buena Vista, O'Brien and Clay counties, the two migratory currents flowing toward the lake region of Northern Iowa, which had heretofore been the beloved and mysterious country of the Sioux. It had long been known to traders and voyageurs.

Again borrowing from "The Spirit Lake Massacre" by Thomas Teakle: "All reports of the region indicated it was the favored home of the Wahpekuta Yankton Sioux. Spirit Lake especially was believed by this tribe to be the scene of various myths and legends intimately connected with the origin and life of the tribe. It was reputed to be always under the watchful care of the Great Spirit whose presence therein was clearly evidenced by the lake's turbulent waters which were never at rest. It was this suggestion of the supernatural—a sort of mystic veil surrounding the region—that led many people to visit it. Some came only to view the lake and, having done so, departed to add perhaps one more legendary tale to the volume of its romance. Practi-

cally every visitor enlarged upon the great charms of the groves of natural timber bordering its shores.

“But in nearly all the accounts and tales of the region there was persistent confusion with regard to the several bodies of water. The Indians had always plainly distinguished at least three lakes; while reports by white men as persistently spoke of only one. The Indians knew of Okoboji, ‘the place of rest,’ of Minnetonka, ‘the great water,’ and of Minnewaukon, ‘the lake of demons or spirits,’ or Lac D’Esprit or Spirit Lake as it is known today. It is the first of these, Lake Okoboji, with which this narrative is primarily concerned. Upon its borders the first permanent white settlers built their cabins and staked their claims; and here was perpetrated the awful tragedy which has come to be known as the Spirit Lake Massacre.”

#### SETTLERS INVADE THE LAKE REGION.

The vanguard of the permanent settlers to invade the traditional home lands of the Sioux in the lake region arrived in July, 1856, and represented the families of Rowland Gardner and his son-in-law, Harvey Luce. They were natives of Connecticut, transplanted to the charming lake region in the vicinity of Seneca, New York, and spent about a year investigating this new country of the West in their endeavor to duplicate, in a measure, their eastern surroundings. At one time they had temporarily located at Clear Lake, in what is now Cerro Gordo County, but frightened away by a threatened uprising of the Indians, had transported their household goods in their huge ox carts to the country farther to the west, rumored to be a beautiful region of several lakes like their own home land in New York. Although many had visited the region before them, their claims on the southeastern shore of West Lake Okoboji were the first to be staked out. The location selected was several rods southeast of what is now Pillsbury’s Point, and Gardner and Luce proceeded to build not only their own rather large and pretentious house, but smaller cabins for the accommodation of new arrivals. Before the coming of winter, quite a settlement had formed within a radius of six miles of the Gardner homestead. The nearest concentrated settlement was that at Springfield, Min-

nesota, about eighteen miles to the northeast, and but recently established by people from Des Moines. To the south the nearest settlement to the lake region was Gillett's Grove, now in Clay County, more than forty miles away.

While these adventurous settlers were locating around the lakes of what is Dickinson County, the terrific winter of 1856-57 descended upon them, as well as upon the less protected savages. The cold was intense, the wind blew a hurricane, and in many places the snow had been piled into drifts fifteen or twenty feet high. The settlements at Oko-boji were short of provisions—in fact, in February, 1857, they were nearly exhausted, as both white settlers and famished Indians had been drawing upon the stock. With starvation threatening all, Harvey Luce and Joseph M. Thatcher started for Waterloo, on the Cedar River, in what is now Black Hawk County and far to the southeast. The sled destined for supplies was drawn by an ox team. The journey over trackless plains and through immense drifts of snow was an epic of endurance and self-sacrifice. When the men reached a cabin ten miles below the Irish settlement (Emmetsburg) on Medium Lake, the oxen gave out completely, and while Thatcher remained for several days at this point Luce went on to join the Gardners and his own family. He reached the Gardner cabin on the evening of March 6, 1857, and on the second day of his arrival the weather had greatly moderated.

#### BAD SIOUX INDIANS PASS UP THE LITTLE SIOUX.

At this time there was advancing up the valley of the Little Sioux the leader of a band of Wahpekuta Sioux, Inkpaduta, who had been one of the agents by which the murder of the Sisseton chief, Sidominadota, with various members of his family, had been traced to Lott, a representative of the race so hated by the Sioux, irrespective of minor bands. As Inkpaduta was a Lower Sioux and Sidominadota, an Upper Sioux, they could not have been blood brothers, as has been often claimed; but brothers only in the sense that they were red men and bound to avenge the death of any member of their race at the hands of their white enemy. Where Inkpa-



duta's band as an organization passed the first part of the winter of 1856-57 is in doubt, but it is known that in February when the season was at the height of its severity, but about to break, the blood-thirsty warrior, with about thirty of his men, accompanied by their squaws, started up the Little Sioux Valley. The chief sent detached parties to the settlers' cabins to seize their arms, ammunition, provisions and cattle, and leave them defenseless and destitute. As the savages advanced, their depredations became bolder and their outrages more cruel. At Gillett's Grove, Clay County, ten armed warriors forced an entrance at a cabin occupied by two families, seized the women and girls and subjected them to horrible outrages. They destroyed the furniture and beds, killed the cattle and hogs and robbed the terrified families of every article they wanted. Near midnight the settlers fled through the deep snow wandering for thirty-six hours, thinly clad, until they reached the little settlement at Sioux Rapids, Northern Buena Vista County. Meanwhile the fiends of Inkpaduta's band went from cabin to cabin repeating and even intensifying the outrages perpetrated at Gillett's Grove. Up to this time, however, no one had been killed. As soon as the Indians moved on up the Little Sioux Valley, several of the settlers of Sioux Rapids made their way through the deep snow to Fort Dodge, seventy miles distant. Their story of the Indian outrages created great excitement and indignation, but no one knew where the Sioux had gone, and the snow was still so deep and the weather so bitter cold, that had the destination of the savages been known an organized force could not have been fitted out to pursue them. It was near the first of March when the men from Sioux Rapids reached Fort Dodge with the intelligence of the Indian depredations along the Little Sioux.

#### TERRIBLE MASSACRE IN OKOBOJI REGION.

The morning of the seventh of March dawned with a decided moderation of the temperature, and as Luce had brought the news of the temporary delay of relief occasioned by the breaking down of the ox team, it was decided that Gardner should undertake a trip to Fort Dodge, not only to procure provisions but to purchase agricultural implements

for the spring activities. On the evening of the same day, Inkpaduta's band appeared and encamped across the trail which led from the Gardner cabin to all the other houses of the settlement. The Indians pitched their tepees around a square and at once held one of their horrible war dances as an index of their disposition. Quite ignorant of the outrages which these savages had perpetrated to the south, the settlers of the lake region slept peaceably through the night of the seventh of March.

The following morning was clear and bright, with a wintry tingle in the air, and the various members of the Gardner and Luce families were stirring early that they might speed Gardner on his way to Fort Dodge. As the household sat down to breakfast, served by Mrs. Gardner and Mrs. Luce, the cabin door was thrown open and fourteen fierce looking Sioux Indians, led by Inkpaduta, and accompanied by their squaws and children, soon crowded the cabin and asked for food, but when their hunger had been satisfied the warriors demanded gun caps and powder. Mr. Gardner gave them some caps, but an attempt of one of the bucks to snatch the powder horn from the wall was prevented by Mr. Luce and an outbreak then and there narrowly averted. The Indians then sullenly withdrew from the Gardner cabin and Bertell E. Snyder and Dr. Isaac H. Harriott appeared with letters they wished to send with Gardner. The latter expressed his fears of Indian treachery, told his friends that he had abandoned his plan to go to Fort Dodge and urged them to warn the settlers that they should concentrate at his cabin should trouble arise; but Snyder and Harriott on their way to their cabin across the strait which connected the Okoboji lakes met a number of Indians and traded with the savages in a friendly fashion, so that their growing suspicions were allayed and they did not even stop at the cabin of James H. Mattock, which was on the main trail along the shores of West Lake Okoboji from the Gardner cabin to the strait joining the two lakes. It was the keynote to the safety of the settlers around East Okoboji, and early in the afternoon of the fateful day Luce and Robert Clark, the latter a young friend of Luce's from Waterloo, started for the Mattock cabin, which was nearer the Indian camp than that of Gardner. An hour or



DR. ISAAC H. HARRIOTT  
First physician to locate in Dickinson  
County, July, 1856. Killed in Spirit  
Lake Massacre, March 8, 1857.



THE GARDNER MASSACRE





two afterward those anxiously gathered in the Gardner cabin heard a number of shots in the direction Luce and Clark had taken. But no one knows what occurred in and around the Mattock cabin. Not long afterward eleven dead bodies were found in the path between the Mattock and the Snyder-Harriott cabins. They were identified as Mr. and Mrs. Mattock, their five children, Doctor Harriott, Bertell Snyder, Robert Madison and Joseph Harshman. Madison was a youth who had come into the country with the Mattocks; Harshman, a trapper. Fire had also been set to the Mattock cabin and it was soon in ruins. North of the strait was the cabin of Carl Granger, who had failed to cross to the Mattock home. But the Indians had found him, split his head open with an axe, killed and scalped him. The bodies of Luce and Clark were not found until June, at the outlet to the east lake. At sunset of the first day of the massacre, the Sioux took another fearful toll of life at the Gardner cabin. At his wife's request, Mr. Gardner forbore to bar the cabin door, and as the day wore on the Indians committed no overt act other than to drive away the Gardner-Luce cattle, six in number, shoot them and leave the animals by the roadside. But, with sundown, nine of the Sioux braves rushed into the cabin, its "latch-string out," and demanded all the flour in the house. As Gardner turned to the flour barrel to satisfy this demand, a buck shot him in the back and killed him instantly. The Indians then turned upon Mrs. Luce and Mrs. Gardner, who had attempted to stay the hand of the murderer, and the women were beaten to death with the butts of their guns; and all three were quickly scalped before the eyes of Abbie Gardner, the fourteen-year-old daughter of the Gardners, her younger brother and two of the Luce children. All the children, with the exception of Abbie, were beaten to death against the posts of the cabin and the trunks of trees in the yard. Abbie Gardner was spared by the Sioux warriors to give such an account of their outrages as was possible from the observations and impressions of a suffering and terrified girl.

Inkpaduta's band was now equipped to indulge in the horrible ceremonials of the scalp dance which continued far into the night of the eighth of March. Early in the morning of the following day the Indians were astir, intent upon adding

to their savage warfare. Their first move was to start for the cabins of Joel Howe and Joseph M. Thatcher, about three miles from their encampment, on the southern shores of East Okoboji Lake. Ignorant of the terrible happenings of the day before, Mr. Howe started out on this Monday morning for either the Mattock or the Gardner cabin, with a sack over his shoulder to be filled with necessary provisions. He never reached his destination, but his badly mutilated body was found shortly afterward by a Fort Dodge relief party. Mrs. Howe, a grown son and daughter and three children, were also killed; and from this time the Indians did not stop to plunder and destroy, but lusted chiefly for blood, evidently fearing pursuit when their ravages should come to the knowledge of the people of Fort Dodge or other centers capable of organizing relief parties.

Arriving at the cabin of Joseph M. Thatcher and Alvin Noble, who were friends at Hampton, Franklin County, and had settled in this locality with their families, the Indians commenced to insult the various members of the household, including one Enoch Ryan, a son-in-law of the murdered Howe and who was then staying with the Nobles. The quarrel resulted in the slaying of both Ryan and Noble, and the killing of the children in the usual way, by dashing them to death against trees in the dooryard. Mrs. Noble and Mrs. Thatcher were then seized as prisoners, Mr. Thatcher, it will be remembered, being still absent with the marooned oxen and provisions south of the lakes. The Indians then dragged the captured women back to the Howe cabin, where still lay the mutilated bodies of the Howe and Luce families. As they had left for dead the thirteen-year-old brother of Mrs. Noble and had only terribly maimed the boy, the Indians completed their work by killing him. When the Sioux returned to camp, Abbie Gardner and the two new captives were permitted to occupy the same tepee.

Following the massacre covering two days and which yielded a toll of thirty-one lives, the Indians rested from their bloody work for a time, but on the morning of Tuesday, March 10th, they broke camp, West Okoboji was crossed on the ice and after moving three miles to the northwest again halted at Madison Grove. They remained here but one night,



and at early dawn of the eleventh they moved north to a grove beyond the cabin of William Marble, on the southwest shore of Spirit Lake. When the Marbles, who were from Linn County, came to the lake country in September, 1856, they decided to locate on Spirit Lake rather than on either of the Okobojis, and their cabin was therefore built five or six miles from the Gardners and the Howes. The home of the Marbles was therefore particularly isolated.

On the eleventh of March, at sunset, the Indians pitched their camp just north of the Marble Grove, out of sight of the unsuspecting victims of the lone cabin on Spirit Lake. The Indians gorged themselves with stolen provisions and poultry on the following day, removed the war paint from their faces, and on Friday, the thirteenth of March, 1857—early in the morning—a delegation of them visited the Marbles, set their guns just outside the door and entered with every outward appearance of friendship. They were fed, Mr. Marble was induced to trade his gun for one owned by an Indian, and finally the savages prevailed upon the head of the house to join them outside and indulge in target practice. When the wooden slab which served as a target was thrown over by the impact of the shots, Mr. Marble was induced to leave the group of marksmen to replace it and was shot dead. Mrs. Marble, who had watched the proceedings from a window, fled from the cabin toward the timber, but was captured. The Indians not only took with them their prisoner, but \$1,000 in gold which they had taken from a leather belt worn by the murdered man.

The murder of Marble was the last act in the Indian attacks upon the white settlements at the lakes, and it was the only one which occurred on the shores of Spirit Lake. But as the Lake of the Spirits or demons was long considered the main body of a nameless chain of minor waters the horrors fixed upon this lake region of Northwestern Iowa persist in history under the name of the Spirit Lake Massacre. At the death of Marble, on that unfortunate Friday, March 13, 1857, only four individuals in all that region had survived to tell the story—one girl and three women captives, and of these only two were destined to return to their friends or relatives and relate their tales of suffering and Indian cruelties.

From Spirit Lake, Inkpaduta and his fierce band moved toward Heron Lake and Springfield, Southwestern Minnesota, but before they reached their objective news of the massacre around the Okoboji lakes had reached Fort Ridgely, Minnesota, and Fort Dodge and Webster City, Iowa. Morris Markham, a trapper on the upper Des Moines in a search for some stray oxen, came across the shambles into which the Indians had turned the Gardner, Howe and Thatcher cabins and brought the awful tidings back to Fort Dodge. He with George Granger then went north to Springfield and warned the settlers of that little place, who sent to Fort Ridgely for help and prepared to place themselves in a position of defense should the Indians attack them. On March 26th, before relief could reach them, they were attacked, and although many were wounded and several killed, including the Wood brothers, leading traders of the region, they beat off their foes until a small detachment of soldiers arrived to protect them. In the meantime, also, relief expeditions of civilians had been organized at Fort Dodge and Webster City, under the general command of Major William Williams (who held his authority from Governor James W. Grimes), and a march was commenced up the Des Moines valley to the scenes of the Sioux ravages and murders. The first important stop was at the Irish settlement on the shores of Medium Lake, at which point many had already gathered in fear of an Indian attack. Here the expedition received recruits of men and fresh oxen and proceeded northward. On the 2nd of April, the detail organized to seek and bury the bodies of the dead in the lake region commenced their grewsome work and the slain and mutilated were finally identified and given tender interment, except the remains of Luce and Clark which were found at a later date.

#### THRILLING JOURNEY OF FEMALE PRISONERS.

The Sioux were now on their long march toward the Big Sioux and the James, or Dakota, of what is now South Dakota. The four women captives and the red squaws plodded along beside the sledges, staggering under heavy burdens of goods and children, while the noble warriors with their guns

rode in comparative comfort. For a month the food captured at Okoboji and Springfield, with the muskrats, skunks and other small game which they killed on the way, sufficed to keep the men, women and children alive, although many of the horses starved to death. At length the Sioux reached the Red Pipestone Quarry, in Southwestern Minnesota, and rested for a time to draw from its precious deposits and fashion the sacred pipes of peace. At length the band reached the Big Sioux River, swollen with the spring meltings and rains, but near the crossing at Flandrau temporarily bridged by fallen tree trunks. Mrs. Thatcher had been sick for a number of weeks and had rebelled at the heavy loads which she had been forced to bear. As she was about to pass over the bridge, her pack was removed and one of the Indians threw her into the river. When she attempted to regain her footing, others pushed her into the middle of the stream and finally one of the savages raised his gun and shot her.

On the 5th of May, the Sioux reached Lake Madison, at the head of Skunk Creek, South Dakota, twenty miles west of Flandrau. As they were now in the border of the buffalo range, a stop was made at this point while the men killed as many of the animals as they could and the squaws dressed the skins. While thus engaged, Inkpaduta received two Christian Sioux who had been delegated by Charles E. Flandrau, the agent of the Mississippi Sioux, to offer ransoms for the delivery of the white captives into the hands of their friends. For the consideration of one gun, a lot of blankets, a keg of powder and some Indian trinkets, he allowed Mrs. Marble to depart under the protection of the two Christians of the tribe and on May 30th she reached St. Paul in safety. Her two protectors were paid \$500 for their trouble.

Then came three other Sioux agents to treat for the release of Mrs. Noble and Abbie Gardner, and Inkpaduta consented to turn them over to another delegation of his tribe, who agreed to convoy them to the east in consideration of horses, goods, tobacco and provisions, valued by the Yellow Medicine Agency at \$889.12. But the Yankton Sioux to whom Inkpaduta entrusted his captives abandoned their charges and left them under the sole protection of the three Indians who had



been sent to ransom them by Flandrau. One night, while Mrs. Noble and Abbie Gardner were preparing to retire their tepee was entered by Roaring Cloud, a son of Inkpaduta, who ordered the white women away. Mrs. Noble refused to leave, and, after a struggle with the Indian, she was dragged from the tepee and beaten to death with a stick of wood. On the following morning as the squaws were breaking camp, the warriors gathered about the dead body and amused themselves by shooting arrows into it.

Strange to say, the girl was treated with the greatest deference on the journey eastward toward Southern Minnesota. Finally her bodyguard reached Traverse des Sioux, the headwaters of the Minnesota River, and thence journeyed with her to St. Paul. There she arrived on June 23, 1857, and in the following August was married to Casville Sharp, who was related to both the Noble and Thatcher families. Mrs. Abbie Gardner Sharp resided in Iowa for many years thereafter and from her invaluable "History of the Spirit Lake Massacre" many details of its horrors may be obtained which are not elsewhere found. Mrs. Marble in after years moved to California.

#### THE AFTER LIFE OF INKPADUTA.

Of Inkpaduta, the arch fiend of the massacre, it is reported that for five years he remained in seclusion with his tribe. In 1862, he was an associate of Little Crow in the uprising of the Sioux to clear the country of the whites in what is now South Dakota. The next picture in which he figures is as a blind old man, seventy-five years of age, led by his little grandsons in June, 1876, and hovering around the scene of the Custer massacre at the Little Big Horn. Afterward he fled to Canada with Sitting Bull, and it is said that his last days were spent in the country of the Red Pipestone Quarry, where perchance he repented of his cruelties or imagined that he was rewarded by the Great Spirit of his race for the sorrows he had inflicted on the hated whites. At all events, the so-called Spirit Lake Massacre, which he directed, put an end forever to the sway of the dreaded Sioux in the State of Iowa.

## FINAL DEPARTURE OF THE SIOUX.

At first, the Sisseton and Wahpeton bands were allowed to retain their reservation south of the Minnesota River, but the Sioux uprisings beyond the Missouri in 1862 induced Congress to pass an act in the following year moving all the bands "beyond the limits of any State." Then commenced the concentration of the tribe, as a whole, in Dakota Territory.





## CHAPTER V.

### ADVANCE OF THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER.

BONDS BETWEEN THE FLOYDS AND CLARKS—FLOYD'S BLUFF—BUILDING OF THE FLOYD MEMORIAL—THE FIRST SETTLER OF WOODBURY COUNTY—ORGANIZATION OF THE COUNTY—THE LAST OF THOMPSON—THEOPHILE BRUGUIER AND WAR EAGLE—JOSEPH LEONAI'S PURCHASES OF BRUGUIER—DIES AS A GENTLEMAN FARMER—THE FOUNDING OF SIOUX CITY—HOW THE SITE OF THE CITY WAS SAVED—THE MORMON SETTLEMENTS OF 1849-53—SMITHVILLE, WOODBURY COUNTY—FIRST SETTLERS IN CRAWFORD COUNTY—DELOIT AND DOW CITY—MORMONS STILL ACTIVELY ORGANIZED—THE FOUNDING OF DENISON—MORMON SETTLEMENT AT PREPARATION, MONONA COUNTY—TWO SETTLERS PRECEDE THE MORMONS—THE WHITING SETTLEMENT FOUNDED—EARLY SETTLEMENT OF CALHOUN COUNTY—SETTLEMENT AT WEST BEND, PALO ALTO COUNTY—THE IRISH COLONY—THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER STILL ADVANCING—CRITICAL END OF THE PIONEER PERIOD.

The white pioneers of Northwestern Iowa who ventured into an untried region as settlers in a strange land, as advance guards for the establishment of communities, towns and cities, obtained their first foothold in that picturesque locality where the Big Sioux joins its parent stream, the greater Missouri. It is worthy of note that white civilization in that part of the State should take root in the region where the remains of the gallant Sergeant Floyd were buried, and where his military rank and his distinguished family name were stamped upon the pioneer geography of Northwestern Iowa. For several generations the families of William Clark, one of the leaders of the historic Lewis and Clark expedition, and Charles Floyd, the first white man to make sacred by death the soil of Iowa, had fought and bled together to hold the valley of the Ohio against the onslaughts of the Indians and English alike.

## BONDS BETWEEN THE FLOYDS AND CLARKS.

Sergeant Floyd was born in the settlement near Louisville, the family surrounded by hostile Indians. His father and uncles had engaged in frequent battles with them, five of his relatives meeting death within a few years at the hands of the savages. Naturally, he was born with a spirit of adventure. In the summer of 1803, Captain William Clark, who resided near the Floyd family and had fought with both Floyd's father and uncle, received a letter from Captain Lewis, proposing a joint command of a government expedition to the Pacific Ocean, by way of the Missouri and the Columbia, and asking him (Clark) to pick up a few resolute young men to accompany it. Captain Clark turned instinctively to Charles Floyd, then twenty-one years of age, believing with other leaders of men that "blood does tell." Floyd was one of the three sergeants appointed to have active command of the expedition and had special charge of the officers' quarters, the stores and the whisky. Captain Lewis relied upon young Floyd to "see that no drunken brawls occurred." The journals kept by the leaders of the expedition show that Floyd was not altogether successful in this task. Two of the sergeants, including Floyd, and one of the privates, also kept journals of the expedition.

## FLOYD'S BLUFF.

The last entry in Floyd's journal was August 16, 1804, and noted the bringing in of an Otoe chief and some of his head men to attend a "talk" and a fish feast. Other important Indians were added to the delegation and on the 18th extra whisky was furnished in honor of the occasion, which was not only planned for the head chief but to celebrate the birthday of Captain Lewis. The dance of the evening was continued until 11 o'clock, and says a narrator of the affair, "it is probable that the diet of fish, the excitement of the dance, the feast of the day and the warm weather, with perhaps the effect of the water and the extra whisky, all contributed to disorder the stomach of Sergeant Floyd." He died on the 20th, and the official journal of the expedition, of that date kept by Lewis and Clark, noted that the expedition

passed two islands on the south side of the river, and that at the first bluff "Sergeant Floyd died with a great deal of composure."

In a special report accompanying the journals, descriptive of streams and creeks, Captain Lewis writes: "Sixteen miles higher up (from Maha Creek) Floyd River falls in on the north side 38 yards wide. This river is the smallest called by the traders of the Illinois, 'The two rivers of the Sioux,' but which with a view to discrimination we have thought proper to call Floyd River, in honor of Sergeant Charles Floyd, a worthy young man, one of our party who unfortunately died on the 20th of August, 1804, and was buried on a high bluff just below the entrance of the stream. This river takes its rise with the waters of the Sioux and Demone, from whence it takes its course nearly southwest to the Missoura, meandering through level and fertile plains and meadows, interspersed with groves of timber. It is navigable for perouges nearly to its source."

In September, 1806, when the Lewis and Clark expedition was on its return journey down the Missouri River, some of its members stopped at Floyd's Bluff and found that the Sergeant's grave had been opened and was half uncovered. It was refilled, and the expedition continued on its way. It is evident from the journals and other records that the captains of the expedition looked upon Sergeant Floyd as their most confidential and trustworthy subordinate, though he was one of the youngest men of the party, and this testimony was so broadcast that few expeditions, or prominent travelers passed that way without visiting the grave. W. P. Hunt, Henry W. Breckenridge, George Catlin, Jean N. Nicollet and others paid their tributes to it and its lovely surroundings. The original cedar pole set by the Lewis and Clark expedition was replaced many times in whole or in part, and by 1857 an oak marker had replaced the cedar pole. It is evident that some time in the '50s the Missouri River became very busy at Floyd's Bluff, and by 1857 some of the old settlers of the region became alarmed lest the remains should be washed away. Largely through County Judge N. Levering a movement was organized among them by which most of the skeleton was recovered, including the skull, jaw, fragments of ribs, and the large



bones of the lower limbs. The remains were taken in charge by Judge Levering, and afterward by District Judge M. F. Moore. They were re-coffined and re-buried, with quite elaborate ceremonies, the new grave being about 200 yards back from the brow of the hill or ridge which formed the original sepulchre. Thus again was Floyd's grave and memory honored. Then followed a public agitation for the erection of a memorial monument in that locality, which was renewed, from time to time, for many years. When the Sioux City & Pacific Railroad was being graded in 1867 the edge of the bluff west of the grave was cut away, exposing the burial place, but the engineer of the company, Mitchell Vincent, replaced the covering of mother earth, and came afterward to be one of the most active men in the erection of the monument. For more than a quarter of a century afterward, browsing cattle trampled over the hill and the site of the grave, and by 1895 its exact location had been forgotten.

#### BUILDING OF THE FLOYD MEMORIAL.

In the spring of that year largely through the initiative of the Sioux City Journal, an agitation was started to fix the exact location of the grave. Finally, on Memorial Day, May 30, 1895, C. R. Marks, John H. Charles and George Murphy (who had known the grave since 1854) carefully examined Floyd's Bluff, but could see no signs of a grave. Mr. Murphy finally stationed himself on the ridge and said that, as near as he could remember, the body of Sergeant Floyd was re-buried about where he stood. Mr. Marks (to whom the facts of this narrative are due) says that before coming he had calculated that in refilling any grave the walls of the excavation would be distinguished from the filled-in part by the difference in the color of the soil which is put back by the shovel in the same order it came out, and the black surface dirt would show. He produced a trowel and pushing it along the surface soon disclosed a distinct line in the soil and, using this line soon found the four walls of a grave about four by eight feet, without digging into the ground more than an inch. There was a possibility that some other persons might have been buried on this bluff, so the party decided to make no present report.

After this preliminary examination it was arranged that in the afternoon of June 6, 1895, a formal meeting and examination of the ground should be held at Floyd's Bluff. Those who were present at the reburial of the remains in 1857 were especially urged to be on hand. Those who assembled at that time were J. C. C. Hoskins, Samuel T. Davis, J. D. Hoskins, D. A. Magee, George Murphy, L. C. Sanborn, H. D. Clark, A. Groninger, A. M. Holman, L. Bates, E. R. Kirk, William L. Joy, T. J. Stone, C. J. Holman, John H. Charles, J. P. Allison, W. B. Tredway, J. L. Follett, Jr., and C. R. Marks. All of these but Follett, Magee and Marks were among those who had settled prior to 1860, and George Murphy had known Floyd's grave since 1854. He and others of the foregoing had been present at the reburial in 1857. After some examination, the place discovered on Memorial Day was pointed out and an excavation made chiefly at the west end. An oak plank was found at each end, as if placed for a head and foot marker, and about four feet down, the black walnut coffin was struck by the spade and at the west end it fell in. Enough was opened to disclose the skull, which alone was taken out and was not then put back for fear some one might dig it up and carry it off. The grave was then refilled. Then and there was organized the Floyd Memorial Association, with J. C. C. Hoskins as president and C. R. Marks as secretary. The latter wrote on the skull the date of this finding and signed his name. Those present also signed a statement setting forth the facts leading up to the identification of the grave; thus making the record complete.

From that time, the Floyd Memorial Association, through its presidents, Mr. Hoskins and John H. Charles, and its secretary, Mr. Marks, kept the matter of a monument continually before the public. On August 20, 1895, the anniversary of the death of Sergeant Floyd, impressive exercises were held to mark the placing of a large stone slab over the identified grave. The matter of an appropriation to further the enterprise had been taken up in Congress by Hon. George D. Perkins, editor of the *Sioux City Journal*, then serving in the House of Representatives, and in 1899, with the aid of the Iowa senator, W. B. Allison, a bill was passed enabling the

secretary of war to cooperate with the Floyd Memorial Association in the expenditure of the appropriation.

The site of Floyd's grave had originally been owned by William Thompson, the first settler of Woodbury County. The tract in which it was located had been sold under foreclosure, and passed through many hands until, in 1895, it came into possession of the Sioux City Stock Yards Company. In May, 1899, that corporation made a deed to the Floyd Memorial Association of the twenty-one acres now embracing the memorial park and the right-of-way to it in consideration of \$1,000, paid jointly by the city and the association. Under the supervision of Maj. H. M. Chittenden, a United States Army engineer, the memorial was finally designed and completed. The commissioners charged with the expenditure of the appropriation were George D. Perkins, Asa R. Burton (mayor) and C. R. Marks, of Sioux City; C. J. Holman, of Sergeant's Bluff and Mitchell Vincent, of Onawa.

The cornerstone of the monument was laid August 20, 1900, ninety-five years from the time of the death of Sergeant Floyd, the two earthen receptacles containing his remains being placed inside the monument base. The monument was completed and dedicated on Memorial Day, May 30, 1901. The ceremonies were appropriate and interesting and widely attended upon both occasions. Floyd's Journal was again brought from the archives of the Wisconsin State Historical Society, and among those who attended the dedicatory exercises was Mrs. Stephen Field, whose father, William Bratton, was a member of the Lewis and Clark expedition.

As completed, the monument was of Kettle River sandstone, 100 feet high, and was erected at a cost of \$20,000. Among others, the faithfulness and persistence of John H. Charles, president of the Floyd Memorial Association at the time of the dedication, has been enthusiastically commended. Not only does the monument commemorate the death of a noble young man, so highly appreciated by those famous pathfinders, Lewis and Clark, but it marks the birthplace of white settlement and expansion in Northwestern Iowa.

#### THE FIRST SETTLER OF WOODBURY COUNTY.

William B. Thompson, or "Bill" Thompson, as he was popularly called and often feared in the early times, departed



from Morgan County, Illinois, in 1848. His wife had died during the previous year and he left his two children behind with relatives. He appears to have had no hesitation as to his western location. Before he came into the wonderful region where the Big Sioux is absorbed by the Missouri, he was probably a frontiersman and aside from the long-time notice which attached to Floyd's grave, the travelers of the West all noted how the Indian trails from the south converged toward the level strip at the foot of the bluff. So this large, broad-shouldered, fearless and good-natured man (when he had his own way) reached the foot of Floyd's Bluff and there built a double log cabin to serve as dwelling, trading post and house of entertainment for travelers by land or river. The timber land south of him along the river was a favorite camping place for the Indians and continued as such for many years after he and others came to the region.

Although the Indian claims to lands in Northwestern Iowa had been extinguished at the coming of Bill Thompson, the land had not been surveyed and he had four years in which to examine the locality carefully. He took his stand accordingly. The view from Floyd's grave and bluff showed a great stretch of bottom land and a creek south of it, with a beautiful grove of many kinds of timber along the river. The traveled trail cut through the eastern part of it, the Missouri laved its shores, and the entire neighborhood abounded in game and wild fruit. Thompson concluded before the surveyors came that this was the locality for a logical settlement.

A number of Frenchmen, with their Indian wives, settled in the locality after the arrival of Thompson, and entered their claims after the Government survey was made in October, 1852. At that time, the acknowledged white settler claimed the Southeast Fractional Quarter of Section I, Township 88, Range 48. His house was on Government Lot 8 in said section and was near the river, south of Floyd's Bluff and between it and the small mound bluff next south. In the meantime, Charles C. Thompson, an older brother, had joined the pioneer and entered a claim south of Bill's. Soon after William Thompson settled at the foot of Floyd's Bluff, he built a corn mill propelled by horse power, the first manufactory in Woodbury County.

Although the survey of the Fractional Township 88 was completed on October 19, 1852, Woodbury County had not been organized, and Thompson felt that he was subject to no authority whatever. In fact, says one of his biographers (C. R. Marks), "he never got over the idea that he was subject to no law, rules or regulations. He was a sovereign by virtue of his physical prowess and priority of settlement. He had a supreme contempt for the rights or opinions of the smaller Frenchmen, with their squaws and Indian friends. He was good-natured, kindly and neighborly when not crossed."

A few days after the township survey was completed, Thompson's town of Floyd's Bluff was platted, and in January, 1853, it was recorded at Kaneshville (Council Bluffs). On his Government plat the surveyor, Alex. Anderson, marks Thompson's name and house, with some short lines north and south of it to indicate a town plat, and opposite to the west writes Town of Floyd's Bluff. The first records, or rather maps, are careless in their interchange of the names Floyd's Bluff and Sergeant's Bluff. Matters were even more complicated when, several years after Floyd's Bluff was platted, Sergeant Bluff City, as well as Sergeant's Bluff, appeared upon the surveyor's maps, both a short distance south of Floyd's Bluff.

#### ORGANIZATION OF WOODBURY COUNTY.

In 1851, Waukaw County was erected from territory originally embraced in Benton County, when the latter extended to the Missouri River. The State Senate wished the name Floyd attached to the county, but the House substituted the Indian name of Waukaw for it. An act of the Legislature approved January 12, 1853, provided for the organization of the county from and after March 1st of that year, and appointed Charles Wolcott, of Mills County, Thomas L. Griffey, of Pottawattomie County, and Ira Perdue, of Harrison County, to locate the seat of justice. The name of the county seat, when fixed, was to be Sergeant's Bluff. Mr. Griffey was made sheriff and charged with the organization of the county, and the commissioners were to meet, for the purposes named, in the succeeding July.



The Sanborn & Follett Sawmill, Mouth of  
Perry Creek



Store of W. F. Faulkner & Co.,  
Pearl Street



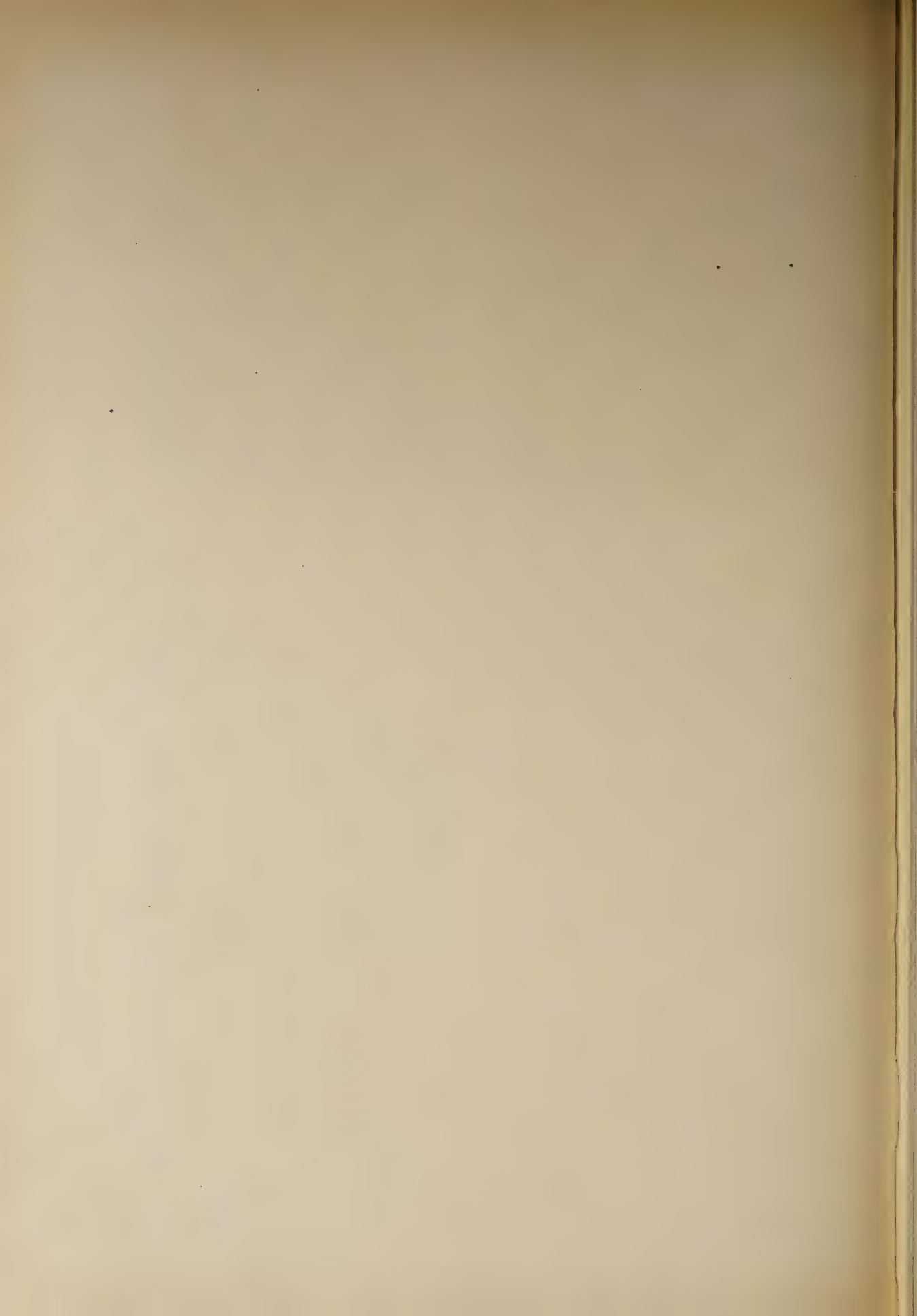
Northwestern Hotel, Second Street



Residential District

VIEWS OF SIOUX CITY IN 1864





On the 22d of January, 1853, however, the Legislature changed the name of the county from Waukaw to Woodbury, in honor of Hon. Levi Woodbury, of New Hampshire, an eminent man of his time who succeeded Judge Story on the Supreme bench. When the commissioners met on July 18, 1853, they reported that they had located the county seat on Section I and set a stake on the avenue running east and west between lots 131 and 37, as laid down on Thompson's plat of the Town of Floyd's Bluff. The general election for county officers was held at Thompson's house in the following August. Seventeen votes were cast, nine of which were cast by Americans—the remainder by Frenchmen, probably unnaturalized. As Woodbury County then embraced substantially Northwestern Iowa, wonder need not be expressed at the strength of the electorate. The officers elected were as follows: Marshall Townsley, county judge; Hiram Nelson, treasurer and recorder; Eli Lee, coroner; Joseph P. Babbitt, district clerk.

At that date the laws of Iowa provided that any organized county might petition the county judge of the nearest organized county and, by his authority, become attached thereto as a civil township for judicial purposes. Hence it was that Woodbury embraced Northwestern Iowa, each county being a civil township. Cherokee County was the first to be set off and organized in 1857. Under the law, the office of county judge was one of much importance and often much abused.

#### THE LAST OF THOMPSON.

Although William Thompson was one of the judges at the election which brought Woodbury County to the dignity of a distinct civil and political body of the state, he was honored with no office, for the probable reason that he had been indicted for murder in the previous fall and his trial was still pending. The quarrel, which resulted in the trial of Thompson for the crime, was over the attentions of a pretty French-Indian girl, and was between the powerful pioneer of Floyd's Bluff and an Indian agent or trader named Major Norwood. A dance was being given at the house of one of

the half-breeds to speed the popular major on his departure to St. Louis. In a quarrel over the girl, Thompson was shot through the clothing, and started for his home, about a mile away, to get his gun. Accounts differ as to when, where or how Norwood was killed; but killed he was, and Thompson was naturally suspected. The trial dragged through the courts of several counties, and finally in May, 1856, the defendant was acquitted by a Harrison County jury.

As the country was settled in Northwestern Iowa along the Missouri and Big Sioux, and the Indians were crowded ever westward, the fur trade declined and Thompson became a farmer. But he jealously protected his town site and his land, and for years would listen to no proposal to buy him out. He had trouble with the railroad and his neighbors over boundary lines, and continued to be regarded as a man of violence "when crossed." In 1869, he married a second time and built a comfortable house just east of the highway on the edge of the little valley. He continued to live as a small farmer, raising good crops of corn and hauling wood to the city which had passed him by. He died on this farm on July 10, 1879.

Thompson's land, including the site of Floyd's grave and the memorial monument which now stands near it, is on the southeastern border of Sioux City.

#### THEOPHILE BRUGUIER AND WAR EAGLE.

One of the remarkable men of the Sioux City locality was Theophile Bruguier. He was born near Montreal of a French father and an English mother. His paternal grandmother was also of English ancestry, which may account for his sturdy, athletic physique. His character is well analyzed on broad lines as follows: "A pretty strong infusion of mercurial French easily raised to fever heat, but rarely rising beyond control of his cooler English element." His parents were farmers of good family and connection, intelligent and well-to-do for that region. They desired him to be a lawyer and with that view gave him a better education than his companions enjoyed. But he was early put into commercial life at St. John, near his home, and, although fond of hunting



and adventure, led on the whole a dull life—what between his schooling and hard physical work. Under such conditions he chafed, and to add to his uneasiness a young French lady whom he was engaged to marry died of the cholera. He immediately left Canada for the valley of the Missouri and it was eighteen years before he returned to his native land.

Bruguier's uncle had become connected with the American Fur Company at St. Louis, and in the fall of 1835 the handsome, intelligent, adventuresome young Canadian reached that city, by way of the Great Lakes, Green Bay and the Mississippi River, traveling both by boat and stage. He entered the service of the fur company on November 19th of that year and started for Fort Pierre to trade with the Indians. He soon mastered the Dakota language and became widely and favorably known to the various bands of Sioux in the Northwest of those days. After experiencing two and a half years of this roving and half-wild life in connection with the American Fur Company, he established an independent trade. It must have been about this time that he formally assumed fellowship with the Yankton band of the Dakotas, and married two daughters of the Santee Sioux, known to the whites as War Eagle, who had come from Minnesota to the Missouri River country and been adopted into the Yankton Sioux tribe. It is not known how the name originated, as War Eagle, from all accounts had been a peaceful and useful friend of the traders and the Government. He was related by marriage to William Dickson, the trader at Fort Vermillion, and son of the famous Col. Robert Dickson, through whose half-breed veins ran the blood of several chiefs of the Yankton Sioux. War Eagle therefore became chief of this band both on his merits and his blood connections as cementing bonds between the whites and Indians of the region. With other representative chiefs he took the trip to Washington, in 1837, which did so much to bind the friendly Indians to a lasting peace with the United States. In token of his friendship, War Eagle was presented with a flag and a bronze medal, nearly three inches in diameter, on one side of which was the picture of the President and the words, "Martin Van Buren, President of the United States, A. D. 1837," and on the

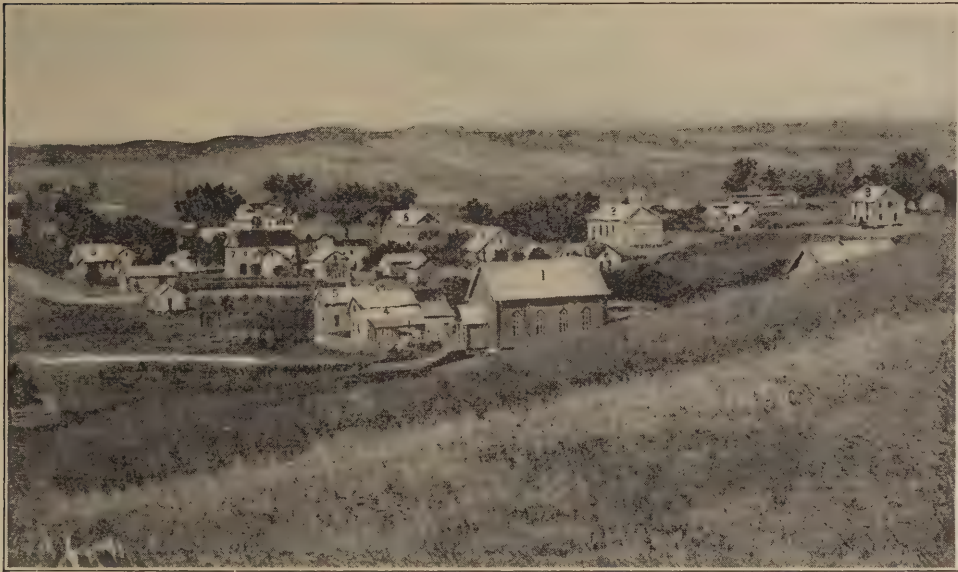
reverse side a crossed pipe and tomahawk, and the clasped hands of a white man and an Indian, with the words "Peace and Friendship." This form on the reverse of the medal as the United States standard for Indian medals, was used by Lewis and Clark on those presented to the Indians in 1804 and 1805. War Eagle very much prized this medal which is still in possession of his descendants.

For ten years Bruguier lived as a nomadic Indian, dressing and acting like a savage, but being a good husband and father to Blazing Cloud and Dawn, the daughters of War Eagle. In their family tepee were born thirteen children, all but two of whom reached adult age. This period was one of wild adventures and narrow escapes, but Bruguier's fearlessness, good judgment and great strength and activity carried him through them all, but not unharmed. Dr. William R. Smith, who was one of the early physicians in Sioux City and attended the Bruguier family, says: "It was no doubt that these noble daughters of War Eagle, the wives of Mr. Bruguier, maintained the proud spirit of the famous chief of the Yankton Sioux within the pale of civilization. I recall way back in the '50s the primitive but natural dignity and fine bearing of these noble and devoted daughters, wives and mothers, surrounded by a group of seemingly happy children, making, as I well knew, the bravest kind of an effort to master and practice the arts of a more exacting civilization than that to which they had been accustomed. They were tall and rather fine looking women and impressed one as possessing a genuineness of character which invited trust and confidence. How well I remember some of the smaller children, who, without any hesitation, would talk to their father in French, to me in English and to their mothers in Sioux. These mothers were pioneers of their race. They were pioneers of the frontier in raising Indian corn, the distinctive glory of our Corn Palace City." In after life Mr. Bruguier spent a small fortune upon the education of his children according to the ideas of white people, with only indifferent success.

Toward the last of his decade of wanderings, the French trader evidently had a reversal to the ways of civilization, and thus describes his turning point: "One night, when I



BALANGER'S BOARDING HOUSE,  
SIOUX CITY, IN THE EARLY '60s



LOOKING NORTHWEST FROM JACKSON AND SEVENTH STREETS, 1866,  
SIOUX CITY

1. St. Thomas Episcopal Church, Nebraska and Seventh Streets
2. First M. E. Church, Douglas Street near Ninth
3. Residence of John P. Allison, Douglas and Eighth Streets
4. Residence of John Hittle, Seventh Street near Pierce
5. Residence of Ben and William Andrews
6. Residence of E. R. Kirk, corner Eighth and Douglas Streets
7. Residence of L. C. Sanborn
8. Residence of O. C. Tredway
9. Property of R. Selzer
10. Residence and shop of McDougall & Millard





was at old Fort Pierre, I could not sleep and went up on the bluff and lay down in the open, and, falling into a light slumber, I was in deep grief for what I had become and for the place I was living in. All at once I saw spread before me a landscape of bluffs and a stream near a big river, with wooded ravine and bottom land and open prairie near by. I wakened with a perfect picture in my mind, which I described to old War Eagle, who at once recognized its features as existing at the mouth of the Big Sioux, which I had never seen. At this place I at once decided to make my abode."

Bruguier, accordingly, relinquished all authority in his tribe, turned his back on Indian life, and in May, 1849, established himself as a farmer-ranchman and trader at the mouth of the Big Sioux. War Eagle, who, in years gone by, had hunted and traveled in this region and was familiar with its beauties, accompanied his son-in-law. It is supposed that the Indian chief was now considerably past sixty years of age, and it is reported that he, too, had tired of a roving life and longed for a pastoral abiding place in this picturesque and fertile land. Several miles opposite Floyd's grave and bluff was a hill or ridge, which fronted the Missouri and Big Sioux rivers and overlooked the noble land which long after became sections of Iowa, Nebraska and South Dakota. Doubtless he had stood many times on this eminence overlooking such an impressive sweep of country and been uplifted by emotions which he could never express. If he really had the ambition to "settle down" and be an industrious and prosperous Indian, he was not to realize the longing, for two years after the Bruguier family settled at the mouth of the Big Sioux, War Eagle passed away.

The request of War Eagle to be buried on the hill which overlooked the merging valleys of the Big Sioux and the Missouri was followed. The old chief, whose age at the time of his death, is given by different authorities at from sixty-five to ninety years, passed away in 1851. His daughters, the wives of Bruguier, died in 1857 and 1859, and were buried a short distance north of his grave, as well as another daughter, who married Henry Ayotte, Bruguier's partner. Also two of Bruguier's children, who died in infancy, were buried

near the remains of War Eagle, with several Frenchmen who had married members of his family.

Says Mr. Marks in his "Sketch of War Eagle": "The exact location of War Eagle's grave can only be determined by its relative position as to the other graves. His granddaughter, Mrs. Julia Bruguier Conger, who lived at the old home when they were all buried and visited the ground recently (written in 1924), states that War Eagle's grave was the one nearest to the face of the bluff and the others are close to it, north or northeast of it. In preparing the ground for the erection of a small monument and tablet for War Eagle's grave in 1922, sufficient excavation was made to determine the relative location of the graves in this little cemetery, especially those referred to by Mrs. Conger as her mother's, next north of one without a regular coffin. It was said that his body was buried in a sitting posture on ground sloping from the north to the south, with his head above ground facing south."

The tablet marking the approximate location of the grave has the following inscription: "War Eagle, a member of the Sioux Nation, who died in 1851, and is buried at this place. This monument is erected in memory of his friendship to the white men by the War Eagle Memorial Association of Sioux City, 1922."

From the first, after his location at the mouth of the Big Sioux, Bruguier made money furnishing goods to the Indians and supplies to Government posts. But as the country was settled and the Sioux retreated up the river, he became more and more the genial, easy-going country gentleman, with many claimants upon his bounty. He profited by his services in connection with the cessions of lands to the United States by the Yankton Sioux, and through his Indian connections he received both money and valuable tracts of land. He had large holdings in both Plymouth and Woodbury counties, but lost all the tracts which he owned in what is now Sioux City.

#### JOSEPH LEONAI'S PURCHASES OF BRUGUIER.

A little Canadian Frenchman named Joseph Leonais who had been trading along the Missouri and Yellowstone for



fifteen years, with his headquarters in St. Louis, tired of his roving and in 1852 settled at the mouth of Perry Creek. That stream had been thus christened because three years before, Robert Perry, a somewhat eccentric character of Irish birth, had come from Massachusetts with his young wife and settled on the creek which bears his name. In the early summer of 1856, Perry left that locality for a new claim on the Little Sioux, in what is now Cherokee County.

When Leonais settled at the mouth of Perry Creek in 1852, Bruguier was living in his rude little log cabin a short distance west on the Big Sioux. But Bruguier had rolled together a few logs at the mouth of Perry Creek and broken up a little land there by which to hold his claim. Leonais bought the claim for \$100. The tract amounted to 160 acres and, viewed in the light of the present, may be described as bounded by the Missouri River, Perry Creek, Seventh and Jones streets.

Thirty-five years afterward, a local historian asked Leonais if he knew Robert Perry, and his reply was: "Oh, yes! When I was going to Bruguier's to buy my claim, I saw the blue smoke curling up from between the trees growing about his cabin, which was about where Smith's greenhouse is now (corner of Ninth and Pearl streets). I went to see him, but he could not talk much French and I but little English. He made me understand that he had raised some potatoes, turnips and corn, and that Sioux Indians had stolen all he raised. He seemed greatly alarmed about Indians. He was a very strange man, somewhat crazy I believe. He lived in his cabin for a year after I settled in mine, then gave me what corn he had left, about five tons of hay, loaded his household goods on a little sled, hitched his pony to the sled and went down the valley. I never saw or heard of him afterward."

#### BRUGUIER DIES AS A GENTLEMAN FARMER.

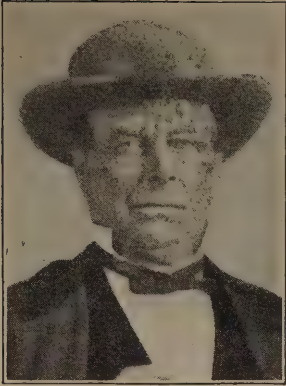
For a dozen years or more after he abandoned his roving Indian habits, Bruguier lived on his large estate of 700 acres at the mouth of the Big Sioux. There he traded extensively with the Indians and furnished supplies to the posts, near and far. He built a large house for his Indian wives and

children, and several cabins and stables near by. His place was usually overrun with Indians and half-breeds, who used his cattle at will—either alive or cooked, or both. It is said, however, that there was method in Bruguier's apparent mildness under provocation of open thievery, and that although he forbade this seizure of his cattle (and often their roasting on his premises) he closed his eyes to the seeming abuse and usually collected more from the Government agents than he could have realized had he sold his property in open market. At this homestead both of Bruguier's Indian wives died. The property finally passed into other hands. It included the present Fair Grounds, Riverside Park and a large tract eastward. It was sold under pressure of indebtedness, after which he realized his ambition to become a gentleman farmer.

In 1862, Bruguier married a Mrs. Victoria Brunette, a most estimable lady, whose life for many years had been spent at various trading posts from the Missouri River to Salt Lake and had been full of unusual and romantic experiences. Both parties to this suitable union were ready to live quietly and work together to build a home for their declining years. They therefore retired to a fine tract of land which Mr. Bruguier owned near Sandhill Lake, Salix, several miles to the south. There a large farm was opened on an unbroken prairie, and on that quiet homestead Bruguier died on February 18, 1895. He had hosts of real friends and his passing was deeply regretted.

#### THE FOUNDING OF SIOUX CITY.

Dr. John K. Cook, generally acknowledged to be the founder of Sioux City, was well worthy of the distinction. He was an Englishman, well educated and a graduate in medicine at London. During the earlier years of his residence at Sioux City he appears to have been too busy in laying out and developing the young town to have given much attention to his profession, although he was the first physician to arrive upon the ground. He resided at Carlinville, Illinois, and Council Bluffs, Iowa, for several years before coming to this locality. That Doctor Cook was an all-around practical man is evident from the fact he was engaged by the Government in the survey of Northwestern Iowa, and in the summer of



DR. JOHN K. COOK, 1854  
Founder of Sioux City



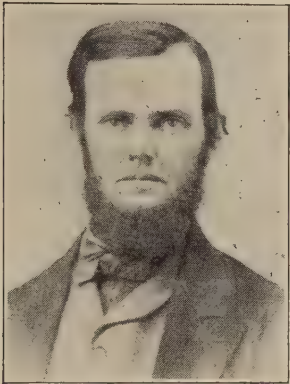
T. J. STONE, 1856  
Early Banker



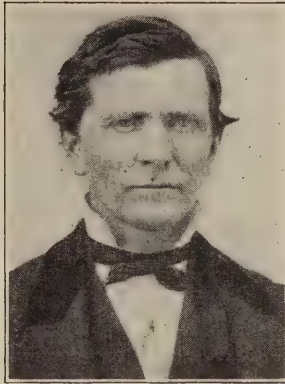
GEORGE W. CHAMBERLAIN, 1854



MRS. GEORGE W. CHAMBERLAIN,  
1854



WILLIAM L. JOY, 1857  
Attorney



L. D. PARMER,  
Early Merchant

EARLY SETTLERS OF SIOUX CITY AND THE YEAR IN WHICH THEY  
ARRIVED





1854 was instructed by a syndicate, of which Congressman Bernhart Henn and Senators G. W. Jones and A. C. Dodge were members, to select a favorable location for a town. Congressman Henn lived at Fairfield, General Jones at Dubuque and General Dodge at Burlington.

Woodbury County had been organized in the fall of the previous year and Doctor Cook's selection of a site for the projected town probably had in view both the location of a seat of justice and the more open spaces for the expansion of a city than was afforded by the country at and near Floyd's Bluff. He therefore directed his attention to a site farther north where Floyd River, Perry Creek and the Big Sioux all emptied into the Missouri. In the month of December, 1854, Doctor Cook commenced the first survey of Sioux City, on a quarter section of land on the west bank of Perry Creek. At the mouth of Floyd River he found encamped many Indians, including Smutty Bear, their chief, who ordered him to stop work under threats of violence from his warriors in the "upper country." Doctor Cook replied (through an interpreter) that if he (the chief) did not keep the peace a sufficient number of white men would be summoned to exterminate his tribe. Thereupon, the savages struck their tepees and departed. The weather, being delightful for this season of the year, the survey so rapidly progressed that it was completed on January 9, 1855. So mild was the winter that the men drove their stakes in their shirt sleeves and the Missouri River was frozen over but eleven days during the winter.

The plat of Sioux City proper was recorded May 5, 1855, and about the same time Doctor Cook, in behalf of the town site company, purchased a quarter section of Joseph Leonais. Upon this was afterward platted the East Addition to Sioux City. Leonais had built his cabin on what is now Second Street near Water, and opened a store for trading with the Indians. The Santee Sioux were then the most numerous Indians of the locality. Here Leonais had lived with his family and cultivated his land which came down as far as Pearl Street of today. He had raised three successive crops of corn since buying the tract from Bruguier, and then sold his claim to Doctor Cook, who is said to have represented that he wanted the land for an orchard. It is further said that

the sister of Leonais, who was living with him, opposed the transfer of his property, but was won over by Doctor Cook by the promise of a house and lot.

In the spring of 1855, there were two log cabins where Sioux City now stands. A post office was established in July, and a United States land office founded officially in December, although the latter was not opened for the transaction of business until 1856. In June, 1856, the first steamboat freighted for Sioux City landed, bringing provisions and ready-framed houses. The population increased that year to about 400, and some ninety buildings were erected. Great excitement for western land prevailed, real estate commanded high prices and the land office did an immense business.

Sioux City was now in line to contest the location of the county seat either at Floyd's Bluff (Thompsonville) or at Sergeant's Bluff City, still farther south. The latter had been platted several months before Sioux City and had snatched away the seat of justice in April, 1855, from the town of Floyd's Bluff, which looked large on paper, but only bore one building on its site—the cabin of Thompson himself. Then the Sioux City boom broke, and in March, 1856, the county judge was presented with a petition headed by George Weare, who had recently arrived from Cedar Rapids, as partner in a banking and land firm, praying for the removal of the county seat from Sergeant's Bluff City to Sioux City. Naturally, those interested in Sergeant's Bluff City remonstrated, but in April the electors voiced an affirmative vote by 116 to 72. When Sioux City thereby became the county seat of Woodbury, it was considered "founded."

#### HOW THE SITE OF SIOUX CITY WAS SAVED.

The original seven proprietors of the Sioux City Company were the two United States senators from Iowa, Dodge and Jones; James A. Jackson, a son-in-law of Doctor Cook; Daniel Rider, a land man of Fairfield, Iowa, each of whom owned an eighth interest in the town site, or one-half altogether; and Congressman Henn and Jesse Williams, an Iowa state officer, both also bankers (Henn & Williams), and Doctor Cook—each of these three owning a one-sixth interest.





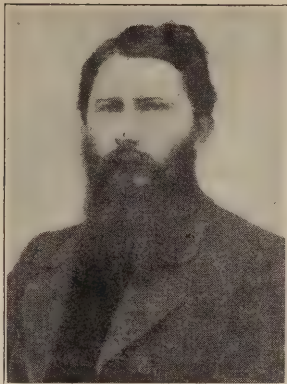
DR. A. M. HUNT  
Founder of Hunt School



C. K. POOR  
Contractor and Builder



GEORGE WEARE, 1855

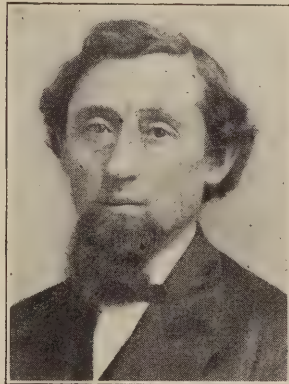


J. P. ALLISON, 1856

MEMBERS OF THE BANKING FIRM OF WEARE & ALLISON



W. F. FAULKNER  
Pioneer Merchant



J. E. BOOGE, 1858  
Wholesale Grocer and founder of the  
first packing house

EARLY SETTLERS OF SIOUX CITY AND YEAR THEY ARRIVED



Besides being incorporated as a town site company by the Legislature of Iowa, they had procured a charter from the Territorial Legislature of Nebraska for the operation of a ferry up and down the river opposite Sioux City. Through the two United States senators and the congressman, who were of the Sioux City Company, the post office and the land office were located at the new town, and in May, 1856, Congress made a land grant for a railroad from Dubuque to Sioux City. Thus Sioux City was founded largely under the guidance of influential public men, not a few of them also citizens of means. The original proprietors, in turn, sold their interests largely to congressmen and bankers in Washington, and in the spring of 1856 they named themselves the Sioux City Land and Ferry Company. This copartnership included all those who had bought from the original owners, such as Congressman W. R. Oliver and William Montgomery, of Pennsylvania, and Dr. S. P. Yeomans, the register of the land office, and an educated, adroit and influential citizen, who had done much to make George W. Jones a United States senator.

The Sioux City Land and Ferry Company also received into its ranks George W. Chamberlin, who had come to the site of Sioux City with Doctor Cook as a government surveyor and claimed the north half of section 28, now designated as the tract between Seventh and Fourteenth streets and from Water Street east to Clark. The officers of the company were: John K. Cook, president; Horace C. Bacon, secretary, and Dr. S. P. Yeomans, treasurer.

Doctor Yeomans has furnished this description of the town which the company was undertaking to develop. He says: "I reached Council Bluffs on my way to Sioux City in October, 1855. I found there a large number of mail pouches filled with blanks and documents for the Sioux City Land Office, and learned that there was no public conveyance north from the Bluffs. However, I prevailed upon the stage company to send up a coach, in which I was the only passenger. We were two days in making the trip, stopping the first night at Ashton, and I think that this was the first stage that ever entered Sioux City. The post office had been established and Dr. John K. Cook appointed postmaster, and it



was said that what few letters he received at first he carried in his hat, giving them out as he chanced to meet the parties to whom addressed. No contract had as yet been let for carrying the mails, but the same was sent by any person who chanced to go that route.

“The appearance of the town at that time was very unpromising. There were but two cabins on the plat and the town site was pretty much covered by a large encampment of Indians. In the treetops at the mouth of Perry Creek were lashed a number of dead Indians, while upon scaffolds upon the summits of the bluffs west of town were a number more sleeping the long sleep that knows no waking.

“The eating was all done at Doctor Cook’s table, and I trust no offense will be taken at this late day if I express the opinion that the cuisine of his establishment did not measure up to the standard of Delmonico’s; he did as well as any man could have done without supplies, and I don’t know but the bill of fare was as good as that served at the Terrific and other early-day Sioux City hotels.”

The opening of the land office at Sioux City, in charge of Doctor Yeomans, who, through his political influence, had been appointed register, drew an influx of home-seekers to the new town. Why the title to their lots was insecure and how the town site was mainly saved through the high and rather imposing personnel of those who constituted the controlling company is told in the characteristic style of C. R. Marks, viz.: “When the land grant from the United States Government for the railroad was made, May 15, 1856, the Government soon withdrew all the land along the line of the road from sale until the railroad lands were selected. At that time, only the part in the east half of section 29, mostly west of Water Street, had been entered from the United States, and the main settled portion of the town, where the chief business district now is, was still government land. This condition lasted until July, 1858.

“We were in a flourishing town of 500 or more people, all squatters on public land, but respecting the contracts given by the townsite company, relying on the fact that the members of this company were backed by the officers of the United States Government, and would see that the Sioux City Land



SIoux CITY, LOOKING NORTH ON PEARL STREET FROM SECOND STREET,  
AUGUST, 1866

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. E. R. Kirk & Co., Dry Goods | 6. Drugs                     |
| 2. Howard & Stites, Drugs      | 7. John Gertz Hall           |
| 3. Forest Saloon               | 8. J. M. Bacon, Hardware     |
| 4. John Tucker, Meat Market    | 9. A. Groninger, Hardware    |
| 5. New Drug Store              | 10. Milton Tootle, Dry Goods |



SIoux CITY, LOOKING SOUTHWEST FROM JACKSON AND SEVENTH  
STREETS, 1866

1. Residence of Andrew Parmalee, Nebraska Street near Sixth
2. Residence of Chris. Doss, southeast corner Nebraska and Sixth Streets
3. Residence of Robert McElhaney, Pierce Street near Fifth
4. Warehouse of H. D. Booge & Co., Douglas and Fourth Streets
5. Residence of Edward Todd, corner Nebraska and Fourth Streets
6. Residence of James W. Bosler, Douglas Street between Third and Fourth
7. Livery barn of Atwood & Westcott
10. Northwestern Hotel, Levee between Pearl and Douglas Streets
11. Sanborn & Follett's Sawmill





and Ferry Company eventually got the title. Some other additions were controlled by rival syndicates and were in the same condition, especially Middle Sioux City. Land schemers sought to find a way to get this town site land away from the company, but it was too well fortified with political power.

"The lands withdrawn were, in the usual formal way, advertised for sale at public auction, July 1, 1858, at the Sioux City Land Office. The register and receiver of the land office, S. P. Yeomans and Andrew Leech, were to conduct the sale in the land office building. A few staunch friends of the townsite company were let in at the back door before the hour of public sale and secured positions in the front row. Among them were Horace C. Bacon, G. W. Chamberlin and William R. Henry, for the Middle Sioux City syndicate. There was no attempt by any outsider to interfere, and these men bid in their tracts at the price of \$2.50 an acre. Our old townsman, L. C. Sanborn, who came here with Horace C. Bacon, was one of those let in the back door and he told me of this episode.

"The situation, however, had not been free from danger from another cause. Up to June, 1857, money had rolled in and the town boomed, but a great financial panic swept over the country; banks failed, the town was busted and many left. So when the time came, July 1, 1858, to enter the land the townsite company were troubled to know how they were going to get the \$800 to enter the land. A short time before the date of the sale, a man with gold from California drifted in and they sold him a lot for \$600, near the southwest corner of Fourth and Water streets, and the day was saved."

The year before the town site had been saved by such a narrow margin, Sioux City was incorporated as a municipality; so that, from the late '50s its foundation may be said to have been firmly laid.

And while Sioux City had been taking shape, what of the pioneer settlers and settlements of other sections of Northwestern Iowa?

#### THE MORMON SETTLEMENTS OF 1849-1853.

The most important migratory movement of Iowa's pioneer period through which settlements in the southern and

northwestern portions of the state were stimulated was that which followed the expulsion of the Mormons from Nauvoo, Illinois. Their first contingent started on their enforced journey toward the Missouri and across the state from a camp on Sugar Creek, Lee County, and almost in sight of their deserted City of Nauvoo. They were forced out into this unknown country in the cold of February, and for five months their various bands floundered in snow drifts and cold spring rains. Some of their camps became settlements, their weary trail of 300 miles leading them through the southern border counties of Lee, Van Buren, Davis, Appanoose and Wayne; thence northwestward through Decatur, Clark and Union, and thence westward through Adair, Cass and Pottawattomie. In July, 1846, the vanguard of these 15,000 pilgrims, who had not fallen by the way, reached the Missouri River and founded a town called, successively, Hart's Bluff, Traders' Point, Kaneshville and Council Bluffs. Its most popular name while the Mormons remained at the settlement was attached to it in honor of Colonel Kane, of Pennsylvania, who organized the Mormon Battalion for service in the Mexican war. In 1849-51 great numbers of gold seekers passed through Kaneshville on their way to California, and large outfitting stores were established. Many of the Mormons remained in Kaneshville, or Council Bluffs, and at other places along their route in Iowa until 1854, when all the faithful were summoned to Salt Lake City.

All, however, who called themselves Mormons did not go. The largest schism who refused to follow the leadership of Brigham Young was controlled by Joseph Smith, Jr., and his mother, Emma Smith. They repudiated the practices of polygamy, claiming that their faction were the true disciples of Mormonism. The headquarters of this sect was at Lamoni, Decatur County, Southern Iowa.

Prior to the grand exodus from Kaneshville, many Mormons had left the river town and settled farther to the north, especially in what are now the counties of Woodbury, Crawford and Monona. Shorn of their polygamous relations they proved to be good citizens and many held influential positions





LOOKING SOUTHWEST FROM JACKSON AND SEVENTH STREETS, 1868,  
SIOUX CITY

1. J. J. Schlawig's residence, Nebraska and Sixth Streets
2. Mat Gaughran's residence, Douglas and Fifth Streets
3. John Allen's residence, Nebraska Street above Sixth
4. John Hagy's residence, northwest corner Pierce and Sixth Streets
5. First Congregational Church, Douglas Street between Fifth and Sixth
6. St. Elmo Hotel, Douglas Street between Fifth and Sixth Streets
7. Quarter block on which the Court House was built in 1876
8. Summit of Prospect Hill



THIRD STREET BETWEEN PEARL AND DOUGLAS STREETS, 1869,  
SIOUX CITY

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. John Pierce, Real Estate      | 6. Gurnsey's Photograph Gallery                               |
| 2. C. A. Maxon, Dentist          | 7. John M. Pinckney & Co., Books and Stationery (Post Office) |
| 3. Dr. John Bailey               | 8. L. W. Tuller, Groceries                                    |
| 4. Mrs. Wash Fullen, Milliner    | 9. Andrews Bros., Groceries                                   |
| 5. Burkam & Bucknam, Real Estate |   |





in the communities which they founded, as well as over a larger scope.

#### SMITHVILLE, WOODBURY COUNTY.

Mormons commenced the settlement of Smithland, in Woodbury County, in 1851, or possibly earlier. William White, Curtis Lamb and J. Sumner, known as apostate Mormons, left the settlement at Kaneshville and squatted on land in the Little Sioux Valley, near what is now the southern border of Woodbury County. In the fall of 1852 Orrin B. Smith, his brother, Edwin, and John Hurley, started from the Council Bluffs town on a hunting expedition. Following up the Little Sioux, to their surprise they came across the three squatters living comfortably in this wilderness. They stopped with Sumner a short time, as he had made some improvements on his property and then proceeded on their way up the valley. On the return of the hunters, Orrin Smith was so impressed with the beauty and fertility of the locality where Sumner had squatted and held two claims, that he bought the rights of the temporary settler for \$100 in gold.

Smith at once took possession and shortly afterward returned to Council Bluffs. He sold one of his purchased claims to Eli Lee, who, with his family, occupied his land in February, 1853. Shortly afterward, Orrin Smith moved his own family to the claim which he held. What was at first known as the White settlement began with the two Smiths, William White, Curtis Lamb, Eli Lee and John Hurley, some of them with families. William White, after whom the original settlement was named, afterward moved into Monona County. He started the first ferry to cross the Little Sioux River.

The White settlement materially increased in numbers from 1853 to 1855, inclusive, the newcomers including Martin Metcalf, a Methodist exhorter, probably the first to conduct Christian religious services in Woodbury County. The first natural increase of population recorded during that period was the coming of twins to the household of Mr. and Mrs. Edwin M. Smith, in 1854. Two years afterward, a steam sawmill was erected by Mr. Smith and others. During

the year of its erection, he accidentally fell upon the saw and was killed.

In the meantime, Orrin Smith had come to the front as the most prominent man of the settlement, and one of the representative men of the county, and when Woodbury was organized by the election of August, 1853, he was elected prosecuting attorney, and in the following year, county judge. To hold the latter office was a great honor in those days, as the duties of the county judge covered those afterward delegated to the board of supervisors and auditor, as well as much probate business. In 1855, Orrin Smith platted his town of Smithland on Section 26, Range 44. He was appointed postmaster and the office added to his importance. A mail route had been established which ran from Fort Dodge to Sioux City, with Smithland as a growing station. Even Sioux City was behind Smithland in the inauguration of schools for the rising generation of boys and girls; for the first schoolhouse in Woodbury County was built in Smith's town, principally by the owner of the site himself. It was completed in 1855 and constructed of hewn cottonwood logs, with puncheon for the floors and doors. It was taught by Miss Hannah Van Dorn, afterward Mrs. Burton, of Onawa, and was, of course, a subscription school. The teacher received \$2 per week for instructing the five or six children who were in attendance, and Mr. Smith boarded her free of charge.

In the county seat fight between Sioux City and Sergeant's Bluff City the proprietor of Smithland threw his influence for the more southern contestant, but was unable to stem the tide which, in the spring of 1856, swept the coveted honor into the keeping of Sioux City.

It was one of the natural routes of travel for the disaffected or dissatisfied Mormons at Kaneshville, or Council Bluffs, to prospect up the Boyer River Valley. They did so in the early '50s and were the means of founding Deloit and Dow City. Denison, in the Boyer River Valley, between the two Mormon settlements, was of later establishment and was founded and developed in a more systematic and business-like way. It did not just happen to be.



## FIRST SETTLERS IN CRAWFORD COUNTY.

The first settlers who came to Crawford County did not antedate the Mormons by more than a year, and they were followers of Cornelius Dunham, a Vermonter, who had settled in Jackson County, Eastern Iowa, gathered a substantial lot of cattle and hogs and decided to establish a home farther west in line with the flowing stream of migration toward California. He engaged Franklin Prentice and wife to care for his live stock and build him a house; Reuben Blake to drive his cattle and hogs to their destination, and his oldest daughter, Sophronia Dunham, to assist with the cooking. The leader of the little colony reached his claim, afterward known as Dunham's Grove on East Boyer River about six miles east of the town of Denison, in the early summer of 1849. Leaving Mr. Prentice and family to care for the stock and build him a cabin, Mr. Dunham and daughter, with Mr. Blake, returned to Jackson County to raise a crop and bring the family on in the fall.

Mr. Prentice built the cabin in the open season. For its door, he cut down a large walnut tree and hewed from it an immense plank four inches thick, which he hung with massive wooden hinges. It must have been a lonesome existence for himself and wife, despite the duties with which they were charged. Mr. Prentice supplied his family with meat from the droves of elk and deer around him, but before Mr. Dunham reappeared with his family, the caretaker's powder was so nearly exhausted that he was about to start for Council Bluffs to replenish his stock. Mr. Dunham reached his claim in time to prevent this long and hazardous journey. Despite Mr. Prentice's care in guarding the live stock entrusted to his charge, some of the Dunham hogs escaped and years afterward their wild progeny were seen by early settlers roaming the neighboring region.

Cornelius Dunham first settled on what afterward became the Tracy Chapman farm, in section 2, East Boyer Township, in the autumn of 1849. In the same year, Franklin Prentice took a claim at the mouth of Otter Creek, on Boyer River, near the wooded tract, which, within the following four or five years became the center of the settle-

ment which finally developed into Deloit. This was the first concentration of settlers in Crawford County, although Denison preceded it as a platted town.

The original settlers were Mormons from Council Bluffs and soon afterward they were joined by other pioneers from Eastern Iowa, some of whom had known the members of the faith when they were driven from Nauvoo and commenced their pilgrimage to the West. In June, 1850, Jesse Mason and his family settled northeast of the central part of the county in the large grove, to which his name was at once attached. During the same summer Noah V. Johnson and his brother, George J., as well as Calvin Horr, joined their fellow religionists, and before winter Levi Skinner and family also established homes at Mason's Grove. About a year afterward, Benjamin Dobson and family, and his son, Elder Dobson and family located near Mason's Grove, where the town of Deloit was subsequently laid out. Mormons and non-Mormons lived together in friendship and frequently intermarried.

At first the settlement was generally known as Mason's Grove, and the mail was regularly received from Galland's Grove. Soon, however, a post office was established with Ben Dobson as postmaster. It then became necessary to select a name, and the office was known as Boyer Valley. Next, it was christened as Bloomington, but as there were many places by that name in the United States, the post office department requested the townsmen to make another attempt. Mason, Mason Grove and Mason City were all suggested. Then Beloit was chosen. Then, the more far-seeing Government again objected to the name, on the old plea that "there were already too many Beloits in the United States," and the weary townspeople instead of hunting an entirely new name substituted a D for a B; and Deloit it has remained to this day—a pretty little village of a few hundred people nestling on a hillside at the head of a turn of the Boyer Valley.

In the southwestern part of Crawford County, also in the valley of the Boyer River, were several beautiful and fertile groves, which were irresistible magnets to home-seekers and would-be settlers. The same statement applies to the

more southern counties stretching to Council Bluffs and the Missouri. Galland's Grove, in Northern Shelby County, obtained such an influx of these immigrants as to overflow into the southern part of what is now Crawford County. The majority of the pioneers of the latter section were Mormons, and North Grove became the nucleus of the settlement which expanded into Dow City, as Mason's Grove was the forerunner of Deloit. It is claimed that Frank Rudd, a Mormon elder, who came to North Grove with his family in 1850, and built a cabin in that locality, was the first settler there. As he was a hunter, a trapper and a tanner of deer skins, as well as a respected member of his church, he took a prominent place in the community, and also founded a family well known in its annals. James M. Butler, the second settler to build a cabin, located in the upper Grove in March, 1851. He and several others were frightened away by Indian raids which extended into Shelby County. Some, however, returned when the threatened danger was over.

The first permanent settlements were made in 1853. Edmund Howorth, who located on section 26, Union Township, was perhaps the pioneer of this lot. In the same year a number of Mormons settled near where Dow City now stands—Elder John R. Rudd and Benjamin F. Galland, with their families. Elder William H. Jordan arrived the next year.

#### THE FOUNDER OF DOW CITY.

S. E. Dow, a New Hampshire man who had lived in Michigan a number of years, was unaffiliated with the Church of the Latter Day Saints. In 1854, he started to seek his fortune in California, but on his way to Council Bluffs concluded that the prairies of Illinois were good enough for anyone. The remainder of his useful life of more than fifty years is thus indicated in the words of F. W. Myers, the historian of Crawford County: "He returned as far as Harris Grove, in Harrison County, where he spent the winter, coming to Crawford County the year following. Here he selected a beautiful tract of land, which he so long occupied, beginning immediately to improve and build a home for himself and family. This proved the nucleus around which grew the settlement of Crawford, later Dowville and now Dow



City. He was elected county judge and county treasurer and held many minor local offices. The one that he appreciated most was that he was the first postmaster of Crawford. The home of Mr. and Mrs. Dow was noted for its hospitality. When so many of the settlers needed assistance they always found it and a cordial welcome awaited them at the Dow house. On the establishment of the station on the Northwestern Railway, Mr. Dow began business, forming a partnership with Mr. Abner Graves, his son-in-law. For many years this was the leading business concern of the western part of the county. Financial reverses came and Mr. Dow was reduced from affluence to comparative poverty, but he never lost the good will, esteem and confidence of his neighbors, and no man has held a more honored position among those who knew him best. His later years were spent in retirement, although he continued to take an active interest in the affairs of the community and his judgment was respected by all. Mr. Dow died October 30, 1906, at his home in Dow City. Impressive funeral services were held, people from all parts of the county being in attendance. What Thomas Dobson was to Deloit, what J. W. Denison was to Denison, S. E. Dow was to Dow City—the founder and constant friend.”

#### MORMONS STILL ACTIVELY ORGANIZED.

The Latter Day Saints in Crawford County, who did so much to found Deloit and Dow City, have maintained their local organization for more than seventy years. An active reorganization of the interests of the general church was commenced as early as 1852, when missionaries were sent out to preach and build up the sect. The first of these missionaries to come to Crawford County was Elder John A. McIntosh, of Shelby County, accompanied by Elder Alexander McCord, who came to Mason's Grove in August, 1858, and held services in a log schoolhouse near Deloit. A Deloit branch was organized in 1862, with Elder Thomas Dobson as president or pastor, and in 1867 the members of the church at Dow City also formed a branch, of which Elder George Montague was pastor. The headquarters and publishing houses of the general church of the Latter Day Saints are at

Lamoni, Decatur County, Iowa, and at Independence, Missouri.

#### THE FOUNDING OF DENISON.

Before Denison was located, Crawford County had been settled for five or six years. There was a flourishing community at Mason's Grove, a little store had been established at what is now Deloit, and along the Boyer, at that place, a sawmill and a gristmill were in operation. There were settlements in the groves along the creeks and rivers; at Durham's Grove on the East Boyer, at Coon Grove in the southwest part of the county; and at Bee Tree Grove. There was also what was later known as Fort Purdy, in what was called the Burnt Woods.

The county seat of Crawford was the creation of Rev. J. W. Denison, Baptist minister of New York, who had preached several years in Illinois before his health failed and he sought to regain it by pursuing a more active and outdoor life. His short residence in the Mississippi Valley had impressed him greatly with its possibilities and probabilities, and, returning to the East, he so interested a number of capitalists as to bring about the formation of the Providence Western Land Company, with himself as its agent. In the fall of 1855, he therefore came to Iowa and entered over 20,000 acres of land in Crawford and Harrison counties for the company which he represented. The sudden death of his wife called him to Rock Island, his temporary home, but in the spring of 1856 he returned to Crawford County which he had decided to make the center of his operations.

But the Rev. Mr. Denison has spoken for himself in these words: "In the fall of 1855, the undersigned formed a land company in Providence, R. I., called the Providence Western Land Company, with the view of investing in government lands at some points in Western Iowa, where a village or town could be built up in connection with the farming interests. It was designed to secure about a township, or 23,040 acres of land as a basis of operations; and for this purpose a fund of \$31,000 was advanced, and to this was soon added \$20,000, making a capital of \$51,000 for the work.

“After a careful survey of the field through Central, Southern and Western Iowa, it was decided to pitch our tent permanently in Crawford County, being central in location and sufficiently distant from any place of importance to give room for healthful growth, while the soil, streams and timber gave evidence of value equal to any, and far exceeding many of the counties of the state. The four diagonal points of notice, of which this was the center, were Council Bluffs, 65 miles southwest of us; Sioux City, 75 miles northwest; Des Moines, 100 miles southeast, and Fort Dodge, 75 miles northeast. A state road from Des Moines to Sioux City ran through this country, as did also a road from Council Bluffs to Fort Dodge; and a dotted line on the maps of that day indicated the line of railroad some day, east and west through the center of this tier of counties, which is the exact center line of the state to a mile.

“The population of the county was not to exceed two hundred; about half of it being in and around Mason’s Grove and the other, in and around smaller groves in the southern part of the county, in both places along the Boyer River and its tributaries. The center of the county was honored with one family, located within about a mile and a half of the center. Some three miles farther south were a few families and among them our honored county judge, John R. Bassett.

“It was in this vacant center that we pitched our tent, at the junction of the Boyer rivers, for the proposed town site, within one mile and a half of the geographical center of the county, and secured some twenty thousand acres of land in its vicinity for the farming interests. As the county seat was not yet located, it was natural that we should suggest to the locating commissioners appointed by the district judge that they consider the merits of this point among others, as the one designed by nature for the shire town of the county. They did so, and, as the result, the county seat was located where it has since remained, and, doubtless will continue, as long as the Boyer remains. This was the spring of 1856, and in the same spring was that memorable Land Grant of Congress for aiding the construction of four railroads through the state east and west, and one of them to run on the parallel of 42 degrees as near as practicable to the Mis-



souri River. As this line was directly through the center of Crawford County, it was but natural to conclude that we were in luck—that we were ‘in town.’

“By the way, the incident that resulted in the naming of the town might interest some inquisitive ones upon that topic. It was this: The commissioners having decided upon the location, and returned to the house of the county judge for making out their report to the district judge, had gone on with their preamble to the point of describing the location and saying ‘its name shall be’—at this point they stopped and began to suggest names. Finally Mrs. Bassett, an invalid lady confined to her bed and for years unable to walk, spoke up and said, ‘Why not call it Denison?’ ‘Denison?’ said they, ‘Yes, that is the name,’ and immediately completed the sentence ‘and its name shall be Denison.’

“To that much esteemed lady, therefore, Mrs. Bassett, who is still the same invalid (written in 1875) with the same Christian spirit of meekness that these twenty years have since witnessed, belongs the honor of naming the county seat of her adopted county; and the judge, her devoted husband, who was the chosen executive for six or eight years, still remains an honored servant to witness the growth of the town and of the county from the cradle to the beginning of manhood—the former from blank to a population of 1,200, the latter from 200 to 7,000, with every indication of increase beyond any of his most favorite dreams.

“There was with me in that early day, R. W. Calkins, of Rock Island, Illinois, who rambled with me days and nights over the bleak prairies, that dreary fall and winter; and when we brought up in this country we made our headquarters at Father Dobson’s in Mason’s Grove, now Deloit, a town of his own making, and who, at that time, had the only saw and flouring mill within the distance of forty to sixty miles in any direction, and the burr-stones of which he was said to carry in his side pockets to his house for dressing! When completed, they would turn out from three to ten bushels of corn a day for the weary farmer who had hauled it for thirty or forty miles for that early staff of life—the gist of ‘hog and hominy.’”

## MORMON SETTLEMENT AT PREPARATION, MONONA COUNTY.

In the fall of 1853, a colony of Mormons numbering about 500 men, women and children existed at Preparation near the southern line of Monona County in the neighborhood of the Soldier River. It remained under the leadership, or stewardship of Charles B. Thompson for five years, its adult members, during the later portion of that period being in a state of suspicion, which culminated in open rebellion.

Thompson was of Quaker parentage and a native of New York. When a young man he joined the Methodist Church, but soon after became interested in the Church of the Latter Day Saints at Kirkland, Ohio, was confirmed by Joseph Smith and ordained to preach. He continued to be connected with various organizations in New York, Ohio, Missouri and Illinois, and when he moved to Nauvoo after the death of Joseph Smith he was a high priest. Soon afterward he had visions and in one of them he claimed to have received a revelation from one Baneemy, a spirit successor to Joseph Smith, that he had been appointed Chief Teacher of the Schools of Preparation of Jehovah's Presbytery of Zion, as an interpreter of the Book of Mormon. He claimed to have had the revelation at St. Louis in January, 1848, and three years later commenced the publication of a monthly to spread his views. In September, 1852, the region around Kanessville was selected as the meeting place for the gathering of the schools of instruction, or preparation, and the headquarters of the traveling missionaries. In December of that year an assembly of Thompson's followers was held near Kanessville, but, as yet, no provision had been made for the removal of Thompson and his family from St. Louis.

Thereupon, Thompson had a revelation from his guardian spirit, Baneemy (the significance of which name he variously explains) that he should be conveyed to a proper place in which he could carry on his great work. By November, 1853, the site of Preparation had been selected and Thompson's house was ready for himself and family. The town was laid out into acre-lots and all the timber within six miles was pre-empted by members of the colony under United States laws; and at first this timber and the town were all that was con-

templated to be held by the church or Presbytery. Thompson held the claim to the town plat. The form of the town organization was much the same as that adopted by the Mormons in their settlements, especially at Nauvoo; to give each settler a block or lot of one acre for a home, the farming to be conducted outside by those living in the town. Thompson's printing press had been set up, and in November, 1853, the September number of his "Zion's Harbinger and Baneemy's Organ" was issued from Preparation. In the following month, the Solemn Assembly was attended by upwards of 100 persons, although not all were members of the colony. A religious service was held and a feast given on each of the three days of the assembly, and the real business and organization of Jehovah's Presbytery of Zion began.

It is not necessary for the purposes of this sketch to go into details as to the revelations which came to the leader of this offshoot of the Joseph Smith branch of Mormonism through which his followers were commanded to pass over obligation gifts, tithings and sacrifices and other sacred treasures as atonements for their sins and assurances of "inheritance." A record was kept of the gift obligations, chiefly in small sums, but on becoming members of Jehovah's Presbytery of Zion at Preparation, an inventory of all worldly possessions was taken, and one-tenth of this was paid into the Lord's Treasury—that is, to Charles B. Thompson—generally in kind, even to clothing; and in the first year each one who could work was expected to labor one day in ten for the Presbytery (Thompson). Most of those who joined had very little property beyond tools, stock and furniture; only seven, as shown by the tithing record, had over one thousand dollars' worth of property each, though it cropped out later that some who had money discreetly gave it to their children, and so were enabled to honestly take the oaths and covenants, and yet keep a little money for emergencies.

The colony increased in numbers and at the assembly of April, 1854, 120, from 20 to 25 families, partook of the feast at Preparation. In April of that year Monona County was also organized. Thompson was elected to the chief office, that of county judge, and most of the other county officers, with all the township officers, were members of the Presby-



tery. Soon afterward, a post office was established at Preparation, and, of course, Thompson was appointed postmaster. He also conducted a general store, and advertised in his paper: "Flour, meal, pork, and butter are for sale at the Lord's storehouse in Preparation.

"Wanted, at the Lord's storehouse, on tithing and gift obligations, all kinds of country produce, honey, drygoods and groceries, young stock, cows, horses, oxen, harness, wagons and farming tools."

As the murmurings of the colonists became more pronounced, and the tithings did not come into the Lord's Treasury to suit the chief steward, the "voice of Baneemy" became more severe, and by August, 1854, the faithful were commanded to surrender all their property to Thompson and to work for two years, in return for which "new order of sacrifice" the chief steward was to furnish them with board, lodging and clothing, not exceeding a specified sum per year. Specified ones were to do the sowing, reaping, grist and saw-mill work and logging; a head cook was appointed, and thereafter, until August, 1855, they were all fed as one community. The colony had commenced to shrink under these slave-like conditions. In August, 1854, several of the colonists had been expelled for heresy, calumniating Thompson, and endeavoring to prevent immigrants from joining the colony. Thompson now started a weekly newspaper called "The Preparation News." He became more dictatorial, preached close economy in food dietary, which he failed to practice himself, and the butter and cheese which were denied the colonists were sent to Council Bluffs, with juicy pork and beef, where they were sold to increase the fund in the Lord's Treasury.

Some became discontented and departed from Preparation without settling with Thompson, leaving their sacrifices, tithings and obligations with him; others made a settlement, got some of their property back and exchanged receipts. In August, 1855, the Chief Steward organized two corporations. One of them, called the Sacred Treasury of Jehovah's Presbytery of Zion, incorporated Thompson's individual property, which had been obtained by his "labors" and by "the voluntary gifts, tithings and sacrifices of the members of Jehovah's

Presbytery of Zion for that purpose." Its object was announced to be the establishment of schools and other uplifting institutions. Thompson was to be the sole manager of this corporation and future contributions or donations to the fund could never return to the donors. The other corporation, known as the House of Ephraim, was designed to carry on farming, milling and mechanical business and stood for what it was—a corporation designed for profit. Jew, Gentile or Ephraimite could pay into its treasury one-fifth of their worldly possessions in order to take stock in it to the extent of their remaining surplus property! In the following spring, Thompson forced the colonists to relinquish their stock in the House of Ephraim in exchange for script which he issued to them; thereby, the Chief Steward became sole owner of both corporations and all the business which might be transacted in their names. Not satisfied with these arrangements, he obtained bills of sale from his followers including not only growing crops, but clothing, and to cap their subservience to him, his chief underlings, Guy C. Barnum and Rowland Cobb, and all the lesser fanatics, in return for their sacrifices, were invested by their leader with a coarse cotton garment, or smock, which he called the Garment of Holiness. Even in the history of fanatical movements, it is doubtful if a group of people were ever reduced unconsciously to such abject slavery as these colonists at Preparation.

The chief developments of 1857 were the steps by which Thompson secured the title to the colony lands in his own name, and commenced to receive messages from the Lord to send away missionaries who were in his way. These commands came without a moment's warning—so suddenly, in fact, that Rowland Cobb and Thomas Lewis, two of his most prominent stewards, received commands to appear before the legislatures of Virginia and Kentucky and pronounce the vengeance of the Lord upon those bodies and states if the slaves held were not freed,—the one while in the woods hauling lumber and the other, while ploughing in the field. They left team and plough and, in scant, rough attire, performed their missions.

It is said that in 1858, some of the missionaries whom Thompson had sent into the field returned to Preparation,

wiser, if not sadder men, and the rebellion soon broke like a sudden storm. Guy C. Barnum seemed to be the only old-time leader who stood by the Chief Steward. Rowland Cobb and others were discharged from the Presbytery. The opposition had become so strong that Thompson moved to Onawa, now the county seat and where he had established another newspaper, the *Onawa Advocate*. Barnum was with him there more or less and to his head man, as well as to his wife, the tottering head of the colony had deeded considerable of his property.

In October, 1858, it was reported to the dissatisfied and rebellious colonists at Preparation that Thompson was to visit the place from Onawa, and quite a crowd assembled to demand of him a settlement. Says C. R. Marks, who has written several papers on these interesting episodes in the history of Mormonism in Iowa: "Sentinels who had been posted on the bluffs saw him coming, with Guy C. Barnum in the distance, over the Missouri bottom lands. But one Melinda Butts, a daughter of one of the colonists who lived in Thompson's family, probably sent by Mrs. Thompson along the road to warn him of the possible danger, met Thompson and Barnum, and told them of the crowd assembled; they immediately turned their team around and started at full speed back to Onawa.

"News of this return soon came to Preparation and several men at once started on horseback to follow him, and did, so closely, that Thompson and Barnum unhitched their team and fled on horseback, two pursuing them to Onawa. Thompson sought protection among the citizens of Onawa, and that night fled to Sioux City, staying a week; negotiations were had seeking a settlement, but Thompson made only promises and worked for delay. The men returned to Preparation the next day and went to his house and took possession of the household goods and clothing that had been put into the sacrifice, and in Mrs. Thompson's presence opened the trunks and boxes in which they were stored, and returned the articles to the original owners who were there to identify them. No property was destroyed, except a collection of Thompson's printed books, tracts and papers, and some pork and mutton killed for food. The sheriff of the county and



Judge Whiting came over from Onawa to keep the peace and witnessed much of this last day's proceedings.

"Mrs. Thompson, with much of her furniture and goods, was moved that day to Onawa. Suits were begun in replevin to get possession of the farming tools and other property. Thompson had conveyed away all but 40 acres of land, that being his homestead; about 1,000 acres to his wife, who afterward deeded it to his brother, D. S. Thompson, in St. Louis, and 1,360 acres in trust to Guy C. Barnum, this part for settlement with those who had remained faithful, in case anything might be due them, and to allay the excitement, as he said; 320 acres to Thompson's brother, so that Thompson himself held about 3,000 acres.

"The report of the mob had reached Thompson, who kept himself in hiding for several days in the attic of Judge Addison Oliver's house in Onawa; the judge was then acting as his attorney. Mrs. Thompson stopped there also, and it was said she had a small bag of jewelry, presumably that which had been given up in the sacrifice by the women. She seemed to set great value on this collection, much beyond its real worth. When Thompson was driven up to Sioux City and Sergeant Bluffs, Woodbury County, he seemed to be in great fear of personal violence and would start at every sound.

"Thus ended the unity of the colony and the religious organization. A suit was brought in behalf of the colonists against Thompson and those to whom he had conveyed property in the nature of a bill in equity, to declare the colony a partnership and Thompson a trustee, holding the title in trust for the members, and to set aside the conveyance from him to his wife, brother and Barnum. Thompson's defense was that so far as the people had put any property in his hand it was in payment for his services as chief teacher, and that this was expressly understood between them and that the written contracts he made with them established these facts."

Litigation commenced in 1859 and did not end until 1867. The Supreme Court decided in favor of the people and under its order a division of the property occurred. The gifts, tithings and sacrifices amounted to about \$15,000, but considerable of this in clothing, tools and teams was practically

kept by the people, while most of the money raised went into buildings, mills, printing material and living expenses. On the other hand the increase of the cattle and the sale of the crops provided quite an income.

Barnum seems to have been the chief leader and business manager for Thompson. He was much shrewder and businesslike, and less sanctimonious. He went to Columbus, Nebraska, was a member of the State Senate and later became insane. Beyond the fact that Thompson resided in St. Louis for several years, the after life of the chief fanatic and conspirator is unknown. Although the colony at Preparation was the least stable of any of the Mormon ventures in Northwestern Iowa, it created the most notice from the boldness with which its leader obtained temporary mastery over such a considerable community.

#### TWO SETTLERS PRECEDE THE MORMONS.

There is a record of only two settlers having located within the limits of Monona County prior to the advent of the Mormons on Soldier Creek. The first was Isaac Ashton who, in 1852, made a claim about two miles north of Onawa, while Joseph Sumner located near him. The same year Aaron Cook settled on the bank of the Missouri at a place which became known as Cook's Landing.

#### THE WHITING SETTLEMENT FOUNDED.

While the Mormon Land Company laid out the Town of Onawa, in 1857, the settlement of Whiting, several miles to the northwest, had been established by the Whiting brothers, sturdy Ohio farmers and business men of good Gentile stock. Charles E. Whiting and his two younger brothers, Newell and William, first established a flourishing wagon business in New Market, Alabama, and in 1850 the oldest of the three went to California and was so successful there that he bought a large tract of land in Iowa County, in the eastern part of the Hawkeye State. This he sold to such good advantage to a New York colony that he bought several thousand acres of choice land, in coöperation with his brothers, between the Missouri and Little Sioux rivers, and these tracts formed the

basis of the famous Whiting Settlement. Its nucleus was formed in 1856. Various members of the family have contributed for several generations to the advancement of the agricultural and live stock interests of Northwestern Iowa. Charles E. (Edwin) Whiting was especially prominent in the breeding of fine cattle, in experimental forestry, and in improved methods of farming and horticulture. As a member of the family lately wrote: "All of these brothers except Myrick, who died in 1869, lived to see the trees which they planted grow and furnish not only fuel, but lumber for many of their buildings. They lived to hear the Whiting Settlement spoken of as 'the most beautiful and nearest to an ideal section of farming country of like size in the United States.'

"Not one acre of the original farm has ever been sold, but many have been added to it. These farms are all operated by children and grandchildren of the pioneers. There are now nine beautiful homes, instead of the four rude houses of the early day. Instead of waving prairie grass, we see the golden fields of grain and the tender green of the corn. The winter blast no longer piles the snow in drifts many feet deep, for there are windbreaks of wonderful old trees and groves set out over sixty years ago by these early pioneers who did not live unto themselves alone but looked far into the future, happy as they worked and toiled, with the thought that those who followed after them would enjoy the fruits of that toil."

#### EARLY SETTLEMENT OF CALHOUN COUNTY.

The first settlers of Calhoun County included the vanguard of a new interior frontier which was advancing up the Des Moines River and its tributaries to Northwestern Iowa. They located in the Coon River Valley, in the southwestern part of the present county, about a year before a political organization had been effected.

When the Legislature assembled in January, 1853, several of its members voiced their dissatisfaction at the names which had been bestowed on three of the new counties by their predecessors. Among other changes it was therefore pro-



posed to name the County of Fox, Calhoun. The opposition which developed was placated by effecting a trade, or compromise, with those who wanted the name of the county to the east changed from Risley to Webster. Thus the two counties were placed side by side, Calhoun and Webster, by the passage of a legislative measure, January 12, 1853. At that time, there was not a single white man within the prescribed limits of the County of Calhoun, which was attached to Greene County for judicial and tax purposes.

But the attractive and fertile Coon River Valley was not long to wait for the appearance of home seekers; for in April, 1854, Ebenezer Comstock located a claim and built a log cabin in section 12, township 86, range 34, near the western limits of the present town of Lake City. For several weeks, he and his family were the only inhabitants of the county. Then came William Impson, John Condron and J. C. M. Smith and settled in the southwestern part of the county not far from Comstock. Impson was a blacksmith; therefore, the first in the county.

Early in the fall, Peter and Christian Smith, brothers, then living in Polk County, to the southeast in the Des Moines Valley, learned that there was an abundance of big game on the upper waters of Coon River, and decided to start for that region on a hunting expedition. In September, 1854, the two Smiths, with Allen McCoy, Jesse Marmon and two men named Crumley (trappers who had directed the Smith brothers to the Coon River region), assembled at Mr. Comstock's cabin for an elk hunt. They camped on Lake Creek, a short distance northeast of where Lake City now stands, and, after killing three elk, Marmon and the two Smiths decided to locate claims in the county. Peter Smith bought the claim of Mr. Comstock, Christian selected land in section 13, township 96, range 34, and Marmon selected the southwest quarter of section 5, township 86, range 33.

Prior to March, 1853, there was no land office west of Iowa City. Western Iowa was then divided into two land districts and the offices were opened at Des Moines and Council Bluffs. The eastern three-fourths of Calhoun County lay in the Des Moines district and the western fourth (range 34) was in the Council Bluffs district. In the summer of 1854,

the land office at Des Moines was ordered closed until the first Monday in October. When Jesse Marmon and the two Smiths decided to settle in the county, they abandoned their elk hunt and hurried to Des Moines to be present at the reopening of the land office. The tract selected by Mr. Marmon, being in range 33, was subject to entry at Des Moines, and was the first land entered in the county. Peter Smith also entered a tract that was afterward laid out as Smith's Addition to Lake City. The Comstock claim, also bought by Peter Smith, and the land selected by his brother Christian, were in range 34, and the brothers had to make a trip to Council Bluffs to secure their titles.

Later in the year 1854, the little colony in the southwestern part of Calhoun County was augmented by the arrival of William Oxenford, James Reams, Joel Golden, Levi D. Tharp, Alford White and Richard Bunting, all of whom came from Cass County, Mich., and John Smith, who came from Missouri.

The house built by Peter Smith upon his claim was of basswood logs, a story and a half high, and was at that time the most pretentious residence in Iowa north of Jefferson, Greene County, and west of Fort Dodge, Webster County. The builder also constructed a sod chimney, probably the first in this part of Iowa.

In the fall of 1854 and the spring and fall of 1855, several other settlers than those mentioned came from Michigan. These included Henry W. Smith, the third of the brothers to locate on the Coon River. He built the frame of a mill and the water-wheel from native timbers, and hauled the machinery from Des Moines with ox teams. It was the first mill in the county and afterward passed into the hands of William and John Oxenford. It was then known as the Oxenford Mill and was swept away in the flood of 1866, but rebuilt. But this is getting ahead of the story. Allen McCoy, one of the elk hunters of 1854, was also a Michigan man who located in the spring of 1855, but moved west of the Missouri River several years later. Charles Amy came from Cass County, Mich., in the fall of 1855, and was joined by his family in 1856. He was a school teacher, a bookkeeper and an excellent business man, and appears to have had other qualifications;



for he platted Lake City, built the first courthouse, and at different times held the offices of treasurer, recorder, surveyor, justice of the peace and postmaster.

As the settlers came into the Coon River Valley of Calhoun County, they noted that while they dutifully paid their taxes into the treasury of Greene County very little of the revenue came back to them in the way of needed improvements. In the spring of 1855 they therefore decided to set up political housekeeping for themselves, and submitted a petition to William Phillips, county judge of Greene County, petitioning him to order an election of officers for Calhoun County. Judge Phillips granted the petition and designated the first Monday in August, as election day. At that time Peter Smith was elected county judge; Joel Golden, clerk; Christian Smith, recorder and treasurer; William Oxenford, sheriff, and Ebenezer Comstock, prosecuting attorney. Christian Smith resigned his office in January, 1856, and Eli Van Horne was appointed to the vacancy.

In November, 1855, the commissioners appointed by the district judge to locate the county seat reported that they had fixed upon the Town of Brooklyn, four miles northeast of the present Town of Lake City. At that time Brooklyn was given a name, but the only settlements were along the Coon River and the lower waters of Lake Creek farther south. Consequently, in January, 1856, a majority of the voters of the county petitioned County Judge Peter Smith to move the seat of justice to a more convenient locality, which, as specified in surveyor's terms, was within the corporate limits of the Lake City of today. On April 7, 1856, all but four of the twenty-five legal voters of Calhoun County expressed themselves in favor of the removal, and in the following month the Town of Lake City was laid out so as to include the designated site of the county seat. In the following year a courthouse was built, and Calhoun County took her place among the regularly organized counties of the State. Twenty years passed before the building of the Illinois Central and the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul railroads shifted the county's center of population so far to the north that it became necessary to relocate the seat of justice at Rockwell City.



## SETTLEMENT AT WEST BEND, PALO ALTO COUNTY.

Still pushing up the Valley of the Des Moines, the pioneers of Northwestern Iowa were gradually approaching the beautiful lakes country. In May, 1855, a vanguard of this migration selected permanent claims on the east bank of the river near where West Bend, Palo Alto County, now stands. They came from Benton County, in the eastern part of the State, making their way through the sparsely settled country by slow-going ox teams, and from Fort Dodge following the dim trail to the Northwest known as the Military Road. "It was the route that the soldiers had taken in going north to Fort Ridgely, and the subsequent supply wagons had left their marks on the prairie grass, but it led these pioneers straight to their new home."

The party mentioned comprised William Carter and son, Fayette Carter and wife, and Jeremiah Evans and family. Before making a final location, they decided to look around and went farther north, camping on the eastern bank of Medium in what is now known as Jackman's Grove. As it was late in the season, however, the party retraced their steps early the next morning (May 31, 1855) and began at once to make a permanent settlement at West Bend. Carter and Evans had taken adjoining claims, and broke the prairie on the line which separated their lands. A log house was thrown up for the shelter of the two families. This initial settlement of Palo Alto County was in section 21, West Bend Township of today. William Carter's son, A. B. Carter, came into possession of his father's farm after it was improved and lived thereon until the spring of 1909, when he moved to the Town of West Bend. The Carter and Evans families were the only settlers during the year 1855.

## THE IRISH COLONY.

In July, 1856, another notable group of settlers came to Palo Alto County. It comprised a colony of Irishmen from Kane County, Illinois, and embraced the following families: James Nolan, his wife, daughter and two sons; John Neary, wife, son and daughter; Edward Mahan, wife, two daughters and two sons; Martin Laughlin, wife, three sons and one

daughter; John Nolan, wife and one son; Thomas Downey, wife and one daughter; and Orrin Sylvester and wife. Patrick Jackman and Thomas Laughlin, single, came with these settlers, though not members of any of the families mentioned. Says Dwight G. McCarty in his history of Palo Alto County: "There were six ox teams in the party and they wended their weary way toward the west. Their proposed destination was in the vicinity of Sioux City, Iowa, but at Fort Dodge they met a man by the name of Lynch, who had been with the government surveying party in 1855, and who told them of the splendid location for settlers along the west branch of the Des Moines River, where there was plenty of timber, abundance of good water, and the tall grass was ample evidence of the fertility of the soil. Some of the party went forward with Mr. Lynch and looked over the ground, returning with glowing accounts of the country. So the entire party started on the rough trail from Fort Dodge. They reached the Des Moines River at last and camped in the timber of what is now known as Murphy's Bayou. They stayed there nearly a week while the various members of the party prospected the country and selected their claims. While here these pioneers discovered the first traces of Indians. Two dozen slaughtered geese were found hanging in a large elm tree where they had been left by the redskins. But the incident scarcely more than awakened their curiosity, as they had not had occasion as yet to know the treacherous savage nature that was later to spread terror throughout the settlement. These pioneers soon moved up the river and settled on section 14, in Emmetsburg Township, about two miles northwest from the present city of Emmetsburg."

Little of interest transpired during the first six months following the settlement of the Irish Colony. They hunted, held friendly intercourse with roving Indians; a few settlers located in the neighborhood of the Irish settlement, the original members of which had located in a compact body for protection and social convenience.

About the time the Irish Colony located in the vicinity of Medium Lake, a few miles north of Emmetsburg, the Gardners, the Mattocks, and others settled on the shores of Okoboji and Spirit lakes, Dickinson County. Then came the ter-

rible winter of 1856-57 and the ravages of the Sioux, which culminated in the massacre of March, 1857, and the virtual wiping out of the settlements in the lake regions. Just before the massacre bands of Indians camped in the immediate vicinity of the Irish Colony, although it is denied that Inkpadutah's fiendish band was in that region. McCarty says: "The news (of the massacre) was first brought to them by three men from Jasper County—Wheelock, Parmenter and Howe by name, who were on their way to the lakes to join the settlement, but when they found the cabins in ashes and the dead bodies of the victims lying where they had fallen, they hurried back to give the alarm. These harrowing reports spread terror throughout the whole Northwest, and many settlers fled to places of safety. The members of the little Irish Colony could hardly believe that Indians who seemed so peaceful when camped so near them that winter could commit such deeds. It was indeed a miracle that they were spared. But, in spite of the general stampede to Fort Dodge, the Irish settlers remained for some time. Their cabins furnished a convenient station for the soldiers of the relief expedition. It was only after the soldiers of the expedition had all returned home, that the faithful little band finally left the colony to seek a refuge at Fort Dodge until the following spring."

#### THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER STILL ADVANCING.

In 1855-56, settlers commenced to advance up both the Little Sioux and Des Moines valleys into Northwestern Iowa. Among the first to come into the region included within the present counties of Buena Vista and Clay were two government surveyors named Lane and Ray. Some time in the spring of 1855 they were laying out the old Fort Dodge road. They followed an established trail from Fort Dodge to the North Lizard River in Calhoun County, and thence set their compass on an air line for what afterward was Sioux Rapids. This old Fort Dodge road was used by settlers for many years afterward and became a part of the Sioux City road. Caravans of movers followed it from Fort Dodge to the Rapids and thence west to Sioux City. For some years Sioux Rapids



was the only resting place of any consequence between Fort Dodge and Sioux City.

For many weeks, Lane and Ray ran their lines over the bleak prairies west of the Des Moines River, surveying the road and laying off the township from south to north. Finally, in the fall, they arrived in the region of Sioux Rapids and were so attracted by this country of beautiful groves and finely timbered lands that they overlooked the government rules forbidding employes to enter land while engaged in their official duties, and on what is now section 12, in Barnes Township, Buena Vista County, posted notices covering a choice quarter section of land reading "This land is taken by Lane and Ray." When they had run their surveys to the Rapids they returned to their claim and built a log house. At any rate, there was a log structure there when settlers came in the following year, and Lane and Ray informed people at Fort Dodge that they had wintered on the Little Sioux River in Buena Vista County. They had hunted and trapped along the river and were well rewarded for their stay.

A portion of the quarter, known as the old Lane and Ray claim in Barnes Township, was heavily timbered and was afterward known as Barnes Grove. After the surveyors went east they made preparations to return to their claim. They came as far west as Fort Dodge, where several immigrants were waiting for spring before continuing up the Des Moines Valley and toward the Northwest. When they reached Buena Vista County, they were joined by a party of New Jersey people. They were William R. Weaver and wife, Abner Bell, Mrs. Weaver's brother, and a man by the name of Totten, with his family. Lane and Ray were of the uneasy kind, for soon after their arrival they sold their claim to a Mr. Templeton, who came from Fayette County, and left the country.

The little colony of New Jerseyites settled in what are now Lee and Barnes townships, but the only one who remained permanently and made any impression on the community was Abner Bell, the eccentric bachelor who lived with the Weavers. He was an expert hunter and trapper and a natural frontiersman, and while the other members of the community built their cabins and planted and sowed, Bell

roamed up and down the river shooting deer and elk and trapping beaver, mink, muskrats and an occasional otter. Afterward he built a small shack and ran a store, his stock in trade consisting of groceries, traps, powder and ball and other articles that a hunter would need. He was swarthy in complexion, and with his garments fashioned from the skins of animals he had shot, his long hair and long beard, and his twinkling blue eyes, was as eccentric in appearance as he was in character. Although Bell was uneducated, he was sociable and popular, and held a number of county offices with more or less credit. For several years he was clerk of the District Court and a member of the Board of Supervisors.

In the spring of 1857, John W. Tucker located on the north side of the Little Sioux River and built a rude cabin near the present site of Sioux Rapids.

It was during this year, however, that the Indian raid up the Little Sioux River stopped for a time all settlement and progress in the county. Inkpadutah and his band of bad Sioux were responsible for the outrages committed at Smithland, Woodbury County, and in various sections of Cherokee and Buena Vista counties. Toward the last of their forays women and girls were subjected to terrible indignities against their sex. Among those who thus suffered were Mrs. Totten and Mrs. Weaver. The men were also ill-treated and beaten, and those of their possessions that attracted the fancy of the Sioux were taken away. This no doubt caused the deep hatred and resentment that Abner Bell showed ever after toward the Indians and he never neglected an opportunity to indicate how thoroughly he despised them. Up to this time, no murders had been committed, but it was only a matter of a few days after the Indians left the settlement at Sioux Rapids that word came down the river telling of the awful butchery at the Okoboji lakes. When the news reached Bell he and one companion immediately set out along the old Fort Dodge road, carried the news of the massacre to Fort Dodge and remained there until he saw the relief expedition started for the scene of the tragedy.

From a history of Buena Vista County written in 1909, and from which the foregoing facts are mainly compiled, is taken the following regarding the beginnings of Sioux Rap-



ids: "During the year of 1857 little of importance, save the raid, transpired. That fall Hiram and William Brooke came out from Cedar Falls, Eastern Iowa, and settled in Brooke Township. They acquired four quarter sections of fine timber and upland, and the remarkable thing about this is the fact that as this is written William Brooke still lives on the place he took when he came here fifty-two years ago. He is easily our oldest inhabitant, by many years.

"In 1858, the present site of Sioux Rapids was laid out in town lots by Luther H. Barnes, who came to the county with considerable money. He secured the west half and the northeast quarter of section 12 in Barnes township and the west half of the southwest quarter of section 7 in Lee township, all of which was laid out and destined by the founder to be a city of great magnitude and importance. He called the place Sioux Rapids, for no particular reason but his own fancy. Afterwards this was known as Hollingsworth Ford, but when the town actually came in later years (1869) it was called Sioux Rapids, the name selected by Mr. Barnes. Barnes also bought the Templeton claim, which had been settled on by Lane and Ray." It was largely through the influence and initiative of Luther Barnes that Buena Vista County was organized at an election held on November 15, 1858.

Before its first permanent settler arrived within the present limits of Clay County, it had been created and defined as a political body (1851) and attached to Wahkaw for revenue, judicial and election purposes (1853). In 1855, J. A. Kirchner and his brother, Jacob, set out from their native State of New York to settle in the West. They heard much of Iowa and directed their course thither. Finally they reached Cedar Falls, then an outfitting frontier town almost midway between Dubuque and Fort Dodge, and there met Ambrose S. Mead, who, like themselves, was desirous of exploring the western part of the state. Mr. Mead purchased some Indian ponies, which he tendered to the delighted New Yorkers, who, in turn, bought a sleigh and provisions, and together all started for the farther west. At first, they directed their course toward the Spirit Lake region, but near Algona, Kossuth County, they met a man who had been with a government surveying party during the previous year and,



from his observation of a wide range of country, advised them to examine Clay County. When the men reached a point just west of the present Town of Peterson they camped, because they could not cross the Little Sioux at that point. They rested, carefully examined the locality, and decided to found their homes there. They made claim to the timber land along the river on sections 32, 33 and 34, township 94, range 38, being in all about 300 acres, which was equally divided among the three. They then returned to Cedar Falls, where they purchased the necessary teams, farm implements and provisions and returned to their new home. In May, 1856, J. A. Kirchner did the first plowing, built a house, arranged for the harvesting of his crops, returned to New York and in the fall brought to the new western home his father, Christian Kirchner, and wife and ten children. Soon afterward James Bicknell and family arrived, and Mr. Kirchner sold his first cabin to the newcomer and built himself another. A number of other settlers increased the population of what had become known as the Peterson settlement. It was raided by the Indians, property stolen and destroyed, several women subjected to outrages, and otherwise thrown into a panic by the savages who were headed for their historic land in the region characterized by Spirit Lake. Clay County was organized in October, 1858, at the house of Ambrose Mead, on section 34, Peterson Township.

In the lower valley of the Little Sioux, frontier settlers commenced to appear in 1856. Robert Perry, a young Irishman, who had come to New England the year before, and taken to himself a wife of his own nationality, in May of that year brought his young bride to Northwestern Iowa. They camped on the banks of the Little Sioux River in Cherokee County and commenced housekeeping on the original Perry claim of eighty acres on section 28, township 91, range 40, on which the husband erected a log house in which he and his family lived a number of years. Later, he moved to a part of section 29 in the same township. In 1882 he became a citizen of the Town of Cherokee, where he died in August, 1888, the father of nine children. The settlement of Robert Perry and wife in the early days of June, 1856, was followed by members of the Milford (Massachusetts) Emigration So-

ciety. Their advance agents were L. Parkhurst and C. Corbett. When they arrived at Council Bluffs, they found that Sioux City had been platted at the confluence of the Big Sioux and Missouri rivers. Soon afterward they met Robert Perry and others, who told them of the beauty and fertility of the Little Sioux; so they struck across country to the valley of the Little Sioux, and in May, 1856, reached the site of Original Cherokee, as distinguished from Cherokee Center, which was never more than a paper town. Other members of the colony followed, and in December of the following year the town was platted, which afterward became the county seat and the City of Cherokee. So that although Robert Perry was the first settler of the county, the Milford Emigration Company of Massachusetts founded the first settlement therein.

Emmet, one of the lake counties of Northern Iowa, was one of the fifty-one counties created by the Legislature in January, 1851, and in 1853 provision was made for its political organization. But there was no occasion for haste in taking advantage of that provision, for it was not until June, 1856, that the first locations were made within the limits of the county. At that time, Jesse Coverdale and George C. Granger located in what is now Emmet Township, taking claims for themselves and four of their friends whom they expected within a short time. Before the summer was far advanced the expected friends and settlers arrived in the persons of William Granger, D. W. Hoyd and Henry and Adolphus Jenkins. The first house in Emmet County was built by George C. Granger, who bought a small stock of goods suitable for a frontier settlement and opened the first store also. Not long afterward, came Robert E. and A. H. Ridley from Maine, and the Graves family from Winneshiek County and settled in the vicinity of the present City of Estherville. About the middle of August, 1856, John Rourke located with his wife at Island Grove in what is now High Lake Township. Mrs. Rourke is said to have been the first white woman to become a resident of the county, and the son, Peter, born January 4, 1857, the first white child to claim Emmet County as his birthplace. In 1858, a town was laid out by Adolphus Jenkins, R. E. Ridley and Jesse Cover-

dale and named Estherville, for Esther A. Ridley, the wife of one of the proprietors. When the county was organized in February of the following year, Estherville became its seat of justice.

The early settlement of Pocahontas County, which dates from 1855-56, was an offshoot from the Des Moines Valley. James Hickey and Hugh Collins passed up Lizard Creek from Fort Dodge in February, 1855, and selected claims in what is now the southeastern part of Pocahontas County. At the same time, Mr. Collins selected land for his brother, Michael Collins. Hickey put up a roofless cabin on his claim and in the following year returned to Fort Dodge and sold his shack and his rights of possession. Michael Collins, with his wife and three children, located on the claim his brother had selected for him in August, 1855. He lived in the county until his death more than thirty years afterward and his descendants have well acquitted themselves in this section of the state. Michael Collins and Michael Broderick, the latter a youth of nineteen, were the only men to reside in Pocahontas County in 1855, but in 1856 a considerable number of families located in the southeastern part of the county and in Northwestern Webster County, in the neighborhood of Clare. Pocahontas County was not organized until March, 1859.

O'Brien is one of the far northwestern counties created by wholesale in 1851. At that time, there was no settler within its prescribed bounds. There was, however, quite a large contingent of Irishmen in the Legislature, and the projected county was named after William O'Brien, one of the leaders of 1848 who was urging the establishment of Ireland as a republic. The first white settlers in the county were Hannibal H. Waterman and family. Both Mr. and Mrs. Waterman were born in Cattaraugus County, New York, but never met until the fall of 1852 when they became acquainted in Bremer County, Northeastern Iowa. There they were married in June, 1854, and two years later settled a short distance south of the mouth of Waterman Creek on the banks of the Little Sioux River. Mr. Waterman was a lumberman, a farmer and a Methodist exhorter, and a tall, power-



ful, magnetic blonde, wearing a full beard—altogether a striking man of strong character.

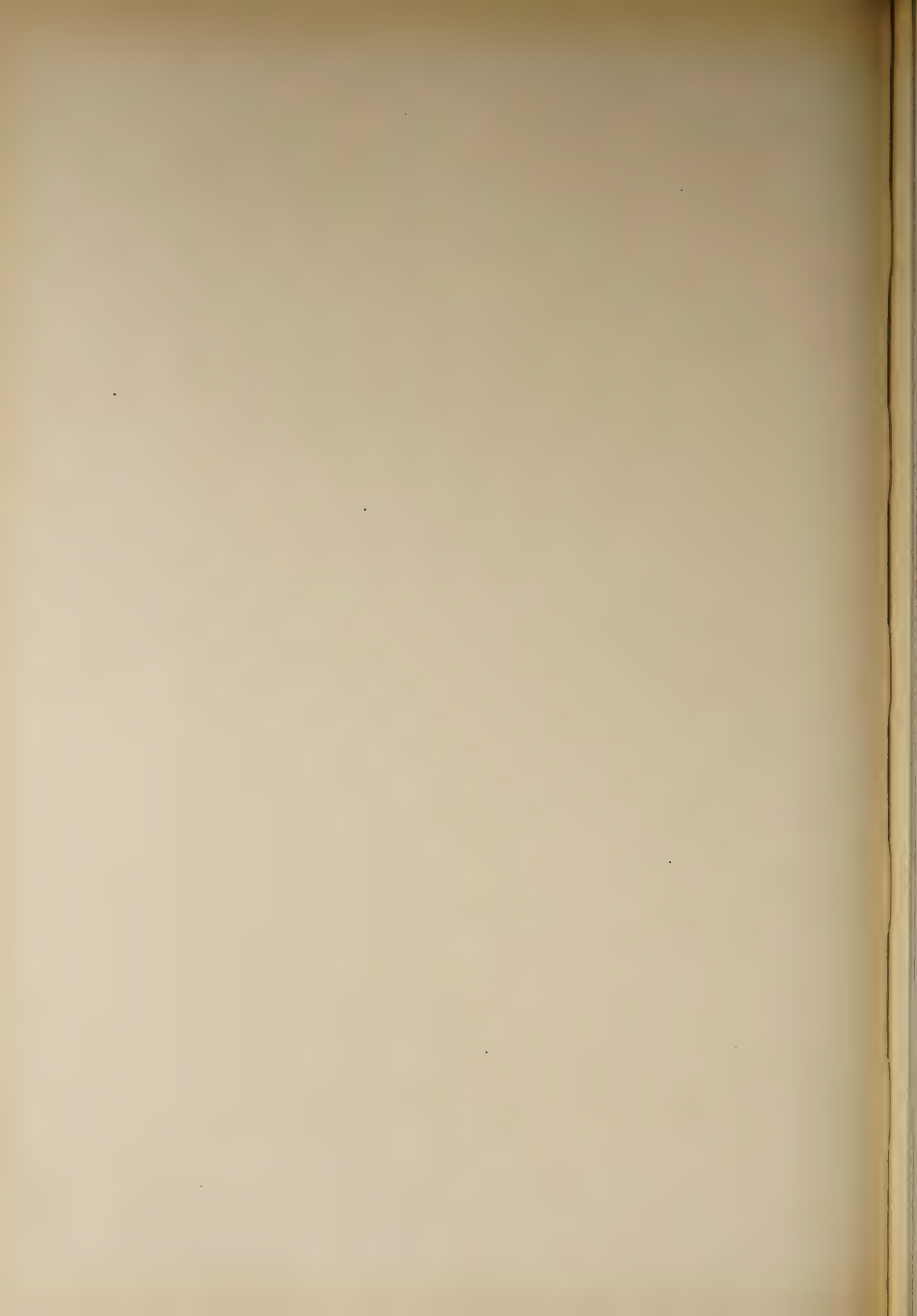
When Mr. and Mrs. Waterman arrived in Southeastern O'Brien County, in July, 1856, they had one child, an infant daughter. On the 30th of May, 1857, they had an addition to their family, in the person of Anna Waterman, who was the first native white child of O'Brien County. But Mr. Waterman was not long to be left in peace as a simple God-fearing settler; for in 1859 appeared at his cabin two professional politicians, James W. Bosler and J. W. Dorsey, both later to be connected with the Star Route frauds and extensive cattle interests in New Mexico. They temporarily hailed from Sioux City, and later seven or eight others from that place arrived to hold an organizing election at Mr. Waterman's house, the only building in the projected county. A log cabin was built directly in front of Waterman's house, and four of the officers elected in February, 1860, boarded with him. Waterman himself, in order that all the offices should go 'round, had been chosen treasurer, recorder and superintendent of schools. In the summer of 1860, about a dozen men from Fort Dodge came up to the county seat of O'Brien and protested the supremacy of "the Sioux City gang." Mr. Waterman sided with the Fort Dodge people, believing that they intended to become settlers and not political adventurers, and had his claim jumped by the Sioux City men. The result was that the county was exploited most shamefully for a number of years; it was considered a bone with some meat attached, worthy of being fought over by hungry dogs.

Most of the settlers, fairly permanent or otherwise, had located in the southeast corner of the county, where the village of O'Brien had been platted as the "seat of justice." As the population spread into other sections of the county, it became necessary to locate the seat at a more convenient point than O'Brien. At an election held in November, 1872, it was resolved to locate the seat of justice at the center of the county, where a town was laid out for that purpose. When it came to naming it, the plan was adopted of taking the first letters in the names of the county officials and several other prominent citizens, with the following result:

P (J. R. Pumphrey)—R (James Roberts)—I (C. W. Inman)—M (B. F. McCormick)—G (William C. Green)—H (Dewill C. Hayes)—A (C. F. Albright)—R (I. L. Rerick): in other words, Primghar. Doubtless, the writer is not the only one who has wondered how the name came to be.

#### CRITICAL END OF THE PIONEER PERIOD.

If the story of the pioneer settlement of the northwestern counties of Iowa has been followed with care, it will be seen, as noted by Cole, in his History of the People of Iowa, that in 1856 "a new northwestern frontier had been created, with Fort Dodge as a point of Radiation." The writer would add Sioux City to Fort Dodge. This advance in scattered forward movements, like the skirmish line of American soldiers, was temporarily checked by the terrible winter of 1856-57, of which the implacable Sioux, under Inkpadutah, took advantage, and brought about the massacre in the Okoboji region. Frequent storms had swept over the prairies, covering them with a depth of snow that made travel very difficult, or absolutely impossible. They continued late into March, filling the ravines along the upper Des Moines and Little Sioux rivers with drifts so deep that communication between the scattered settlements was almost impossible for weeks and even months. Provisions were for the most part consumed during the long blockade by the fierce blizzards which raged almost incessantly. The relentless Sioux, many of them outlawed by their own race, driven to desperation both by their physical exposures and sufferings, as well as their hatred of the scattered white settlers, could not have chosen a more favorable opportunity to carry on their warfare; but they only retarded the advance of the whites toward the northwest, in solid phalanx.





## CHAPTER VI.

### PIONEER LIFE AND CUSTOMS.

BEGINNING OF ANOTHER ERA—THE CIVIL WAR AND RAILROADS  
CLOSE THE ERA—PIONEERING IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA—  
MUSKRAT PELTS FOR MONEY—PRAIRIE BLIZZARDS AND FIRES—  
THE BURNING OF CORN FOR FUEL—EARLY CABINS, OUTSIDE  
AND INSIDE—FIRST HOMES FOR MERE PROTECTION—THE  
CLAIM CABINS MORE FINISHED—DOORS, WINDOWS AND THE  
CHIMNEY—THE SOUND OF THE NAIL HAMMER NOT HEARD—  
ROOMS AND FURNISHINGS—BREAKING PRAIRIE—OUTFIT FOR  
PRAIRIE-BREAKING—PRAIRIE-BREAKING BRIGADES—SAD PASS-  
ING OF THE OLD TIMES—WILD GAME FOR FOOD AND SPORT  
—CLOTHING OF THE PIONEERS—RECREATIONS AND AMUSE-  
MENTS.

What is designated as Northwestern Iowa had been penetrated and traveled by trappers, uneasy adventurers, troopers and various Government expeditions and waves of its first permanent settlers had advanced mainly up the Des Moines and the Little Sioux valleys and converged in the beautiful lake region of Indian tradition and occupancy. The first settlements centered around Floyd's Bluff and the future site of Sioux City, in 1848-49, and various Mormon streams of emigrants flowing ever westward appeared soon afterward and temporarily subsided in what are now Woodbury, Crawford and Monona counties. These lively and energetic and, on the whole, industrious religionists formed several enduring settlements in lower Northwestern Iowa, and, although the bulk of the "faithful" evacuated the state in the great Salt Lake movement of 1854, not a few "backsliders" remained to become good and prominent gentile citizens. Altogether the Mormon settlements were the most noticeable feature of the permanent white occupation of the early pioneer period of this section of the state.

While the Mormons were commencing to leave the country along the Mississippi River and in the lower valley of the Little Sioux, other settlers were pressing northward into

what are now Buena Vista, Palo Alto, Clay and Dickinson counties. The first temporary checks to this advance in skirmish formation were the terrible winter of 1856-57, and the awful massacre of the settlers in the Okoboji Lake region during the height and depth of its blizzards and snow drifts.

#### BEGINNING OF ANOTHER ERA.

But these horrors passed away and the elasticity and sturdiness of the American pioneer soon asserted itself. Stability and renewed advancement were on the way. As stated by Benjamin F. Gue in his "History of Iowa," other bright rays were illuminating the situation. He says, for example: "The hard times beginning with 1857 were passing away, and a steady and heavy immigration was annually coming into the state in search of cheap homes. Thousands of eastern men of wealth were sending money where the legal rate of interest was ten per cent and the security as fertile lands as any in the world.

"The reports of the discovery of rich gold deposits in the eastern range of the Rocky Mountains, near Pike's Peak, in 1859, attracted thousands of Iowa people to that region, and it is likely that these departures in search of gold nearly equaled the immigration from eastern states into Iowa. But the tide soon turned back and most of the gold seekers returned to the prairies of Iowa, better content to rely upon the steady gains derived with certainty from the fertile soil of well-tilled farms.

"Barbed wire fences had not then come into use and the farmers were experimenting with hedge plants of osage orange, hawthorne, willow and honey locust. Others were making fences by ditching. But the common fence was of rails or boards and was the great expense in making farms, costing more than all other improvements combined."

#### THE CIVIL WAR AND RAILROADS CLOSE THE ERA.

The Civil war intervened to retard even the scattered settlements of Northwestern Iowa and this fact was in no way more manifest than in the complete cessation of railroad building. None of the four railroads across the state for

which land grants had been made in 1856 had been completed and none was much extended when the Civil war closed; but by 1870, the Chicago, Rock Island & Pacific, the Chicago & Northwestern and the Chicago, Burlington & Quincy had all reached the Missouri River, and a few years later, the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul completed its line so as to give Northwestern Iowa another outlet and inlet.

In 1865, and for several years thereafter, Boone, in Central Iowa on the Des Moines River, was a frontier railroad station on the Chicago & Northwestern Railroad, and was called Montana. While the line was being constructed to Council Bluffs, Carroll County was a favorite hunting ground. Many trains were stopped and all on board, from engineers to passengers, would tramp over the prairies to shoot chickens, and few returned empty-handed. That trains were delayed mattered little to these pioneer travelers, until the officials made drastic rules against hunting on the way. The engines and cattle cars of that day were not large and a train of ten or a dozen cars was heavily loaded. It required two nights and a day to pull a stock train from the Missouri Valley country to Chicago, after the line reached Council Bluffs in 1867. When trains were caught in snow drifts and blizzards, the fatalities were multiplied. There were no snow fences to protect the cuts and no snow plows to clear the tracks. Traffic was thus frequently tied up, sometimes for weeks at a time.

The building of the railroads marked the transition period from the old to the new order of things, and the Civil war may be said to have definitely closed the times when the primitive life of the pioneer had been little changed by "improvements."

#### PIONEERING IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

Again using the facile pen of Benjamin F. Gue, who came to Iowa in the early '50s, and, as legislator, agricultural journalist and historical editor and writer, was widely known in all sections of the state and who writes as a participant in the pioneer times which this paper covers, the following is authoritative, as well as graphic: "This period in North-



western Iowa lingered along well into the '60s, as that portion of the state was the last to be settled owing to the general absence of forests. The prairies were vast in extent, generally inclined to be level and in many cases defective in surface drainage, with frequent ponds and marshes, the home of the muskrat. It was not until the Homestead Law was enacted by Congress (adopted by the General Assembly of Iowa in 1849) that the people began to venture out upon the great bleak prairies of Northwestern Iowa to make homes. Mostly destitute of timber for cabins and fencing, with few deep ravines for shelter from the fierce blizzards that swept over them in winter, they long remained unoccupied after other portions of the state were fairly well settled.

"But when the time came in which the head of the family could secure 160 acres of Government land, as a home, for fourteen dollars, the hardy pioneers began to venture out upon the treeless plains and devise ways to live without timber. Then it was that sod houses and stables were invented. They were made by running a broad-shire breaking-plow over the wet prairie where the tough fiber of the sod of generations had accumulated, cutting it into long strips and turning them over. These strips of sod were then cut up with the spades into lengths suitable to handle and laid up like brick into walls for houses and stables. A few poles brought from the nearest timber supported a roof of slough hay, skilfully placed on like thatching, and a comfortable shelter was made for man and beast. The ground was smoothed off for a floor and until boards could be procured for doors the skins of deer and wolves shut out the wind and snow.

#### MUSKRAT PELTS FOR MONEY.

"Then it was that the swarms of muskrats which inhabited every pond were utilized to supply the family with groceries. Muskrat pelts were always suitable for cash at the nearest town, where buyers had agents to gather up all kinds of furs and hides of wild animals. During the first year of life on the prairie, before crops could be raised for market, thousands of homestead families were dependent upon trapping muskrats for the cash they must have to buy bacon and

coffee. The homestead was exempt from taxes; deer and prairie chickens furnished meat for a portion of the year; with industrious mending and the skins of wild beasts the clothing was made to do long service; but some money was indispensable for fuel and such scant groceries as were indulged in.

#### PRAIRIE BLIZZARDS AND FIRES.

“Most of the homestead settlers were many miles from timber or coal. Their teams were usually oxen, which could live on prairie grass and wild hay, and break up the sod for cultivation. It was always a perilous journey in the winter to the nearest town or timber, or coal bank, for fuel or other supplies. It must be made generally by one man alone, over a trackless prairie covered with deep snow. No human foresight could guard against danger from the fearful blizzards of flinty snow driven with an ever-increasing wind and an ever-falling temperature that were so common in early days. With the sun obscured, nothing was left to guide the bewildered driver toward his destination, as the changing wind often misled him, and many were the victims who perished in all of the early years of settling the great prairies.

“Another danger that was encountered by the first settlers on the prairies came from the annual fires. Early in the fall frosts killed the wild grass and in a few weeks it became dry and would readily burn. Many of the recent settlers were not aware of the danger and neglected to take the proper precautions for the safety of their buildings, stacks and even families. Emigrants crossing the great prairies and camping at night where water could be found, late in the autumn, were often the victims of carelessness or ignorance of danger.

“There can be no more fearful sight or situation than the appearance of a prairie fire before a strong wind in the night. The horizon is lighted up in the distance with a vivid glow, and dense columns of black smoke ascend in darkening clouds as the long line of fire circles far to the right and left. At first the sight is grand beyond description as the rays of the glowing red rise higher and higher and the smoke

rolls upward in increasing intensity. But soon an ominous roar is heard in the distance as the hurricane of fire is driven with an ever-increasing wind, exceeding the speed of a race horse, and the stifling atmosphere glows with the smothering heat of a sirocco from a parched desert. Escape for man or beast is impossible unless a back fire has been started in time to meet the advancing tornado of resistless heat that can be stayed only by a counter fire. Houses, barns, stacks, fences, bridges and all animal life are quickly destroyed as the hot blasts strike them, and in a moment the ground is left a blackened, blistering waste of desolation. The ruin of the camp or farm is as complete as the wreck of a burning town, or the track of a tornado. Scores of people and hundreds of homes were annual victims of these fires in the early years of scattered farms on the great prairies, before experience brought to emigrants and settlers the wisdom to protect their lives and property by timely backfires as soon as the frost had killed the grass.

“It was during these years of hard winters when the homestead settlers ventured far out on the wild prairies at great distances from timber and before railroads had penetrated the great plains that they began to use corn and slough hay for fuel. There was no market for corn within one or two days’ travel, and when the market was reached eight or ten cents a bushel was all that a farmer could get for his load. A large load would sometimes bring him from four to five dollars.

#### THE BURNING OF CORN FOR FUEL.

“This was the pay for raising forty bushels of corn on an acre of his farm, husking it and transporting the load a journey of two or three days with his team. The proceeds of his load would pay for about a ton of coal, which he must draw back to his home and which would furnish about as much heat as the load of corn sold. It did not take the settler long to see that he might far better burn the corn at home, and save a perilous journey at midwinter over the bleak prairies, often at the risk of his life. He learned to twist the long coarse slough hay into ropes with which to start his



corn fire and utilized a home-grown vegetable production to furnish heat in place of the expensive foreign mineral production of the same earth upon which he lived. Persons in the luxurious homes of distant countries and states read of the burning of corn in the morning paper by a comfortable grate fire, and were horrified at the reckless destruction of food by the western prairie farmers."

#### EARLY CABINS, OUTSIDE AND INSIDE.

When the very early settlers of Northwestern Iowa came into the country from the East and Middle West, they were generally on the lookout for timbered tracts such as they were in the habit of seeing in their home lands. Some, however, settled in or around groves, where they would have the advantage of easily cultivated prairie land and at the same time have access to the wooded tracts for building purposes, fencing and fuel. The cabins built were both of sod and logs and sometimes composite structures, and when they settled at a distance from wooded tracts and commenced to raise corn, as already noted, they often burned that cereal as fuel. One of the pioneers who had experience with both sod and log cabins thus writes: "A creaking, canvas-covered wagon slowly came to a halt as the oxen, tired from the long journey, ceased straining at the yoke. The driver looked about him at the expanse of prairie, unbroken except for the timber which fringed an occasional water course. Far behind lay his old home. Days before he had crossed the Mississippi and leaving the busy river town had pushed westward until he had passed all signs of habitation and reached the virgin prairie. Nowhere was a sheltering roof to be seen except the covered wagon whose protection was given to the women and children. The only table upon which to partake of the plain meals of corn bread and bacon was the green earth.

"But this sketch is not biographical; nor does it deal with the unique. All up and down the Iowa frontier this scene was being repeated. Sometimes a lonely wagon made its way to the edge of the unknown; sometimes a group of neighbors or related families made the venture together. In every case, the pioneer's first thought was to prepare a home. It would be a dwelling place for his family, a fortress against the In-

dians, a nucleus for civilization. Under these conditions, building the cabin came to be an event of great importance and produced a thrill of pleasure that could hardly be understood by those who had never suffered the same privations.

#### FIRST HOMES FOR MERE PROTECTION.

“The first home was necessarily a simple affair. In the prairie country, where wood was scarce and sod was plentiful, the easiest house to build was the sod shanty. The materials were procured by taking the breaking plow into the low land where the sod was heavy and plowing a furrow from sixteen to eighteen inches in width. This was cut into sections, eighteen to twenty inches long, which were then laid like brick. The roof was usually made of large rafters covered with prairie hay or grass and covered again with sod. Often the structure had a board floor and usually one door and one window. It is surprising the amount of genius that could be expended in the construction of a sod shanty. For this reason, there was great difference in the appearance and arrangement of these cabins. Some had an air of comfort, convenience and even neatness, which gave them a genuine homelike appearance. Others remained as they were at first—simply holes in the ground.

“Even in the wooded districts, finished lumber was not to be had and labor was dear. As a result, the architecture of the house entered very little into the thoughts of the early settlers—it was shelter they wanted and protection from the stress of weather. Of dwellings made of timber, perhaps the most primitive were the ‘three faced’ camps. These structures—sometimes called ‘cat faced’ sheds or ‘wickeups’—consisted of three walls made of logs in their rough state, the fourth side being left open. The first settler in a community who had to build his cabin without assistance selected small logs that he could raise to the walls alone, but after neighbors came larger logs were used. Across these walls, poles were laid at a distance of about three feet apart, and on these was placed a roof of clapboards, which were kept in position by weight-poles. The only floor in the camp was the earth, and the structure required neither door, window nor chimney, for the open side answered all these purposes. Im-

mediately in front of the cabin was built a huge log fire which served for warmth and for cooking purposes. These 'three-faced camps', built apparently in a hurry to afford a resting place for a family without a home, were temporary in most cases and were soon supplanted by more complete dwelling places.

#### THE CLAIM CABINS MORE FINISHED.

"The claim cabins proper, which followed these first buildings, required some help and a good deal of labor to build. House raisings were frequent and became social as well as industrial events. After the logs had been cut into the desired length according to the dimensions of the house, they were dragged to the building place by horses. The neighbors were then called upon to assist. Four men were selected to 'carry up the corners,' and the work began. As the logs were lifted up, a saddle was hewn upon the top of one log and a notch cut in the underside of the next to fit upon the saddle. By cutting the notches in the larger end of the log a little deeper and alternating the butt and top ends, the walls of the cabin were carried up approximately level. At first the logs were put together with the bark on. As the idea of decoration and elegance increased, a place was chipped along two sides of each log. Finally, the inside and outside of the cabin walls were hewn so as to present a flat surface.

"When the house-walls had reached a height of seven or eight feet, two gables were formed by shortening the logs gradually at each end of the building near the top, and fastening each log to the one below or to the roof logs. The roof was made by laying very straight small logs or stout poles from gable to gable at regular intervals, and on these were fastened the clapboards, very much in the same manner as modern shingles, only with fewer courses, as the clapboards were perhaps four feet long and generally about two and a half feet to the weather. Weight poles were laid over the whole and were secured by long wooden pins driven into auger holes, which kept them from slipping down toward the lower edge of the roof.



“When this sheltering roof was completed, the small cracks between the wall logs were stopped with ‘chinking.’ The spaces were filled in with split sticks of wood called ‘chinks,’ and then daubed over, both inside and outside with mortar made of clay which had straw or hay mixed with it to keep it from crumbling and falling out. In this way the cabin was made comfortably warm during the long cold winter.

#### DOORS, WINDOWS AND THE CHIMNEY.

“Sometimes an opening was left for a door when the logs were laid, but usually the door space was made by cutting an aperture of the required size in one side of the room. The doorway was not always provided immediately with a door, but instead the most simple contrivances that would serve the purpose were brought into requisition. In some cases a quilt, blanket or skin was spared for the purpose of guarding the entrance. There is an instance in which a table is said to have served as a door also, being taken down and used as a table and rehung as a door after meals. As soon as convenient a shutter of some kind was provided. Sometimes this was a thatched framework, but more often it consisted of two large clapboards or puncheons, pinned together with cross pieces and wooden pins. The door was hung on wooden hinges and held shut by a wooden catch. Through a hole above the latch a buckskin thong passed, which when pulled lifted the wooden bar thus allowing the door to open. For security at night this latch string could be drawn in; hence, as an expression of welcome, there arose the saying, ‘The latch string is always hanging out.’

“Frequently, there was no window at first. Later, when duties became less pressing, a hole about two feet long was cut out of one of the wall logs. Whenever possible, the window was on the south side and could be left open during the summer at least. Greased or oiled paper pasted over sticks crossed in the shape of a sash was often used as a substitute for window glass. It admitted the light and excluded the air, but of course lacked the transparency. Even greased deer hide was sometimes used.

“The chimney of the western pioneer’s cabin was not built of stone or brick, but in most cases of split sticks of wood and mortar made of clay. Space was provided by leaving in the original building a large open place in the wall, or more often, perhaps, by cutting one after the structure was up. The fireplace—at least six feet wide and frequently of such dimensions as to occupy the whole width of the house—was constructed in this opening. It was planked on the outside by butts of wood notched together to stay it. The back and sides were built of stone, of wood lined with stone, or of stone and earth, the stone-work facing into the room. A large flat rock in front of it, called a hearth-stone, was placed level with the floor to protect the puncheons from brands that might roll out of the fire. For a chimney or flue, any contrivance that would conduct the smoke upward, would do. Some flues consisted of squares of sod, laid as a mason lays a wall of bricks and plastered on the inside with clay. Perhaps the most common type was that known as the ‘cat and clay’ chimney. It was built of small split sticks, two and a half or three feet in length, carried a little distance above the roof and plastered, both inside and out, with a thick covering of clay. Built as they were, the burning of a chimney was a frequent occurrence in cold weather.

#### THE SOUND OF THE NAIL HAMMER NOT HEARD.

“Other accessories were added as soon as possible. The clay, which had previously served as a floor and which had been beaten hard and smooth by this time was overlaid with a ‘puncheon’ floor consisting of slabs hewn from logs. After the floor was laid, the upper surface would be smoothed off with an adz. As a final touch of elegance, a few more logs were sometimes put on the building, making an upstairs or loft, which was reached by a ladder secured to the wall. Other families built a better roof or an additional room.

“During all of this building process there was ordinarily no sound of hammering of nails or rasping of the saw; only the dull thud of the ax. The pioneer was often forced to build his cabin without nails, screws, bolts, bars, or iron of any description. Wooden pegs were hewn from the logs; the hinges and even the catch for the door were wooden.

## ROOMS AND FURNISHINGS.

“The living room was of good size, for usually it served the purpose of kitchen, bedroom, parlor and arsenal. In other words, the loom, spinning wheel, chairs, beds, cooking utensils and other furniture, were all arranged as snugly as possible in this one room. With an ax and an auger the pioneer met all pressing needs. The furniture varied in proportion to the ingenuity of the occupants, except in the rare instances where settlers brought with them their old household supply.

“The articles used in the kitchen were few and simple. Lacking the convenience of a cook stove, the work was done in and about the big fireplace. The utensils of a well-furnished kitchen included an iron pot, a long-handled frying pan, a skillet and sometimes a coffee pot. Often a later improvement was found in the shape of an iron crane swinging from the side of the chimney and carrying on its ‘pot hook’ the kettles or iron pots used in cooking.

“Sometimes a mantel shelf was made by placing clapboards across strong wooden pins fitted into holes bored in the wall logs. This shelf might hold kitchen or table ware, the candlestick with its deer tallow candle and possibly an old clock. If the family were lucky enough to have an abundance of table-ware, a series of shelves with perhaps a cheap cotton cloth as a curtain might be built for a china closet.

“The necessity of finding a more convenient and comfortable place than the ground upon which to sleep produced the ‘prairie bunk.’ This one-legged bedstead, now a piece of furniture of the past, was improvised by the pioneer in a unique manner. A forked stake was driven into the ground at a proper distance from the corner of the room and upon it poles, usually of hickory, were laid reaching from each wall. These poles where they touched the walls rested in the openings between the logs or were driven into auger holes. Upon these poles slats of clapboard were placed, or linden bark was interwoven from pole to pole. Sometimes, an old-fashioned cord bed was made by using basswood bark for the cord. On this framework, the housewife spread her straw tick, or piled the luxurious mound of her home-made



feather bed. Such a sleeping place was usually known as a 'prairie bedstead,' but sometimes it was called a 'prairie rascal.' Beds of this sort, however, were for the grown-ups. Children were stowed away for the night either in low, dark attics, among the horns of elk and deer, or in trundle beds which would slip under the larger bedstead in the daytime.

"It was easy enough to improvise tables, bureaus and chairs. Often a packing box answered the purpose of the first two, while smaller boxes of the same kind served as chairs. Real chairs were seldom seen in the early cabins; but in their place long benches and stools were made out of hewn planks. These stools were often three-legged, because of the difficulty of making four legs so that all would touch the uneven floor at the same time. The benches were but hewn slabs with a couple of stakes driven slantingly into each end of the under side; and the tables in some instances were simply larger and higher benches.

"In one corner were the loom and other implements used in the manufacture of clothing; while the clothing itself was suspended from pegs driven in the logs. As there was no storehouse, flitches of bacon and rings of dried pumpkin were suspended from the rafters. Over the door was usually hung the rifle and with it the powder horn and hunting pouch. Luxuries were rare even among well-to-do people and seldom was there so much as a strip of rag carpet on their floors, although they might have large tracts of land, numerous head of stock and many bushels of corn."

#### BREAKING PRAIRIE.

The rearing of the cabin—sod or otherwise—and "breaking prairie" marked the initial epochs of the pioneer's life in the Northwest, and the massive prairie-breaking plow was the most imposing agricultural implement of his time. It was made to cut and turn a furrow from 20 to 30 inches wide, and sometimes even wider. The beam was a straight stick of strong timber 7 to 12 feet long, and the colter or cutter attached to it extended down close to the point of the shear. In the earlier make of plow, this sod cutter was a simple blade, which was replaced in the later steel plow invented by John Deere, of Illinois, by the circular disc. The forward

end of the beam was carried by a pair of trucks or wheels, and into the top of the axle of these wheels were framed two stout, upright pieces just far enough apart to allow the forward end of the plow-beam to nicely fit in between them. To the forward end of the beam and on top of it, there was fastened by a link or clevis, a long lever, running between these stout standards in the axle of the trucks and fastened to them by a strong bolt running through both standards and lever; this bolt acting as a fulcrum for the lever was in easy reach of the man having charge of the plow. By raising or depressing the rear end of this lever, the depth of the furrow was gauged, and by depressing the lever low enough the plow could be thrown entirely out of the ground. One of the wheels of the truck ran in the furrow and was from two to four inches larger than the one that ran on the sod. This, of course, was necessary so as to have a level rest for the forward end of the plow beam. The mould-boards of these plows were sometimes made of wood protected by narrow strips of steel or band-iron and fastened to the mould-board. In some cases, these mould-boards were made entirely of iron rods, which generally gave the best satisfaction. The share of these pioneer plows—or “shear,” as generally called in the West—had to be made of the very best steel so as to carry a keen edge. The original prairie sod was one web of small tough roots, and hence the necessity of a razor-like edge on the shear to secure good work and ease to the team.

L. S. Coffin, for so many years identified with the agricultural interests of the Fort Dodge region and a humanitarian and philanthropist of honorable note, describes the old-time plow as above and continues the picture of prairie breaking: “And next the prairie breaking-plow team. Who sees the like of it today? A string of from three to six yokes of oxen hitched to this long plow-beam, the driver clad in somewhat of a cowboy style, and armed with a whip, the handle of which resembled a long, slender fishing-rod, with a lash that when wielded by an expert was so severe that the oxen had learned to fear it as much as the New England oxen did the Yankee ox-goad with its brad.

“The season for breaking prairie varied as the spring and summer were early or late, wet or dry. The best results

were had by beginning to plow after the grass had a pretty good start, and quitting the work some time before it was ready for the scythe. The main object aimed at was to secure as complete a rotting of the sod as possible. To this end the plow was gauged to cut only one and a half to two inches deep. Then if the mould-board was so shaped as to 'kink' the sod as it was turned over, all the better, as in the early days of prairie breaking very little use was made of the ground the first year. The object was to have the land in as good a shape as possible for sowing wheat the following spring. A dry season, thin breaking, 'kinky' furrows, and not too long breaking, accomplished this, and made the putting in of wheat the following spring an easy task. But, on the contrary, if broken too deeply, and the furrows laid flat and smooth, or in a wet season, or if broken too late, the job of seeding the wheat on tough sod was a hard and slow one.

#### OUTFIT FOR PRAIRIE-BREAKING.

"The outfit for prairie-breaking was usually about as follows: Three to six yokes of oxen, a covered wagon, a small kit of tools, and among these always a good assortment of files for sharpening the plow-share, a few cooking utensils, and sometimes a dog and pony. The oxen, when the day's work was done, were turned loose to feed on the grass. To one or more was attached a far-sounding bell, so as to betray their whereabouts at all times. The pony and dog came in good play for company, and in gathering up the oxen when wanted. The season for breaking would average about two months. The price per acre for breaking varied from \$2.50 to \$4.50, as the man was boarded or 'found' himself. In latter years when it was learned that flax could be raised to good advantage on new breaking, and that it helped to rot the sod, the breaking season commenced much earlier.

"Three yokes of good-sized oxen drawing a 24-inch plow, with two men to manage the work, would ordinarily break about two acres a day; five yokes with a 36-inch plow, requiring no more men to run the machine, would break three acres a day. When the plow was kept running continuously, the shear had to be taken to the blacksmith as often as once



a week to be drawn out thin so that a keen knife-edge could be easily put on it with a file by the men who managed the plow. If the team was going around an 80-acre tract of prairie, the lay or shear had to be filed after each round to do the best work. The skilful breaker tried to run his plow one and a half inches deep and no deeper. This was for the purpose of splitting the sod across the mass of tough fibrous roots, which had lain undisturbed for uncounted years and had formed a network of interlaced sinews as difficult to cut as india rubber, where the prairie was inclined to be wet; and it was not easy to find an entire 80-acre tract that was not intersected with numerous sloughs across which the breaking plow had to run. In many places the sod in these sloughs was so tough that it was with the greatest difficulty that the plow could be kept in the ground. If it ran out of the ground, this tough, leatherly sod would flop back into the furrow as swiftly as a row of bricks set up on end, and the man and driver had to turn the long ribbon of tough sod over by hand, if they could not make a 'balk.' In the flat, wet prairie, it sometimes took from two to three years for the tough sod to decompose sufficiently to produce a full crop. The plow had to be kept in perfect order to turn this kind of prairie sod over, and the lay had to have an edge as keen as a scythe to do good work. There were usually two lays, or shears, fitted to each plow so that the team might not be idle while the boy with the mustang went often from five to eight miles to the nearest blacksmith to get a lay sharpened. Sometimes the oxen would stray off among the barrens, or follow the course of some stream for miles and hide among the willows to take a vacation, and frequently they were not found until after two or three days of weary search by the men and boys, while the plow which ought to be earning six or nine dollars a day was lying idle on the great prairie.

#### PRAIRIE-BREAKING BRIGADES.

"There were men who equipped a brigade for breaking and carried on a thriving business from about the first day in May to the end of July. When the rush of immigration began in the spring of 1854, there were not nearly enough

breaking teams in the country to supply the demand. In some cases the newcomers would consent to have a portion of their prairie farms broken up in April, and on this early breaking they would plant sod corn. The process was simple. A man with an axe would follow the line of every second or third furrow, strike the blade deep in the ground, a boy or girl would follow and drop three or four kernels of corn into the hole and bring one foot down 'right smart' on the hole in the sod, and the deed was done. No cultivation was required after planting, and in the fall a half crop of corn was frequently gathered without expense. Those who were not able to get breaking done at the best time for subduing the sod, were often glad to have some done in the latter part of July or the first half of August. So for several years the breaking brigades were able to run their teams for four months each year, and it was profitable business.

#### SAD PASSING OF THE OLD TIMES.

"With all the crudeness, with all the exposure, with all the privations and hard times—for there were hard times in those days—yet the passing of those pioneer days with the quaint old prairie-breaking plow, the string of oxen, the old prairie-schooner wagon, the elk and deer, with now and then a buffalo, the prairie chickens, the dug-outs, sod houses and log cabins, give to us pioneer settlers a tinge of sadness difficult to express in words; for with all these have gone a good deal of that community and fellowship of neighborhood feeling, so common and so heartily expressed from one to another in the abounding hospitality and in the kindly exchange of help in those days. Then those living miles apart were friends and neighbors. Now the families living on adjoining quarter sections are strangers."

#### WILD GAME FOR FOOD AND SPORT.

While the pioneer of Northwestern Iowa was waiting for his crops to mature, he found wild game, both of the feathered and furred variety, right at hand, waiting upon his skill to supply the family larder, to furnish him cash and to yield him means of recreation and outdoor sport. Two pioneers

of typical counties in this section of the state draw pictures of the many varieties of wild game which they found awaiting them in the '50s. One of them writes: "Besides the larger game, such as elk and deer, wild turkeys, prairie chickens and a species of curlews as big as chickens with bills about eight inches long, abounded. These curlews are now extinct. They had a peculiar whistle and were esteemed highly by the pioneers on account of their delicate flavor. Of water fowl, there were myriads. Fat coons were slaughtered and considered very palatable by the settlers and, aside from their meat, the settlers received a revenue from the sale of their skins. Brother John was the trapper of the family and derived a considerable revenue from the sale of pelts. On a knoll near the house on the present Micham farm, I remember John baited a trap with a skunk for bait and soon had the hides of eighteen foxes from this one place. Mink was very plentiful and one year John sold \$100 worth of mink skins, all trapped within the present city limits" (City of Cherokee).

Another picture: "Imagine a vast, unbroken tract of rolling prairie, stretching away in all directions beyond the range of human vision, with little groves of timber here and there along the water courses. Such was Calhoun County when the first white men came to establish their homes within its borders. All over the broad prairie were swamps and ponds, where muskrat and water fowl abounded. The Indian had departed and the only denizens of the country were the wild animals. Big game was plentiful, especially the elk; a few lynx and wildcats were to be found in the little forests; beaver, otter, mink and some other fur-bearing animals inhabited some localities; prairie wolves were numerous and their howling at night sometimes caused little children to shudder with fear, as they cuddled together in their beds, wishing that daylight would come. There was also a small animal called a swift, because of its fleetness of foot. In appearance it resembled a fox, but was smaller and not so cunning. As the country settled up, this swift became such a pest that the county authorities offered bounties upon swift scalps."

During the very early days, the settlers suffered little an-



noyance from wolves, or coyotes, as the small prairie wolves were called. The coyote emitted a blood-curdling howl, but was not feared and did little damage to live stock. It was only after the country became quite well settled that the farmers, located especially along and near the Little Sioux River, were annoyed by wolves; and they were the larger and fiercer timber wolves. The wild game having almost disappeared, the wolves, during the deep snows of winter, began to attack hogs and young stock. To thin out the wolves, both as a pest and objects of exciting sport, hunts were often organized. On an appointed day, the hunters gathered for conference. Captains of two parties were selected and the men placed so as to form a large circle. Hounds were also brought into the hunt so as to rout out the prey and assist in running them down. The circle was gradually narrowed until the wolves were sighted, when the dogs were loosed and the wolves dispatched, firearms being used with caution, if at all. The side getting the largest number of wolves was given a supper by the losers. Besides which, there were the proceeds from the "wolf scalps" to be considered.

Turkey shoots were different, as they tended to train the marksman in the killing of game which was a valued source of food. The expert marksman was not only a leading local character, but a valued provider for the housewife and family. A turkey was placed in a box, its head only protruding, and those engaging in the contest would draw a line at a distance agreed upon, usually several hundred yards, and pay so much per shot for the privilege of shooting at the protruding head; and he who killed the turkey owned it. It took a pretty good shot to send a rifle ball through the head of the bird thus placed, as that portion of its anatomy was always in motion. As to the actual profits of the sport, the man who furnished the turkeys usually came out ahead, although a number of birds were sure to be killed. The rivalry was as to which of the contestants could kill the most birds and the winner became a large figure in the community.

#### CLOTHING OF THE PIONEERS.

Most of the clothing was home-made. Every farmer kept a flock of sheep. In earliest times the carding, the spinning

and the weaving were all done by the women. There was a spinning wheel in every home. Often there were two—a large one for wool and a smaller one for flax—while one loom might serve many families. Linsey, or linsey-woolsey, was made of linen and woolen yarns, the wool serving as the filling. Men rested betimes, but the women did not. They wove the cloth and knitted the stockings. When they could not make new cloth fast enough, they patched the old. Even then, they could hardly keep their families out of nakedness. One woman of those times said she had often sent her children into the woods on the approach of strangers, because they did not have clothes enough to make their bodies presentable. When the settlers first began to buy cotton goods, the clothing came in plain colors and it was dyed to suit individual tastes. Walnut bark and hulls, sumac, madder, indigo and other native materials were used as dye-stuffs, and the resulting colors were often hideous. But it was all in the pioneer lifetime.

#### THE FOOD OF THE PRIMITIVE TIMES.

Before the grist and flour mills came, grain was ground into flour between flat stones and sometimes in hand coffee mills. Much corn was eaten after it had been parched and rye similarly treated was a substitute for coffee. Green corn was dried and when cooked with beans made succotash, which was relished by the pioneers as much as by the aborigines. To sweeten their foods, they filched honey from the bee trees and later they made molasses from cane which was grown like corn. The staple meat of the pioneers was pork, fresh and fresh-salted for winter use, and pickled or smoked for summer use. They had plenty of wild meat, too, but quail and prairie chicken surfeited them, while the appetite for pork lasted. "Corn bread, with pork and rye coffee," says one of the early chroniclers, "formed the prairie bill of fare, with an occasional dish of mustard greens." Another writer of these times varies this bill of fare by adding hominy or samp, venison, dried pumpkin and wild game, and a few additional vegetables. But Northwestern Iowa is a "big proposition," and the menu of its pioneers varied considera-

bly with the section of their residence. The common hominy so much relished by them all was boiled corn from which the hulls had been removed with hot lye; hence called lye hominy. What was called "true hominy" was made by pounding the corn. For this purpose a mortar-like hole was made in the top of a stump, the corn placed in it and beaten with a maul. When it was sufficiently crushed, the bran was floated off in water and the delicious grain boiled like rice. All those who write knowingly of the early generation of pioneers in Northwestern Iowa, in whatever section, are agreed that wheat bread, tea, coffee and fruits were luxuries, reserved for "company" occasions.

#### RECREATIONS AND AMUSEMENTS.

The stern work of wresting the farm from the sod and timber lands and, in the meantime, of gathering food and clothing from nature's creatures and crude productions, was an almost constant round of bodily stress and mental ingenuity. Primitive schools and churches were soon established, where several families were gathered together and recreation commenced in the lives of the hard-working pioneer. As the settlements increased in number and density, debating societies and spelling and singing schools were formed, and neither age nor previous condition seemed to be a bar to their activities. The spelling schools were usually held in a country schoolhouse and the competition was as intense and serious as in the struggles for leadership among the wolf hunters or turkey shooters. To this center would flock the best spellers from other districts, the young people frequently coming from long distances to attend the "spell-down." Sides were chosen by designated leaders, a word being given alternately to each side. Each contestant remained standing until he missed spelling a word and then sat down. When only one remained on a side, the contest became of absorbing interest. At times it was so difficult to spell down some of the participants from common English words that the teacher would have to resort to foreign words, of which a list was always on hand. Sometimes schools were competitors and sometimes districts or localities.

Another less strenuous means of recreation was the sing-



ing school, conducted by a competent teacher. A central schoolhouse usually was the meeting place for the musically inclined, who also found means of making it quite lively as a social institution. With the spread of the modern system of common education, the singing school disappeared; but the old-fashioned spelling school has been revived within comparatively recent years as a public amusement, with the result that spelling, as well as penmanship, is discovered to be almost a lost art or accomplishment; and a poor speller is no longer considered discounted among educated people. It was the gathering or dispersal of the spellers or singers of the olden time that brightly and joyfully stamped the occasions. Those who remember those old-time amusements will recall with brightening eye and warming blood the big bob-sled, the jingling sleigh-bells, and the merry load of young and old on their way to these events, or returning therefrom. The brisk winter air, vibrant with merry voices raised in song or shouts of laughter, added zest to victory or achievement. Then, there was often a spirited race between rival loads, an occasional upsetting in a cool, glistening snow bank, and other incidents which gave zest to these occasions while they were in the making and long afterward.

If one of the acquaintances thus formed ripened into an intimacy which ended in a wedding, it was usually followed by a charivari, and the discordant serenade was generally continued until the bride and groom showed themselves. The affair ended all the more pleasantly if each of the serenaders was treated to a piece of the wedding cake.

Another form of amusement in the advanced pioneer period was the "husking bee." On such occasions the corn to be husked would be divided into two piles, as nearly equal in size as possible. Two of the guests present would then divide the huskers into two equal companies; each was allotted an equal pile of corn and the outward contest was to see which company should first finish its pile. Both sexes participated. As any young man who found a red ear was permitted to kiss the girl or woman next to him, the aims of the contest were sometimes mixed, and it became difficult to decide whether the prime object of the "husking bee" was to reduce the pile or find a red ear of corn. Frequently, the

young men would play an underhanded game by passing the red ear from one to another.

The women had their quilting parties, when a number would take their needles and thimbles and assemble at some house to join in making a quilt. Here there was friendly rivalry to see who could run the straightest line or make the neatest stitches.

Corn huskings and quiltings were frequently followed by a dance. Nearly every frontier settlement had at least one man who could play a violin. The neighbors would call him to the barn or house, where the more staid amusements had been going on, and he would "scrape" for the Virginia reel, the minuet and the cotillion, calling the figures in a voice which could be heard a mile or more away. The old-time fiddler may not have been much of a musician, but he could make his violin jubilant over "Turkey in the Straw," "Money Musk," "The Bowery Gals" and "The Irish Washerwoman," and it is more than likely that the steppers enjoyed themselves as thoroughly as do the modern men and women when their select orchestra wafts its melodious strains over the polished dancing floor and seduces them to the tango, the fox trot, the hesitation waltz or the Charleston.





## CHAPTER VII.

### AGRICULTURE AND ALLIED INDUSTRIES.

THE GRAIN TRADE AS THE NATION'S MAIN EXPANDING FORCE—COMPARATIVE VALUE OF WHEAT AND CORN—DRAWBACKS AND EXPANSIONS IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA—THE GRASSHOPPER AND CHINCH BUG PLAGUES—THE GRASSHOPPER INVASION OF 1873 AND 1874—RELIEF OF GRASSHOPPER-STRICKEN DISTRICTS—THE CHINCH BUG ALSO FIGHTS THE WHEAT FARMERS—CHANGING CONDITIONS—GOLDEN BELT OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—PLYMOUTH AND WOODBURY COUNTIES—CRAWFORD AND MONONA—SIOUX AND LYON—THREE RICH INTERIOR COUNTIES—IDA, CARROLL AND GREENE COUNTIES—CHEROKEE AND BUENA VISTA—HALF A DOZEN REPRESENTATIVE NORTHERN COUNTIES—EMMET AND DICKINSON—OSCEOLA—THE MAIN DEDUCTION.

If westward the star of empire has taken its way until it brightly shines on the Great Republic, the raising of the cereals, one of the firmest bases upon which rests the strength of nations, has been continually shifting westward in the United States of America. With the progress and extension of population and transportation, the raising and distribution of the cereals—notably of wheat and corn—spread from the Atlantic States up the Hudson Valley and across the old Middle States into the Northwest beyond the Ohio, and from the colonial South to the valley of the Mississippi. The wheat belt has covered a more northern zone than that of corn, and its sway has never had serious competition from the states south of the Ohio, while corn had a divided allegiance, and North and South were fighting for supremacy even when the Civil war brought the bloody test of strength. In 1860, the Southern States were producing nearly 31 per cent of the total national crop and the Western States about 45 per cent.

THE GRAIN TRADE AS THE NATION'S MAIN EXPANDING FORCE.

The superintendent of the United States Census of 1860 brings forcefully to the front the supreme importance of the grain trade of the United States in the superb expan-

sion of the nation, thus: "The grain trade of the United States, viewed in all its features, is one of the chief marvels of modern commercial history. To trace its rise and progress would be almost to complete a record of the development of the entire continent, for it has been the leading agency in the opening up of seven-eighths of our settled territory. First, in the march of civilization, came the pioneer husbandman, and following closely on his footsteps was the merchant; and after him were created in rapid succession our ocean and lake fleets, our canals, our wonderful network of railroads, and, in fact, our whole commercial system.

"The grain merchant has been in all countries, but more particularly in this, the pioneer of commerce, whether we refer to the ocean or the inland trade, and not till he was established could other commercial adventurers find a foothold. The commercial history of the United States is based mainly on breadstuffs—staples always marketable at some quotation wherever the human family dwells.

"Commencing at an early period with the scant products of the Atlantic States, the grain trade was gradually pushed up the Hudson River as far as navigation would permit; and where that ceased, the Erie Canal commenced and carried it to the Great Lakes. It was on the completion of this great achievement that the real history of the grain trade of the United States began. Then it was that our 'inland seas' became the highway of a commerce which has already a magnitude surpassing that of many of the oldest European nations. Then it was that the vast territory west of the lakes, hitherto the home of the red man and the range for the buffalo, became the attractive field for the enterprising pioneers of industry and civilization, who laid the foundations of what are now seven large and flourishing States of the Union, peopled by a population vigorous and hardy and well calculated to succeed either in the arts of peace or war.

"At the same time, the grain trade was steadily progressing up the Mississippi River into the heart of the West, and on whose banks were built large and flourishing cities, the great depots for nearly a quarter of a century for the products of the rich valley of that river.

"The grain trade has progressed, year after year, from

small beginnings, till it has become one of the leading industries of the country and among the most important in its influence on the world, as on it depends much of the peace, happiness and prosperity not only of the people of the United States, but also of many of the kingdoms of Europe."

#### COMPARATIVE VALUE OF WHEAT AND CORN.

Prof. Louis B. Schmidt, of the Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts, adds a paragraph of even closer application to Northwestern Iowa: "A study of the grain trade of the United States shows that the production of corn has always exceeded that of wheat—amounting, as a matter of fact, to considerably more than half of all the other cereals (wheat, oats, barley, rye and buckwheat) combined. As an article of commerce it has not, however, been as important as wheat. The reasons for this are, first, that wheat is the most important breadstuff, constituting the article of prime necessity in the food consumption of the American people, and, second, that wheat is especially adapted to the requirements of commerce. It has therefore occupied the leading place in the grain trade of the United States since the beginning of the Colonial era. Corn does not possess these advantages. It is better adapted to the local markets for feeding purposes, going to the ultimate consumer largely in the form of beef, pork, poultry and dairy products. Even so, however, corn forms an important article of commerce, second only to wheat in the list of cereals."

Although as an article of commerce in itself and the chief raw material for the manufacture of flour and white bread, wheat is undoubtedly the leading cereal of the two, when one remembers the variety of food products of which corn is the chief transforming agent, it is extremely doubtful whether the yellow cereal should not be numbered first as a sustainer of human life throughout the world. Any well informed man or woman can trace its indispensable uses in the raising of beef, pork, poultry and dairy products, and the preparation of breads, sugar, sirup, puddings and health foods. Nothing is wasted; even its stalks and leaves, whether dried in the field or pressed as ensilage, are transformed into the sweetest of meat or milk.



In view of such facts, the people of Iowa claim that they were wise to come under the sway of King Corn, especially as they came early to realize that their soil, climate and gentle water courses were ideal elements in the raising of the cereal. Even Northwestern Iowa was a little too far south to compete with the better conditions for wheat production which prevailed in Minnesota and the Dakotas. It was many years, however, before Iowa became a recognized factor in the corn-producing belt of the country. By 1850, Ohio was leading among the States, Kentucky was second, and Illinois and Indiana respectively third and fourth. Iowa was not even listed among the leading corn States. Ten years later the State was seventh, with Illinois and Ohio first and second, and Missouri leading the Southern States, barely overtopping Indiana. In 1879, Iowa was only second to Illinois as a raiser of corn, and since 1889 the two have run a neck-and-neck race for the wire, with the Hawkeye State, betimes, under it first. Later, Kansas became one of the three great corn States. Missouri is the only Southern State which is in the same class with the corn producers of the Middle West.

#### DRAWBACKS AND EXPANSIONS IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

Only a few mowing and reaping machines were in use in the older and more settled sections of Iowa before the Civil war, and it was twenty years or more before improved agricultural machinery was introduced to the newer counties of Northwestern Iowa. But it was not until the problem of farm fencing was solved by the invention of barbed wire that agriculture in that part of the State went rapidly forward. As the raising of corn, cattle and hogs was found to be closely allied, the barbed wire fencing was admirably adapted to keep the live stock from the corn fields. A monopoly for its manufacture was formed in Massachusetts, which was broken by the Farmers' Protective Association and other Iowa organizations, so that by the early '80s the farmers could purchase barbed wire for about five and a half cents a pound—a pound being equivalent to a rod of wire. This cheap, effective fencing proved the strongest stimulus ever enjoyed by the farmers of Iowa to the allied industries of corn and live stock raising. The prosperity of Northwestern

Iowa was assured, but not without its heart-rending trials from insect pests.

#### THE GRASSHOPPER AND CHINCH BUG PLAGUES.

For nearly a dozen years, Northwestern Iowa was scourged by grasshoppers and chinch bugs. At least fifteen counties in this section of the State were devastated, and their fields of wheat ruined. From 1867 to 1876, the grasshoppers swept wheat fields and vegetable gardens before them; then, with a hiatus of about three years, the less obtrusive but equally destructive chinch bug completed the discomfiture and discouragement of the wheat farmers. The latter departed for more northern and northwestern climes, beyond the stricken lands of Iowa, and soon the corn belt was extended into the abandoned wheat area.

The grasshoppers first appeared in the fall of 1867, and Charles B. Richards, who was then a leading business man of Fort Dodge (which is just east of the Northwestern Iowa of this history), has written the following account of their first visitation: "The first appearance of these pests was on the 8th of September, 1867, when, about noon, the air was discovered to be filled with grasshoppers coming from the west, settling about as fast as the flakes of an ordinary snow-storm; in fact, it appeared like a snowstorm, when the larger flakes of snow fall slowly and perpendicularly, there being no wind. They immediately began to deposit their eggs, choosing new breaking and hard ground along the roads, but not confining themselves to such places and being the worst where the soil was sandy. They continued to cover the ground, fences and buildings, eating everything and in many places eating the bark from the young growth of apple, pear, cherry and other trees, and nearly destroying currants, gooseberries and shrubs, generally eating the fruit buds for the next year. They disappeared with the first frost; not flying away, but hid themselves and died.

"No amount of cultivating the soil and disturbing the eggs seemed to injure or destroy them. I had two hundred acres of new breaking, and as soon as the frost was out commenced dragging the ground, which exposed the eggs. The ground looked as if rice had been sown very thickly. I

thought the dragging, while it was still freezing at night, thus exposing the eggs and breaking up the shell or case in which the eggs (some twenty or thirty in each shell) are enclosed, would destroy them; but I believe that every egg hatched.

“As the wheat began to sprout and grow, the grasshoppers began to hatch and seemed to literally cover the ground; they being about an eighth of an inch long when first hatched. They fed on all young and tender plants, but seemed to prefer barley and wheat in the fields and tender vegetables in the garden. Many keep the wheat trimmed, and if it is a dry season it will not grow fast enough to head. But generally here, in 1868, the wheat headed out and the stalk was trimmed bare, not a leaf left; and then they went up on the head and ate that, or destroyed it. Within ten days from the time wheat heads out they moult. Prior to this time, they have no wings, but within a period of five or six days they entirely change their appearance and habits, and from an ordinary grasshopper become a winged insect capable of flying thousands of miles.

“In moulting, they shed the entire outer covering or skin, even to the bottom of their feet and over their eyes. I have caught them when fully developed and ready to moult or shed their outside covering, and pulled it off, developing their wings neatly folded, almost white in color and so frail that the least touch destroys them. But in two days they begin to fly—first short flights across the fields where they are feeding, and then longer flights; and within ten days after they moult all the grasshoppers seem to rise very high and make a long flight, those of 1867 never having been heard of after leaving here and all leaving within ten days after they had their wings.

“Their second appearance was in the summer of 1872, when they seemed to be driven by a series of southwest winds over the country, not coming in such clouds, but spreading in flocks over a territory—taking Fort Dodge for the southeast corner, running north into Minnesota and west, how far I do not know. Only comparatively few settled in Webster County, and those in small swarms in the northern townships along the Des Moines River. Probably the counties of



Clay, Buena Vista and Dickinson suffered as much as those already named. This time they were early enough in the season to nearly destroy all the crops of those counties; evidently having been hatched farther south, and having attained maturity much earlier than those of 1867. They went through exactly the same process of depositing eggs, hatching and destroying crops as before; and were identical in every respect. The only difference was in their mode of leaving. They made many attempts to leave, rising en masse for a long flight, when the adverse winds would bring them down; for it is a fact well demonstrated that their instinct teaches them in what direction to fly; and if the wind is adverse they will settle down, within a few hours; when, if the wind was in the direction they desired to go they never would be heard of again within hundreds of miles.

“Wherever they deposit their eggs in the fall, crops are very certain (that is, small grains and gardens) to be destroyed the next season. But, as a general thing, corn is not destroyed or injured, unless it is done in the fall, when the old grasshoppers first come in. So if farmers know eggs are deposited (and they may be certain they are, if there is a swarm of old ones in the country in September or October, or if a swarm has come any time in the season from a distance and settled down and remained any length of time) they should ignore small grain for the season and plant corn or potatoes.

“I am not certain but that grasshoppers will be a blessing, instead of a scourge, if their coming will have a tendency to make farmers devote less time and money to raising wheat and do a more general system of farming.”

#### THE GRASSHOPPER INVASION OF 1873 AND 1874.

Altogether, Northwestern Iowa suffered the worst from the grasshopper ravages during the growing seasons of 1873 and 1874. In June, 1873, they invaded Northern Iowa and Southern Minnesota from the Southwest. Their first appearance resembled the approach of a storm cloud, so dense and numerous were the swarms. An ominous buzz, like a battery of distant sawmills, and the darkening of the sun's rays, were

the next evidences of the approach of the weird, mysterious danger. Then, like a dense, dun blanket, the insects settled upon the fields and gardens of growing wheat and vegetables, stripping everything green down to the ground in an appalling short period. Billions upon billions of eggs were then deposited in the ground about half an inch below the surface, where they lay until the warm winds and sun of spring hatched them out.

An old settler of Dickinson County writes, as follows, of the sequel: "Early in the spring of 1874, the eggs deposited the season before commenced hatching and the soil looked literally alive with insignificant looking insects a quarter of an inch in length and possessing great vitality and surprising appetites. As if by instinct, their first movements were toward the fields where tender shoots of grain were making their modest appearance. Sometimes the first intimation a farmer would have of what was going on would be from noticing along one side of the field a narrow strip where the grain was missing. At first, perhaps, he would attribute it to a balk in sowing, but each day it grew wider, and a closer examination would reveal the presence of myriads of young grasshoppers. As spring advanced, it became evident that comparatively few eggs had been deposited in the territory that had suffered the worst in 1873. They had been laid farther east. In Kossuth, Emmet, Dickinson and Palo Alto counties, Iowa, and in Martin and Jackson counties, Minnesota, the young ones were hatched out in far greater numbers than elsewhere.

"The early part of the season was extremely dry; no rain fell until the middle of June. Grain did not grow, but the grasshoppers did, and before the drouth ended the crops in the counties named were eaten and parched beyond all hope of recovery. About the middle of June, however, a considerable rain fell, and outside of the before-mentioned counties the prospects were generally favorable for good crops. The young grasshoppers commenced to get wings about the middle of June and in a few days they began to rise and fly. The prospect seemed good for a speedy riddance of the pests, but Providence had ordained otherwise. The perverse insects were waiting for an eastern wind and the perverse wind blew

from the southwest for nearly three weeks, a phenomenon of rare occurrence in this region, as it very seldom blows from one quarter more than three days at a time. During this time, the grasshoppers were almost constantly on the move. Straggling swarms found their way to Central Iowa, doing, however, but little damage.

“About the tenth or twelfth of July, the wind changed to the east, and, as by common consent, the countless multitude took their departure westward. Up to this time the crops had been damaged but slightly in the western counties, but during the two or three days of their flight the grain fields in these counties were injured to quite an extent. After the date above mentioned, with one or two unimportant exceptions, no grasshoppers were seen.

“There is no evidence that this region was visited in 1874 by foreign swarms, though it has been stated that such was the fact. On the contrary, there is every reason for believing that they were all hatched here. According to the most reliable information, the grasshoppers hatched here produced no eggs and the inference is that they were incapable of so doing. They were much smaller than their predecessors, and besides they were covered with parasites in the shape of little red bugs which made sad havoc in their ranks. What became of them after leaving here seems a mystery, but probably their enfeebled constitutions succumbed to the attacks of the parasites and the depleting effects of general debility.”

The more southern counties of Northwestern Iowa appear to have been visited by the hungry grasshopper at a later period than those nearer the Minnesota border. For instance, they swept over Palo Alto County for the second time in 1876. In the spring of that year, the farmers organized to conduct a bitter campaign against their arch enemy. The county bought large sheets of tin and barrels of tar which were distributed among the farmers, who constructed what were called “hopper dozers.” The sheets of tin were fastened together, bent up from the bottom and filled with melted tar. The “hopper dozers” were then put on wheels or carried through the wheat fields, knocking the grasshoppers off the grain into the tar, from which they were taken by the bushels and to make their extermination doubly sure were burned.



This treatment spelled the end of the "hoppers" in Palo Alto County, and much of the adjacent territory.

The grasshoppers lingered longer in Cherokee County and some of the districts thereabouts. The first invasion of 1876 came from the James River Valley, South Dakota, and the dreaded insects were first noted in July of that year. They were fully grown and voracious, and after they had destroyed the uncut grain, as well as that already bound in the shocks, they lingered about until about the middle of August to deposit their eggs and then merrily winged their way hence on a northwest wind. In the spring of 1877, the eggs hatched out despite the cold previous winter, and the native hoppers were joined by more mature associates from Kansas and South Dakota. Cherokee County suffered the most this year, although its farmers wielded a device similar to the "hopper dozer" of Palo Alto and other districts, their sheet-iron scrapers being filled with kerosene oil instead of tar. One farmer vouches for the statement that he killed in one afternoon with his grasshopper slayer, assisted by common flames, seven barrellfuls of the insect enemy.

Notwithstanding, in 1878 the grasshoppers again made their appearance in Northwestern Iowa and were especially destructive in O'Brien and Osceola counties. A few "hoppers" hatched out in 1879, but 1878 is generally fixed upon as the termination of the grasshopper plague which so depleted the northwestern section of the State of its wheat farmers.

#### RELIEF FOR GRASSHOPPER-STRICKEN DISTRICTS.

The most widespread ravages of the grasshoppers were suffered in 1873, and no county in Northwestern Iowa escaped them. Even Central Iowa, as far east as Fort Dodge and Ames, suffered much; but the insatiable pests after stripping the grain fields and vegetable gardens of everything green and life-supporting, attacked the very dwellings of the farmers and literally drove many of them out of the country. The prices of farm lands went down fifty per cent in many places, and there were no purchasers even at that decline. But it was not the future which most concerned the people;

rather the keen distress, actual hunger pangs and physical sufferings of the present.

At this time, Cyrus C. Carpenter, of Webster County, was governor, and continued to serve as such throughout the worst of the plague. The chief executive and the adjutant general of the State were the leaders in the work of relieving the stricken people, and Governor Carpenter describes the public and private measures adopted, with attending circumstances, as follows: "I think that one reason why a Divine Power, whose wisdom and goodness are unquestioned, permits these scourges and disasters to blight the hopes, and bring want and sorrow to various sections of the country, is, in part, to enable those outside the stricken territory, and exempted from its calamities, to practically illustrate their humanity and generosity. Thus the State Legislature, at the session of 1874, made an appropriation to buy seed for the farmers in the stricken district of Iowa. By this act, \$50,000 were appropriated; but it was confined to Iowa and limited to the purchase of seed for the ensuing season. Under the act making the appropriation, the governor was authorized to appoint a commission consisting of three persons who were to investigate the necessities of the people in Northwestern Iowa, and determine upon an equitable method of distributing to the worthy and necessitous, the seed provided by the appropriation. The governor appointed as the commission, John Tarker, of Jones County, Dr. Levi Fuller, of Fayette County, and O. B. Brown, of Van Buren County (all residents of Eastern Iowa). They traveled over the devastated counties, appointed local committees in each county to receive and issue the seed, covering the remainder of the appropriation back into the treasury. There was never a better investment than this appropriation. It undoubtedly determined a good many to stick to their farms, who, without this small encouragement, would have given up the unequal contest, sold their farms at a nominal price and moved away.

"But this appropriation was limited to the purchase and distribution of seed. How the people of Northwestern Iowa and in the territory of Dakota, which perhaps had been more thoroughly devastated than any portion of Iowa, were to be

preserved from suffering was not determined by this legislation. This opened an avenue for the contributions of the benevolent throughout the country. As soon as the necessities of these people came to be understood, money, clothing and the products of the field from the portions of Iowa which had not suffered from the invasion, and from other states (even from New England), were tendered in generous profusion. The question of how to make an equitable distribution of these benefactions had to be determined. Accordingly, a convention was called to meet at Fort Dodge to consider this and other matters in reference to obtaining and distributing supplies. Delegates were in attendance from the various counties of Northwestern Iowa and from Dakota.

“Among these, there was one man whose great heart was thoroughly aroused at the tale of woe which came from the stricken region, and who not only had leisure, but had the disposition, to give his time and energies to the work of relief. I refer to Gen. N. B. Baker, the adjutant general of Iowa. He, with Colonel Spofford, of Des Moines, and the writer, then living at Des Moines, attended this convention. It was determined to appoint a committee to visit the various counties in Northwestern Iowa and Dakota, and, upon consultation with the people, appoint local committees through which the work of distribution could be intelligently performed. General Baker was made chairman of this committee. This was in the early part of January, 1874.

“Upon the adjournment of the convention, General Baker, Colonel Spofford and the writer, and several people from Dakota, who had determined to go farther east to solicit supplies, started for Des Moines. A fierce snowstorm had set in during the afternoon. Before the train reached Gowrie (Webster County) it was stalled in a snowdrift. We remained there nearly twenty-four hours, when, despairing of getting to Des Moines within two or three days by rail, we left the train, walked about five miles to Gowrie, and then hired a team to take us to Grand Junction, from which point we knew the railroad was open to Des Moines.

“We left Gowrie for Grand Junction just at dark in a two-horse sleigh. It was a clear, cold, frosty night. But



with buffalo robes and blankets we managed to keep ourselves fairly comfortable. There was in the party a gentleman by the name of McIntyre, from Dakota. He was a Baptist minister and a very intelligent man. After getting on the road, the conversation turned upon the dreary situation of the settlers, in their lonely cabins, away on the prairies of Northwestern Iowa and Dakota, shut in by impassable snow-banks, with the fierce wind howling around them; without sufficient clothing to protect them from the frost, and many of them lacking even the coarsest necessities in the way of food. General Baker gave vent to his overflowing sympathies; and then McIntyre broke in and repeated the entire chapter from Longfellow's 'Hiawatha' describing the 'Famine'. The sad refrain of that beautiful song as it rang out upon the frosty air, lingers in my memory to this day."

#### THE CHINCH BUG ALSO FIGHTS THE WHEAT FARMERS.

Before the grasshopper had disappeared, a tinier enemy than he had appeared to vex the wheat growers of Northwestern Iowa. The tiny, ill-smelling chinch bug was not so much in evidence as the greater and more portentous grasshopper, but he was just as destructive to the grain. The soil had been exhausted and sapped of its nitrogen by uninterrupted croppings of wheat (except for the protests of the grasshoppers) and the result was that the plants were powerless to resist the ravages of this new enemy insect. They were at their worst, or at the height of their destructive powers in 1879 and 1880. Fresh fields of green would look in a few days as if they had been scorched by an invisible fire, and when there was no wheat to devour they attacked the green corn. The invasion of the chinch bug, almost in the shadow of the departing grasshoppers, put the finishing touch to all the aspirations of Northwestern Iowa to become a wheat-raising region; and the result was to her great advantage. Agriculturally, it then commenced its all-around development; all its golden eggs were no longer hidden in its fields of wheat, which had proven to be the tender and favorite fruit of the grasshopper and the chinch bug.

## CHANGING CONDITIONS.

This was the time when "thousands began to leave Iowa;" and Cyrenus Cole, in his "History of the People of Iowa," thus describes the reaction, which was moulding the modern agriculture of the State, so stanchly illustrated by Northwestern Iowa: "For them the land of hope was across the Missouri River, or at least across the Big Sioux. In them, the ancient and honorable spirit of the movers was revived. If wheat could not be grown in Iowa, they would go where wheat could be grown. They were wheat farmers, and they did not want to be any other kind of farmers. Kansas and Nebraska and the Dakotas beckoned to them and the wanderlust of their ancestors was reexpressed in a later 'Westward Ho.' By 1881, when it was mostly Dakotaward, the movement had 'become an exodus, a stampede. Hardly anything else was talked about. Every man who could sell out had gone West or was going.' (Hamlin Garland in 'A Son of the Middle Border.')

"Newspapers which did not want to see their subscription lists depleted, and those who loved Iowa, pleaded for the people not to go. They drew woeful pictures of droughts on the plains and of blizzards in the Dakotas. The Farmers' Institutes pleaded for diversified farming. The mistake had been made in growing nothing but wheat in certain sections of the State. With the coming of the chinch bugs and the departure of the wheat growers, the flouring mills began to suffer. Up to that time, every town had maintained its own mill and many towns had more than one mill. But soon the swallows began to build their nests in the smokeless chimneys, and refuse and waterplants filled up the ponds that had fed the mill wheels.

"There was a depression, but the places that had been vacated were soon filled by others; and the others were apt to be foreigners, men who were willing to begin all over again. The racial elements of many communities were wholly changed. It was the Yankees who had moved out. The new comers were not only willing to begin over, but they adopted new ways and new methods. They made Iowa what nature had made it, a grassland again. They sowed tame grasses

and fenced them in with barbed wire. They did not depend on the increase of their herds as expressed in calves, but they milked the cows and began to make butter and cheese. The older settlers had not believed that the clovers could be grown in Iowa, even after what they called the 'Indian' had been taken out of the prairies—that is to say, the tang of the wild grasses. There were still men who believed that what never had been done, never could be done, and some of them were willing to spend their time to prove it. Strange is the tenacity of prejudice and error, and persistent the atavism of reaction. But the clover grew, the red clover and the white clover, and the milk began to flow into the pails of prosperity. It was a double prosperity, for the clovers enriched the lands that bore them.

“Such were the men who laid the foundations of a truly greater Iowa, an Iowa not yet wholly realized. They were the newer pioneers, and they did a work as fine and essential as the older pioneers who broke up the prairies and made the first laws and constitutions. They diversified the country around the cities and they built the cities in the country—live stock men, and dairy men, and factory men—each and all of more true and lasting significance in the State than the politicians who made the speeches or the legislators who made the laws.”

To demonstrate what Northwestern Iowa has done and is doing, in the development of the greater agriculture of the State, or, in other words, the greater commonwealth itself, is the aim of the concluding pages of this chapter.

#### GOLDEN BELT OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

In the first chapter of this history, which demonstrated that Iowa was foreordained by Nature to be a land of plenty, it was also proven that Northwestern Iowa was especially favored in this grand act of creation. In this section of the State, if any area is favored by the elements of its soil above other regions, the western counties bordering the Missouri and the Big Sioux rivers may be safely named. The reason for this superiority of soil is that not only did the Kansas drift (geologically speaking) gather various elements from



the rocks, as it traveled southward in its grinding way and passed over Northwestern Iowa; not only did it thus lay a varied basis upon which the upper soil might draw for its strength, but deposited the mantle of fine yellow clay, known as loess, upon its great body. What has made the Valley of the Rhine one of the gardens of the world has made the valleys of the Missouri and Big Sioux one of the wonderful cornucopias of the United States—which is saying much indeed. Not only is the loess there in various depths and various widths, but even above that, is deposited the rich alluvial soil of the great rivers. It is deepest and widest toward the south and gradually thins and tapers toward the north and northeast.

#### PLYMOUTH AND WOODBURY COUNTIES.

Plymouth and Woodbury counties are virtually the agricultural children of the loess soil. Gauged by the measures laid down by the farmers of Northwestern Iowa, Plymouth is the banner county of that section of the State. The total value of its agricultural properties, as published in the national census of 1920—and these include lands, buildings, agricultural implements and live stock—is \$152,000,000, and no county in Northwestern Iowa exceeds these figures. In 1910, they were assessed at \$63,000,000 and in 1900, at \$26,000,000. Plymouth also is the largest raiser of swine in Northwestern Iowa—or was, when the figures were gathered in 1919; the 157,000 swine within her borders were assessed at \$3,800,000. The corn crop of the county amounted to nearly 7,600,000 bushels, and earned Plymouth County second place; Sioux County which bounded it on the north was first. With its 53,000 beef cattle valued at \$2,800,000 Plymouth was third in the list of the twenty counties in the northwestern part of the State in this class, and second or third as a dairy section, with 20,000 milch cows valued at \$1,200,000. Palo Alto, one of the northern interior counties closely competes with Plymouth as a raiser of dairy stock.

Early in the history of Woodbury County, the farmers nearly all engaged in grain growing, making wheat the

leader. Although they did not suffer as severely as the counties farther north from the grasshopper invasions, still the agriculturists of the county came to realize in the '70s and '80s that other lands and other climes could produce wheat better and cheaper than they; that the pulverized prairie soils were primarily adapted to wheat and the rich and heavier soils of the river bottoms, with the underlying loess, was made for the raising of corn and the fodder of live stock. The consequence was that as early as 1885, the acreage devoted to corn covered one-eighth of Woodbury County and more than 2,700,000 bushels were harvested. Had its hundreds of cornfields been thrown together in one tract, they would have covered an area six miles wide and eighteen miles long—74,000 acres of corn, or over three congressional townships. The pure water, the cheap land and the luxuriant growth of both wild and cultivated grasses, with all the ideal conditions of corn-production, so encouraged the raising of all kinds of live stock, as to attract numerous producers and dealers to the county. The grand result has been to bring Woodbury County to third place among the twenty counties embraced by this history, in the total value of its agricultural property, including lands, buildings, implements and live stock. The figures of the last census are \$129,600,000, as compared with \$55,300,000 for 1910 and \$23,700,000 for 1900. Woodbury County stands seventh in Northwestern Iowa in the number and value of its beef cattle assessed in the year of the last Federal census, viz., 44,000 and \$2,600,000 respectively; the dairy cattle numbered 16,000 and were valued at \$1,100,000. The status of its dairy cattle placed the county slightly ahead of O'Brien in second place. Northwestern Iowa is known the world over for the excellence of its swine, as much of its corn crop goes to make the flesh of the porker both fat and firm. In 1920, there were 132,000 swine in Woodbury County, valued at \$3,000,000, and it stood fourth in this class throughout Northwestern Iowa. It was third in the list of corn counties, its crop for the census year amounting to 6,600,000 bushels. It raised more hay and forage than any other of the twenty counties; and 140,000 tons is quite a bit!

## CRAWFORD AND MONONA COUNTIES.

Crawford and Monona counties lie in the broad and deep southern belt of the Kansas drift and the productive loess formations, and, as would be expected, are among the most productive regions of the State. In the second tier of counties from the Missouri River, Crawford is one of the ideal sections of the State for the raising of live stock. Beef cattle especially thrive on its grassy, well watered and rolling uplands, and there is no county in Northwestern Iowa which has any advantages over it. In fact, Crawford County leads the list, the census takers crediting it with 57,000 cattle of that class, with an assessed value of \$3,200,000. In dairy cattle it is not so prominent, although its 13,600 milch cows, valued at \$880,000, rank it fifth in Northwestern Iowa, slightly below Cherokee to the north. Crawford County is fifth in the production of hay and forage (101,000 tons annually) and sixth of the twenty counties in the raising of corn. Its corn crop, as recorded in the last Federal census, amounted to nearly 5,700,000 bushels. In the total value of its farm properties, Crawford County stood fourth in 1920. For that year, the figures were represented by \$128,000; by \$52,000 in 1910, and \$23,000,000 in 1900.

In the northern half of Monona County along the Missouri River the loess belt is particularly noticeable and the deposits extend to a great depth. There has been a progressive increase in all agricultural values, so that by 1920 the farm properties of all kinds, including live stock, had doubled in the preceding two decades. In 1920, they were computed at \$79,000,000 for purposes of taxation; in 1910, at \$35,000,000, and in 1900, at \$17,000,000. Great strides had been made in the raising and improvement of cattle, especially in the finer varieties of blooded stock. In the northwestern part of the county, around Whiting and Onawa, were several fine stock farms which have continually advanced in reputation among the breeders of blooded cattle. Its 24,000 cattle raised for beef were valued at \$1,400,000, and its 13,000 milch cows, at more than \$810,000. The census enumerators assessed 83,000 swine in Monona at \$1,700,000, and computed the corn crop at 4,000,000 bushels and the hay and forage production at 91,000 tons.



## SIOUX AND LYON COUNTIES.

These counties are the uppermost in Northwestern Iowa bordering the Big Sioux River, and combined they cover some of the choicest lands for the raising of cattle and swine in this section of the State. Sioux County leads them all in the value (\$1,600,000) and number (24,000) of its dairy cattle, and is among the first dozen of the twenty counties as a raiser of beef cattle. At the time that the Federal census of 1920 was taken, only Plymouth County was ahead of Sioux in the raising of hogs. The figures of the latter were, as to numbers, 146,000, and as to assessed value, \$3,700,000. Sioux County is the banner district of Northwestern Iowa in the extent of its corn crop; it raised 7,900,000 bushels in 1919, and was closely pressed by Plymouth County. It produced 128,000 tons of hay and forage, being exceeded by Woodbury County in the amount of this crop and slightly leading Plymouth. The figures given by the census of 1920 indicate that the properties devoted to agricultural purposes, as well as its live stock, were assessed at \$111,000,000, as compared with \$47,000,000 in 1910, and nearly \$22,000,000 in 1900.

Lyon County is in the great corn belt of Northwestern Iowa, in the valley and the swelling uplands of the Big Sioux. It is not supreme either as a producer of the foods which tend to advance the raising of cattle and swine, or of the crops themselves, irrespective of their ultimate value when transformed into live stock. Lyon County, on the other hand, goes along in a substantial middle course. As with other sections of this part of the state, it is instructive to remember the views held by the farmers of the county fifty years ago. Fortunately a presentation of these views is at hand, for in 1873, before the worst of the grasshopper scourges had descended upon Northwestern Iowa, S. C. Hyde, a pioneer and the son of a pioneer, wrote a little history of Lyon County endorsed by its Board of Supervisors, in which he prefaces his paragraph on wheat with these words: "We doubt if anywhere since being transported from its native plains in Central Asia has this great cereal found a more congenial climate than in Northwestern Iowa and Lyon County." The writer mentions the drawback of long transportation, but believes

that its easier production and certain and greater yield than in the East much more than overbalance the greater cost of its transportation. Mr. Hyde then turns to corn, with less enthusiasm, but with some assurance. "There is an impression prevailing to a considerable extent," he says, "that this cereal can not be raised with success in Northwestern Iowa owing to coldness of the climate. This opinion has no foundation, as will be shown in our article on climate. Actual experience and experiments show that the mean summer heat of this region of the Missouri slope is equal to that required for the successful growth of corn. With a congenial climate and a warm soil, rich in nitrogen, it is one of our most certain and valuable productions. Mr. L. F. Knight has cultivated corn on his farm at the forks of Rock River since 1869, and has never failed to secure a good crop; and it has never been cut off by drought, frost or blight, yielding, in some years, as high as eighty bushels of shelled corn to the acre. With good management, the yield is from fifty to eighty bushels per acre. This crop, as well as all others, is raised with less than half the labor usually required on the worn-out soils, or among the stumps and stones, with which the eastern farmer has to contend. A man and a boy can tend forty acres, besides devoting a portion of their time to other crops, the hoe hardly ever being used. This, with a yield of from forty to sixty bushels to the acre, would give all the way from 1,600 to 2,400 bushels of grain, which will give some idea of our facilities for stock and pork raising. If one-fourth of the area of Lyon County was planted to corn, producing forty bushels to the acre, the yield of one crop would be 3,680,000 bushels."

These many years corn has driven out wheat as the bumper crop of Lyon County and Mr. Hyde's golden dream of fifty years ago has been more than realized; for although the county holds only a middle station as a corn producer in Northwestern Iowa the census figures for 1920 show that it raised a crop of more than 5,500,000 bushels in the previous year. Its beef cattle numbered 31,000 and were valued at nearly \$1,400,000, and its 16,000 dairy cows, at \$922,000. In the raising of the dairy stock Lyon County stands about sixth in Northwestern Iowa. Although it is not so well to the

front in the raising of swine, it makes a good showing with its 83,000 porkers valued at \$2,000,000. Its hay and forage crop amounted to 58,000 tons, which materially added to its strength and promise as a live stock country.

### THREE RICH INTERIOR COUNTIES.

Pocahontas and Calhoun counties are on the watershed which drains into the valley of the Des Moines, or Mississippi, while Sac County, the third of those to be grouped at this point is traversed by the great divide which runs through its central sections and along its southern border. A portion of the waters of Sac County therefore drains into the Mississippi and its western sections into the Missouri.

The lands of Pocahontas and Calhoun counties embrace the headwaters of the Raccoon, or Coon River, and principal western tributary of the Des Moines River. The entire surface of Pocahontas County is an upland prairie or elevated plain, sloping toward the southeast into Calhoun; the latter, therefore, being of lower elevation and the source of numerous streams flowing into the Coon River, was originally largely covered with swamps, which were the objects of some of the most successful drainage projects in the State. The main valley of the Des Moines enters the extreme northeastern section of Pocahontas County, and this locality shows about the only sharp break in its elevated prairie lands.

The extraordinary qualities of the prairie soil of Pocahontas County which also extends into neighboring territory, especially toward the north, is thus described by a local writer: "The soil of this county is a rich, dark loam, that varies in thickness from two to eight feet. It is an undisturbed drift soil underlaid with a deep subsoil of porous clay mixed slightly with gravel, and possesses a uniform richness and fertility throughout the county. It differs somewhat from similar soils in other parts of the State, in that it contains a slightly greater proportion of sand and less clay; a circumstance that imparts physical properties to it that are very beneficial in agriculture, giving it a warmth and mellowness that is favorable not only to the growth of crops, but their maturity in this locality as early as upon the more



clayey soils two hundred miles further south. It has also the additional advantage of becoming sufficiently dry for cultivation sooner after the frosts of early spring have ceased, or the showers of summer have ended, than those that contain a greater proportion of clay. It is a soil that is easily subdued, may be cultivated in the most convenient manner with the latest improved machinery, and is well calculated to withstand the extremes of drought or excessive rainfall.

“In these characteristics of the soil is found the secret of the uniform productiveness of this locality under all conditions of the weather, and of the superiority of Northwestern Iowa over some other parts of the State. The wonderful power of this soil to withstand the injury arising from either excessive drought or moisture, has been demonstrated year after year, ever since the pioneers turned the first furrows in this section.

“During a series of seasons in the '80s, when the crops in many other localities were seriously damaged by unusual rainfall, the farmers of Northwestern Iowa moved steadily forward, gathering abundant harvests. This ability to withstand excessive moisture is no doubt due to the fact that the subsoil of this region is rarely an impenetrable clayey hardpan near the surface, acting as a bowl to hold the water in great quantities, but is sufficiently porous to allow an excessive rainfall to percolate to an indefinite depth and leave the surface available for cultivation.

“In 1886 and during the period from 1894 to 1895, there was afforded a striking illustration of the remarkable capacity of this section to resist the general blighting effects of drought. In February, 1895, when the famine prevailed in Central Nebraska, and the unusual drought was more or less severely felt in all parts of this and the neighboring states, two carloads of grain and provisions were freely donated by the citizens of Pocahontas County and sent to the sufferers of Custer County, Nebraska. This incident will always be a reminder not only of the generosity of the people, but of the bountiful harvests gathered here at a time of general scarcity elsewhere. In this particular instance, the local showers that visited this section in the summer of 1894 contributed greatly to insure the crops of that year. It remains,

however, to observe there never has been a failure of crops, on account of drought, in Pocahontas County. The secret of this ability to endure long droughts is also found to a great extent in the subsoil of this locality, the porous nature of which enables it to receive and retain moisture to a great depth, so that while the surface cultivation acts as a sort of mulch, the roots of growing crops strike deeper in search of needed moisture."

The potentialities and the actual productions of this soil have brought Pocahontas into the foreground of the rich counties of Northwestern Iowa; which statement is supported by the statistics furnished by the census of 1920. It shows that the total value of its farm properties was then \$107,300,000; \$35,200,000 in 1910, and \$16,700,000 in 1900. Its 21,000 beef cattle were valued at \$1,100,000, and its dairy cattle numbered 12,000 and were assessed at \$670,000. The corn crop of Pocahontas County amounted to 5,500,000 bushels, and the hay and forage, to 55,000 tons.

It was forty years after President Fillmore approved the congressional grant of certain swamp lands to the several states, before actual drainage ditches were constructed in Calhoun County. The act was approved in 1850 and in 1853 the Iowa grant was accepted by the Legislature. A survey of the lands determined that more than 42,000 in the county would come within the provisions of the grant, and in 1862, both by act of the Board of Supervisors and by popular approval, the lands were taken over by the American Emigrant Company, which agreed therefor to build bridges over certain streams and sloughs, as well as to erect some minor public buildings. From this arrangement arose many complications and not a few law suits, and it was not until 1888 that the interests of the American Emigrant Company were conveyed to private parties. In the meantime, provision had been made, under authority of the General Assembly, for the drainage of about 20,000 acres of marsh lands in the northwestern part of the county. They were divided into two tracts known as Hell Slough and Shipman Slough, the natural outlet of which was through a marshy strip to the head of Camp Creek. By the fall of 1890, two ditches were constructed to drain this area, characterized by these two



sloughs. This was the beginning of the drainage system that has added millions of dollars to the wealth of Calhoun County. Of all the counties in the State that received swamp lands under the grant of 1850, none has given a better final account of stewardship than Calhoun.

There is no better criterion as to the advancement of Calhoun County in agricultural opulence than the figures furnished by the Federal census of 1920. In the assessed valuation of farm properties (including live stock) it stood seventh among the twenty counties which have made Northwestern Iowa all that is characteristic of American prosperity brought from the soil. In the year named, the valuation of the lands, farm buildings, implements and live stock in Calhoun County was placed at \$119,500,000; 1910, \$39,600,000; 1900, \$18,600,000. It was fourth, in 1920, both as a corn producer and a raiser of milch cows; its corn crop amounted to 6,560,000 bushels and its 17,600 dairy cattle were valued at over \$1,000,000. More than 30,000 beef cattle were roaming its well-drained, grassy lands, and represented \$1,880,000 in wealth, while its 61,000 hogs had been assessed at \$1,600,000. As a distinctive crop which had not been transformed into live stock, that of hay and forage was an item of much value to Calhoun County; it was represented in quantity by 43,000 tons. Some of the most productive of her lands were under water thirty or forty years ago.

The lands of Sac County, which lie partly in the great basin of the Mississippi and partly in that of the Missouri, have produced abundantly without artificial drainage, as nature has attended to watering them and draining them. The United States census for 1920 shows that Sac County was second among the twenty counties in Northwestern Iowa in the value of agricultural properties assessed for taxation. The showing was \$130,300,000 for that decadal census, as compared with \$49,000,000 for 1910 and \$20,000,000 for 1900. The county is rich in live stock, its 27,000 beef cattle being valued at \$1,500,000 and its dairy cattle, numbering 11,000, at \$760,000, while its 94,000 swine were assessed at \$2,200,000. The corn crop amounted to 5,300,000 bushels, and 94,000 tons of hay and forage were raised from the uplands of Sac County.



## IDA, CARROLL AND GREENE COUNTIES.

There is no profound difference in the soil, climate and rainfall of the interior counties of Northwestern Iowa, especially when they are along or near the divide. Of the three in this group, Carroll lies along the spine of the divide which passes northward through its western sections to the southern boundary of Sac County. To the east of the watershed the soil is mainly of the Wisconsin drift, a gravelly loam; which also prevails in Greene County, adjoining Carroll to the east. West of the divide in Carroll County, the drainage is into the tributaries of the Missouri, and the soil is common to the Missouri Valley. Ida County also lies on the western slope of the watershed, and is in the Missouri Valley with all that the statement implies.

One might dilate on the wonderful fertility and the riches of the soil which characterize these counties on the southern border of Northwestern Iowa, but figures drive home the truth more effectively, and we turn again to Uncle Sam's census of 1920 for the truth. They say that Carroll County in that year had agricultural properties valued at \$114,500,000; in 1910, nearly \$48,000,000, and in 1900, \$20,000,000. It was sixth among the twenty counties in Northwestern Iowa as a raiser of beef cattle; they were numbered at 50,000 and valued at \$2,500,000. The 11,000 dairy cattle were assessed at \$586,000, and the 89,000 swine at \$2,000,000.

The figures for Greene County were: Value of agricultural properties, including live stock, nearly \$111,000,000; in 1910, \$42,000,000; 1900, \$18,000,000. Number of beef cattle, 37,000, valued at \$2,100,000; of dairy cows, nearly 9,000, assessed at \$539,000. The 70,000 swine had a valuation of \$1,700,000. The corn crop was represented by 5,800,000 and gave Greene County fifth rank in Northwestern Iowa, and 73,000 tons of hay and forage were cut from her lands.

In 1920, Ida County property devoted to agricultural and live stock interests was valued at \$93,500,000; in 1910, at \$38,500,000, and in 1900, at \$15,000,000. The most recent figures place her 32,000 beef cattle at a valuation of

\$2,000,000, and the 10,000 dairy stock, at \$750,000, with 97,000 swine valued at \$2,500,000. The corn crop amounted to nearly 4,000,000 bushels, and the yield of hay and forage was 56,000 tons.

#### CHEROKEE AND BUENA VISTA COUNTIES.

Cherokee County, which lies west of the Missouri-Mississippi divide, drains its waters in a southwesterly direction into the Little Sioux. Its soil is deep and black, and typical of the Missouri Valley, and radically differs from that of the districts farther east in that sand is almost absent from it. It is based on the bluff deposit and is especially adapted to the growth of timber. In fact, when the first settlers located in this portion of Northwestern Iowa there was more timber in the region now embracing Cherokee County, along the Little Sioux and its branches, than in any five counties of that section of the State. Black walnut which only thrives in "strong" soil, was noticeably prolific here; and the fame of its black-walnut fences spread far into the West. Many of the first cabins in this part of the State were also built of black walnut and cottonwood. The surface of Cherokee County is so eroded and "troughed" by the Little Sioux and its tributaries that the expression "the monotony of the prairie" never applied to this offshoot of the Missouri Valley, with its flowing wells and gushing springs enlivening and fertilizing all the beautiful country so drained. It is upland prairie country, but, with all its fruitfulness, fair and varied to look upon.

Although the first settlers in Cherokee County split fence rails and built their cabins from noble black walnut trees with reckless prodigality, the succeeding generations came to realize what such waste meant and commenced to conserve and extend the area of the native timber. Artificial groves were therefore early planted over the prairies, and today one would scarcely believe that many of the townships were once entirely treeless. It is claimed that no county in Iowa planted more artificial groves than Cherokee, save possibly Buena Vista County. As a rule, these trees were not planted for the timber they might later afford, but for wind breaks against

the winter storms and for the shade afforded live stock and humans in the heats of summer. In the late '60s, by authority of the General Assembly, the Board of Supervisors inaugurated its policy of encouraging the planting of trees in Cherokee County. The property owner was exempted from taxation (except for State purposes) to the amount of \$500, should he within the year plant one or more acres of forest trees for timber, or one mile of hedge for fence, or one-half a mile of shade trees along the public highway. One thousand forest trees were to be planted to the acre exempt from taxation, shade trees were not to exceed twelve feet apart and fruit trees, thirty-three feet. In 1888 there was exempt from taxes, under such regulations, property amounting to \$200,000, and in the following year there were 600 acres more of artificial timber than of native growth in the county. This prolonged encouragement of tree-planting and the expansion of the timber areas in Cherokee County have not only tended to beautify the country, but to conserve the water supply and benefit all the agricultural and live stock interests.

Cherokee County is now in the first division of the Northwestern Iowa counties embraced in this history. In 1920, the value of all its agricultural properties and live stock was assessed by the census enumerators at \$118,300,000; the census of 1910 placed it at nearly \$47,000,000 and that of 1900, at \$19,000,000. Its beautiful prairie highlands, garnished with green groves thickly planted by nature and by man, supported plump and hardy beef cattle to the number of more than 54,000 animals, valued at nearly \$3,500,000; dairy cows 9,500, assessed at \$671,000. Its swine, numbering 113,000, were valued at \$2,600,000. Cherokee County is in the eastern border of the Missouri Valley corn belt, and the last census figures indicate a crop of nearly 5,600,000. It is also a fine grass country, its hay and forage crop amounting to 95,000 tons.

Buena Vista County lies along the Missouri-Mississippi divide and its general topography is similar to that of Calhoun County. About the only good natural drainage of Buena Vista County is in its southwestern sections into the Little Sioux. The entire eastern and central districts were originally covered by wide marshes and low sand hills, and



the headwaters of Coon River are in the northern sections. The characteristic topography of Buena Vista County is what is known as morainic, and one of the most striking evidences of the remains of glacial lakes in Northwestern Iowa is Storm Lake, south of the central part of the county. Most of the territory of the county has a naturally sluggish drainage into Coon River or the Valley of the Des Moines, and the crops raised and the live stock supported are those common to the Mississippi basin. As the divide separates the headwaters of the Coon River (Des Moines) from those of the Little Sioux (Missouri), the soils of Buena Vista County partake of the Wisconsin and loess subsoils and the later alluvial deposits. Many of the most fertile lands and most attractive groves are around the lakes, especially in the Storm Lake region. Like Calhoun County, and other regions in Northwestern Iowa, subject to the swamp lands act of 1850, Buena Vista County suffered by the manipulations of land adventurers, and it was many years before the actual drainage of her lowlands commenced. Now, however, they are among the most productive in the county.

The total value of the agricultural holdings of Buena Vista County, as indicated by the census figures of 1920, is \$120,600,000, slightly above that of Cherokee County; in 1910, it was \$39,600,000 and in 1900, \$18,600,000. Buena Vista stood sixth among the twenty counties of Northwestern Iowa as a cattle raiser for beef; the 47,000 animals within her limits were valued at \$2,500,000, and the nearly 15,000 milch cows, at \$800,000. Corn was produced to the amount of 5,200,000 bushels, and hay and forage yielded more than 100,000 tons.

#### HALF A DOZEN REPRESENTATIVE NORTHERN COUNTIES.

Immediately east of the first tier of counties bordering the Big Sioux River in Iowa and in the far northern section of the State are the counties of Palo Alto, Clay and O'Brien in the second tier from the Minnesota line, and Emmet, Dickinson and Osceola, immediately along the inter-state boundary. The divide runs diagonally through Palo Alto County and not far from the west boundary of Emmet

County; so that all but about a half of Palo Alto and most of Emmet of these six counties of Northwestern Iowa lie in the basin of the Missouri, immediately tributary to the Big Sioux Valley. The northeastern portion of this picturesque country embraces the distinctive lake region of the State, and is also fertile, as well as beautiful.

Palo Alto the southeastern county of this group, which is furrowed diagonally by the West Fork of the Des Moines River, was dotted with little lakes and sloughs and covered with swamps and lowlands as to its northern sections. After wrestling with the problem of their drainage for many years, the county authorities followed the usual custom of virtually giving away the swamp lands, which were afterward reclaimed through private efforts and made as valuable as any tracts for agricultural purposes. They finally entered as a large item into figures compiled by the census enumerators showing the agricultural wealth of the county. Their statistics published in the Federal census of 1920 credit Palo Alto with possessing farm lands, buildings, agricultural implements and live stock valued at \$84,300,000; that of 1910 at \$26,500,000, and the census of 1900, at \$13,000,000. The figures also show that Palo Alto is among the foremost dairy counties in Northwestern Iowa, Sioux County being the only one which showed a decided supremacy according to the 1920 exhibit. Plymouth was a near competitor. The 20,000 dairy cattle of Palo Alto County were valued at \$994,000; the beef cattle, 21,000 in number, at over \$1,000,000, and the 63,000 hogs were listed at \$1,400,000. The county raised nearly 4,000,000 bushels of corn, and 77,000 tons of hay and forage.

The waters of Clay County all drain into the valley of the Little Sioux or Missouri. The lakes are in the eastern part of the county and there are many fertile lands around them. The upper soil of dark loam, from two to eight feet in thickness, with clay subsoil, prevails. All the conditions of soil, natural drainage, pure water and the raising of nutritious grasses combine to make Clay County ideal for cattle, especially those produced for beef. The census figures for 1920 indicated that it stood fourth in that branch of industry, 50,000 cattle of that class having been enumerated with an estimated value of \$2,800,000; its 10,800 dairy cattle, on the



other hand, were valued at \$600,000. A valuation of \$2,000,000 was placed on the 81,000 swine listed in Clay County. In connection with the great basic feeds for the live stock, it is also well to know that the county raised 4,000,000 bushels of corn for the year and 88,000 tons of hay and forage.

O'Brien is a distinctly prairie county, its only rough sections being in the northeast and southeast which are broken by the Little Sioux and its tributary, the Ocheyedan, into bluffs and irregular pastures. But it is all good land for corn and live stock, and is variegated by both natural groves along the river courses and artificial timber planted largely in the form of tree claims. It is splendidly watered and the rise in the value of its lands is largely due to the adaptability of the country to the raising of cattle and hogs. O'Brien County stands fifth in the total value of its farm buildings, lands, implements and live stock, in comparison with the other counties of Northwestern Iowa. The census figures for 1920 give it at \$121,500,000; the total for 1910, at \$40,000,000, and for 1900, at \$19,000,000. Its 36,000 beef cattle were valued at \$1,860,000 in 1920, and the milch stock, 16,000 in number, at \$946,000. The 91,000 hogs listed in the county were assessed at nearly \$2,240,000. For the year covered by the census of 1920 O'Brien County raised a corn crop of 5,300,000 bushels and one of hay and forage amounting to 104,000 tons.

#### EMMET AND DICKINSON.

Emmet and Dickinson counties, which are immediately south of the Minnesota-Iowa line, are substantially the same in contour and general physical characteristics. These are determined by the course of the Mississippi-Missouri divide, which substantially follows the west boundary of Emmet County and passes into Minnesota over the northeast corner of Dickinson. The numerous and striking lakes of the two counties are strung along the valleys of the upper Des Moines and Little Sioux. In a general classification, this portion of Iowa would be described as undulating or rolling prairie, though in places there are high and precipitous hills, such as are seen along the West Fork of the Des Moines River in Emmet County. They are especially prominent in the northwestern part of the county and extend in a broken series in a



southeasterly direction. One of the notable features of Emmet County, which has much to do with its agricultural strength, is the great alluvial plain, with a gravelly base, which abuts the hills and is believed to be the bottom of an ancient river unrelated to the Des Plaines of the present.

Dickinson County occupies the highest position on the divide of any region in the State. Its hills and lakes around the headwaters of the Little Sioux seemed to be massed, or thrown together in confusion. As an early surveyor describes them: "The hills about Diamond Lake, those northwest of Silver Lake and those of Eastern Osceola County, simply defy description or classification; they pitch toward every point of the compass, they are of every height and shape, they rise by gradual ascent and fall off by precipices so steep that the most venturesome animal would scarcely attempt the descent; they enclose anon high tablelands, anon wide low valleys that open nowhere; they carry lakes on their summits and undrained marshes at their feet; their gentler slopes are beautiful prairies easily amenable to the plough, their crowns often beds of gravel capped with bowlders and reefs of driven sand." In various places on the hillsides of Dickinson County, especially by the margins of the larger streams, there are gravel deposits greatly unlike the ordinary gravel beds of Northern Iowa. Now and then these deposits widen out into plains of considerable size, like those along the Des Moines in Emmet County. It is sandy, gravelly prairie, two or three miles in width, following the general course of the Little Sioux River and extending to the southern boundary of the county. In the southern parts of the county are also numerous terraces lifted fifty or more feet above the present river.

The irregular topography of the two counties has a tendency to render its streams more than usually tortuous. This is especially true of the eastern part of Emmet County and the western and southern parts of Dickinson, as may be seen in the windings of the East Fork of the Des Moines River in Emmet and those of the Little Sioux River in Dickinson. The farmers of these counties have the privilege of being able to live and thrive in a wonderful region of lakes, valleys, rugged cliffs and rolling, grass-clad prairies. In the midst of

such inspiring surroundings, they also live in progressive comfort and prosperity. This statement has been forcefully demonstrated within the past twenty or thirty years, and there are few counties in Northwestern Iowa which show a greater proportional increase in the value of agricultural property and live stock than Emmet and Dickinson. The Federal census figures for 1920 showed that these properties had been assessed in Emmet County at a valuation of \$57,800,000, as compared with \$17,600,000 in 1910 and about \$9,500,000 in 1900. The figures for Dickinson, in the same census years, were \$49,700,000, \$16,600,000 and \$8,600,000, respectively. As ascertained by the enumerators of the last national census, Emmet County had 31,000 beef cattle valued at \$1,500,000, and Dickinson, 28,000, assessed at \$1,400,000; of milch cows, 10,500, valued at \$575,000, for Emmet County, and 10,400, valued at \$560,000, for Dickinson. In the raising of swine, Emmet County was also slightly in the lead of her sister, viz.: The 46,000 porkers credited to Emmet were valued at \$1,100,000, while the 43,000, in Dickinson, were assessed at \$986,000. Emmet raised 2,400,000 bushels of corn as compared with the 2,200,000 bushels produced in Dickinson, and the hay and forage yield were respectively 66,000 and 51,000 tons.

#### OSCEOLA.

Osceola County, to the west of Dickinson, is different in its physical features from the lake counties of Northern Iowa. It has no lakes of importance and even its sloughs have nearly all been ditched and drained and the bottom lands been made productive. This county was originally an open prairie and destitute of timber with the exception of a little willow brush that escaped the annual prairie fires along Ocheyedon Creek. Otter and Ocheyedon creeks are the only streams of importance in the county, the former draining its western sections into Little Rock River, Lyon County, and Ocheyedon Creek, its eastern and central districts, into the Little Sioux, which it joins in Clay County to the south. The land along both these streams is nearly all tillable and excellent for farming. The surface of the county is generally rolling, with small

level districts both in the eastern and western portions. The soil is a dark prairie loam, with a porous clay subsoil, which ensures crops against seasons which are unusually wet or dry. It is from two to four feet deep, of fine quality and free from stone and, with proper cultivation and rotation of crops, is practically inexhaustible.

Although one of the younger counties of Northwestern Iowa in point of settlement, Osceola has made rapid advancement in agricultural matters for the past twenty-five years. The Government census of 1920 showed that its properties devoted to the raising of crops and live stock were valued at \$70,500,000; 1910, at \$21,000,000, and 1900, at \$10,600,000. At the completion of the last census year, its 18,000 beef cattle were valued at \$902,000, and its dairy stock (13,000 animals) at \$731,000. Its 35,000 swine were assessed at nearly \$1,370,000. An important item in the development of its live stock interests was the raising of its crops of corn and of hay and forage, represented by nearly 2,600,000 bushels of the former, and 62,000 tons of the latter.

#### THE MAIN DEDUCTION.

Thus the main physical advantages of Northwestern Iowa have been exhibited, county by county, from the more regular, more mellow, more cultivated and more settled districts of the south and the immediate valleys of the Missouri and Big Sioux, to the more swampy, broken and less improved northern districts. Throughout the narrative, the effects of the great divide between the valleys of the Des Moines and the Missouri, on the drainage and soil of Northwestern Iowa have been kept in mind—the advantages, as well as the drawbacks, which tended to develop this great section of the State. Soil, climate, drainage were in its favor; offset by the disadvantages of Indian fears, inadequate transportation until a comparatively late period, and, after these had been in a measure surmounted, the plagues of devastating insects which cursed this section of the State far more than other districts. The story also led to the sequel that the wheat fields, which had been constantly exhausting the soil and which were easy prey to insect enemies, were almost



abandoned in Northwestern Iowa and replaced by the more hardy and resisting corn and by the clovers and grasses, which not only thrived, but reinvigorated the soil and passed into the systems of the live stock, which also returned invaluable fertilizing elements to the soil. What seemed at first to be the darkest calamity which could befall Northwestern Iowa proved therefore to be the commencement of a brighter agricultural day.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### TRANSPORTATION BY LAND AND WATER.

SIOUX CITY AS A STEAMBOAT TOWN—SIOUX CITY IN 1868—THE COMING AND GOING OF A RIVER STEAMBOAT—STEAMBOAT TRAFFIC—ATTEMPTED NAVIGATION OF THE DES MOINES RIVER—THE SAWYER WAGON ROADS TO THE MONTANA GOLD FIELDS—RAILROADS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—CONGRESS ENCOURAGES RAILROAD BUILDING, 1850-55—FOUR IOWA RAILROADS PROJECTED—IOWA LINES TO CONNECT WITH THE UNION PACIFIC—SIOUX CITY & ST. PAUL RAILROAD—THE CHICAGO, MILWAUKEE & ST. PAUL—SECTION OF THE NORTHWESTERN BUILT—JOHN I. BLAIR, FATHER OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA RAILROADS—IOWA FALLS & SIOUX CITY RAILROAD—CEDAR RAPIDS & MISSOURI RIVER RAILROAD, 1866-68—COMPLETION OF IOWA FALLS & SIOUX CITY RAILROAD—ABSORPTIONS BY PRESENT-DAY RAILROADS—HOW BLAIR NEARLY GOT CONTROL OF THE DAKOTA SOUTHERN—DES MOINES RIVER GRANT REVERTS TO RAILROAD PROJECTS—STIMULATING VALUE OF RAILROADS IMMEASURABLE—THE AUTOMOBILE, A NEW PROBLEM—ELECTRIC AND AUTO-BUS LINES—IMPROVEMENT OF IOWA'S PUBLIC HIGHWAYS—THE FUTURE OF THE GOOD ROADS MOVEMENT.

Long before there was a suggestion of a city at or near the junction of the Big Sioux River with the Missouri, travelers and merchants had fixed upon that locality as a leading center of river transportation for the fur trade of the Northwest. It was the natural half-way place for the gathering of Indians and traders and commercial leaders who were exploiting the headwaters of the Missouri and Yellowstone, as well as the region farther east tributary to the Big Sioux, and for gathering the peltry, both large and small, for transportation to the St. Louis market. As Sioux City arose, and military posts and settlements were established to the north and northwest, the locality became a leading entrepot of barter and trade, and one of the best known river towns in the Far West. Although for more than twenty years before the railroads were in operation in Northwestern Iowa it was the hope of many public and business men to make the Des Moines River a great channel of communication between the

primitive fur-bearing country of the North and the rapidly settling country of the Mississippi Valley, the most marked evidence of water transportation and traffic was furnished by the locality known as the Sioux City region.

#### SIOUX CITY AS A STEAMBOAT TOWN.

The first steamboat to arrive at Sioux City was from St. Louis in June, 1856, and was loaded with ready-framed houses and provisions. They were gratefully received by the settlers, who were then living in tents and rude log cabins. To them, frame houses were luxuries. The provisions were used to stock the little stores already established.

Backed by influential public as well as business men, soon after Sioux City was platted in 1854 a United States land office was established there, and it was made the headquarters and largely the outfitting point for all the government expeditions sent against the Sioux and other hostile Indians. About three years from the time that Dr. and Government Surveyor John K. Cook laid out the town it was a respectable-sized settlement of between four and five hundred people, its river front lively with mackinaws and steamboats, delivering buffalo robes and skins to be reshipped to St. Louis. The "Sioux City Iowa Eagle," which had just appeared at Sioux City, thus advertised the commercial status of this only river town of consequence: "In addition to the large number of buffalo robes and skins brought here by friendly Indians, immense quantities are brought by mackinaws (small boats). Messrs. Frost, Todd & Company are the heaviest dealers in furs. During one week in June (1857) they received by steamboat from the headwaters of the Missouri and Yellowstone furs and skins to the value of many thousands of dollars. One consignment alone contained 7,567 buffalo robes (tanned), 739 beaver skins, 32 elk skins, 14 bear skins, 1 moose skin and 35 pelt packages."

Even for a number of years after Sioux City secured railroad connection with both the East and West in 1868, it was substantially a river town and its transportation and commerce were based rather on the steamboat than on the railway lines. C. R. Marks says on this point: "The Northwestern Transportation Company established a line of boats





HAGY HOUSE AND HEDGES STORE  
ON THE LEVEE, EARLY '60s



THE LEVEE, EARLY '70s



THE LEVEE IN THE EARLY DAYS, SIOUX CITY

In the old times it was not an unusual sight to see half a score of craft lying at the Sioux City wharf, unloading from down the river or loading for ports above. The head of navigation then was Fort Benton, nearly a couple of thousand miles away, and Sioux City was sort of the half way station between the stream's source and mouth. From 1856, when the first steamer laden with freight for Sioux City arrived, to about 1876 this business grew and flourished, and then gradually it oozed away.



here with warehouses, that goods shipped by rail to Sioux City would be taken from here by boat up the river to the forts, Indian trading posts and mining camps, and on over 1,900 miles to Fort Benton. Other boats that took their first load from Pittsburgh, Cincinnati and St. Louis would fill up here on their way up and come back only as far as Sioux City to get another load.

#### SIoux CITY IN 1868.

“On July 4, 1868, there were eight steamboats tied up at our river bank, the crews celebrating in no mild fashion. Trade in all lines was brisk. Returning miners and soldiers bought new clothes. The miners exchanged the gold dust at the banks. The arrival of a boat from the south in earlier days, especially the first one, which was in the spring, was a town event. When the boat neared the city below where the Floyd monument now stands, it would blow several long, loud blasts with its whistle and repeat this at short intervals. It also would add fuel to the fires. The whole city would take notice, the smoke would be visible long before the boat came in view around the point, and the people flocked to the landing at the foot of Pearl Street.

#### THE COMING AND GOING OF A RIVER STEAMBOAT.

“At the first sound of the whistle, Charles K. Howard, until late years known as a South Dakota cattle man, but then a druggist near the foot of Pearl Street, would step out on the sidewalk and with a voice like a foghorn in long drawn-out notes would call out, ‘S-t-e-a-m-b-o-a-t!’ This would soon be echoed from the corner of Fourth and Pearl streets in tones equally sonorous by Bob McElhenny. Everyone then knew what was coming.

“As the boat approached the landing place on the river bank, there were certain necessary movements of the boat, backing and filling until it reached the desired point, when a gangplank would be pushed out part way from the boat, and a man or two would go out on the end of this with a big rope and jump for the bank. Usually there had been planted a big snubbing post. The rope would be run once or twice



around this and the other end on the boat taken care of, while the boat with steam up pushed against the bank until the boat was fast. Then the gangplank, or platform, was pushed clear up the top of the bank, and passengers and crew rushed off.

“If it was a boat going farther up the river, the crew commenced to carry off the freight to be left here, and that which was soon to start from here was loaded. It might remain here but a few hours. The departure was less dramatic, but more rapid. The whistle blew a warning, the rope was loosened from the snubbing post, the gangplank hauled in, and the boat fell back down stream a little with the current, then, swerving its bow toward the center of the river with a curve, got into the channel and on upstream.

“I remember, on one occasion, the rope got caught at the shore end for an instant as the boat was leaving and, after a slack, jerked straight out, caught a negro roustabout and threw him from the boat into the river. The steamer never slacked its headway, but kept on in its course up the river. The colored man disappeared in the water, then at high mark, and was not seen again. No doubt the officers knew by experience that no efforts on their part could save the man, and that he must save himself. They did not value one negro’s life very highly.

#### STEAMBOAT TRAFFIC.

“Trade in all lines when the boat was landing was brisk. The returned miners sold their dust to the bankers, Weare & Allison and Thomas J. Stone, who had their scales for weighing the dust, and even merchants took a hand at it. Sometimes a return boat would be loaded full with buffalo robes, deerskins and tallow, as there was not much other return freight.

“While we remained the end of the railroad, farmers came from long distances with their grain and produce—dressed hogs in season. I have seen wagonloads of wheat from Yankton, Sioux Falls and intermediate points. Stores were kept open until late at night, and nearby farmers took a day off Sundays to come in and trade.”

## ATTEMPTED NAVIGATION OF THE DES MOINES RIVER.

The main valley of the Des Moines River does not include any portion of Northwestern Iowa, and only the headwaters of its East and West forks water that section of the state. But as those who dreamed of improving the main channel of the Des Moines River so it should be the great western feeder to the Valley of the Mississippi and kill the trade and commerce of the Missouri Valley, the improvement of the chief waterway of interior Iowa was intimately connected with the progress of the northwestern section of the state. The plans of its projectors were never within sight of realization, however, so that the topic may be dismissed as of little importance in working out the theme of this history. Benjamin F. Gue writes truly when he says: "Of all the various grants of public lands made by Congress to aid works of internal improvements in the several states, probably none has been the subject of so much and such long continued litigation as the grant of 1846 to aid in the improvement of the navigation of the Des Moines River. No land grant failed more signally in accomplishing the purpose for which it was made and none inflicted greater wrongs or hardships upon the pioneers who, in good faith, settled upon the public lands."

The grant was made by an act of Congress on the 8th of March, 1846, for the purpose of aiding the Territory of Iowa to improve the navigation of the Des Moines River from its mouth to the Raccoon Fork of that river. The grant embraced each alternate section on both sides of the river for a distance of five miles of such lands as had not otherwise been disposed of, and was accepted by the Legislature after Iowa became a state, in January, 1847.

For a number of years before Congress and the Legislature set afoot this ambitious scheme in Iowa, the fur traders in their keel boats had been poling up the Des Moines and its tributaries, well supplied with beads, blankets, ammunition, war paints and, often hidden under all, that which was forbidden red men—a foreshadow of Prohibition. The return cargoes were, of course, furs and pelts, and their destination usually Keokuk, the Chicago of the Mississippi Valley, which was destined in the eyes of the prophets of those

days to be the rival of St. Louis, the metropolis of the Missouri Valley.

There are three authentic records of steamboats having ascended the Des Moines River, one as far as Fort Des Moines, previous to 1846. In the autumn of 1837, Capt. S. B. Clarke electrified the inhabitants of the little village of Keosauqua, now in Van Buren County, by blowing the whistle of his steamboat, "S. B. Science," as he rounded the bend a short distance below. The village was at the gangplank to welcome the boat from Keokuk loaded with flour, meal, pork, groceries and perhaps a good supply of whisky. In 1840, a steamboat arrived at Pittsburg, just above Keosauqua, and loaded with corn. In May, 1843, the steamboat "Agatha" went up the river with two keel boats to Fort Des Moines, stopping along the way at Fort Sanford, as Ottumwa was being laid out, and leaving various supplies both there and at its destination. This trip was made at the time when Congress had thrown the eastern portion of the Black Hawk Purchase open for settlement, which act was expected to bring settlers into the Des Moines Valley and further its development.

Hardly had the Iowa Legislature accepted the Congressional land grant, which was to be the basis of the Des Moines River improvements, before there arose a dispute as to the extent of the lands to which the state was entitled, and the various governmental, judicial and congressional "authorities" differed in their estimates from the Raccoon Fork (Des Moines) to the state line. The Board of Public Works, which was to have charge of the construction of the improvements, was replaced by a West Point engineer, who was the dreaming prophet of what the Valley of the Des Moines was to be and the subsequent ruin of all that was progressive in the Missouri Valley.

The specter in the form of the railroad was already looming before the river improvements, and in 1858 the grant of lands intended to promote the improvement of the Des Moines was conveyed to the Keokuk, Des Moines & Minnesota Railroad Company, to aid in the construction of a railroad up the valley. Only two of the fifty-seven dams and locks contemplated in the improvement had been completed, and after the



expenditure of more than \$330,000, and twelve years of exploitation and work, no part of the river had been made navigable except a small stretch of the lower valley for small steamers during seasons of high water. It was not until forty years afterward that Congress fully indemnified the survivors and heirs of the settlers who had honestly bought lands included in the grant of 1846, which were generally understood to extend to the present state line.

The 1856 grants to the four Iowa railroads doomed river transportation on the Des Moines, which was closed under these circumstances, as narrated by Tacitus Hussey, the pioneer, editor and author of Des Moines City: "The year 1862 virtually closed Des Moines River navigation by steamboats. The near approach of the railroads made the business uncertain and unprofitable; besides, there was great demand for steamboat service on all the rivers of the South during the Civil war, which now began to assume alarming proportions and required much service in the way of transporting troops and supplies from one place to another; so our steamboat captains withdrew their boats to more profitable fields." This last comment of Mr. Hussey also applies in a limited fashion to the steamboats of the Missouri River; for during the Civil war they were largely monopolized by the military authorities, although as a means of transportation for freight and passengers they have never been entirely abandoned.

#### THE SAWYER WAGON ROADS TO THE MONTANA GOLD FIELDS.

Northwestern Iowa developed at such a comparatively recent period that there was no gradual development in land transportation from the stage-line or plank-road eras to the inauguration of railroads. But while the iron ways were commencing to be projected into that section of the state, the gold fields of Montana, which centered at Virginia City, drew many people from Sioux City, and emphasized the fact that there was no well-defined wagon route from Northwestern Iowa, across Nebraska and thence to the Montana gold fields. The popular route was the Salt Lake trail, by way of Council Bluffs and Omaha, and up the Platte Valley across Central Nebraska and, by a round-about northern course, to the placer mines at Bannock and Virginia City.

A group of practical business men at Sioux City, with the enthusiastic support of A. W. Hubbard, their member of Congress, held that a more northern route by way of the Niobrara Valley, in Northern Nebraska, would save at least 500 miles of travel to Virginia City, if a practicable road could be opened. Congress appropriated money for this route, as well as other overland roads, and Col. James A. Sawyer, of Sioux City, was appointed superintendent of the Niobrara wagon road. He was well qualified to assume such leadership. In early life he served in the Mexican war and, in his mature years, as a cavalry officer in the Civil war. During the Indian troubles he established a chain of stockades from Sioux City into Minnesota, and was familiar with what was then the Far West. In spite of bitter opposition from the Council Bluffs-Omaha-Salt Lake people, Colonel Sawyer's expedition, with his cattle, wagons and military escort, crossed the Missouri River at Sioux City and proceeded to Niobrara, where the final organization was effected. The escort of about 140 men comprised two companies of paroled Confederates, known as "galvanized Yankees," and a detachment of twenty-five Dakota cavalrymen, supported by a six-pound brass howitzer. There was constant friction between the commanding officer of the military escort and Colonel Sawyer, who was the official superintendent of the expedition, and it was a mutual relief when the soldiers were left at Fort Connors.

The Sawyer expedition started from Niobrara June 13, 1865, and reached Virginia City October 12, 1865, having traveled in the four months more than 1,000 miles. Its greatest loss was the death of Nat Hedges, a bright and able Sioux City youth, who had been killed by the Indians on the North Fork of the Cheyenne River in the Powder River mountain district.

Colonel Sawyer also conducted a second expedition, in the endeavor of Sioux City to project a direct emigrant road to the northern gold fields and to make the city a leading outfitting point corresponding to the position of Council Bluffs and Omaha farther south. But neither redounded to the benefit of Northwestern Iowa or Sioux City, as the route did not receive the support of the high military authorities of



PRAIRIE SCHOONER





the country. In measuring the value of the Niobrara Wagon Road to western emigrants, an enthusiastic author writing in recent years says: "The route was the shortest and avoided the famous alkali lands (the scourge of the plains), and afforded an abundance of fuel, water and grass, with a road bed which admitted of carrying six tons' weight on two freight wagons joined together, without even the necessity of uncoupling from Sioux City to Virginia City. That route became a great western thoroughfare, and was traversed by thousands of mule and ox trains of freight wagons until the country was finally settled up and the construction of railroads completed in all parts of the country, which at that time was but a barren, prairie wilderness. Much credit is due to Colonel Sawyer's persistence and the interest manifested on the part of Sioux City men in general in the establishment of this great overland thoroughfare to the Rocky Mountains."

A better authority than this unnamed and unidentified writer is Albert M. Holman, a young man of twenty who accompanied Colonel Sawyer's first expedition in 1865 and remained in the Montana fields as a store-keeper and a miner for three years. He then returned to Sioux City, and for many years was a merchant, a manufacturer and a man of public affairs. When a Sioux City resident nearly eighty years of age, he wrote an interesting account of the expedition in which he was a participant and added a comment on the measure of value laid down in the words which have been quoted. Mr. Holman says: "This account covers in general the second expedition. The only misstatement in it, which is of importance, is that the route became a great western thoroughfare and was traveled by thousands of mule and ox teams. The fact is, no trains ever traveled over the route after this second trip in 1866." He adds, in another place in his narrative concerning the first expedition: "That the country generally through which we passed was well adapted for an overland wagon road was demonstrated then, and has since been proven by the settling up of most of that region. But the building of the Union Pacific Railroad immediately following the efforts of the expedition made wagon routes unnecessary, and after the second expedition in 1866, no

wagon train ever traveled the route to Montana." Which seems to settle the matter beyond peradventure that, despite Colonel Sawyer's perseverance and bravery, the Niobrara Wagon Road which he routed from Sioux City to Virginia City never became of practical value.

#### RAILROADS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

About the time that Mr. Holman returned to Sioux City from his temporary sojourn in Virginia City, a young New York lawyer of twenty-seven also became a resident of the city and afterward became both prominent in his profession and in the public affairs of his adopted western home. In time, Constant R. Marks and Albert M. Holman became friends and, as old, honored men, issued a pamphlet together entitled "Pioneering in the Northwest," to which valuable little book the writer has been much indebted. Mr. Marks has greatly increased his debt by contributing the following concise yet complete story of the expansion of the railway systems in Northwestern Iowa:

In 1851 the Iowa Legislature passed an act establishing the boundaries of forty-nine counties in Western Iowa out of what had been before that unsettled territory; in area about one-half the state, containing only a few scattered settlements, the principal one being at Kanessville, now Council Bluffs. Shortly after this many of these counties commenced to be settled and county organizations created. This region was reputed to be fertile, but the great need was railroads to promote settlements.

#### CONGRESS ENCOURAGES RAILROAD BUILDING, 1850-55.

Congress had established a precedent in 1850 by granting public land to the several states to aid in building a railroad from Galena and Chicago, in Illinois, to Mobile, in Alabama. These states were given all the even numbered sections of public land for six miles in width on each side of the line to be located, with indemnity in case some such sections had been previously sold. This indemnity was to be taken from land adjacent to the six mile limit, sufficient to make up the deficit. Under this donation the Illinois Central Railroad in Illinois had been built, and similar grants had been made to other states.



The senators from Iowa, George W. Jones of Dubuque, Augustus C. Dodge of Burlington, and Congressman Bernhart Henn of Fairfield, Iowa, were alert to do something for their own state. In 1854 Senator Jones had introduced in Congress a bill for an act to aid a railroad from near Dubuque to the Missouri River at some point to be designated, but estimated to be a little south of the present Illinois Central Line.

Sioux City was not then in actual existence. Early in 1855 prospective town promoters were showing where this proposed line would pass through their towns. This was especially true of Fort Dodge, in Webster County, and Sergeant's Bluff, in Woodbury County, where promoters were showing that this eastern road would pass to the Missouri River and across into Nebraska and west. This bill failed of passage.

#### FOUR IOWA RAILROADS PROJECTED, 1856.

In the next Congress the matter took definite shape. Senators Jones and Dodge and Congressman Henn, together with other congressmen in other states, had become interested in Western Iowa development, and were partners in the town-site of Sioux City, having nearly a half ownership therein. A land grant aid to the State of Iowa was passed May 15, 1856, for four lines of railroad across the State of Iowa. One line was from Burlington, Iowa, to a point on the Missouri River opposite the mouth of the Platte River in Nebraska, now known as the Burlington line. The second was from Davenport through Iowa City and Fort Des Moines to Council Bluffs, now the Rock Island. The third was from Lyons, Iowa (near Clinton), west as near as practicable on the west 42 parallel to the Missouri River, and this line was surveyed through Onawa to the Missouri River, but as changed now is the Northwestern Line. The fourth one was from Dubuque to Sioux City.

These grants being to the State of Iowa, the governor called a special session of the Legislature, which met July 14, 1856, and granted these lands to certain railroad companies, which had been organized to accept the grants, and actual surveys of contemplated lines had been started by some of these companies before the Legislature met. The survey on the one to Sioux City started at the Sioux City end July 1, 1856. These Iowa grants were of the odd numbered sections within six miles on each side of the line of the road when definitely located, and if any of these lands had been previously sold, as a great deal of it had, in Eastern Iowa, then

they might select enough land to make up the deficiency from odd numbered sections within fifteen miles on each side of the located line.

Surveys were soon made, lists of land selected and filed in the local United States land offices and in the General Land Office at Washington. The price of the remaining even numbered sections was doubled to \$2.50 an acre, and put on the market by the Government, it having been withdrawn from sale immediately after the passage of the act. Under this system vast tracts of land, granted to the railroads, were kept out of the market or settlement for ten years or more until the roads were built, and with other lands, later granted to other roads, form the basis of title to almost half the land in many Northwestern Iowa counties.

#### IOWA LINES TO CONNECT WITH THE UNION PACIFIC, 1862.

When the United States made a similar grant of land to aid in building a railroad line from Council Bluffs, Iowa, to San Francisco, on July 2, 1862, as part of the same, a branch line was authorized to be built from Sioux City to some point on this Union Pacific Railroad to be designated by the President not farther west than the 100th meridian, which would be near the central part of Nebraska. This made it almost necessary that these three Southern Iowa land grant roads should be authorized to connect at Council Bluffs with this Union Pacific road. Hon. A. W. Hubbard, congressman from Sioux City, had provided for Sioux City's connection in the original act.

#### SIOUX CITY AND ST. PAUL RAILROAD.

On April 12, 1864, Congress passed another land grant act to aid in the building of a road from Sioux City to the Minnesota state line at some point between the Big Sioux River and west of the west fork of the Des Moines River. This was built by the Sioux City and St. Paul Railroad.

#### THE CHICAGO, MILWAUKEE & ST. PAUL.

Another line was authorized from McGregor, Iowa, westerly along near the 43rd parallel until it intersected the St. Paul Railroad at some point in O'Brien County, Iowa. This is now the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railroad. These two lines were given the odd numbered sections within ten miles on each side of the line when established, with indemnity for land previously sold to be selected from odd sections within twenty miles on each side of the established line. These

grants of land were to the State of Iowa, which regranted them to the various railroad companies.

After the survey for these roads was completed maps of the lines were made and adopted by the railroad, filed with the Governor, and sent to the General Land Office at Washington. The State of Iowa appointed agents to select the lands. Bernhart Henn, ex-congressman from Iowa and one of the promoters of Sioux City, was such agent for the selection of the lands for the road from Dubuque to Sioux City. When these selections were completed, they were approved and certified to by the State of Iowa and so marked on the government plats and lists in the United States local land offices, which for this Northwestern Iowa were at Council Bluffs, Sioux City and Fort Dodge. The even sections and lands outside the limits of the grant were restored to public entry and sale July 4, 1858.

#### SECTION OF THE NORTHWESTERN BUILT.

The building of the roads commenced at the eastern end, but the general financial panic of 1857 stopped the financing of railroad building, and the Civil War, commencing in 1861, further put an embargo on railroad construction. After these failures to build by one company, the resumption of the grants by the Legislature and regranteeing to other companies, the actual building of these western ends of the roads from Dubuque to Sioux City and from Lyons and Clinton to Council Bluffs, commenced after the close of the war in 1865. This road is now the Northwestern and built west from Cedar Rapids to Council Bluffs, being completed by a company called the Cedar Rapids and Missouri River Railroad Company. This was stimulated by the starting of the construction of the Union Pacific Railroad from Council Bluffs, Iowa. Land now had an actual small market value, and these granted lands and mortgage bonds on the lands and the road had a salable market value, and would furnish funds for building.

#### JOHN I. BLAIR, FATHER OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA ROADS.

John I. Blair, of New Jersey, who had made some money at home, financed the road and managed, with his associates, the building of this line to Council Bluffs, as well as the Sioux City branch of the Union Pacific and the other line from Cedar Rapids to Sioux City. They also laid out all the new town sites. John I. Blair thus became a historical railroad character. He had foresight, courage, and financial ability



to complete these projects successfully, and reaped a rich financial reward. He was close-fisted and economical in his personal expenses, and wanted for himself wherever possible all the little side-line profits like the townsites. He had started life as a small merchant; he gained wealth by taking hold of difficult enterprises. He was tall, well formed, cool, and kept in touch with the work as it progressed, with all its financial requirements.

After he had finished the line to Council Bluffs and from Missouri Valley to Sioux City, which was completed in March, 1868, he commenced on the line from Fort Dodge to Sioux City early in 1869. He drove with a team from Fort Dodge to Sioux City over the contemplated line, going past Storm Lake, seeing there a fine prospective town site. He at once upon his arrival in Sioux City proceeded to the United States Land Office at that locality and entered lands close to Storm Lake; so people knew where at least one town-site was to be. All the other towns west of Fort Dodge would be where the railroad chose to locate them.

#### IOWA FALLS AND SIOUX CITY RAILROAD.

The Twelfth General Assembly of Iowa in 1868 had, for failure to perform the condition of the grant, resumed the grant to the Iowa Falls and Sioux City Railroad Company, and in April 7, 1868, made a conditional regrant of this land to the same road. One of the provisions of the regrant to this and some other Iowa land grant roads was that each railroad accepting the provisions of this act should at all times be subject to such rules, regulations, and rates of tariff for the transportation of freight and passengers as might from time to time be enacted by the General Assembly of Iowa. This was the first attempt in Iowa to regulate passenger and freight rates, and it was assumed that without such provision in the grant there was no power to regulate rates. It created strong objections among the railroad people.

It was also provided in the act that the railroad company must accept this grant with the provision before July, 1868, or the state census board might grant it to some other road on the same terms. This road and others canvassed the members of the Legislature to see whether they would at a special session of the Legislature repeal this claim. This railroad company on March 6, 1868, had notified the Governor that they would not accept such a grant. No extra session was called and this same railroad in writing on February 18, 1869, accepted the regrant under the alternative clause in the

act of April 8, 1868, authorizing the giving of it to any other company. This fact is not generally understood, as this rejection and acceptance are not matters of county record. The State later deeded this land to this same company after it built the road. Hence in showing the passage of title to land-grant lands from the State to this company, abstractors show the act of April 8, 1868, to the Iowa Falls and Sioux City Railroad Company simply as though the land title passed direct under the first part of the act, when in fact it passed under the rejection and later acceptance. But this is not especially material, as these lands after about 1870 were deeded to the railroad company, and not, as before, by filing certified lists.

At the time of these land grants in 1856 there had been contemplated a line from McGregor westerly across the state, but this was omitted from the original act.

At the next session of the Legislature, on December 26, 1856, the Iowa Legislature memorialized Congress, to build a road from McGregor to the Missouri River, and at the same session passed a resolution asking Congress to extend the western boundary of Iowa across the Big Sioux River to the Missouri, taking all the country south of the north line of Iowa extended west to the Missouri, and at every session of the Legislature it memorialized Congress to aid this road from McGregor until it was finally passed.

In April, 1860, the Iowa Legislature asked Congress for aid for a road from Council Bluffs up the Boyer Valley through Harrison, Monona, Crawford, Sac, Buena Vista, and other counties to the State line, or northern boundary of Kosuth County, and thence into Minnesota to reach the lumber regions and supply treeless Iowa with building material.

The Legislature had authorized mortgaging the roads, which had been granted lands to aid in building, and had authorized the counties to use the swamp lands granted to them to aid in building these roads, and some of them had done so. Woodbury County gave its swamp lands to its first road, the Sioux City and Pacific, for building that road to Sioux City. These roads were not completed within the periods provided for in the original grants and acts of Congress, and acts of the Legislature were passed extending the time.

#### CEDAR RAPIDS AND MISSOURI RIVER RAILROAD, 1866-68.

The actual building of the line west from Cedar Rapids to Council Bluffs was of these Northwestern Iowa roads completed first. It reached Denison in 1866; much freight



reaching there was carried by teams to Sioux City, and settlements made between; and it was completed to Council Bluffs early in 1867. The people of Sioux City and vicinity had waited long for a railroad to the east and wanted it right away. The location of the line to join the Union Pacific was very liberal as to the point of junction; so it was located and built from Sioux City down the east side of the Missouri to California Junction, in Harrison County, and thence west across the Missouri at Blair, Nebraska, and to Fremont on the Union Pacific, with a short stub from California Junction to Missouri Valley on the Cedar Rapids & Missouri River main line. So its main use was and always has been to go east instead of west. This line to Sioux City was mostly built in 1867, getting into Sioux City and finished in March, 1868.

#### COMPLETION OF IOWA FALLS & SIOUX CITY RAILROAD.

The actual building of the Iowa Falls and Sioux City Railroad west of Fort Dodge commenced early in the spring of 1869, work progressing at both ends, as by the completion of the line of the Sioux City and Pacific Railroad, material could be shipped there. This road was completed in the summer of 1870. With the completion of this road the larger portion of Northwestern Iowa was within the reach of railroad transportation, and the great rush of immigration commenced and increased rapidly.

The Sioux City and St. Paul road from Sioux City to the northern State line was finished in the summer of 1872 and the road west of McGregor was finished to its junction in O'Brien County in 1874.

#### ABSORPTIONS BY PRESENT-DAY RAILROADS.

The road from Cedar Rapids to Council Bluffs was for many years leased to the Chicago and Northwestern Railroad Company, which company bought the road itself and also the Sioux City and Pacific, and has built its numerous main lines and branches in Northwestern Iowa, connecting at various places with its original main line.

The road from Dubuque to Sioux City was leased to and operated for many years by the Illinois Central Road, which subsequently bought it. The Illinois Central built the two branches from Cherokee to Sioux Falls and to Onawa about 1890, and later from Fort Dodge to Council Bluffs to meet the Union Pacific.



## HOW BLAIR NEARLY GOT CONTROL OF THE DAKOTA SOUTHERN.

While John I. Blair was the controlling owner of the road-bed of the Sioux City & Pacific and the Iowa Falls & Sioux City Railroads, he came near getting control of the line now owned by the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul from Sioux City to Yankton and Sioux Falls. This road from Sioux City up the Sioux River had been the first projected to run on the Iowa side and had been organized as the Sioux City and Pembina road by Sioux City men, and aid had been voted it by the townships in Woodbury and Plymouth counties in 1872 and some grading done.

Soon after this a road was promoted from Sioux City to Yankton, called the Dakota Southern. The promoters (Wicker Meckling Company) joined forces with the Sioux City promoters of the Pembina road, and built a line to Yankton and Sioux Falls, running the latter line partly in Dakota. The north end of this road was not built for several years, as times were hard. Wicker Meckling Company appealed to John I. Blair for assistance, and agreements were made whereby Blair bought a half interest in the Dakota Southern and loaned that company \$100,000 to finish the road to Sioux Falls, but the old directors of the Dakota Southern were to remain until the next annual meeting.

It dawned on Wicker Meckling Company that this \$100,000 debt to Blair would be used by him to squeeze them out of their remaining half. The Milwaukee road had been finished to Canton, South Dakota and west, and Mr. Wicker approached that company and a deal was made whereby he sold his half to that company. They called a special meeting of the directors at Yankton and these directors and officials of the Milwaukee road took a special car to Yankton, stopped within the city limits and held the meeting. Wicker's directors resigned and Milwaukee officials were elected to their places. It was also voted to sell \$100,000 more stock and with proceeds take up the Blair note, thus giving the Milwaukee road a majority of the Dakota Southern stock. Blair started some litigation to regain his rights, but abandoned them. Had Blair succeeded, the Illinois Central might have had a main line in Dakota and the Milwaukee branch from Manilla to Sioux City would never have been built.

## DES MOINES RIVER GRANT REVERTS TO RAILROAD PROJECTS.

I have spoken of the land grant along the Des Moines River to aid in the making of that stream navigable up as far as

Des Moines. This was later amended by an act of Congress, approved July 12, 1862, extending this land grant north from the Raccoon Forks at Des Moines to the Minnesota State line and authorizing the application of a portion of this land to aid in the construction of the Keokuk, Fort Des Moines & Minnesota Railroad. Much legislation and litigation followed. The project for navigating the Des Moines River was impracticable and was abandoned, and a railroad was built north as far as Fort Dodge and finished about 1871 by the Des Moines Valley Railroad. Later this was taken over and extended north by the Minneapolis & St. Louis Railroad Company, which built some branches. The Chicago, Rock Island & Pacific extended branches into Northwestern Iowa.

The Chicago & Great Western Railroad Company also built a line from Minnesota through Fort Dodge and Carroll to Council Bluffs, thus crossing the southeastern corner of Northwestern Iowa.

#### STIMULATING VALUE OF RAILROADS IMMEASURABLE.

By these numerous railroads with their connections and affiliations our region is traversed by or put in connection with every continental railroad line, and there is not a farm that is not within ten miles of a railroad; every one of these having been built within the last sixty years, many of them much more recently.

We can not measure the value of these roads in stimulating the growth of this fertile, treeless region. They have enabled us to market our immense agricultural crops and animals and in return brought us fuel and merchandise produced elsewhere. Our Northwestern Iowa is not surpassed by any other region of the United States in the proportionate acres of tillable soil, and quantity and value of its products.

Inland water navigation reached but few places and did not afford much aid in transporting produce raised at any great distance from the rivers which ran north and south and were frozen over and at low water nearly half the year, and the canals helped but little. Railroad building for long-and-short distance freight and passenger traffic in inland regions solved the problem and gave us the world's market for our products and stimulated agriculture. Our land that we bought fifty or sixty years ago of the Government at \$1.25 or \$2.50 an acre, or bought from the land grant railroads at \$5 to \$10 an acre now is worth from \$100 to \$300 an acre, chiefly by the development of railroad transportation.

## THE AUTOMOBILE, A NEW PROBLEM.

We are now experimenting with a new problem, the automobile, which is moving much local freight, long-and-short distance passenger traffic to the financial loss of the railroads, especially the branch short-distance lines, but we are paying for this in increased taxes and special taxes against the land itself for special highways.

## ELECTRIC AND AUTO-BUS LINES.

The public transportation of passengers and freight in Northwestern Iowa has been substantially accomplished for many years by the steam railways, although electricity and "gas" have invaded the field to some extent. With the constant improvement of the public highways, through the coöperation of the Federal, state, county and township governments, auto travel has immensely increased, and numerous auto-bus lines have been put in operation to supplement the passenger service of the railroads. In many districts of Northwestern Iowa, where the train service is infrequent, these comfortable and well-conducted auto buses have proven themselves of great public utility.

Electrical transportation is represented by the Sioux City system of Iowa which has been extended across the Missouri River to South Sioux City, Nebraska. In 1890 the original horse and mule-drawn cars gave way to electricity as a motive power, and the Sioux City lines were among the first electric railways in the United States. The system is now operated by the Sioux City Gas and Electric Company. It includes about sixty miles of street car lines and embraces not only Sioux City proper, but the outlying districts of Morningside, Leeds and Riverside, and also, as stated, South Sioux City in Nebraska.

## IMPROVEMENT OF IOWA'S PUBLIC HIGHWAYS.

The Iowa State Highway Commission was established under an act passed in 1904 by the Thirtieth General Assembly, which constituted the Iowa State College as an institution to act as such commission. From 1904 to 1913, the work of improving the highways of the state was carried on under that law. The Thirty-fifth General Assembly (1913) created



the Highway Commission as it still exists. The dean of engineering of the State College is its ex-officio member, and each of the two other members represents a different political party. The term of office is four years. Under the law, as amended by the General Assembly from time to time, the commission is charged with many other duties than those delegated to it by the original act; these now include the making of all road surveys and the preparation of road and bridge specifications. Beginning with July 1, 1925, the commission had to its credit a primary road development fund of about \$4,000,000 to be used on any portion of the system as might be deemed best by the commission. By act of the General Assembly, the commission assumed complete control of the maintenance of the primary road system, to date from July 1, 1925.

In 1917, the first law was enacted in Iowa accepting Federal aid in the improvement of the primary road system, and since that time to November, 1924, nearly \$70,500,000 was expended altogether, of which \$55,600,000 was applied to actual construction. The heaviest year was 1921, when more than \$38,000,000 was expended in all kinds of highway improvements. That sum was divided as follows: Primary and county road expenditures, \$22,763,290; for bridges and culverts, \$9,305,352; for township roads, \$6,672,985.

In 1924, the total expenditures throughout the state amounted to \$29,126,000. In November of that year the total number of miles in the primary system of the state was 6,600, of which 2,164 had been surfaced with gravel, macadam or sand clay, 1,934 miles of earth road built to permanent grade and 502 miles paved, while 2,058 miles of earth road had not been improved.

#### THE FUTURE OF THE GOOD ROADS MOVEMENT.

Automobilists, merchants and farmers are all in close coöperation with the State Highway Commission and the Iowa Good Roads Association to get the full benefits of highway building and highway improvements throughout the state, and, in consideration of its wealth, each of the Northwestern Iowa counties which figures in this history is doing

its share to forward the good roads movement. In December, 1924, the condition of the primary road system in Iowa was represented by 2,164.4 miles of graveled road; built to finished grade, but not surfaced, 1,934.4; not built to finished grade, 2,058.6; paved, 502.3 miles. Total, 6,659.7. These figures mean much, but perhaps to the average reader this simple statement made in the last annual report of the Iowa State Highway Commission will carry greater weight: "One can travel from Des Moines to the county seats of forty-four counties by direct route and be on gravel or pavement all the way."

For a number of years, under the coöperation of the Iowa State College Good Roads Department and the State Highway Commission, an investigation has been conducted to determine by accurate experiment and by actual test runs, the comparative cost of transportation by motor vehicles over various types of road surfaces and varying grades. The conclusions, based upon this scientific investigation, bear out the theories which have long been held in regard to the economy of improved road surfaces and reduction of grades. The ambitious six-year program advocated by the Iowa Good Roads Association was largely based upon this prolonged series of experiments and investigations. The period proposed to be covered covered the years 1925-1930, inclusive.

In one of the last quarterly "Service Bulletins," issued by the Iowa State Highway Commission, all these matters are clearly set forth, as well as the summary of the series of tests and studies made by Prof. T. R. Agg upon the "Cost of Highway Transportation." From the latter article these extracts are pertinent: "Motor vehicle operation, the prime factor in cost of highway transportation, costs Iowans approximately \$300,000,000 per year. This is three times the total tax levy paid by the people of the State for state, county and municipal purposes. In 1924 the total Iowa tax levies to be paid were \$107,361,779. These figures alone give some idea of the cost incurred in modern highway transportation.

"Arguments for improved roads in the past have been mainly based on the desirability of such a system, the satisfaction, convenience and pleasure to be derived from paved roads in any community, the elimination of isolation from

country life and the generally improved living conditions. Ability to get from farm to market to take advantage of reasonable prices on the commodities has been largely stressed. To actually show that paved roads were in themselves an economy, that they would actually pay for themselves in a limited term of years where traffic is moderately heavy, while incidentally believed by engineers, could not be actually shown with any definite and unquestioned figures available. This can now be done.

“Now that these figures are becoming known, even road engineers are expressing surprise that the points mentioned, while they might readily have been known, have actually never been fully recognized and considered.

“The operation of Iowa’s half a million cars in 1923 cost the State her entire corn crop. The cost of operation of these motor cars during the present year can not possibly be covered by the value of the 1924 corn crop. Operation of vehicles is only a part of the transportation costs. These facts ought to give some idea of the staggering figures in Iowa’s total transportation costs and sober the minds of those who must shoulder the responsibility of formulating a policy and devising a road-building program for the future.”

There is no section of the State to which the foregoing facts and deductions apply more closely and vitally than Northwestern Iowa, as many of its most productive districts are far removed from railroad lines, and the better and more numerous the highways which intersect the country the easier it will be for farmers and country merchants to get into touch with the broad outside markets and give the local communities the benefits of such contact.



## CHAPTER IX.

### NORTHWESTERN BORDER INDIAN WARFARE.

PROTECTING THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER—THE MINUTE MEN—THE FRONTIER GUARDS—THE SIOUX CITY CAVALRY—THE SIXTH AND SEVENTH IOWA CAVALRY REGIMENTS—THE BATTLE OF WHITE STONE HILL—NORTHERN BORDER BRIGADE—FORT DEFIANCE, ESTHERVILLE—LAST MILITARY FORCE ON THE IOWA BORDER.

The participation of Northwestern Iowa in the issues of the Civil war was not so much the support given the Union army on the pitched battle fields of the enemy country, as the men furnished in the northern border operations to save the State from a widespread onslaught of the Sioux, while Confederate forays and invasions were progressing from the south. Fortunately, the Indian menace was crushed in Northwestern Iowa, after it had appalled and all but succeeded in Southern Minnesota.

#### PROTECTING THE NORTHWESTERN FRONTIER.

Before the outbreak of the Civil war, Northwestern Iowa had organized to oppose any Sioux incursions from the north. The necessity for it was terribly emphasized by the massacres in Dickinson County of March, 1857. Early in the year 1858, Cyrus C. Carpenter, of Fort Dodge, representing the district in the lower house of the Iowa Legislature, succeeded in having a bill passed providing for the raising of a company for the protection of the northwestern frontier.

The company was recruited chiefly in Hamilton and Webster counties, on the southeastern borders of the Northwestern Iowa covered by this work, and was commanded by Capt. Henry Martin, of Webster City. It arrived on the frontier about the first of March, 1858, and was divided into three detachments. Captain Martin, with the main squad, took up his quarters in the old fort at Spirit Lake; First Lieutenant

Church was sent to Peterson, in the southwest corner of Clay County, and Second Lieutenant Jewett was stationed with a few men in Emmet County. After remaining on duty until about the first of July, without any indication of an Indian outbreak, the men were ordered home, though the company was not disbanded. At the earnest request of a majority of the settlers along the frontier, the company was again called out in the fall of 1858, and remained on duty until the spring of 1859, when the men were discharged.

#### THE MINUTE MEN.

The withdrawal of Captain Martin's company left the Northwestern frontier without any armed protection except such as could be furnished by the settlers themselves. Samuel J. Kirkwood was inaugurated governor early in 1860. No man in the State knew better the dangers to which the settlers along the northern border were exposed. He had noted that when the troops were on duty along the frontier the Indians kept out of sight, but as soon as the soldiers were withdrawn, new outbreaks were committed. He communicated these facts to the Legislature with the result that in March, 1860, a bill providing for a company of Minute Men was passed. As this bill is really a curiosity in State legislation and defense, it is given in full:

"Section 1. Be it enacted by the General Assembly of the State of Iowa, that for the purpose of protecting the citizens of the northwestern portion of the State and enabling them to defend themselves against the threatened invasion of hostile Indians, the governor be, and is hereby, authorized to furnish said settlers such arms and ammunition as may be necessary for the purposes aforesaid.

"Section 2. That the governor be, and hereby is, authorized to cause to be enrolled a company of minute men in number not exceeding twelve, at the governor's discretion, who shall at all times, hold themselves in readiness to meet any threatened invasion of hostile Indians as aforesaid. The said minute men to be paid only for the time actually employed in the services herein contemplated.

"Section 3. That of the said minute men, under the orders of the governor at his discretion and under such regulations

as he may prescribe, a number of not exceeding four may be employed as an active police force for such time and to perform such services as may be demanded of them, who shall be paid only for the period during which they shall be actively employed as aforesaid.

“Section 4. There is hereby appropriated from the State treasury the sum of five hundred dollars, or so much thereof as may be necessary, for carrying into effect the provisions of this act.”

This act was approved on March 9, 1860. Think of placing a State like Iowa on a war footing with a force of twelve men, only one-third of whom were to be in active service, with an appropriation of \$500! There were two hundred miles of frontier to be guarded! But Governor Kirkwood accepted the situation. The minute men were enlisted and headquarters established at Cherokee, then a frontier town. They remained in service until the fall of 1861, carrying despatches and watching the movements of the Indians, but no official record can be found giving the time of their enlistment or date of discharge.

#### THE FRONTIER GUARDS.

Soon after the commencement of hostilities in the Civil war, and the withdrawal of regular troops from the garrisons above Sioux City and along the Missouri River, the citizens of Iowa, especially those living in the valleys of the Floyd and Little Sioux, saw that they must depend upon themselves to avert the threatened depredations of the Sioux, who were taking advantage of this season of anxiety and unrest to increase the apprehension of the Unionists of the State. In the spring of 1861 was therefore organized, under State auspices, a body of citizen soldiers, known first as Home Guards and later as Frontier Guards. It was held liable for service in the protection of frontier points, regardless of locality. The troops especially assigned to the northwestern frontier were originally placed in command of Caleb Baldwin, of Council Bluffs, afterward chief justice of the State Supreme Court. Justice Baldwin was soon succeeded in command by A. W. Hubbard, of Sioux City, then judge of the Fourth Judicial district, which included thirty counties in Northwest-



ern Iowa. The original commissioned officers were William Tripp, captain; William R. Smith, first lieutenant, and A. J. Millard, second lieutenant.

The Northwestern Frontier Guards soon made a flying and ineffectual pursuit of marauding Indians of several days' duration. About the same time Thomas Roberts and Henry Cordua were murdered a short distance east of Sioux City; their horses were stolen by the Indians, which seemed to have been the chief motive for the attack upon the unsuspecting men. The Indians were pursued fifty miles, but escaped. Two men were also wounded by the Indians near Correctionville, Woodbury County, on the Little Sioux; one was William Roberts, brother of the man murdered near Sioux City, and the other Isaac Pendleton, afterward judge of the Fourth Judicial district and one of the most eloquent advocates in the Northwest of that day.

In the fall of 1861, the Frontier Guards made a vigorous campaign in the direction of Sioux Falls, a hundred miles away, and returned by way of Spirit Lake. No casualties were reported except the accidental wounding of John Currier, one of the rank and file, who was later made a captain under Gen. John Cook. During the summers of 1862 and 1863, the hostile bands of Sioux kept Southern Minnesota and Northwestern Iowa in a constant state of ferment and apprehension. At Mankato, Blue Earth, Jackson and other points in Southern Minnesota nearly a thousand whites were sacrificed in battle and massacre. Consequently, the settlements along the Little and Big Sioux, as well as the entire border of Western Iowa, were constantly oppressed with fear and apprehension. While the Frontier Guards saw no heavy fighting, their presence and readiness for action proved the desired deterrent against Indian depredations and outrages.

#### THE SIOUX CITY CAVALRY.

This efficient military organization, which first operated as an independent company and was afterward incorporated into the Seventh Iowa Cavalry, was another home-defense body brought into the field to protect the western and northwestern frontiers, wherever the Indians threatened them. It was raised in the fall of 1861, under a special order from the

War Department, and the greater portion of the company came from Sioux City and neighborhood and the settlements along the Floyd and Little Sioux rivers. It was commanded by Capt. A. J. Millard, a hardy and industrious young man of Sioux City, who had been a sailor in his earlier years and when called into the service was a carpenter. He was a good officer, both as a fighter and an executive, and made a high record in the campaigns against the Sioux in what was then Dakota Territory. During the winter of 1861-62, the Sioux City Cavalry was divided into small squads, which were stationed principally at Cherokee, Spirit Lake, Peterson and Correctionville. The major part of the company was composed of heads of families and mature men, some of them quite well-to-do, and all of them took much pride in the quality of their horses and their general outfit.

The Sioux outbreak in Minnesota began at Acton, on August 17, 1862, when several settlers were murdered. News of the uprising reached Spirit Lake on the morning of the 29th, when a Norwegian named Nelson came in, carrying two of his little children, and reported that the other members of his family had been killed by the Indians the night before, in the Norwegian settlement on the Des Moines River some six miles above Jackson, Minnesota. Even the two children he carried had been taken by the heels and their heads knocked against the corner of the cabin, and one of them afterward died.

A company of volunteers from Spirit Lake and Estherville went up the Des Moines and rescued some of the settlers. On the day this party returned, Lieutenant Sawyers arrived at Spirit Lake with thirty men of the Sioux City Cavalry. The little detachment was divided into three parts. One under Corporal Robbins was sent to Okoboji; another, under Sergeant Samuel Wade, was sent to Estherville, and the third, under Lieut. James A. Sawyers, remained at Spirit Lake.

At this time, when Northern and Northwestern Iowa were laboring under the terror of Sioux forays and massacres such as were appalling Southern Minnesota, squads of the Sioux City Cavalry, and volunteer citizens unorganized, were patrolling the northern counties and doing what they could to protect the lives and relieve the panic of the Minnesota

refugees. At this time of uncertainty, Captain Millard wrote a letter to Dr. William R. Smith, a prominent physician of Sioux City, who had served as a lieutenant in the Frontier Guards and was chairman of the general committee for protection. It read as follows:

Headquarters Sioux City Cavalry, August 30, 1862.

William R. Smith

Sir: The report from Spirit Lake is very bad. Six hundred troops went out from Mankato, Minn., to repulse the Indians, and met with a loss of about 300, killed and wounded. The remaining inhabitants of the upper country are all leaving and coming toward Sioux City. Some are going toward Fort Dodge. The Little Sioux Valley is all deserted. I shall go to Spirit Lake as soon as I hear from there again. I would advise the people of Sioux City to retain all their ammunition. Keep at least one hundred rounds for each gun. A guard should be kept out at least two miles from town.

Lieutenant Sawyers came to camp yesterday and states that nine whites had been killed within fifteen miles of the lake. Sawyers left last night for the scene of the massacre and I shall hear from him in a couple of days.

Yours truly,

A. J. Millard, Com. S. C. Cav.

In the meantime, the settlers about Spirit Lake had gathered at the courthouse for protection. The building was not yet completed, but loose lumber was thrown over the joists to form a floor, the doors and windows were barricaded as well as possible, and while some slept others stood guard. This was the situation there, when Sawyers' cavalry arrived. After a consultation, it was decided that the settlers should return to their homes, while the soldiers kept watch for the coming of the savages. It was also decided to build a stockade about the courthouse in which all could assemble upon a signal of danger. Prescott's sawmill at Okoboji Grove was in good condition and the mill yard was full of logs. Both mill and logs were requisitioned. Planks twelve feet long and from four to five inches thick were cut and taken to the courthouse. While some were operating the sawmill, others dug



a trench about three feet deep around the courthouse. As the planks arrived, they were set on end in the trench, the dirt firmly packed around the foot, and a piece of timber pinned along the top for greater strength. Portholes were then cut and in a short time the "fort" was ready for an assault. It was occupied by United States troops until July, 1865.

At Estherville, the people gathered at the schoolhouse and organized for defense. That building was used for barracks, hospital and soldiers' quarters, as well as a refuge in case of attack. At night the floor was literally covered with citizens of all ages, classes, sex and nationalities.

In the spring of 1863, the Sioux City Cavalry were ordered to rendezvous at their home town, preparatory to starting on an Indian expedition then organizing under the command of Gen. Alfred Sully. They were selected as the General's bodyguard, both as a token of his regard for their good deportment, complete equipment and fine discipline, and because they were so well mounted, each member of the company owning the horse he rode. Lest this statement appear a little overdrawn, General Sully's own words are quoted: "A better drilled or disciplined company than the Sioux City Cavalry can not be found in the regular or volunteer service of the United States."

During the Sully campaign into Dakota Territory, the Sioux City Cavalry participated in the famous battle of White Stone Hill, on September 3, 1863, on which occasion they distinguished themselves by taking 136 prisoners. On their return from the battle to the Missouri River, they were met with an order consolidating them with the Seventh Iowa Cavalry, as Company I. Portions of the regiment were engaged in active Indian service from Northwestern Iowa to Eastern Colorado. On returning to Sioux City, Captain Millard, still at the head of Company I, was assigned by General Sully to command the military headquarters at that place, with a sub-district embracing Northwestern Iowa and Eastern Dakota. That great frontier was faithfully and successfully guarded until the company (formerly the Sioux City Cavalry) was mustered out of service on November 22, 1864. Captain Millard had the honor of driving the first stakes for the building of Fort Sully at the time of the 1863 campaign against the

Sioux, and he also participated in the campaign of 1864, when General Sully's headquarters were at Vermillion. Thereafter, the Captain lived a quiet business life in Sioux City, having performed his military and executive duties with ability and precision, as one of the prominent leaders in defense of the northwestern borders where they were so fearfully menaced by the Sioux.

#### THE SIXTH AND SEVENTH IOWA CAVALRY REGIMENTS.

Although several of the interior counties of Northwestern Iowa, such as Greene and Cerro Gordo, furnished distinct contributions to the Seventh, Tenth and Thirty-second Infantry regiments, and their men participated in many of the important battles and campaigns of Missouri, Mississippi and the Southwest, there was hardly a regiment which was sent forward to fight the Confederates which was unrepresented by a good, plucky Hawkeye. Even the fathers of the boys who had sent their sons to the front in the Civil war, and then formed the Thirty-seventh, or Gray-Beard Regiment, had large quotas from Northwestern Iowa and were proud to be sent where their years and their strength could be of service to the Union cause.

But the man-strength of Northwestern Iowa was largely poured into the fine cavalry commands organized to protect the northern and western frontiers, whether in defensive or offensive operations. As the war progressed and spread over the nation east of the Rocky Mountains, even the warfare against the Sioux was conducted by the Federal authorities, and the Sixth and Seventh Iowa Cavalry regiments became sturdy spokes in the military organizations which revolved around the wily Indians and finally crushed them at their own game of maneuvers and surprises.

The Sixth Iowa Cavalry was recruited from the State at large, with a large contingent from the northwestern counties, in 1862-63. The Government organized two armies on the northern frontier, after the Minnesota massacres, to punish the Sioux and protect the settlers. One of these armies was to move up the east side of the Missouri River and the other, to march west in Minnesota to the Indian country, the two to form a junction at some point on the Missouri. The

army with headquarters at Sioux City was in command of Gen. John Cook, and started thence in March, 1863, the Sixth in command of Col. David S. Wilson, of Dubuque. The regiment reached Camp Cook, Dakota, in the following month, and in April and May two of the battalions moved forward to Fort Randall where they reënforced the garrison there, which was threatened by the Indians. The Sioux were driven away, a detachment of cavalry left to pursue them, and headquarters for the general campaign established at Fort Pierre, on the Missouri River, south of the central part of the territory and some distance below the mouth of the Little Cheyenne River. In June, General Cook was relieved of his departmental command, and Gen. Alfred Sully succeeded him. By August, an army of 2,500 men had collected at Fort Pierre ready to move against the enemy, and on the 13th of that month its northern movement commenced. The command then under General Sully consisted of the Sixth Iowa Cavalry, Second Nebraska Cavalry, several companies of the Seventh Iowa Cavalry (including Company I, formerly the Sioux City Cavalry), and the Prairie Battery of four guns. The army moved rapidly up the east bank of the Missouri to the mouth of the Little Cheyenne River and then halted to await the arrival of a steamer with supplies. The sick and the baggage were sent by steamer back to Fort Pierre.

#### THE BATTLE OF WHITE STONE HILL.

On the 21st of August, 1863, about a week from the time the march up the Missouri Valley commenced, the army was again on the move. A few days afterward scouting parties saw various bands of Indians bringing in their squaws and children, and on the 3d of September the army went into camp on the shores of a lake, as more numerous signs of Indian occupancy and movements had been discovered. Scouts were at once sent out to thoroughly examine the country, and the fierce battle of White Stone Hill was soon in full swing. Benjamin F. Gue describes it, as well as the remainder of the regiment's record, in his State history, as follows: "One battalion of the Sixth Iowa, three hundred men under Major House, came upon an encampment of more than four hundred lodges of warriors. Major House at once despatched



a messenger to General Sully and endeavored to detain the Indians without bringing on a battle. Upon the arrival of the messenger, the bugles were sounded and the men mounted, except four companies left to guard the train. The command was formed in the following order: The Second Nebraska on the right, the Sixth Iowa on the left, one company of the Seventh (Sioux City Cavalry) and the battery in the center.

"The command 'forward' was given and, starting at full gallop, in less than an hour the Indian camp was reached. The Indians had formed their line of battle so skilfully that they could only be dislodged by a charge. Although this was the first battle most of the men had ever seen, there was no flinching; they moved steadily forward and in less than half an hour the Indians were in full retreat. They were armed with rifles, shot guns, bows and arrows, and fought for a time with great courage and desperation. Most of the cavalry, by order of General Sully, dismounted and fought with rifles until the Indians were dislodged, when they mounted their horses and joined in the pursuit. Night coming on, most of the Indians succeeded in making their escape. The following day, General Sully sent out strong parties in a vain effort to overtake and capture the fleeing Indians, but they had got beyond his reach.

"The loss to our army was twenty killed and thirty-eight wounded. The loss of the Indians was estimated at 150 killed and wounded, while thirty-two warriors were captured, as well as a great amount of provisions and many ponies. The Sixth Cavalry which was in the thickest of the fight, lost twelve men killed (among whom was Lieut. T. J. Leavitt) and ten wounded. The bodies of our men were buried upon a knoll near a small lake at the foot of White Stone Hill, from which the battle takes its name.

"On the 11th of September, the army was back at Fort Pierre. In obedience to orders, General Sully selected a site and erected a log fort. The buildings had accommodations for five companies of soldiers. Before they were completed, General Sully returned to Sioux City with most of his troops, leaving Lieutenant Colonel Pollock in command with five companies of his regiment to complete the fort. It was named

Fort Sully, and was situated about 300 miles northwest of Sioux City.

“In the spring (1864), General Sully returned with a brigade to prosecute another campaign against the Indians. His army now consisted of eleven companies of the Sixth Iowa Cavalry under Lieutenant Colonel Pollock (Colonel Wilson having resigned); three companies of the Seventh Iowa Cavalry (including the Sioux City Cavalry); a battalion of Minnesota cavalry; two companies of Dakota cavalry; a battery of four guns and howitzers, and a company of scouts under Capt. Nathaniel Pope. The whole command numbered about 1,800 men.

“On the 26th of June, the army began a march of two hundred miles up the river, where a military post was erected and named Fort Rice. While here, a brigade, which had marched from Minnesota, joined the expedition. On the 29th, the army resumed its march northward, leaving a detachment of infantry to finish the fort. Following a divide between the Big Cannon Ball and Heart rivers, the expedition moved on toward the Yellowstone. The passage through the Bad Lands was attended with great difficulties, owing to the natural obstructions which sheltered and concealed the movements of the Indians. Dismounting his cavalry, General Sully moved cautiously forward, driving the Indians from their lurking places, often meeting with determined resistance. The Yellowstone was reached on the 12th of August, where two small steamers were waiting with supplies for the army.

“With the assistance of the steamers, the army with its trains was able to cross the river on the 13th and moved on toward Fort Union, a trading post on the Missouri River on the border of the Crow Indian country. The expedition then proceeded westward to Fort Berthold, where one company of the Sixth Iowa was left to garrison the post. The march was continued to Dog Buttes on the Mouse River in search of hostile Indians, but none were found, and the army marched back reaching Fort Rice on the 9th of September. Here the active campaign for the summer (1864) ended. Bands of Indians were often seen in the vicinity for several weeks, and

while pursuing a party one day Sergeant Murray, of the Sixth Iowa, was killed.

“The main army started on its return march toward Sioux City on the last of September, leaving a battalion of the Sixth Iowa at Fort Rice to garrison the post. The remainder of the regiment was quartered at Fort Randall, Sioux City, Yankton, the Sioux and Winnebago Agency and at Fort Berthold for the winter. The Indians had been so thoroughly overawed by the march of the army through their country that they made no trouble the next year (1865). No further hostilities being anticipated, orders were issued to disband the Sixth Cavalry, and it was accordingly mustered out at Sioux City, on the 17th of October, 1865.”

The military activities of the Seventh Iowa Cavalry, after its participation in the second Sully campaign of 1864, covered a wide range of country in Nebraska, Kansas, Dakota and Colorado. The greatest loss of the regiment was sustained at Julesburg, Colorado, on the 7th of January, 1865. At that time, Capt. G. W. O'Brien, with Company F, was escorting a train, and a large body of Indians made an all-day attack upon it. Col. Samuel W. Summers was with the company and directed the defense. At one time, he was besieged on a ranch, while Captain O'Brien brought up artillery and opened up on the Indians, who were finally driven off with heavy loss. Colonel Summers shot one of the chiefs with his revolver and fifty-five warriors were killed during the fight. Colonel Summers was mustered out of the service on the 31st of January, 1865. In the following May, Maj. H. H. Heath was promoted to colonel and soon after attained the rank of brevet brigadier general. He was placed in command of a sub-district with headquarters at Fort Kearney, and did fine service in that region in subduing the hostile Indians. General Heath was an intrepid officer and before he joined the Seventh had been wounded in a brilliant charge against Confederates at Clear Creek, Missouri. Major O'Brien also became colonel of the regiment and subsequently brevet brigadier general. The Seventh Iowa Cavalry, which had as its star unit the Sioux City company under Capt. A. J. Millard, graduated several able officers. The regiment was



finally mustered out of service at Leavenworth, Kansas, on the 17th of May, 1866.

#### NORTHERN BORDER BRIGADE.

It required the New Ulm (Minn.) massacre to thoroughly stir the public authorities of Iowa to the necessity of protecting its northern and northwestern borders from like outrages. The Minute Men, the Frontier Guards and the Sioux City Cavalry had all been organized, under State authority, to guard the northwestern borderland largely under the stimulus of apprehension caused by scattered Indian murders and disturbances. But when the terrible Sioux came down upon the sister State with all the outward marks of concerted rage and slaughter, a united and broader front was demanded of the Iowa whites. The Sioux City Cavalry was then the only well organized military body upon which the settlers of Northwestern Iowa could depend and a company of a hundred horsemen, however brave and efficient they might be, could neither patrol such a vast territory nor awe such intrepid warriors as then threatened that portion of the State.

On the 29th of August, 1862, about ten days after the Indian outbreak in Minnesota and when the startling nature of the Sioux incursion had been realized by Governor Kirkwood, S. R. Ingham, a leading citizen of Des Moines, was appointed by the chief executive as a special agent to investigate conditions on the border. Mr. Ingham was instructed to proceed to Fort Dodge, where he would find arms and ammunition for the protection of the inhabitants of the northwestern frontier, and he had been furnished with funds to the amount of \$1,000. He was also advised to communicate with Captain Millard, of the Sioux City Cavalry. Immediately upon receipt of this commission, Mr. Ingham visited Webster, Humboldt, Kossuth, Palo Alto, Emmet and Dickinson counties, and "found many of the inhabitants in a high state of excitement and laboring under constant fear of an attack by the Indians. He also ascertained that quite a number of families had left, or were preparing to leave, for the more thickly settled portions of the State. In Emmet

and Kossuth counties, Mr. Ingham called the settlers together and learned that they wished a small force of mounted men, who were familiar with the country and with the habits of the Indians, rather than young and inexperienced men from the more central portions of the State. A force of forty such men was then raised from Emmet, Kossuth, Humboldt and Palo Alto counties, mustered in and armed. This force afterward became Company A, of the Northern Border Brigade. Mr. Ingham then went to Spirit Lake, where he found Lieutenant Sawyers' detachment of the Sioux City Cavalry.

While Mr. Ingham was thus engaged, the Legislature convened in special session and passed a bill authorizing Governor Kirkwood to raise a volunteer force of mounted Iowa men of not less than 500, to be stationed at the most convenient points to the northwestern borders of the State. On September 10th, the day after it was approved, as well as a resolution calling upon the General Government for aid, Mr. Ingham made his preliminary report and was authorized to superintend the organization of the Northern Border Brigade. It was to consist of five companies—one already stationed at Chain Lakes and Estherville, and four others to be raised at Sioux City, Denison, Fort Dodge and Webster City. Each man was to furnish his own horse, subsistence and forage to be provided by the State, and the pay would be the same as that allowed for like service by the United States.

Lieut. James A. Sawyers, of the Sioux City Cavalry, was elected lieutenant colonel and active commanding officer of the brigade in November, 1862. The original Northern Border Brigade consisted, as stated, of five companies. Company A was organized before the passage of the legislative bill, while S. R. Ingham was in the field. Its captain, W. H. Ingham, established his headquarters at Estherville, with a detachment at Chain Lakes. Company B and the greater part of Company C came from Webster County; Company D, from Crawford, and Company E from Woodbury. As fast as the companies were raised, they were mustered in for nine months, unless sooner discharged by S. R. Ingham, who ordered blockhouses and stockades to be erected at Correctionville, Cherokee, Peterson, Estherville and Chain Lakes.

## FORT DEFIANCE, ESTHERVILLE.

Of these frontier fortifications which stretched along the northwestern corner of the State from Sioux City to Chain Lakes, the most elaborate was that at Estherville, the headquarters of Capt. W. H. Ingham, Company A. As soon as the orders came to erect the stockade, the captain took possession of the sawmill at Estherville, and sent men out to cut logs without asking permission of the owners of the land, or without even inquiring who the owner was. Teams were pressed into the service to haul the logs to the mill and the lumber to the site of the fort (called Defiance), which was one block west and three blocks south of the southwest corner of the public square. Because of his war methods, some of the citizens of the Estherville neighborhood dubbed Captain Ingham the Dictator.

Forty years afterward, Captain Ingham, then a mild-looking, benevolent old gentleman, told the story of the building of Fort Defiance. He had been ordered from Iowa Lake to that point, to take charge of the work, and says (See *Annals of Iowa*, Vol. V, pages 498 and 499): "Here I found Lieutenant Coverdale and men occupying the schoolhouse for their quarters, which had already been stockaded by the citizens with two-inch planks, with stabling inside the inclosure for their horses. While looking about for a site for the works, as contemplated in the order, Robert E. Ridley generously offered to donate for this purpose lots 1, 2 and 3, block 59, as shown by the town plat. As this site was satisfactory to all parties concerned, his offer was accepted, when he and his wife, Esther, after whom the town of Estherville takes its name, conveyed them to the State free of charge. It will be noticed in the report (S. R. Ingham's) that Company B, Capt. William Williams (our old-time Major Williams, of Fort Dodge), was ordered to report at Iowa Lake and complete the works there. On their arrival, Lieutenant McKnight and men came to Estherville, when for the first time the members of Company A were all brought together for roll call.

"The people at Estherville manifested much interest in the construction of the works and gave encouragement to the



company in many ways. As this was the only post with a sawmill and plenty of timber near by, the works were laid out on rather a more extensive plan than any of the other posts on the line. Then the larger settlements on the West branch of the Des Moines would necessarily require this, in case there should be any occasion for the settlers to make use of them thereafter as a place of refuge. From now on, we were kept busy, as well as the other companies, in getting out material for their respective works.

“In addition to this, there were the camp duties, drilling, scouting, target practice, and the keeping up of communication between the different posts and the United States forces at Fairmont, Minn., and at Sioux City. Now and then government dispatches were passed along the line, and whenever of great importance they were sent through from post to post on limited time. This service came to be known as the Pony Express. A part of the brigade was supplied with Austrian rifles from General Fremont’s famous purchase. While they were not the best, they were probably the best that could be obtained at that time. Many of the cartridges were defective, so that when discharged it became a question as to the direction in which they were likely to do the most harm, as many of the boys will remember.

“It was the latter part of November before Lieutenant Colonel Sawyers made his first inspection of the several posts on the line, and reported to Governor Kirkwood under date of December 15, 1862.”

The stockade of Fort Defiance was built of planks four inches thick and inclosed an area which was about one hundred and thirty feet square. At one corner and extending six feet beyond the stockade were the barracks, a building fifty-two feet in length and eighteen feet in width, made of timbers eight inches thick. The office and commissary room at another corner was a building fourteen by thirty-two feet in dimensions, built in much the same manner as the barracks. The entire south side of the enclosure was formed by a barn, the sides of which were covered by boards an inch thick, while the ends were built of four-inch planks. The exposed side of the barn was protected by a sod wall, five feet at its base and two feet wide on top, seven and one-half feet high.



FORT DEFIANCE, ESTHERVILLE





Within the stockade was a guardhouse, a well furnishing an abundance of excellent water, and a flagstaff. Fort Defiance was occupied by troops until late in the fall of 1863, when General Sully and his commands commenced to drive the bulk of the fighting Sioux into and through Dakota and crush their strength as "bad Indians." The Estherville structure was afterward used as a residence for some time, and it was torn down or moved away in 1876.

The preparations for defense at other points were less elaborate than at Estherville, but equally well adapted to repel an Indian attack. The block houses and officers' quarters at Peterson (Clay County), for instance, were built of oak and ash timbers ten inches square, with roofs of soft maple boards. The stockade was constructed of timbers six inches square. In each case the stockade surrounded an area large enough to accommodate a considerable number of settlers with their live stock and wagons.

Says an account of these various measures taken for the "Border Defense in Iowa": "These preparations for defense had the desired effect. Not once did the Indians invade Iowa during this great uprising which left such a trail of death and devastation in Minnesota. Settlers soon began to return to their abandoned homes and a feeling of confidence was restored. This time the Federal Government took energetic measures to punish the hostile Indians, and they were so decisively defeated that they did not again seriously menace the tranquillity of the Iowa frontier."

#### LAST MILITARY FORCE ON THE IOWA BORDER.

Soon after the Northern Border Brigade was mustered out of service (in the late fall of 1863), Company I, Sixth Iowa Cavalry, under command of Captain Wolf, was stationed on the frontier. Captain Wolf made his headquarters at Estherville, and a part of his command was sent to Spirit Lake under Lieut. Benjamin King. In the spring of 1864 Captain Cooper's company of the Seventh Iowa Cavalry relieved Captain Wolf. This company remained but a short time, when Capt. Daniel Eichor came with Company E, Sixth Iowa Cavalry, and continued on duty until the spring

of 1865, when he was succeeded by a detachment of Minnesota troops under Captain Read. This was the last military force stationed along the Iowa border. With the State troops thoroughly prepared to protect the frontiers and the settlers of Northwestern Iowa, and the Government troops invading the Sioux country beyond the Missouri and crushing any considerable forces of the enemy Indians, peace and security again threw their sheltering and developing mantle over the regions lately harassed by the Indians and at one time almost deserted by the panic-stricken whites.



MEMORIAL MONUMENT TO  
THE SOLDIERS OF THE  
CIVIL WAR, ONAWA

## CHAPTER X.

### THEY DID THEIR PART.

IN THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR—VICTIMS OF TYPHOID FEVER—  
THE FIFTY-FIRST REGIMENT OF INFANTRY—THE FORTY-NINTH  
REGIMENT—TROOPS FOR THE MEXICAN BORDER.

Opportunities for accomplishment often make the difference between fame and glory and faithful and inactive readiness. There are thousands of unknown men and women in whose minds and souls have been planted the seeds of great achievement whose lives have never fallen under the germinating sun of opportunity.

So, Northwestern Iowa, and the State at large, held in leash many brave and ready soldiers who were denied that action in battle by which others earned military fame and promotion in Cuba and the Philippines, and over the Mexican border, at a later crisis in national affairs.

#### THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR.

The United States Congress declared war against Spain on the twenty-fifth of April, 1898, because of the unexplained destruction of the battleship "Maine" in the preceding February, while the ship was lying in Havana harbor. The government investigations following that awful affair are matters of historic record. The people of Iowa were stirred to the full extent of their indignation and patriotism, and enthusiastically upheld the action of Congress in standing behind Cuba as a republic independent of Spain.

The states and territories of the United States were called upon to furnish their quotas of troops for the war, and on the 25th of April, the secretary of war sent to Governor Leslie M. Shaw a requisition for three regiments of infantry and two batteries of light artillery. The Governor replied that they would be ready for orders at Camp McKinley, Des



Moines, on the 2d of May, and as a basis of Iowa's quota four regiments of the State National Guard were directed to report there. On the 30th of April, the Governor was notified that the quota of his State had been changed to four regiments of infantry and two batteries of light artillery. On the same day the Second, Third and Fourth regiments of the Iowa National Guard were selected as a basis for the volunteer troops required of the State.

#### VICTIMS OF TYPHOID FEVER.

In May, 1898, the Second Regiment was ordered to New Orleans, its number having been changed to the Fiftieth Iowa Volunteer Infantry, Col. D. V. Jackson commanding. This regiment was sent from New Orleans to a camp that had been established at Jacksonville, Florida. The Iowa soldiers were extremely anxious to be ordered to the seat of war, but so rapidly did events in the field and on the ocean follow one another that the conflict was ended before any of the soldiers of the Fiftieth were ordered to the front. The regiment remained at Jacksonville until the 13th of September, when, the war being ended, it was ordered home. It lost by death, mostly from typhoid fever, thirty-two men, and was mustered out at Des Moines on the 30th of November, 1898.

The Fifty-second Regiment left Des Moines on the 28th of May, and went into camp at Chickamauga Park, Georgia. There it remained until the 28th of August, when it returned to Des Moines and was mustered out of service on the 30th of October, 1898. The losses from sickness were thirty-six men, thirty-one of whom died from typhoid fever.

Thus more than sixty Iowans of these two regiments were victims of typhoid fever. Defective food and unsanitary conditions brought death to these soldiers, who gave of their strength and lives with as much faithfulness and bravery as if they had offered them on long marches and the blood-stirring fields of battle.

#### THE FIFTY-FIRST REGIMENT OF INFANTRY.

The Fifty-first and the Forty-ninth infantry regiments were sent to the fields of hostilities in the Philippines and

Cuba, but of the former only one man was killed in battle and the Forty-ninth was never engaged with Spanish troops. The Fifty-first Regiment left Des Moines on the 5th of June for San Francisco, where it remained in camp until July 29th; then embarked on the transport "Pennsylvania" for the Philippine Islands by way of Honolulu. Reaching Manila Bay on December 7, 1898, it participated in the following engagements: Guadalupe Church, March 5, 1899; Quingua, April 23d; East and West Pulilan, April 24th; Calumpit, April 25th; San Tomas, May 4th; San Fernando, on several days; Calulut and Angeles, August 9th. On the 6th of September, 1899, the regiment returned to Manila on its way home, and on the 22d sailed on the transport "Senator," arriving at San Francisco on the 22d of October, 1899. Governor Shaw, Adjutant General Melvin H. Byers, Secretary of State G. L. Dobson and Auditor Frank F. Merriam proceeded to San Francisco to welcome the return of the only Iowa regiment that had seen active service in the war. Its home-coming was fittingly celebrated in San Francisco, and on the 2d of November, 1899, the regiment was mustered out of the service, the members reaching Council Bluffs on the 6th. The losses were one killed, and forty who died of disease.

The Forty-ninth Regiment was, numerically, the first of the Iowa commands to be listed in the war. The last of the Iowa regiments engaged in the War of the Rebellion was numbered Forty-eight, and it was decided by the State authorities to continue thereafter the numbering of the regiments mustered into the Spanish-American war from the State. The Forty-ninth left Des Moines for Jacksonville, on the 11th of June, 1898, and was assigned to the Third Brigade, Second Division, Seventh Army Corps. On the 19th of December, it was sent to Havana, remaining until April, 1899, when it returned to the United States and was mustered out of the service. Although at no time engaged in battle with the enemy, the Forty-ninth Regiment had the satisfaction of participating in the ceremonies attending the evacuation of Havana by the Spaniards on January 1, 1899. Its losses were fifty-four men from disease.

Thus nearly 160 Iowa men gave their lives to their country's cause in the Spanish-American war. Besides these four

regiments, the State raised two batteries of light artillery, fifty men for service in the Signal Corps and a company of colored immunes, but, as stated, only two of its regiments of infantry reached the fighting fronts. What proportion of the personnel of these Iowa commands was furnished by the northwestern counties, it is impossible to estimate, although it is probable that more men from that section of Iowa joined the Fifty-first than any other regiment.

#### TROOPS FOR THE MEXICAN BORDER.

Mexico was torn by contending factions for several years after the resignation of Diaz as its president. The revolutions culminated in 1915-16, when American lives and American property were in continual danger of destruction. In June, 1916, President Wilson called out State troops for border service, and Iowa responded by sending 4,500 national guardsmen to the outskirts of the danger zone in Northern Mexico. The First Iowa Brigade, under command of Gen. Hubert A. Allen, consisted of three regiments of infantry, one battalion of artillery, one squadron of cavalry, one company of engineers, sanitary detachments, a field hospital and an ambulance company.

Nearly a month was spent at Camp Dodge in drilling and conditioning the men, and mustering the organizations into Federal service. In mid-summer began the movement toward the border. The Iowa troops went into camp amid the brush and cacti near Brownsville, Texas, on the Mexican border. Before the summer was over, the Iowa camp site was "the neatest, cleanest and best arranged camp in the entire valley." The men proved themselves true soldiers, stood high in competition with troops from other states, and often received special recognition from inspecting officers. Eight deaths occurred among the men of the brigade, all of which were the result of accidents. The military authorities had been taught some lessons in the Spanish-American war, and the deaths among the troops from disease had been cut to a minimum.

Again, it is impossible to closely apply the subject to Northwestern Iowa, although the story, as here given, will strike hundreds in that section of the State who eagerly ac-



accompanied the Iowa Brigade to, but not into, the promised land, with the ambition to do their part in "getting Villa." In a word, Iowa soldiers have always done their part, when their country either called them to prepare for action and be patient, or to be all ready and then advance bravely to the fray. Either course proves the true soldier.



## CHAPTER XI.

### NORTHWESTERN IOWA IN THE WORLD WAR.

IOWA PROMPTLY SUPPORTS CONGRESS—ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTY-EIGHTH U. S. REGIMENT OFF FOR FRANCE—STATE FLAG PRESENTED TO THE "OLD THIRD"—IDENTITY OF STATE REGIMENTS LOST—PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE—AT THE BATTLE FRONT—SOME HEROES OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—GERMANS CHECKED AT THE MARNE—LIEUTENANT LAURENS C. SHULL—AMERICAN ARMY DRIVES GERMANS BEYOND THE MEUSE—CLEARING THE ARGONNE FOREST OF GERMANS—IOWA TROOPS SEIZE THE HEIGHTS OF SEDAN—NORTHWESTERN IOWA SOLDIERS HONORED—THE GOLD STARS FROM TWENTY COUNTIES—NORTHWESTERN IOWA IN WELFARE WORK.

As one of the great food-producing states of the nation and a commonwealth of sturdy men and women, when the United States was called to do her part in fighting the World war for cosmopolitan democracy, Iowa was in a position to make a great pledge toward that end. She was no longer a border State, but a bright star of the Middle Western constellation, and her response to the presidential and congressional call to concerted action was in accord with her prosperity and virility.

#### IOWA PROMPTLY SUPPORTS CONGRESS.

On April 6, 1917, Congress declared that a state of war existed between the United States of America and the "imperial German government." War was not declared against Germany, but it already existed in the continued acts of savage and uncivilized aggression by an imperial government before whom its people were driven as puppets. The taking up of such a cause was worthy of the United States and one of its greatest units. On the very day that such a war was declared a fact, Senate Joint Resolution No. 12 was introduced into the Iowa Legislature, pledging all the resources of the State to carry on the war; and even before war had been



declared as existent, a joint resolution had been approved pledging support to the president in his stand for the preservation of national rights and dignity. To back up these pledges, a series of military measures was enacted and a total of \$1,440,000 appropriated for military purposes.

THE ONE HUNDRED SIXTY-EIGHTH U. S. REGIMENT OFF  
FOR FRANCE.

When the United States entered the war, it was anticipated that the military organizations sent to the front, or being prepared for action, would preserve their State identity. For several years the General Assembly, with the coöperation of the State department of the Daughters of the American Revolution, had been endeavoring to secure a design for a State flag to be borne by the several regimental units. It was hoped that the regimental colors might be secured in time for presentation to the three Iowa National Guard units, while they were encamped at Camp Dodge, Des Moines. But on account of various delays, the flags could not be furnished by the time agreed upon and the Iowa troops left the State without the promised banners—the Third Iowa Infantry for France as the One Hundred Sixty-eighth United States Infantry of the American Expeditionary Forces, and the remaining units for Camp Cody, Deming, New Mexico.

STATE FLAG PRESENTED TO THE "OLD THIRD."

As finally designed by Mrs. Dixie C. Gebhardt, of Knoxville, State regent of the Iowa Society of the Daughters of the American Revolution, the flag bore three vertical stripes—blue, white and red. They were arranged to resemble the French flag, as suggestive of the period when Iowa was a part of Louisiana and under the dominion of France. At the same time the colors are those of the American flag. The eagle bearing a scrolled motto and occupying the center of the broad white central field is symbolic of the relation of Iowa to the Federal Government, while the combination of the eagle and the motto is derived from the State seal. The motto carried by the floating scroll is as follows: "Our Liberties We Prize and Our Rights We Will Maintain."

On October 30, 1917, the silk regimental banner for the Third Iowa was presented to Governor William L. Harding and Adjutant General Guy E. Logan, and then forwarded to the regiment, which at that time was at Camp Mills. Unfortunately the flag arrived too late to be presented before the regiment sailed, and it was not until January 1, 1918, that "somewhere in France" the banner from the home state was formally unfurled by the officers of the first Iowa troops to serve overseas. The presentation was made by Major E. C. Worthington and the gift was accepted by Colonel E. R. Bennett.

In his letter to Mrs. Gebhardt acknowledging the receipt of the flag, Colonel Bennett wrote: "We will ever prize the flag and do our best to see that no dishonor comes to it; above all, we will try and uphold the glory of the State of Iowa, which we represent in this war as the only volunteer infantry regiment from the State."

In another letter describing the event, Colonel Bennett declared that those present on that occasion felt that no more fitting place could be found for the presentation of the flag provided by the Iowa Daughters of the American Revolution than France, the country which proved such a loyal, helpful ally in the fight for American independence. "Therefore," continued Colonel Bennett, "in this small, ancient village of France, on New Year's Day, far from the land we love so well and whose cause we represent in this great war, I had the pleasure of receiving this flag which is emblematic of the loyalty and devotion of the ladies of the Iowa Daughters of the American Revolution."

#### IDENTITY OF STATE REGIMENTS LOST

The old Third Iowa National Guard became the One Hundred and Sixty-eighth Regiment of the National Army and was assigned to the Forty-second, or famous Rainbow Division. It constituted one-fourth of the infantry strength of the division. It was first commanded by Colonel Bennett, formerly head of the Third, who was succeeded by Colonel Matthew A. Tinley, its commander at the front. It was more fortunate than many other units of the Rainbow Division in retaining its strong personnel of Iowa men; there-

fore the State flag which it treasured was especially appropriate at the battle fronts in France.

Seven other silken flags were sent to the Iowa troops at Camp Cody, New Mexico, and General H. A. Allen, in command of the Sixty-seventh Brigade there, wrote on February 19, 1918, that they had been received that day, adding: "You remember the celebrated saying of Lord Nelson that 'England expects every man to do his duty.' We know that the people of Iowa expect us to do our whole duty, and it is our earnest prayer that we may be able to live up to these expectations. Please convey to the D. A. R. the thanks of the various Iowa organizations at Camp Cody for their interest and well wishes and prayers for the beautiful banners which they have sent to us."

The One Hundred and Sixty-eighth Regiment, the immediate successor of the Third Iowa National Guard, was the only large distinct unit of the Hawkeye State which served abroad. The regiments in the Federal service were numbered consecutively, irrespective of the State from which even a majority of the men were drawn. At the commencement of the war, the National Guard units which were distinctly State organizations were frequently filled up by selected men from other States, and as the war progressed and the troops were sent to the front, more and more were the State lines obliterated. The United States soon realized that the nation was participating in a World war, and, as a rule, the American soldier received the honor of his bravery irrespective of the accident of his resident State. The days of the Civil war were long past, when regiments and even companies had their battle flags, around which the heat of the conflict usually rages and which to this day are fondly preserved in thousands of public places.

#### PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE.

Besides the distinctive One Hundred Sixty-eighth Infantry, Iowa organized an ammunition train, two engineering units, a signal corps, a medical and dental reserve, a field hospital corps and two ambulance units—one from the State College at Ames and one from the State University. Iowa



was allowed to send 800 men to the first Reserve Officers Training Camp at Fort Snelling. There were 2,000 applicants for selection. In the second camp Iowa's quota was 355 men.

The policy of choosing an army by selective draft received little opposition in Iowa. The state's quota for the first draft of the National Army was 12,749. These men, together with those from Minnesota, North Dakota and the western half of Illinois were trained at Camp Dodge.

#### AT THE BATTLE FRONT.

"But with all her resources," says Cyrenus Cole in his Iowa History, "it was not until the spring and summer of 1918 that the American troops began to count on the frontiers of the war. The miracle of transporting 2,000,000 men through seas imperiled by submarines and mines was accomplished; which was the greatest miracle of the war and one of the greatest in the history of the world. When the first American troops were rushed to the front, France stood with her back to Paris, while the Germans were again driving their wedges across the Marne, and the British stood with their backs to the channel.

"The Americans entered the war at the point nearest Paris. They were not many, but they were determined. They faced the trained shock troops of the Germans. Some Frenchmen called to them, 'Don't go in that direction. There are machine guns there!'

"'That's where we want to go,' the Americans answered. 'That's where we have come three thousand miles to go.'

"And they went into Belleau Wood. That was the frenzy of courage on ground that American blood has made sacred for all time to come."

Iowa's men, including emphatically those of the One Hundred Sixty-eighth, were in the fighting lines, on the Marne, on the Meuse, in the St. Mihiel salient, in the Argonne forest, before Sedan and before Metz. The home folk were thrilled, as well as saddened, when the news came to the United States that of the first three Americans to die in action in the World war one was Private Merle Hay, of Glidden, Carroll County. It was over the remains of this soldier and his two comrades that France pronounced the gratitude of a nation.

## SOME HEROES OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

The honors of war went to many soldiers of Northwestern Iowa, without respect to branch of service, locality or nationality. All were cosmopolitan Americans, and many were the heroes who never were decorated with the Distinguished Service Cross, or any other outward mark of valor. Those whose official records were published in the book known as "Heroes All," which was endorsed by the War Department, doubtless do not complete the list, as the facts were collated in 1919. An examination of the records as there published is, however, a striking evidence of the wide distribution of the Iowa men among the units fighting at the front. In this comparatively small list, eight regiments of infantry, two machine gun battalions, one ambulance corps and one signal corps were represented.

All these soldiers of Northwestern Iowa received the Distinguished Service Cross, and one of them the additional honor of the oak leaf cluster. By act of July, 1918, Congress created as marks of honor for extraordinary valor and distinguished service in the war what were known as the Cross and Medal. The Distinguished Service Cross was to be presented by the President to any person who, while serving with the Army of the United States after April 6, 1917, should distinguish himself or herself by heroism beyond the call of duty in connection with military operations against the enemy. The medal was awarded to one of either sex who became distinguished by meritorious service to the Government in any duty of great responsibility. As Congress ruled that only one of these marks of honor could be awarded to one person, where additional acts were performed justifying another award, a bar or other suitable device should be conferred. In case of the Distinguished Service Cross, a bronze oak leaf was added, being worn on the ribbon of the cross. No additional insignia were selected for the other medals.

## GERMANS CHECKED AT THE MARNE.

The great German offensive toward the Marne and Paris—known in military records as the Chateau-Thierry offensive—was an advance in force from both east and west

of Rheims. The enemy finally drove a wedge or a spear-head toward Paris, and the American and French battle divisions flattened out the Marne salient, forced the Germans back, saved Paris and won the war. In July, 1918, when these operations were at their height, the Forty-second Division won fame and, with the Thirty-second, was assigned the satisfactory duty of driving the enemy to the Vesle and beyond the danger zone. Elements of the Forty-second Division were in the line east of Rheims, when the German offensive commenced on July 15th, and held their ground unflinchingly. Another American division held the Marne opposite Chateau-Thierry. One regiment of the Third Division held back two German divisions and prevented them from crossing the river by assailing them in three directions. There were attacks and counter-attacks on both sides, but the Germans were steadily pressed back and by the 19th of July were retiring past the Chateau-Thierry-Soissons road. On the 24th, after the enemy had fallen back to the Foret de Fere, the balance of the Forty-second Division, which had been brought over from the Champagne, relieved the Twenty-sixth and fought its way through the forest, overwhelming the nests of machine guns in its path. By the 27th of July, it had reached the Ourcq, and soon afterward, with the Thirty-second Division, was assigned the task of conquering the heights beyond Cierges. The Forty-second captured Sergy and the division with which it was cooperating, Hill 230. Both American divisions then joined in the pursuit of the enemy to the Vesle; and thus the operation of reducing the Marne salient was finished. The movements of these divisions on the Vesle were under the Third Army Corps, Maj.-Gen. Robert L. Bullard commanding.

The wiping out of the Marne salient, which has been designated as "the spear pointed at the heart of Paris," was one of the great operations of the war in which the One Hundred Sixty-eighth Regiment and other lesser units of Iowa men had the honor of participating. Reverting more particularly to Northwestern Iowa, at least three of its sons were decorated for unusual heroism.

F. E. Anderson, Sioux City, a sergeant of Company G, One Hundred Eleventh Infantry, in an engagement near



Gregancy, on July 16, 1918, was told by a runner that an enemy patrol had captured two ambulances bearing American wounded. Sergeant Anderson at once organized a relief party, recovered the ambulances, routed the Germans and brought the wounded into the American lines.

Claude V. Hart, sergeant in Company M, One Hundred Sixty-eighth Infantry, was a Cherokee man, and was honored with the Distinguished Service Cross because of heroism near Sergy in the capture of that village immediately preceding the pursuit of the Germans toward the River Vesle, on July 28, 1918. Coolly and with utter disregard of danger, he led his platoon against the enemy machine gun emplacements. Four of the Germans were captured, with two machine guns, which were turned on the retreating enemy and kept in continuous operation until Hart was severely wounded. This is but one instance of the fierce fight which was waged around Sergy before it was taken.

#### LIEUT. LAURENS C. SHULL.

Laurens C. Shull was one of the brilliant, virile young men of Northwestern Iowa, who stood as a representative of the ideal American type, and his death at the front was deeply deplored. So much was he admired and respected that his name is attached to a Sioux City Post of Veterans of Foreign Wars (No. 580). He was a native of that city, born in 1894, and was an honor graduate of the Sioux City High School. He afterward attended the University of Chicago, and continued not only his athletic prominence in college which had marked his high school record, but was interested in Y. M. C. A. and other uplifting work throughout. At the conclusion of his university training in 1916 he became vice president of a bank at Woodward, Dallas County, Iowa, where he remained until he entered the service. He was one of the first to be called overseas as second lieutenant of Company G, Twenty-sixth Infantry. On the 19th of July, 1918, while in action near Soissons, he led his platoon against the enemy in two attacks against machine gun nests and was badly wounded in a third rush. Notwithstanding, he advanced and captured the enemy's position. For this act of

valor he was awarded the Distinguished Service Cross. He died of his wounds on the 5th of August. Lieutenant Shull not only received this distinctive honor, but his name was placed on the memorial tablet of the University of Illinois, the only student of a rival school (the University of Chicago) to be thus honored. His name also appears on the First Division memorial tablet, dedicated at Washington several years after the conclusion of the World war.

#### AMERICAN ARMY DRIVES GERMANS BEYOND THE MEUSE.

The First, Forty-second and Eighty-ninth divisions formed the Third Corps of the First American Army, as organized in August, 1918, under the personal command of Gen. John J. Pershing. In the following month the great movement toward Metz and Sedan was commenced, which taught the enemy the fresh and irresistible energy and dash of the Americans whom they had so despised out of action. Their first operations were against the St. Mihiel salient, which had long been contemplated. On August 30th, Pershing's army of 600,000 men took over as a permanent sector of the allies' line, the front extending from a point just east of the Moselle west through St. Mihiel, and thence north to a point opposite Verdun. The American sector was afterward extended across the Meuse to the western edge of the Argonne forest. This American army included the Second Colonial French, which held the point of the St. Mihiel salient, and the Seventeenth French Corps, which occupied the heights above Verdun. The general advance against the salient made by seven divisions (including the First and Forty-second) was begun at five o'clock on the morning of September 12, 1918, after four hours of artillery preparation. Assisted by tanks, wire cutters, torpedo throwers and the aviation forces of the allies, the Americans cut through successive bands of barbed wire and supporting trenches, blotted out the salient, straightened the line of battle and, within the day, were established in a position to threaten Metz. Their casualties of 7,000 men were mostly light. On the other hand, they had taken 16,000 prisoners, more than 440 guns and a great quantity of material, and released the inhabitants of many villages from enemy domination.

Considered from the standpoint of great military movements, the obliteration of the St. Mihiel salient was accomplished with a small number of casualties, although thousands of deeds of heroism were enacted. One of them is credited to Herman Woll, a private of Ambulance Company No. 357 and a resident of Estherville. Near Vilcey-sur-Trey, on September 12th, Woll, with another soldier, left the shelter of the woods and went forward to rescue a wounded comrade in arms, who had fallen on a hill under continuous machine gun and shell fire. While the two men were conveying him to the American lines on a litter he was again wounded. The litter was also struck twice with machine gun bullets, but he was finally conveyed to safety. Woll, who had taken the initiative in the rescue, was decorated with the Cross.

On the day after the Americans had taken the St. Mihiel salient, the army was on the move toward the area back of the line between the Meuse River and the western edge of the forest of Argonne. The right flank of the army was protected by the Meuse, the left embraced the Argonne forest. In the night of September 25th, the Americans quietly replaced the thin French line, which had long been inactive, and on the following morning began a furious attack, which drove through all the barbed wire entanglements and machine gun nests of the first-line defenses. On the 27th and 28th, they pushed back several reserve divisions, supported by an increasing volume of machine gun and artillery fire, and from the latter date until October 4th, maintained the offensive by clearing the dense woods of German snipers and nests of machine gunners. The warfare in the Argonne forest was a constant succession of face-to-face and hand-to-hand struggles between an enemy familiar with every inch of ground and well protected, but having a wholesome dread of the American bullet and bayonet, and troops entirely unfamiliar with the terrain. This may be said to have been the first phase of the Meuse-Argonne offensive, by which the flank of the main army, which rested on the Argonne forest, was protected. A number of villages had been recaptured, 10,000 prisoners taken and the enemy forced into the open.

Northwestern Iowa troops were repeatedly in action during the fierce conflicts in the dark Argonne forest and around



the villages of the region adjacent. A number of them were decorated with the Distinguished Service Cross for their heroism. Typical cases are those given below.

On September 26, 1918, Sergeant A. I. Clark, of Sioux City, serving in Company C, Thirty-ninth Infantry, near Fresnes, found that his platoon was unable to advance in the face of an intense machine gun fire. He decided to attack the nest himself and, firing a rifle grenade into it, forced the surrender of the gunners. He then advanced upon another machine gun outfit, and altogether captured seven Germans. Then falling back, because of a rear fire, Sergeant Clark reorganized his platoon and led it successfully against 75 of the enemy.

On the same day, Edwin D. Bramble, a private in Headquarters Company, One Hundred Second Infantry, whose home town was Mapleton, voluntarily exposed himself to violent artillery bombardment at Marcheville, in order to repair the threatened telephone lines and maintain communication. While so engaged he was seriously wounded.

Three days later, on the 29th of September, near Bellcourt, Harold A. Hudson, a resident of Estherville and a first class sergeant of Company C, One Hundred Fifth Signal Battalion, with a number of other members of a signal detachment, was wounded by shell fire while going through the enemy's counter barrage to the front line. Despite his own injuries, Sergeant Hudson administered first aid to his comrades, then extended the telephone line to the advance message center and, with his men, maintained and operated it.

#### CLEARING THE ARGONNE FOREST OF GERMANS.

The First, Forty-second and other divisions in which the men of Northwestern Iowa were fighting performed a grim task in sweeping the Argonne forest of Germans, so that Pershing's army could more readily advance toward Sedan. This was accomplished by almost continual conflicts at close quarters from October 4th to the 10th of that month. The first advance was for over two miles along the irregular valley of the Aire River and in the wooded hills of the Argonne that bordered it. On the 3rd of October, the Second Division,

operating with the Fourth French Army, reached Medeah Farm on the road to Blanc Mont, where 1,000 prisoners were captured and some 500 casualties suffered. Fleville was captured farther up the valley of the Aire on the 9th and although the Americans fought against odds their progress was steady and thousands of prisoners fell into their hands. As stated, by the following day the Argonne forest had been cleared of the enemy.

#### IOWA TROOPS SEIZE THE HEIGHTS OF SEDAN.

General Pershing now rested on his arms long enough to organize a second American army, and its advanced corps pushed northward to Bantheville, steadily pressing the enemy back toward Sedan and the German frontier. On the 6th of November, a division of the First American Corps reached a point on the Meuse opposite Sedan, twenty-five miles from its place of departure. The Americans had fully accomplished their purpose—to cut the enemy's main line of communication and separate his forces. This finishing stroke of the war had been accomplished in about six weeks by twenty American divisions opposed by twice as many enemy divisions. There had been fierce and stubborn fighting all through October, Bantheville being captured on October 24th. By November 7th, both banks of the Meuse had been cleared of the enemy, and two days afterward the Forty-second Division and units of the First seized the heights south of Sedan. On November 11th, at 11 A. M., came the armistice.

#### NORTHWESTERN IOWA SOLDIERS HONORED.

In these final operations of the war, on the battlefields of the south which barred the way of the Germans to Paris, soldiers of Northwestern Iowa also distinguished themselves.

Early in the advance up the valley of the Aire and through the Argonne forest, the Ninth Infantry was in the thick of many of the fiercest fights against the machine gun nests. Several engagements of unusual ferocity were waged in the vicinity of what was known as Medeah Farm. It was in this locality, in the early part of October, that Capt. Hanford

MacNider, of Mason City, won his honors. On the 3d of that month, he volunteered to lead an attacking battalion and led the unit to its final objective. Another attack was made the same day, and subsequently Captain MacNider acted as a runner through heavy artillery and machine gun fire, visiting the lines night and day where the fighting was most severe. Where situations were insecure or uncertain, in the absence of commanding officers, he gave orders to stabilize the soldiers and joined and encouraged forward elements of untried troops. Personally and without special orders, he reconnoitered and uncovered machine gun nests and superintended their destruction. Such voluntary acts of heroism, covering several days, brought him the well-earned Distinguished Service Cross. For the following act, Captain MacNider was awarded the oak leaf cluster: As regimental adjutant, while carrying instructions to the assaulting lines, he found that certain elements could not advance against heavy and concentrated machine gun fire. Running forward in face of this terrific fire, he drove off the crew, captured the gun, and reorganized the assaulting line on the flank.

About the same time, while the American advance was near Charlevaux, Corp. Holger Peterson, of Spencer, and identified with Company C, Three Hundred Eighth Infantry, was leading a scouting party and met an enemy patrol. Upon this occasion, he killed an officer and two soldiers. Peterson was fearless in this volunteer patrol work and was finally killed at the front. He fully earned the Cross.

Carl M. Lange, whose home was at Wall Lake, was a private of Company B, Second Machine Gun Battalion. While near Fleville, on the 5th of October, the first line of his company was held up by machine gun fire from a masked nest in the woods. Lange, with a comrade, made his way through the barrage, entered the woods, cleaned out three of the enemy's guns, killed several gunners and captured twenty prisoners. All the officers of his company were wounded, when he led the small remaining force to its objective. Acts of bravery and efficiency which justly brought him the Distinguished Service Cross.

Corp. Merl Doty, when at home resided in Rockwell City, but at the front was with Company K, One Hundred Seven-



teenth Infantry. His act of heroism was performed near the village of Beaurevoir, on October 6, 1918, and consisted of voluntarily crossing a zone of machine gun fire, and defying the bullets of hidden German snipers, to rescue wounded comrades. The Distinguished Service Cross became his by right, through this act of disinterested valor.

C. C. Schide, of Mason City, was a second lieutenant in the One Hundred Fourteenth Infantry, and on October 12th, while in action near Bois d'Ormont leading his platoon over open ground, was severely wounded. Notwithstanding which, and while subject to heavy artillery and machine gun fire, he remained at the head of his men until he received a second wound and was taken from the field. He also earned the Distinguished Service Cross, which he afterward received.

E. A. Hoffman, a private of Company C, Three Hundred Forty-first Machine Gun Battalion, was listed among the heroes because of his brave service to his wounded comrades. On the 24th of October, about two weeks before the seizure of the heights of Sedan, in the Bois de Bantheville, Hoffman was severely wounded while ministering to the injuries of twenty-three of his comrades. But he continued his work until he fainted from pain and loss of blood and was sent away himself as a proper subject for relief and treatment. Mr. Hoffman's home town was Denison.

#### THE GOLD STARS OF SIOUX CITY.

As the metropolis of Northwestern Iowa, and one of the most patriotic cities of the state, Sioux City gave freely of her money, her services of men, women and children, and her man-power at the battle front. At the conclusion of the World war was organized the military order known as the Veterans of Foreign Wars, and the first local society in Iowa was the Laurens C. Shull Post No. 580, of Sioux City, which held its first meeting on November 23, 1920. It was organized by Ernest J. Boughey.

Among its first members was Sergeant James Robinson, a most appropriate subject for the post. He had spent twenty-four years of his life fighting in every war he could enter, since that waged by Great Britain with the Boers of South



TABLET IN THE IOWA HISTORICAL, MEMORIAL AND ART  
BUILDING, SIOUX CITY

Erected by the 351st Regiment, 88th Division, United States Army,  
in memory of their dead comrades, 1917-19





Africa. He fought in six wars, revolutions and insurrections, and received a decoration from Queen Victoria for bravery in the Boer war. He received the 1914 Star medal given by King George, the Liberty medal, and a personal citation for extraordinary bravery from Sir Douglas Haig, former commander-in-chief of the British army.

On the 6th of August, 1925, were held the seventh annual memorial services of Shull Post, in honor of the 113 men and one woman from Sioux City who gave their lives in the World war.

Miss Edith G. Becker was a Red Cross nurse. She died of influenza and bronchial pneumonia at Fort Benjamin Harrison, Indiana, December 21, 1918. Miss Becker was the daughter of Mr. and Mrs. Joseph Becker, of Ossian, Iowa.

#### THE GOLD STARS OF TWENTY COUNTIES.

We are indebted to the Iowa Historical, Memorial and Art Department, Des Moines, for the following names of men and women who died in the uniform of our country during the World war. They appeared in the Annals of Iowa for July, 1926.

#### BUENA VISTA COUNTY.

Ammidown, Stanley Cheney, ship cook, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.

Anderson, W. H., private, died at Jefferson Barracks, Missouri.

Antonson, John L., private, killed in action in France.

Bengston, Gottfried, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.

Bingamon, Thomas Alfred, private, killed in action in France.

Brazel, John Francis, third class fireman, died at Portsmouth, Virginia.

Bright, Claude Leander, private, died of wounds in France.

Byam, Oliver Perry, second lieutenant, killed in action in France.

Craig, Jesse, fireman, died at Chelsea, Massachusetts.

Danielson, Herbert E., corporal, died of disease in France.

Domeier, Albert, private, died at Camp Devens, Massachusetts.

Dyvad, Carl Christensen, corporal, killed in action in France.  
Engledow, John H., private, died at Fort Bayard, New Mexico.

Fletcher, Calvin, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Gehring, Louie W., private, killed in action in France.  
Graeber, Frank Fred, private, killed in action in France.  
Greenfield, Leslie Ambrose, private, died of disease in France.  
Grote, Emil, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Hanke, James E., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Haraldson, Carl A., private, killed in action in France.  
Hartman, Edward E., private, died of disease in France.  
Hintz, Charley A., private, died of disease in France.  
Humphrey, John L., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Iiams, Seth G., private, died at Camp Funston, Kansas.  
Jensen, Emil, private, died of disease in France.  
Johnson, Lars, private, died in camp in United States.  
Kaufman, Benjamin, private, killed in action in France.  
Kestel, Henry, private, died of disease in France.  
Kruse, Henry W., private, died at Fort Riley, Kansas.  
Larsen, Nels P., private, killed in action in France.  
Loe, Raymond H., private, died at Camp Forest, Georgia.  
Lydell, David G., private, died of disease in France.  
McFadden, Leo P., private, killed in action in France.  
Martz, George H., private, killed in action in France.  
Mikkelsen, Lewis C., private, killed in action in France.  
Nielson, Charles, private, killed in action in France.  
Olsen, Olaf S., private, died of disease in France.  
Peterson, Marvin Elbert, private, died of disease in France.  
Pierson, Manford C., radio operator, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Plog, Martin Wm. J., private, died of disease in France.  
Redenbaugh, Dannie, private, died of disease in France.  
Redlund, Carl A., private, died in camp in United States.  
Shaeffer, Harold, corporal, killed in action in France.  
Smith, Fred W., private, killed in action in France.  
Smith, Gilbert C., signalman, died at Fort Lyons, Colorado.  
Smith, Peter, private, died of disease in France.  
Sommer, Herbert, private, killed in action in France.  
Taylor, Ilo Ivan, lieutenant, died at Camp Lee, Virginia.  
Thomsen, Otto, private, died of disease in France.

Tolliver, Otis, corporal, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.  
Toombs, Perry Luther, private, killed in action in France.  
Younie, Arthur M., private, died of disease in France.  
Younie, Howard W., private, killed in action in France.

## CALHOUN COUNTY.

Albrecht, Albert H., private, killed in action in France.  
Blair, Estill, private, died in United States camp.  
Brennan, Patrick Joseph, corporal, died at Fort Riley, Kansas.  
Burley, Edgar W., private, died at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia.  
Chappell, Clarence Evert, third class fireman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Dahlke, Charles August, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Drury, Charles W., private, died at Fort Sam Houston, Texas.  
Gaskill, Alva William, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Gidel, Don Otis, second class seaman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Griggs, Paul D., sergeant, killed in action in France.  
Hageman, Virgil F., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Haynes, Vance Galvin, apprentice seaman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Heintz, Clarence, private, killed in action in France.  
Hesser, Joseph Earl, private, killed in action in France.  
Hildreth, Ray Asa, private, died of disease in France.  
Hodds, Niles William, corporal, died of wounds in France.  
Hulett, Ray James, private, killed in action in France.  
Hutchinson, Henry W., private, killed in action in France.  
Kackley, William Hershel, private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
Kennedy, Louie J., private, died of disease in France.  
Liechty, John George, private, died of disease in France.  
Meyer, August W., private, died of disease in France.  
Moore, William, private, died of wounds in France.  
Nagel, August, private, died in France.  
Nimke, Fred, private, killed in action in France.  
Pace, Charles Ira, private, killed in action in France.  
Reed, Earl, private, died at Camp Sheridan, Alabama.



Ripley, Lloyd Seviere, private, killed in action in France.  
 Schuett, Charles P., private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
 Seacoy, John Henry, private, killed in action in France.  
 Sifford, Charles Leslie, private, killed in action in France.  
 Steckelberg, Frank Otto, private, killed in action in France.  
 Stinogel, John Henry, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames,  
 Iowa.  
 Turner, William Alvah, private, died at Camp Grant, Illinois.  
 Voss, Edward J., private, killed in action in France.  
 Williams, Jesse Stephens, bugler, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Zane, Ralph Leo, private, killed in action in France.

## CARROLL COUNTY.

Barker, Louis, private, killed in action in France.  
 Bartel, John, private, died of disease in France.  
 Bayliss, Lauren R., private, died at Jacksonville, Florida.  
 Berger, August J., wagoner, died of disease in France.  
 Berger, Charles, private, died in camp in United States.  
 Biller, Henry, private, died of disease in France.  
 Bruning, Fred F., private, died at sea.  
 Coates, George F., private, died of disease in France.  
 Dankle, Raymond C., private, died in France.  
 Davenport, Walter E., private, died of disease in France.  
 Dethlefs, Albert C., private, died of disease in France.  
 Dillavou, John E., private, killed in action in France.  
 Dillavou, Joy W., private, killed in action in France.  
 Ewoldt, Emil W., private, died of wounds in France.  
 Haase, Garbrand, private, killed in action in France.  
 Hackport, Joseph L., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Halbur, John, private, died of disease in France.  
 Hansman, Edward J., private, died of disease in France.  
 Hay, Merle D., private, killed in action in France.  
 Hemann, Fred, private, died of disease in France.  
 Hested, James F., private, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.  
 Hinz, William J., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Huegerich, William F., private, died of disease in France.  
 Irlmeier, Frank F., private, died of disease in France.  
 Kalkhoff, Bernard, private, died of disease in France.  
 Kasparbauer, Sylvester, private, died of disease in France.

Kennebeck, Kathleen, hospital hut service, died at sea.  
Knutte, Herman E., sergeant, died of wounds in France.  
Knutte, John, private, died of disease in France.  
Larsen, Carl J., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Manemann, Albert, private, died at sea.  
Meis, Louis A., private, died at Camp McClellan, Alabama.  
Middendorff, Joseph, private, died of disease in France.  
Naber, Edmund C., private, killed in action in France.  
Odell, Orval, private, died at sea.  
Olberding, Herman F., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Parker, Gurney Burr, private, killed in action in France.  
Parsons, Marvin H., private, died at Camp Taylor, Kentucky.  
Pasley, John H., private, died of disease in France.  
Passick, Fred C., private, died of disease in France.  
Pudenz, John, private, died of disease in France.  
Rowedder, Louis, private, died of disease in France.  
Sieve, Henry H., private, died in camp in United States.  
Smith, James Nicholas, private, died at Quantico, Virginia.  
Stang, Arthur H., private, died of disease in France.  
Stuhr, Bernardt B., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Van Raden, Byron, private, killed in action in France.  
Vinke, Julius, private, died of disease in France.

## CHEROKEE COUNTY.

Barnes, Lyle W., private, killed in action in France.  
Bronninger, Leslie E., private, killed in action in France.  
Brownmiller, George W., fireman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Bruning, Willie J., private, died in camp in United States.  
Dahl, Anton, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
Donatus, Charles, private, killed in action in France.  
Dorr, Carl E., private, died of disease in France.  
Goodburn, Frederick F., private, killed in action in France.  
Grashoff, Henry W., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Hahn, Bennie H., private, killed in action in France.  
Hasenwinkel, Ernest, private, died at Camp Forest, Georgia.  
Johnson, John O., private, died in camp in United States.  
Jones, Anson, private, died of disease in France.  
Kelley, Douglas Henry, gunner, died at Quantico, Virginia.

Kent, Fred W., private, died at San Antonio, Texas.  
Law, Charles E., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
McCreary, Lee J., private, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.  
McManus, Everett G., sergeant, killed in action in France.  
Olson, Carl Adrian, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Peterson, Clyde, corporal, died in camp in United States.  
Peterson, Ernest R., private, died of disease in France.  
Peterson, Harold H., private, killed in action in France.  
Rex, Alfred J., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Ryan, John L., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Sones, James Walter, private, died of disease in France.  
Treptow, Martin A., private, killed in action in France.

## CLAY COUNTY.

Allison, Lester James, first lieutenant, Dental R. C., died at Iowa City, Iowa.  
Anderson, Louis W., private, died of disease in France.  
Baldy, George Henry, chief boatswain's mate, died in camp in United States.  
Carpenter, Archie B., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Culver, Ellsworth Clark, private, died in hospital in Brooklyn, New York.  
Damerow, Arthur E., private, died of disease in France.  
Dean, Robert Emerson, fireman, died on hospital ship Mercy.  
Dyhrkopp, Einar L., private (S. A. T. C.), died at Iowa City.  
Ellis, Thomas, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
Glynn, Edward George, private, died at sea.  
Gordon, Harry Donald, first lieutenant, died at Camp Humphreys, Virginia.  
Hargrave, Fred William, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Harvey, Nathan C., mechanic, killed in action in France.  
Jackson, Howard V., private, died at St. Paul, Minnesota.  
McLeod, Norman, private, died of disease in France.  
Mead, Clair E., private, died of disease in France.  
Mett, William Carl, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Odle, Robert G., corporal, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Parsons, Joel A., private, died of disease in France.  
Peabody, Alexander, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.



- Pedersen, Glen E., private, killed in action in France.  
Peterson, Holgar, corporal, killed in action in France.  
Rausch, Spencer Robert, private, killed in action in France.  
Reed, Donald M., private, died at Camp Devens, Massachusetts.  
Roberts, Donald L., private, killed in action in France.  
Rossiter, William A., first class fireman, died in camp in United States.  
Schoning, Frank M., private, died at Camp Merritt, New Jersey.  
Simonson, Thorolph, private, killed in action in France.  
Sonijs, Henrich H., private, killed in action in France.  
Thomas, Roy Leonard, private, killed in action in France.  
Underwood, Milo E., wagoner, died of disease in France.  
Vandermark, Ernest S., private, killed in action in France.  
Walsh, John, private, died at Fort Riley, Kansas.  
Yates, Frank, private, died at Camp Upton, New York.

## CRAWFORD COUNTY.

- Bamford, Robert Bernard, private, died at Camp Devens, Massachusetts.  
Bendixon, Emil E., private, killed in action in France.  
Boock, John F., private, died of disease in France.  
Braase, Henry P., private, died of disease in France.  
Buller, Ernest J., private, died of disease in France.  
Carlson, Francis, private, killed in action in France.  
Carstensen, William F., wagoner, killed in accident in France.  
Duffy, Charles Lewis, private, died in camp in United States.  
Frahm, August J., private, died of disease in France.  
Freml, Wesley, Jr., first lieutenant, killed in action in France.  
Gary, Franklin Jude, major, died of wounds in English hospital.  
Giss, William A., private, killed in action in France.  
Goettsch, Herman, private, died at Jefferson Barracks, Missouri.  
Gosswiller, Robert, private, killed in action in France.  
Grimes, Carl W., private, training dept., died at Valparaiso, Indiana.

- Hall, Homer J., private, killed in action in France.  
Heiden, Fred W., private, killed in action in France.  
Henne, Paul, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Herman, John A., private, died at Camp Logan, Colorado.  
Hunt, Ninus Leslie, private, killed in action in France.  
Jacobsen, John M., private, killed in action in France.  
Joens, Herman J. H., private, died of disease in France.  
Johnson, Andrew, private, killed in action in France.  
Kepford, Carl Joseph, private, died in France.  
Kolln, Joseph, private, died of disease in France.  
Larson, Herbert L., private, died in France (accident).  
Lingle, Joseph, private, died in camp in United States (accident).  
Lochmiller, Frederick C., second class seaman, died at sea.  
McKim, Roy, private, killed in action with Canadian army in France.  
Mess, Henry C., private, died of disease in France.  
Michaelson, Ehrhardt John, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
Miller, Louis S., private, killed in action in France.  
Minter, Henry J., private, died of disease in France.  
Moeller, Adolph A., private, died in camp in United States.  
Norelius, Clarence Francis, sergeant, died of disease in England.  
Orchard, James F., private, killed in action in France.  
Palmer, Dee D., private, killed in action in France.  
Penney, Delbert, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Prentice, Franklin Clyde, private, died at Schofield Barracks, Honolulu (accident).  
Schlie, Willie, private, killed in action in France.  
Siemer, Joseph, private, died of disease in France.  
Slechta, John, private, killed in action in France.  
Sperry, William J., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Steenkiste, Andreas, private, killed in action in France.  
Stettler, Otto, private, died at Camp McArthur, California.  
Swede, Robert E., private, died of disease in France.  
Voege, William, private, died of disease in France.  
Wendt, Adolph, private, died at Fort Logan, Colorado.  
Wilkens, Frank W., private, died of wounds in France.

## DICKINSON COUNTY.

- Alberts, Edward, Jr., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Allen, Hugh Samuel, private, died at Camp Merritt, New Jersey.  
Bastmann, Johannes G., private, drowned in France.  
Breffle, Lawrence C., sergeant, died in camp in United States.  
Freudenthal, Charles, private, killed in action in France.  
Graff, Herbert L., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Graham, Jesse M., private, died of disease in France.  
Grobe, Harry W., private, died of disease in France.  
Hansen, Fred S., private, killed in action in France.  
Harvey, Harry Harold, private, killed in action in France.  
Hegre, Porter, corporal, died of disease in France.  
Hoesch, Joseph J., private, died of disease in France.  
Jacobson, Walter Hans, private, killed in action in France.  
Kettler, Earl J., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Kiesewetter, Frank J., private, died of disease in France.  
Kruger, Chris. A., private, died of disease in Germany.  
Miguel, Walter Wave, private, killed in action in France.  
Planting, Edwin A., private, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.  
Shultz, William, private, died of disease in France.  
Sturies, Martin, private, died of disease in France.  
Sullivan, George Edward, private, died at Newport News, Virginia.  
Sullivan, John D., private, died of disease in France.  
Timpe, Omer W., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Walsh, James Albert, corporal, killed in action in France.  
Williams, Othal G., private (S. A. T. C.), died at Iowa City, Iowa.

## EMMET COUNTY.

- Amundson, Orin E., cook, died of disease in England.  
Basquin, Frank W., private, died of disease in France.  
Bonnicksen, Alfred, private, killed in action in France.  
Brawford, John William, second class yeoman, lost on U. S. S. Cyclops.  
Brumser, Martin, private, died at Battle Creek, Michigan.  
Butler, Roy Onan, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.



- Christiansen, Marius H., private, killed in action in France.  
 Doyle, Maurice Joseph, private, killed in action in France.  
 Duffy, Leo John, private, died at Norfolk, Virginia.  
 Floyd, Emmett H., private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
 Frizzell, Ralph, private, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.  
 Hanson, Carl J., private, died of disease in France.  
 Johnson, Andrew, private, died of disease in France.  
 Jackson, Axel Emerson, chief qm., aviation, died at Buffalo,  
 New York.  
 Kasa, Norris, private, died in camp in United States.  
 Kerr, John M., corporal, died of disease in France.  
 Merklin, Lewis N., private, died at Washington, District of  
 Columbia.  
 Olson, John A., private, died of disease in France.  
 Priest, Charles D., chaplain, died of wounds in France.  
 Reaney, Joseph Hunc, captain, killed in action in France.  
 Schnapp, Albert D., private, died in France (accident).  
 Sylvester, Herbert L., private, died in France (accident).  
 Thorsvik, Henry Ray, private, died of disease in France.  
 West, Glen, private, killed in action in France.  
 West, Leslie Earl, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Williams, Earl Chester, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.

## GREENE COUNTY.

- Alex, Floyd, private, died en route to France.  
 Anderson, Carl Arthur, private, killed in action in France.  
 Augustus, Willard Raymond, died of disease in France.  
 Brown, Calvin J., private, died of disease in France.  
 Brown, Floyd W., private, killed in action in France.  
 Clapp, Edgar J., private, died of disease in France.  
 Coe, Russel L., cook, died of disease in France.  
 Cowgill, Pearl T., private, died in France.  
 Curtis, Clifton, qm., second class, died of disease in France.  
 Eversizer, Earl L., private, died of disease, Bagley, Iowa (on  
 through).  
 Florman, Alfred C., private, died of wounds in France.  
 Galman, Fred W., private, died at Camp Dix, New Jersey.  
 Gomez, Caleb H., private, died at Fort Logan, Colorado.  
 Hawbaker, Verr R., private, killed in action in France.

- Hennessey, Walter P., private, died in camp in United States.
- Holden, Earl Herbert, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.
- Holloway, Harold M., private, died of disease in France.
- Horn, Eugene Lee, blacksmith, died at Quebec, Canada.
- Jensen, Kristian, private, killed in action in France.
- Johnson, Earl T., private, died in camp in United States.
- Kinkead, Clifford W., corporal, died of wounds in France.
- Kious, Orrie G., private, died of disease in France.
- Knowlton, Chas. W., cockswain, died on U. S. S. Pittsburg.
- Le Gore, Martin, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- McDonald, John E., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Marchant, William Clarence, private, died of disease in France.
- Minnehan, Ernie E., private, died of disease in France.
- Monahan, Joseph L., private, died of disease in France.
- Oxley, Harold M., private, killed in action in France.
- Patterson, Frank, private, died at sea.
- Potter, Earl E., private, died at Mineola, New York.
- Pugh, James Arthur, private, died at Camp Mills, New York.
- Pulley, Mark, private, died in camp, Long Island, New York.
- Schilling, George L., private, died in camp in United States.
- Sharp, Walter, private, died at sea.
- Smith, James E., private, killed in action in France.
- Southers, Garlon W., private, died of disease in England.
- Stockton, Elmer, private, died in France.
- Stongard, Norman, private, died at Camp Taylor, Kentucky.
- Strait, Ellis, private, died of disease in France.
- Try, George Emil, corporal, died at Camp Lewis, Washington.
- Vermillion, Scott A., private, died of disease in France.
- Warren, Lowery G., private, killed in action in France.
- Williams, Chas. O., private, died at Camp Lafayette, Indiana (accidental).

## IDA COUNTY.

- Anderson, Magnus C., private, died at sea.
- Bauer, Eddie J. S., private, killed in action in France.
- Bradshaw, Vinton C., corporal, killed in action in France.

- Dessel, William H., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Dibbern, Walter, private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
 Groat, William, private, killed in action in France.  
 Hansen, Carl F. O., private, died of disease in France.  
 Irwin, Thomas H., private, killed in action in France.  
 Jorgensen, Morten, private, died of disease in France.  
 McNamara, Leo, P., second lieutenant, killed in action in  
 France.  
 Meindl, Alysius J., private, died at Kansas City, Missouri.  
 Merrice, Douglas, private, died at Camp Devens, Massachu-  
 setts.  
 Munz, William, private, died of disease in France.  
 Osteen, Harry E., private, killed in action in France.  
 Powell, Ira Irvin, private, killed in action in France.  
 Salmon, Marshall Arthur, private, died of disease in France.  
 Saxon, Jens, private, died of disease in England.  
 Shaffer, Alfred G., private, died of wounds in France.  
 Stepan, Floyd E., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Stone, Elbert, private, died from injuries in France.  
 Wiese, Ferdinand, private, died of disease in France.

#### LYON COUNTY.

- Anderson, Eugene Dunlap, second lieutenant, died at Camp  
 Kearney, California.  
 Bekaert, Leonard, private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
 Bennett, Earl C., corporal, killed in action in France.  
 Braham, Jacob C., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Briney, George W., private, died of wounds in France.  
 Buss, Albert, private, killed in action in France.  
 Carney, Michael F., private, killed in action in France.  
 Dammer, Frank, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 DeClercq, John, private, died in camp in United States.  
 Dilly, Frank, private, died of disease in France.  
 Donnelly, Francis, corporal, died of disease in France.  
 Doorneweird, Johannes, private, killed in action in France.  
 Dunn, Olin V., private, died of disease in France.  
 Durloo, Marinus, private, place of death unknown.  
 Englishman, Herman, private, died of disease in France.  
 Evans, Edward Newton, private, died of disease in Azores  
 Islands.



Fiekema, Robert A., private, died at Camp Meade, Maryland.  
Flessner, Henry W., private, killed in action in France.  
Getting, Theodore Merl, private, died of disease in England.  
Heibult, Karl Herman, private, died at sea.  
Hendricks, Harry Byrd, cook, died of wounds in France.  
Hinsch, Fred Carl, private, died of disease in France.  
Johnson, Harry, private, died of disease in France.  
Kock, Ludwig, corporal, died of disease in France.  
Kruger, George, died of disease in France.  
Kruger, William, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Maxwell, Claude A., corporal, died at Camp Dix, New Jersey.  
Moi, Torvald, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Nelson, Ole E., private, killed in action in France.  
Ploog, John H., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Raveling, William C., private, killed in action in France.  
Reed, William Edward, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Val-  
paraiso, Indiana.  
Reiter, Eddie, private, died of disease in England.  
Renshaw, Fred E., sergeant, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Rosenveld, Will, private, killed in action in France.  
Sauers, William, private, died at Fort Omaha, Nebraska.  
Sauter, Jacob, private, died of wounds in France.  
Schilling, George, private, died of disease in France.  
Schlotfeldt, Fred, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Strait, Rex, private, killed in action in France.  
Thielmann, Herman G., private, killed in action in France.  
Thomas, Charlie R., private, killed in action in France.  
Thomson, George S., private, killed in action in France.  
Thorson, Theodore C., private, killed in action in France.  
Underhill, Edwin E., private, died of wounds in France.  
Wiegman, William, private, died at Nitro, West Virginia.  
Wilka, Frank Adolph, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.

## MONONA COUNTY.

Aaby, Emri C., private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
Aaby, Lewis, private, killed in action in France.  
Bretthauer, William R., private, died of wounds in France.  
Emery, Walter, private, died in camp in United States.  
Halverson, Arthur, private, died of disease in France.

- Hansen, Uhl H., sergeant, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
 Hanson, Peter A., private, killed in action in France.  
 Hasbrouck, Willet L., private, died of disease in France.  
 Hass, Leo J., private, killed in action in France.  
 Hedum, Alfred, corporal, killed in action in France.  
 Hollister, Loren O'Neil, private, killed in action in France.  
 Hull, Eugene H., private, died at Camp McArthur, Texas.  
 Hunting, William H., private, killed in action in France.  
 Johns, Forest G., private, killed in action in France.  
 Johnson, Chris N., private, killed in action in France.  
 Johnson, Jense C., private, died of wounds in France.  
 Johnson, Marcus J., private, died in camp in United States.  
 Kelley, Ralph M., private, killed in action in France.  
 Larson, Fred, private, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.  
 Lofshult, Carl A., private, died of disease in France.  
 Lynn, Cornelius, private, killed in action in France.  
 McNeill, David, private, killed in action in France.  
 Nelson, Jesse Clarence, private, died at Camp Dix, New Jersey.  
 Oliver, Frank John, cadet flyer, died at Waco, Texas (accident).  
 Olson, Henry, private, died of disease in France.  
 Olson, Martin E., private, died of wounds in France.  
 Otto, Harry Earl Ralph, private, killed in action in France.  
 Parker, Kenneth Merrit, appr. seaman, died at Goat Island, California.  
 Pearson, Leslie C., private, killed in action in France.  
 Reed, Elvin H., private, died of disease in France.  
 Richtermeier, Henry R., private, died of disease in France.  
 Stevens, Chas. H., private, killed in action in France.  
 Swain, Ingval, private, died of disease in France.  
 Thayer, Hiram A., private, died of disease in France.  
 Torgerson, Alfred, private, died at Fort Andrews, Massachusetts.  
 Ulven, Bennett, private, killed in action in France.

## O'BRIEN COUNTY.

- Allen, Harold Fay, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
 Behmer, Albert E., corporal, killed in action in France.

- Beyers, Jesse G., private, died of disease in France.  
Bidwell, Elwin Newell, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Blankenship, John P., private, killed in action in France.  
Breitbarth, William, private, died of disease in France.  
Bryant, Otto S., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Butler, Ted A., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Cowie, Edward M., bugler, died of wounds in France.  
Creswell, Fred R., private, killed in action in France.  
Dykstra, Fred, private, died in camp in United States.  
Faber, Peter, private, killed in action in France.  
Frerk, Herman J., corporal, died of disease in France.  
Guse, Edward, private, died at Indianapolis, Indiana.  
Hilker, Alvin J., private, died of disease in France.  
Hilker, Edward W., private, died of disease in France.  
Hill, Lyman L., Jr., 1st class fireman, lost in Herman Frasch collision.  
Horstman, Henry F., private, died of disease in France.  
Kirchoff, Arthur W., private, killed in action in France.  
Koester, Carl H., private, died of disease in France.  
Lang, George D., private, died of disease in France.  
Linder, Chris, private, died of disease in France.  
Lock, Robert T., private, died of wounds in France.  
McCreath, David Allen, second lieutenant, died at Primghar, Iowa.  
McGlothlen, Carl A., corporal, died of wounds in France.  
Mather, Carl S., lieutenant, died at Ellington Field, Texas (accident).  
Morrow, Ernest L., private, killed in action in France.  
Palmer, Frank James, private, died at Camp Funston, Kansas.  
Parish, Dean I., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Rees, Richard B., private, died at Camp Beauregard, Louisiana.  
Reimer, Carl H., private, died of disease in France.  
Rost, Johnny J., private, killed in action in France.  
Sewell, Ward E., private, died at Charleston, South Carolina.  
Slothouber, John A., private, died in camp in United States.  
Smith, Henry, sergeant, died of disease in France.  
Smith, Jesse Elmer, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Morning-side, Iowa.



Stangen, Fred, private, killed in action in France.  
 Steffens, Clause J., private, died of disease in France.  
 Stoterau, Arnold F., private, died of disease in France.  
 Tastove, John M., private, died of disease in France.  
 Tjossem, Theodore, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Uittenbogaard, Adrian, private, died of disease in France.  
 Untiedt, Harry, appr. seaman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
 Vander Pol, Fred, private, died en route to France.  
 Vogel, Herman A., private, died in camp in United States.  
 Warnke, Edward W. C., private, died of disease in France.  
 West, Russell Salisbury, private, died of wounds in France.  
 Young, Ralph W., private, died at Camp Devens, Massachusetts.

## OSCEOLA COUNTY.

Bauman, Albert M., private (S. A. T. C.), died at Des Moines, Iowa.  
 Benjamin, Charles Ernest, private, died at Edgewood, Maryland.  
 Bloedel, Leonard Herman, seaman 2nd class, wireless operator, died at Manchester, New Hampshire.  
 De Boer, Clarence, private, died of disease in France.  
 Fairbrother, Charles H., private, died of disease in France.  
 Gross, Byron, baker, died at Bigelow, Minnesota.  
 Guthrie, Farrand Reed, private, killed in action in France.  
 Haack, Andrew, musician (Naval Band), died at Marine Hospital, Chicago.  
 Hoffman, Wm. B., private, killed in action in France.  
 Jansma, Henry, private, died of wounds in France.  
 Juhl, Anton Paulson, private, died at Camp Forrest, Georgia.  
 Klunenburg, John F., private, died of wounds in France.  
 Kuijs, Cornelius J., private, killed in action in France.  
 McNeer, Dorsey, private, killed in action in France.  
 Mudge, George E., private, Fort Scott, California.  
 Ross, Elmer, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ann Arbor, Michigan.  
 Rust, Kasper, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
 Terhark, Henry, private, died in France (accident).  
 VanPeursen, Gerritt, private, died in Germany (accident).  
 Wagner, Otto Sylvester, private, died at Fort Riley, Kansas.

- Walker, Lionel Lovell, private, died at Camp Funston, Kansas.
- Wilmarth, Newell O., private, killed in action in France.
- Wood, Guy Clarence, private, died at Fort Benjamin Harrison, Indiana.
- Worrick, Luther, private, died at Fort Sam Houston, Texas.

## PALO ALTO COUNTY.

- Andregg, Harry E., corporal, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.
- Axelton, Johard, private, died at Camp Mills, New York.
- Christiansen, Herbert Christian, private, killed in action in France.
- Cookingham, Glenn B., private, killed in action in France.
- Grafe, John G., private, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.
- Green, Lyle E., sergeant, died in camp in Texas.
- Hagen, Felix Henry, private, killed in action in France.
- Hansen, John, private, died of disease in France.
- King, Cyrus Van, private, died of disease in France.
- Knudslie, Albert, private, killed in action in France.
- Lambe, Joseph Raymond, private, killed in action in France.
- Leonard, Rollyn E., private, killed in action in France.
- Lindgren, Verner E., second lieutenant, died of disease in France.
- Lynch, James V., private, killed in action in France.
- Nelson, John, private, died of wounds in France.
- O'Brien, Thomas J., private, killed in action in France.
- Rea, Ted M., private, killed in action in France.
- Rehm, Homer, private, died of disease in France.
- Rink, George, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Slattery, Matthew E., corporal, died of disease in Germany.
- Washington, James E., private, died at Provo, Utah.
- Washington, Lee T., appr. seaman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.
- Williams, Joseph G., private, died at Camp Mills, New York.

## PLYMOUTH COUNTY.

- Barr, Carl H., corporal, killed in action in France.
- Bergstrom, Harry, private, died of wounds in France.

- Brodie, John, private, died at Camp Funston, Kansas.  
Burke, Frank W., private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
Burrill, Lester Robert, private, died in camp in United States.  
Calhoun, Charles, private, died of disease in France.  
Casper, Lawrence, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
Christopherson, John J., private, died of disease in France.  
Clemens, Nick, private, died at Camp Forest, Georgia.  
Dambrink, William Herman, private died of disease in France.  
Eilks, Carl J., private, died of disease in England.  
Ewin, Albert V., corporal, died of disease in France.  
Fromme, Albert, private, died in camp in United States.  
Furgeson, John, private, died of wounds in France.  
Hall, Henry V., private, died in camp in United States.  
Halweg, John J., private, killed in action in France.  
Hillrichs, Rinehard, private, died of disease in France.  
Hodge, Earl Walter, 3rd class fireman, died at Hampton Roads, Virginia.  
Hoffman, John E., private, died of disease in France.  
Holland, Frank Henry, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
Hoschler, Albert E., private, killed in action in France.  
Huxtable, Wayne E., private, killed in action in France.  
Kilker, Wallace, private (S. A. T. C.), died at College Station, Texas.  
Knutson, Burtie Chas., private, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.  
Lewis, Joseph Adam, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Lorenson, Charlie, private, died of disease in France.  
Lubben, Bernhard A. M., private, died of disease in France.  
McCoy, Len D., private, died of disease in France.  
Meis, Frank P., private, died in accident in France.  
Nash, Edward E., private, killed in action in France.  
Neal, Cale B., private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.  
Nussbaum, Edward, private, died of disease in France.  
Olsen, Leonard, private, died of disease in France.  
Pieper, William, private, died of wounds in France.  
Powers, Estill, corporal, killed in action in France.  
Reints, William Albert, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.



- Rohlfs, John H., private, died of disease in France.  
Schnepf, Charles Martin, private, died at Corpus Christi, Texas.  
Schrooten, Henry A., private, died at Camp Hancock, Georgia.  
Singer, Edward, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Singleton, William J., private, killed in action in France.  
Stewart, William Alex, private, died of disease in France.  
Thatcher, Clark, private, died at Spartanburg, South Carolina.  
Tolsma, Jacob, sergeant, killed in action in France.  
Wasmer, John W., private, died of disease in France.  
Weber, William F., private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.  
Whetstone, John W., private, killed in action in France.

## POCAHONTAS COUNTY.

- Allen, Fred, private, died at camp in California.  
Bartka, Otto Wm., private, died at Camp Devens, Massachusetts.  
Berry, Elmer E., private, died at Chelsea, Massachusetts.  
Bruce, Raymond McDonald, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Condon, Emmet Patrick, private, died at Camp Grant, Illinois.  
Cooksey, Harry Everett, private, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.  
Cumming, Cecil C., private, killed in action in France.  
Eno, Im L., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Hoover, Ralph W., private, died at Fort Stevens, Oregon.  
Kenney, Raymond L., wagoner, killed in action in France.  
Klingbeil, Frank, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Lambertson, George, private, died at Fort Bliss, Texas.  
Larimar, Clifford A., private, killed in action in France.  
Nomann, John E., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Richards, Lowell, private, died in West Indies.  
Rickiefs, John H., private, died of disease in France.  
Runyan, Clyde, private, died in camp in United States.  
Schmidt, William, private, killed in action in France.

Smith, William McKinley, private, died in camp in United States.

Steiner, William D., private, died of disease in France.

Strong, John Ray, apprentice seaman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.

Thompson, John, lieutenant, died at Mineola, Long Island.

Waugh, Frank, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.

Willson, Charles E., private, killed in action in France.

Wood, Clayton Clark, private, died of disease in France.

Wood, Percy Eugene, private, died at Camp Taylor, Kentucky.

#### SAC COUNTY.

Atwater, Robert Leo, private, died of wounds in France.

Auen, Eilert, Jr., sergeant, died of wounds in France.

Bernhardt, Robert Frank, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.

Bihrer, George J., private, died of disease in France.

Bittner, Harvey Morgan, private, died at Camp Grant, Illinois.

Blass, Charlie C., private, died of disease in France.

Carlson, Iver Henry, private, died of disease in France.

Criss, Glenn, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Grinnell, Iowa.

Davis, Albert Leslie, cook, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.

Davis, Harry Elmer, private, died at Camp Gordon, Georgia.

Drilling, Henry Arnold, private, died of disease in France.

Ettele, Robert Barnard, private, died of disease in France.

Fuller, Bayard C., private, died at Jefferson Barracks, Missouri.

Gleim, William Robert, private, died at sea.

Hair, Merton V., private, died of wounds in France.

Hindrichsen, John Peterson, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.

Jarvis, Arthur Edwin, private, died of disease in France.

Jensen, Christian L., private, died in camp in United States.

Martin, William Francis, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.

Meyer, Fred Clifford, private, died of disease in France.

Miller, Guy L., private, died of disease in France.

- Niles, Charles R., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Nomsen, Carl F., private, died of disease in France.  
Norton, Andrew G., private, died of disease in France.  
Pike, Robert Merle, landsman for machinist mate, died at  
Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Puetz, Joseph H., died of disease in France.  
Reymer, Andrew M., private, killed in accident in France.  
Roose, Herman August, private, died of disease in France.  
Schnirring, Albert H., private, died of disease in France.  
Werkmaster, Charley A., private, died of disease in France.  
Williams, Russell A., private, died at Camp Devens, Massa-  
chusetts.  
Wittkopp, Arno H., private, died of disease in France.

## SIOUX COUNTY.

- Bertram, Edward, private, died at Camp Dix, New Jersey.  
Blumeyer, John C., private, died in camp in United States.  
Brown, Edward R., private, died of wounds in France.  
Cooper, George H., seaman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Dalgliesh, George, private, died at Camp Upton, Long Island.  
Dannenbring, Fred C., private, died of wounds in France.  
Davis, Garth C., private, killed in action in France.  
Doornink, James, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Emmert, Elmer, private, died at Camp Dix, New Jersey.  
Fox, Wilbur F., private, killed in action in France.  
Gebert, Fred, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Hansen, Odilo P., private, died of disease in France.  
Hoeven, Endor John, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Iowa City,  
Iowa.  
Hoonhorst, Richard, private, died of wounds in France.  
Jackson, Carl, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Jeffries, Alva L., private, died of disease in France.  
Johnson, Robert Samuel, junior lieutenant, died of disease at  
Ottawa, Canada.  
Kersbergen, Gerrit, private, died of disease in France.  
Kiel, Steve, Jr., private, died in camp in United States.  
Koning, Jake, private, died from accident in France.  
Kristoffersen, Hans K., private, died of disease in France.  
Levering, Jake, private, killed in action in France.



- McKeegan, James Herbert, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Ames, Iowa.
- Marx, Henry Joseph, private, killed in action in France.
- Monster, William, private, killed in action in France.
- Mulder, Art, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Mulhern, Michael Sylvester, corporal, died of disease in France.
- Newell, Philip, private, killed in action in France.
- Pfarrer, William Max, private, place of death unknown.
- Poppemia, Herman, private, died of disease in England.
- Pressman, John C., private, killed in action in France.
- Reuter, Joseph, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Reyelts, John H., private, died of disease in France.
- Ricklefs, George H., private, died of disease in France.
- Sorgdrager, John C., private, died in camp in United States.
- Splear, Henry F., private, died in camp in United States.
- Tilstra, Gerrit, corporal, died of wounds in France.
- Timmer, Herman, private, died of wounds in France.
- Van Holland, Dick, private, died of disease in France.
- Wegman, Henry, private, died at sea.
- Wilcox, Roy R., private, died at Camp Beauregard, Louisiana.
- Witt, Arthur G., private, died of disease in France.

#### WOODBURY COUNTY.

- Akerson, Arthur Nathan, private, killed in action.
- Allen, John L., private, died at Fort Sam Houston, Texas.
- Anderson, Neil C., private, died at San Antonio, Texas.
- Anderson, Carl R., corporal, died of wounds in France.
- Anderson, Frank Edwards, sergeant, died of wounds in France.
- Bailie, Thomas, private, killed in action in France.
- Baker, John Arthur, private, died of wounds in France.
- Becker, Edith Genevieve, Red Cross nurse, died at Fort Benjamin Harrison, Indiana.
- Bell, Clifford N., private, killed in action in France.
- Bixler, Ancel Hall, private, killed in action in France.
- Boston, Fred E., private, died of disease in France.
- Bowers, Roy C., private, died of wounds in France.

- Brink, Clarence Edwin, private, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.
- Carlson, Emil Theodore, private, died at Camp Devens, Massachusetts.
- Cownie, Brodie Gunn, private, died of wounds in France.
- Cummings, Ezra C., private, died of disease in France.
- Deal, Orville Leo, corporal, died at Sioux City, Iowa.
- De Wolf, Martin F., private, killed in action in France.
- Fluke, Arthur W., private, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.
- Frederick, Michael A., private, died of disease in France.
- Fry, Charles Dwight, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Gaebler, Frederick W., sergeant, died of wounds in France.
- Galland, Ernest Abijah, private, killed in action in France.
- Galland, Hugh Haven, private, died of disease in France.
- Goldie, Roy Cordon, private, died of wounds in France.
- Grimsley, Albert V., private, died in camp in United States.
- Grossman, John, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Hamilton, William David, private, died of wounds in France.
- Harwood, Lester F., wagoner, died at Camp Dix, New Jersey.
- Hindman, Robert E., private, killed in action in France.
- Holt, Baud Sidney, private, died of disease in France.
- Hubbard, Lyle, second lieutenant, died at New York, New York.
- Jacobsen, Ed W., private, died of disease in France.
- Johanson, John E., private, died in camp in United States.
- Johnson, Charles A., private, killed in action in France.
- Johnson, Roy Walford, first lieutenant, died at Camp Mills, New York.
- Kant, Alfred S., private, died of wounds in France.
- Killian, Albert S., private, killed in action in France.
- Klewe, Henry, private, killed in action in France.
- Lair, Benjamin F., private, killed in action in France.
- Larson, Thomas H., private, killed in action in France.
- Layson, William L., private, died of disease in France.
- Lee, Robert Andrew, private, killed in action in France.
- Leete, James Harvey, corporal, died at Camp Cody, New Mexico.
- Lehmann, William, private, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.
- Line, Francis Kenneth, private, died of disease in France.
- Loetz, Theodore Henry, sergeant, died of disease in France.



- McNiff, Francis J., private, died of disease in France.  
Mason, Sweeny, private, killed in action in France.  
Minnich, James F., private, killed in action in France.  
Mitchell, William H., private, died at Camp Funston, Kansas.  
Monahan, Edward H., private, died of wounds in France.  
Morrow, Leslie Garner, private, died of disease in France.  
Murphy, James Francis, private, died at Camp Grant, Illinois.  
Nash, Robert A., private, died of disease in France.  
Nelson, August, private, killed in action in France.  
Nelson, Earl Edward, sergeant, killed in action in France.  
Nelson, George J., private, killed in action in France.  
Neustrom, Charles Edgar, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Nickerson, Donald, private, died of disease in France.  
Northrup, Charles L., private, killed by train in United States.  
Norton, Harvey E., private, died of wounds in France.  
Norton, Jesse F., private, died at Camp Pike, Arkansas.  
O'Donnell, Joseph William, private (S. A. T. C.), died at Iowa City, Iowa.  
O'Shonessy, Thomas Leo, private, Camp Dix, New Jersey.  
Pedersen, Harrison F., private, killed in action in France.  
Pieper, Johnie Richard, first lieutenant, died at Fort Crook, Nebraska.  
Plendl, Louis G., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Plumer, Edward F., private, died at Fort San Jacinto, Texas.  
Posey, Clayton V., sergeant, died of disease in France.  
Prime, Wendell F., second lieutenant, killed in action in France.  
Racobs, Dan Bryan, private, died of wounds in France.  
Rathsach, Herman H., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.  
Redden, Archie George, private, killed in action in France.  
Reeder, Charles H., private, killed in action in France.  
Rhodes, Glen E., corporal, killed in action in France.  
Richter, Louis William, private, died of disease in France.  
Robinson, Charles Franklin, corporal, died at Panama Canal.  
Roeschke, Herman C., apprentice seaman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.  
Schenk, Robert, cook, died at Camp Kearney, California.



- Schiller, Harold S., private, died at Fort Bayard, New Mexico.
- Schmeelk, Henry William, private, died of disease in France.
- Seiler, Barbara Loretta, nurse, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Seney, Elmer P., chief petty officer, died at Spokane, Washington.
- Severson, William Christian, lieutenant, killed in action in France.
- Shumaker, Howard Frank, private, died at Nitro, West Virginia.
- Smith, Merwyn E., private, killed in action in France.
- Steele, Fred F., private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Stekelenburg, John, private, killed in action in France.
- Tawzer, Ralph W., private, died at Dallas, Texas.
- Thompson, Thruce M., private, died of disease in France.
- Tott, William H., private, died of disease in France.
- Tubbs, Roy Vernon, private, died at Camp Dodge, Iowa.
- Vanderburg, Henry, musician, died at Oakland, California.
- Verstegen, Garrett, private, died of disease in France.
- Virgil, Anton, private, killed in action in France.
- White, Winfield March, first lieutenant, killed in action in France.
- Whiting, Arthur Earl, private, died of disease in France.
- Wink, Henry C., private, died of wounds in France.
- Woodruff, William A., Jr., third class fireman, died at Great Lakes, Illinois.
- Zettle, Howard Philip, private, killed in action in France.
- Zuruvak, Henry H., private, died in France (accident).

[Editor's Note—On August 6, 1925, Shull Post No. 580, Veterans of Foreign Wars, held memorial services in honor of the 113 men and one woman (Edith G. Becker) who gave their lives in the World war as residents of Sioux City. The names were published in the Sioux City Journal and those omitted from the foregoing list were as follows: Charles H. Lane, Jesse E. Smith, George F. Coates, Albert E. Behmer, Matthew D. Eckerman, Robert W. Pelle, Ralph L. Church, James J. Harty, William Stukas, Frank J. Oliver, Rathbun E. Satterlee, Franklin Jude Gary, Leo F. Mattison, William F. Schneider, Alfred W. Leazer, Oliver S. Huyck, Cecil L.

Hankins, Russel C. Hand, Clair A. Kinney, Olaf Olsen, Furman L. Hale, William R. Ream, Maloon D. Algyer, William Edward Wagner, Edward A. Coulombe, Denzel M. Wagner, James F. Connolly, Harvey E. Kilts, Carl A. Olson, Job Everett Miles, Henry W. Clewe, Francis Kenneth Line, Winfield March Line, Robert J. O'Neill, Louis J. Manos, Clement G. Goodwin, Samuel J. Richardson, Thomas Vitoves, Henry G. Fluekiger, Thomas Lee, Bert L. Smith and William C. Nigg.]

#### NORTHWESTERN IOWA IN WELFARE WORK.

The achievements of the counties, towns, cities and people of Northwestern Iowa in the welfare work of the war are so loaded with fine details that it is impossible to even state them; but they were abreast of the self-sacrifice which pervaded the State at large, which helped to support both the soldiers in the field and those in training, and which, with the official coöperation of the national government, pushed the Americans on to victory. In the drives of the Y. M. C. A., the Red Cross, the Salvation Army, the Knights of Columbus, the Y. W. C. A., the Jewish Welfare Board and the American Library Association, no section of Iowa was more energetic and helpful in the best spirit of the war than its northwestern counties. Later, when the campaigns in behalf of such organizations commenced to overlap and sometimes conflict, and the State Council of Defense, in coöperation with the General Government, organized such broad and correlated movements as those of the War Chest and the United War Work, Northwestern Iowa firmly supported the advanced steps of these measures. By such coördination between the State and National governments, and private and religious organizations, the canvasses for the Liberty loans had a free field and their magnitude astonished the world as much even as the millions of men who offered themselves in sacrifice.

#### THE LIBERTY LOANS BY COUNTIES.

It is not possible to indicate the amount of the funds raised in Northwestern Iowa by these welfare organizations during the progress of the war, but a fairly complete statement may be made of the extent of the Liberty loans in the

twenty counties embraced by this history. They are given by government authorities as follows:

Name of County	Quota	Amt. Subs'd
Buena Vista -----	\$ 3,629,130	\$ 4,325,550
Calhoun -----	3,542,875	4,362,800
Carroll -----	4,417,605	4,975,950
Cherokee -----	3,793,530	4,275,000
Clay -----	3,060,185	3,706,500
Crawford -----	4,330,675	5,715,600
Dickinson -----	2,052,070	2,260,250
Emmet -----	2,430,310	2,647,100
Greene -----	3,093,250	3,844,650
Ida -----	2,867,165	3,399,400
Lyon -----	3,506,730	4,111,200
Monona -----	3,068,040	3,361,200
O'Brien -----	4,059,905	5,225,250
Osceola -----	2,018,830	2,090,700
Palo Alto -----	2,922,235	3,060,150
Plymouth -----	5,409,200	6,456,850
Pocahontas -----	3,045,745	3,467,150
Sac -----	3,922,015	4,679,050
Sioux -----	4,718,100	6,100,600
Woodbury -----	16,182,500	21,425,750
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Total -----	\$82,070,095	\$99,490,700
Subscriptions over quotas -----		\$17,330,605

Some interesting side facts in connection with the generous support of the Liberty loans in Northwestern Iowa are deduced from the official figures of the subscriptions as compared with the quotas assigned the various counties. For the second loan, Crawford County's subscription exceeded her quota, as fixed by the government, by 162 per cent, and O'Brien, by 131 per cent. Greene was the star county in the campaign for the third Liberty loan, as her quota was exceeded in purchases of the bonds by 302 per cent; Pocahontas was second, with 258 per cent.

The population of Northwestern Iowa is noticeably cosmopolitan, and it is significant to be able to trace, with the



knowledge of the proportion of the foreign elements in any given county, the extent of subscriptions to the Liberty loans. This comparison largely tells the story of home patriotism, since these loans were the representative war bonds issued by the United States and, although they were a safe investment, they constituted the popular sinews of the war which bound the people to the government. The foreign population of Sioux County was 74 per cent, of Lyon 67, Crawford 65, Plymouth 60, Buena Vista 59, Osceola 58 and Ida 57.

Whether measured in contributions to the war of men, money or services, Northwestern Iowa demonstrated anew that the great melting pot of American institutions and American spirit was turning out a wonderfully elastic and dependable type of people.

## CHAPTER XII.

### EDUCATIONAL DEVELOPMENT.

COMMON SCHOOL SYSTEM BASED ON TOWNSHIPS—CHANGES IN SCHOOL GOVERNMENT—REVISION OF SCHOOL LAWS—COUNTY SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS—THE COMING OF THE INSTITUTES—BOARDS FOR THE EXAMINATION OF TEACHERS—SCHOOLS IN THE CIVIL WAR PERIOD—IN THE LATE '60s—EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS IN THE '70s—COUNTY SUPERINTENDENCY OPENED TO WOMEN—COMPULSORY ATTENDANCE—RISE OF THE SCHOOL LIBRARY IDEA—NORTHWESTERN IOWA ACADEMIES AND COLLEGES—NORTHWESTERN NORMAL SCHOOL AND BUSINESS COLLEGE—THE BUENA VISTA COLLEGE—MORNINGSIDE COLLEGE—COUNTY UNIFORMITY OF TEXT BOOKS—ASSOCIATIONS OF TEACHERS—LONG STEP TOWARD EDUCATIONAL DEMOCRACY—TOWNSHIP HIGH SCHOOLS—THE VALUE OF SCHOOL LIBRARIES—CONSOLIDATION OF SCHOOLS—THE NORMAL TRAINING HIGH SCHOOLS—THE STANDARDIZED RURAL SCHOOLS—A BUSY GENERAL ASSEMBLY—TEACHERS' MINIMUM WAGES—POST-WAR LEGISLATION—PART-TIME SCHOOLS—LATE LEGISLATION AND PRESENT LAWS—VOCATIONAL EDUCATION—ENROLLMENT AND AVERAGE DAILY ATTENDANCE.

Previous to the Civil war period, the general course of settlement in Northwestern Iowa did not warrant serious consideration of the public school system as an institution which called for immediate establishment. The progress of free education as a whole in the more developed sections of the State is of special interest only to gain a general idea of how its basis was laid in legislation as something to be extended into a far-western frontier country when there was a demand for it.

#### COMMON SCHOOL SYSTEM BASED ON TOWNSHIPS.

Through the territories of Michigan and Wisconsin, the Iowa country was geographically and politically divided into counties and townships, coextensive in boundaries. The proposed school laws were founded on New England legislation and provided for township supervision and control; so that

when the first Territorial Legislature of Iowa met at Burlington on November 12, 1838, Governor Robert Lucas, delivering his message in person, declared that provision should be made at once for the organization of townships; since "without proper township regulations it will be extremely difficult if not impracticable, to establish a regular school system." That the Governor drew his conclusions from the experience of people in other jurisdictions may be inferred from the statement that "in most of the States where a common school system has been established by law, the trustees of the township are important agents in executing the provisions of the law." Later, in the message, he declared that there was no matter to which he wished to call the attention of the Legislature "more emphatically than the subject of establishing, at the commencement of our political existence, a well digested system of common schools." There were then about forty or fifty schools in the entire Territory, most of them in its southern part.

The school bill passed at the first session of the Territorial Legislature was found defective and the one which went through the second Legislative Assembly was approved January 1, 1840. Provision was made for the establishment of free common schools to be open to whites between the ages of four and twenty-one years of age. The district could not be less than a township, for no area less than that could claim school lands. Within a month after the law went into effect, Lee County established a school district out of one of its townships, and soon afterwards, another. On January 16, 1840, the Assembly took over the Michigan school law of 1838, and adopted it section by section. Thus, the establishment of districts and all the details of school organization became a township function, the school inspectors being authorized to perform all the duties and to report annually the condition of their schools to the clerk of the District Court.

#### CHANGES IN SCHOOL GOVERNMENT.

The territorial superintendent of public instruction had a brief tenure of office, as the position was created in February, 1841, and abolished in March of the following year.





OLD TIME LOG SCHOOLHOUSE



BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF IDA GROVE SCHOOLS



Until the people adopted the constitution of August, 1846, the Legislative Assembly succeeded to the school functions of the former superintendent of public instruction. Iowa was admitted into the Union as a State on the 28th of that month, and under it a system of common schools was established, which should be maintained in each school district for not less than three months each year. Again, the superintendent of public instruction became the head of the system. In 1849, all legislation for the establishment of schools theretofore in force in the State was repealed, and a new statute incorporating the general provisions of that legislation, with some new features, was enacted. The office of township inspector was abolished, and the county school fund commissioner assumed his duties. The District Board was the direct governing body.

#### REVISION OF SCHOOL LAWS.

Governor Stephen Hempstead and James W. Grimes both pressed the importance of school matters in their messages to the General Assembly. Governor Grimes was especially aggressive, and the earnestness of his views induced him to call into conference that great educator, Horace Mann, of Ohio, president of Antioch College, whom he appointed chairman of a committee to revise the school laws of the State, in conjunction with Amos Dean, president of the Iowa State University, and F. E. Bissell, a prominent lawyer of Dubuque. Although their report (1856) was not formally adopted, it had great influence in shaping the educational policy of the State, and incorporating its system into the constitution of 1857. This was the period of the rise of the Union school, the effectiveness of which has made Iowa famous in the educational world; and two of those considered the best examples of the kind in the early time of their development were the institutions at Tipton, Cedar County, and at Osceola, in Clarke County. Both of these schools were patronized by pupils far beyond the borders of the counties in which they were located.

In accordance with the provisions of the constitution the Board of Education held its first session in the Senate cham-



ber at Des Moines, on December 6, 1858. There appears to have been some feeling between this new body and the General Assembly, probably holding over from the territorial days when the Legislature had entire control of educational matters. Besides appearing disposed to cut into the functions of the Board of Education, the Assembly at first failed to make the necessary appropriations for the support of the Board. Finally, however, these matters were adjusted. Northwestern Iowa was represented on this first Board of Education by Dan Mills, of New Jefferson, Greene County, who stood for the Fifth District and was serving a four-year term.

#### COUNTY SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS.

The office of county superintendent of schools was created by the general education act of March 12, 1858. Such an office had been recommended by the Mann commission in 1856, but its functions were not such as were later provided in the statute, which contained no reference to any financial functions attached to it. Although the general act was afterward declared unconstitutional, the county superintendents who were elected under it were confirmed by the State Board of Education. The office had a trying time before it was finally established, as a desirable feature of the educational system, as a close connecting link between the State Board and the school districts.

The Civil war agitated the educational system of Iowa to its foundations, which had not, in fact, been firmly established. Many of the young men who went to the front were of school age. Public, as well as private funds, were absorbed by the activities of the war, and oftentimes the churches became the founders and sponsors of colleges and seminaries which afterwards were identified with the State system of education.

#### THE COMING OF THE INSTITUTES.

The general school law of 1858 also made provisions for teachers' institutes practically in agreement with the plan proposed by the Mann commission, since the superintendent

of public instruction was authorized to appoint a time and place for such an assembly when he was reasonably assured that not fewer than thirty teachers were desirous of holding one. "As a result of this legislation," says Clarence R. Aurner in his "History of Education in Iowa," "thirty-four institutes were held in the State in 1860 and thirty-five in 1861. No agency, it was declared, had done more to promote interest and efficiency in the schools; and it was made clear that it would be agreeable to the friends of education everywhere if further encouragement could be provided. At the same time, some county superintendents reported that at no time of the year was it possible to hold an institute without interfering with schools then in session. Indeed, it was said that some directors refused to permit the closing of the schools under such circumstances; and so it was proposed that a law requiring such action be enacted. This demand met with the approval of the Board of Education, and at its final session in 1861, the General Assembly enacted a law which enforced the closing of schools during institutes and provided for compulsory attendance before a certificate could be issued."

The list of institutes held in 1861, as published in the Iowa Instructor, contains no record of a meeting having been held in any county of Northwestern Iowa; that of 1862 gives Cerro Gordo County, but omits any definite place of meeting. The date given was for the week beginning June 30, 1862.

#### BOARDS FOR THE EXAMINATION OF TEACHERS.

In 1861, through the initiative of the State Board of Education, a board for the examination of teachers was created, to be composed of members of the faculty of the State University. This board was abolished by the adoption of the code of 1873. The Nineteenth General Assembly created the Board of Educational Examiners which went into effect in March, 1882, and is still the supervisory body which decides the status of the teachers in service. The Board consists of the superintendent of public instruction, president of the State University, president of the Iowa State Teachers' College and president of the Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts, as ex-officio members, and three mem-



bers appointed by the governor for a term of four years. Of the appointive members, one must be a woman, and one a representative of the privately endowed colleges of the State maintaining teachers' training courses. The latest appointments of board members were E. L. Jones, of Storm Lake, Buena Vista County, and Erma L. Krout, Oskaloosa, Mahaska County, succeeding William F. Barr, Des Moines, and Jennette Lewis, Jefferson, Greene County, for the four-year terms ending July 1, 1929.

#### SCHOOLS IN THE CIVIL WAR PERIOD.

The drawing of the man-power of Iowa into the military ranks during the period of the Civil war, reversed the ratio of male and female teachers; by 1862, the women teachers outnumbered the men and the female sex has ever since increased its percentage as compared with the male sex. In 1864, after the State Board for the Examination of Teachers had been in operation for several years, the supply of teachers, who were overwhelmingly women, was very inadequate in number and efficiency. Some districts were without teachers and in all, good teachers were scarce. The schools were also being graded, which made the situation more difficult to handle. At this critical period, the institutes and training schools kept alive the public appreciation of the priceless worth of education. The fact that farmers, doctors, ministers, lawyers and citizens generally were welcome to these meetings, either as conductors or auditors, suggested the cosmopolitan character of the institutes.

#### IN THE LATE SIXTIES.

In the newer counties of Northwestern Iowa and other sections of the State settlers were rapidly locating during the years immediately following the conclusion of the Civil war. Many of them had arrived from States which had already established public school systems, had observed the advantages of popular education and were eager to secure the same privileges in their new home. For example, in Kossuth County it was said that the "inhabitants in the county do not wait for the public to provide schoolhouses. Schools they





GRADE SCHOOL, ROCK RAPIDS



HIGH SCHOOL, SIBLEY



must have, houses or no houses. In visiting the schools of the county," continues the State superintendent of public instruction, "I found two in private houses with only a slight partition between the school and the family. One was in a forsaken log shanty, which needed neither door nor window to let in light and air. One school was in a mere temporary board shanty, without any door, put up just for the summer." Besides, there were two schools conducted in sod houses—which, it was said, were becoming quite common. The superintendent who forwarded this information had, ten years before, been a resident of New England, and declared that the teachers in Kossuth County were the equal of those he had known in the East.

This condition of school affairs in Kossuth County was typical of the other pioneer communities in Northwestern Iowa, although in some counties not nearly so much progress had been made. Buena Vista County had no schoolhouse in 1867 and was preparing only two for the winter term of 1868. Cherokee County was levying heavy school taxes in order to provide buildings, a number of which were being erected in the districts recently settled.

The late '60s brought about the establishment of the independent school districts, chiefly in the central and eastern portions of the State, and in 1866 and 1867 commenced the era of building substantial schoolhouses in the chief centers of population. Davenport led in this movement, with West Des Moines, Iowa City, Waterloo, Cedar Falls, Ottumwa and Fort Dodge briskly following in thus providing for the expansion of graded and high schools. The Independent district of Sioux City was formed in 1869, and embraced within its jurisdiction two schoolhouses, seven teachers and 400 persons of school age.

#### EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS IN THE '70S.

It was not until 1874 that a normal institute was required in every county, and that the compulsory attendance feature of the law of 1861 was eliminated. That is to say, the statute of 1874 provided that the sessions should be held "at such times as the schools in the county are generally closed. The



management and control of these annual meetings devolved upon the county superintendent, who was authorized to employ, with the concurrence of the superintendent of public instruction, such assistance as might be necessary. The chief objections to the old law came from the newer counties of Northern and Northwestern Iowa, and a real hardship was worked in those school districts where the teachers were often called away to attend the institutes when their presence was required at home. These unsettled sections of the State, many of them ambitious to have their children educated, were particularly bitter against the compulsory feature of the former law, which was eliminated by the statute of 1874.

#### COUNTY SUPERINTENDENCY OPENED TO WOMEN.

Since 1875, there has been no contention that the office of county superintendent of schools is not open to women. In that year Howard A. Huff was defeated by Elizabeth S. Cook for the superintendency of Warren County. The judge of the Circuit Court supported Mr. Huff's contention that Miss Cook could not qualify on account of her sex; neither could the contestant, as he had not received a majority of the votes cast at the election. Miss Cook appealed to the State Supreme Court, and its decision was anticipated with much interest. Women had been holding the office since 1869 under a ruling of the attorney general that they were eligible, and when Miss Cook took her case to the Supreme Court women had been chosen to fill the office in five counties. "Before the Supreme Court could render its decision," says Jay J. Sherman, an educator particularly identified with Northwestern Iowa, "the General Assembly enacted a law providing that women were eligible to the office and making the provisions of the act retroactive. The Supreme Court, therefore, did not pass upon the original question at issue, but did affirm the power of the Legislature to admit women to this office and to legalize past elections. The immediate effect of this decision was to double the number of women elected to the office of county superintendent in 1876. The number has steadily increased since that time, with the exception of the years 1878, 1880, 1882 and 1888. The election of 1921 placed sixty-one women

in the office, six of whom succeeded men, while only four women were succeeded by men. Since the regular elections of 1921 (written in 1923), there have been six changes in the personnel of county superintendents. In these changes three women succeeded women, two men succeeded women and one man succeeded a man."

When the value of women in the leading personnel of the State system of public education is weighed, it should be stated that the fall election of 1922 placed a woman at its head—a representative of one of the northeastern counties. This formal acknowledgment of the efficiency of women as executives, as well as educators, has meant much to the development of the schools in the northern part of the State.

#### COMPULSORY ATTENDANCE.

It was in this period of the late '70s that the principle of compulsory attendance at school was first brought prominently before educational experts and the public at large. In 1876 Governor Cyrus C. Carpenter asked, in his biennial message, whether it would not be wise to insist on every child attending the elementary school for a definite period. On this point Clarence R. Aurner states in his history: "There was a distinction made between compulsory attendance and compulsory education. The latter, it was declared, would involve a consideration of environment and occupation, and might be accomplished without attendance upon the sessions of a school. One might be opposed to forced attendance who would fully approve of a training for every individual. For example, it was suggested by Superintendent C. W. von Coellin, who was not convinced of the wisdom of compulsory attendance, that for habitual truants industrial and reformatory institutions should be provided, rather than forcing their attendance on the public schools."

#### RISE OF THE SCHOOL LIBRARY IDEA.

The desirability of providing school libraries as adjuncts to the public system was spread abroad in the late '70s. There was some disagreement among the authorities as to whether the tax provided for the support of school libraries



should be assessed upon the township or the district, which were sometimes coextensive. In the last resort, it was the teachers as individuals who took the initiative in arousing public interest and in contributing the funds for the maintenance of a working equipment; and so what were designated as teachers' educational libraries were collected in several counties. Not only did such eastern counties as Keokuk and Mahaska embrace this movement with enthusiasm, but such northern counties as Cerro Gordo. It was the means of bringing to the northern and northwestern counties of the State much good literature to be used in connection with school studies which they would not otherwise have received.

#### NORTHWESTERN IOWA ACADEMIES AND COLLEGES.

In the '80s, before the high and normal schools of a public nature had been well organized in Northwestern Iowa and the other new sections of the State, various sects and private parties established institutions for normal and business training. One of the first of these was the Northwestern Classical Academy, which was founded at Orange City, Sioux County, in 1882. Its normal department was opened in 1908, and its aim is the same as it was in the year of its establishment—to prepare students for “unconditional entrance into the best colleges and universities of the land.” At the same time, courses for teachers and others who do not contemplate collegiate training are provided. It was not until 1894 that the Northwestern Classical Academy secured the proper building equipment so that it could be said to be established on a substantial basis.

The Northwestern Business College of Sioux City was established in 1884, and has a normal department in connection with its business courses. It was the commencement of a long line of similar institutions which have been in operation in the metropolis of Northwestern Iowa, such as the National Business College and Brown's Commercial School. There have also been similar schools on a smaller scale at LeMars, Storm Lake, Estherville and other places.

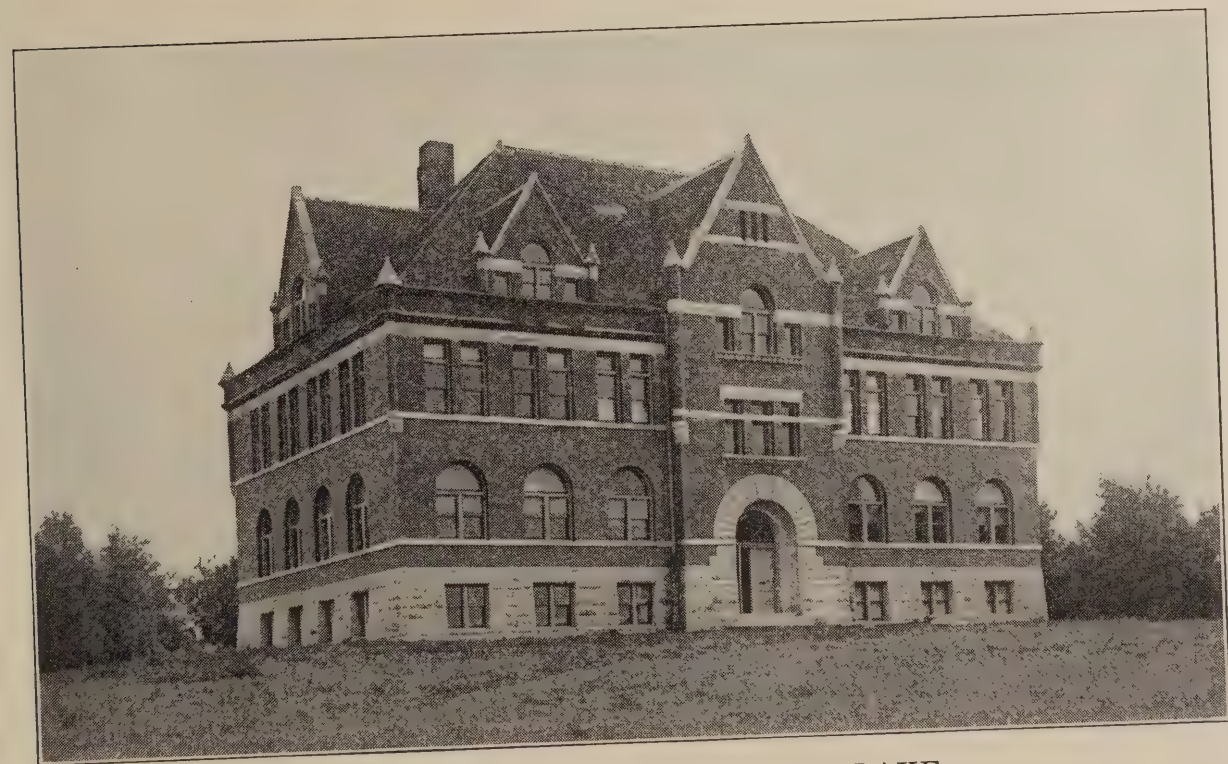
In 1885, the Society of Friends (Quakers) organized at Paullina, O'Brien County, and two years afterwards established a school which has done good work. Its curriculum





NORTHWESTERN CLASSICAL ACADEMY, ORANGE CITY

The first educational institution in Sioux County to teach the higher branches



BUENA VISTA COLLEGE, STORM LAKE





covers eight grades, with music omitted, and two years of high school work. It met a real need in the community before the local public schools were systematized.

#### NORTHWESTERN NORMAL SCHOOL AND BUSINESS COLLEGE.

One of the most noteworthy establishments in this semi-public field of higher education is the Northwestern Normal School and Business College of Le Mars, Plymouth County. Although the State Normal School (Iowa State Teachers College) had been established at Cedar Falls in 1876, it was some years before its extension work was so systematized as to be available generally to those who wished to become teachers. After the citizens of Le Mars had petitioned the Legislature to establish a State Normal School there, and offered liberal inducements looking to that end, they decided to found a private normal school which might draw its support from a territory west of Des Moines. They found an able and enthusiastic man at hand, to found and promote such an enterprise.

Since 1875, Professor Jacob Wernli, a highly educated Swiss, had been principal of the Le Mars public schools and county superintendent of Plymouth County. In 1850, he had graduated from a normal school of his native country, and five years afterward settled in Wisconsin, where he had served as county superintendent and principal of a Milwaukee ward school and later as assistant of the State Normal School at Platteville, Wisconsin, and of the German-English Normal School at Galena, Illinois. Professor Wernli had therefore all the required qualifications to undertake and perform the task desired. Aided by the citizens of Le Mars, he bought the former schoolhouse, which had been enlarged, and after having fitted it up handsomely and completely, with his associate and friend, Prof. J. F. Hirsch, opened the normal on March 28, 1887, with eleven students. At the end of the third year, when the attendance had reached nearly 200 students, Professor Wernli withdrew from the management, and was succeeded by his former partner, Professor Hirsch, and Prof. A. W. Rich, also a successful normal teacher, who continued to develop the institution to a high grade.



The enterprise was established and conducted under many difficulties, as were other private normal schools. It was considered and treated as an outlaw by the denominational institutions, by the better high schools, and by other institutions which enjoyed endowments. In founding the school at LeMars, Professor Wernli employed largely his own means. Six departments were represented in the organization—preparatory, normal, business, college preparatory, musical and military—and no private enterprise of an educational nature has been more highly esteemed in Northwestern Iowa than the Northwestern Normal School and Business College.

A similar institution has been in operation at Denison, Crawford County, for nearly thirty-four years. Through local enterprise, the Denison Normal and Business College was established in 1892, and since that year has been in session not only during the school year but in the summer months.

#### BUENA VISTA COLLEGE.

The nucleus of Buena Vista College, at Storm Lake, was formed as early as 1883, when the Calliope academy of that little town in Sioux County was offered to the Presbytery of Fort Dodge, and in 1885 was taken over by that body and became the Fort Dodge Collegiate Institute. As it did not flourish there, a change of location was again suggested and offers for a new site were received from various towns in Northwestern Iowa. In the fall of 1890, the Presbytery of Sioux City was set off from that of Fort Dodge. In July of the following year, the two Presbyteries met at Storm Lake to definitely decide upon a location. The joint commission appointed for that purpose accepted the offer of the Storm Lake Town Lot and Land Company, which had made the proposition to "donate a campus of about eight acres and to erect thereon buildings of the value of \$25,000 suitable for college purposes." The final meeting was held July 8, 1891, and on the following day the organization and incorporation of Buena Vista College was completed. The synod of Iowa, in regular session at Boone, unanimously adopted the college, and it has since been under the protecting wing of the Pres-

byterian Church. Its courses of study embrace the collegiate branches, education, commerce, home economics, agriculture, oratory and music. Of the 120 credits required for graduation, eight credits must be covered by Bible study.

#### MORNINGSIDE COLLEGE.

Morningside is one of the most delightful suburbs of Sioux City. It is to the southeast of the city proper and, with its handsome residences and generous grounds, occupies a series of noble heights dominating the inland country and the Missouri valley for miles around. This is the site of Morningside College, which has been expanding in its buildings, equipment and educational scope, under the immediate control of the Methodist Episcopal Church, for more than thirty years.

In September, 1894, the Northwest Iowa Conference of the Methodist Episcopal Church appointed a commission to establish a college at some place within the bounds of its jurisdiction. An institution known as the University of the Northwest had been established by Sioux City men (in 1889) at Morningside, and in the fall of 1894 this property was purchased by the conference commission. On December 5, 1894, Morningside College was granted a charter. Although heavily endowed as a Methodist institution, it is non-sectarian, and in close accord with the State system of education. The State Board of Education grants first grade certificates without examination to graduates of Morningside who have followed its recognized normal course. Its pre-engineering course is given under arrangement with the schools of engineering at Iowa City and Ames. The standing of the college is further recognized by the North Central Association of Colleges and Secondary Schools, and the Association of American Universities has also placed it on its approved list. Under the College of Liberal Arts, which grants the only degree given at Morningside, that of Bachelor of Arts (A. B.), there are several pre-professional courses. The School of Home Economics, Conservatory of Music and the School of Expression, give extensive work in their lines. The enrollment of Morningside is approximately 1,100, and



the average number of graduates is about eighty; total income, \$140,000, and productive endowment, more than \$600,000.

The last of the leading denominational colleges to be established in Northwestern Iowa was the Western Union College at Le Mars, Plymouth County. It was established in 1900 by the Evangelical Church and is coeducational, giving both preparatory and collegiate courses. In the College of Liberal Arts three courses are offered, classical, modern languages and scientific, granting degrees of B. A. and B. S. The three-year courses in music grant degrees of Mus. B. The academic courses cover four years and the business courses one year and three years. The Western Union College has a total endowment of \$150,000, and its permanent improvements are valued at \$350,000.

#### COUNTY UNIFORMITY OF TEXTBOOKS.

While these various academies, normal schools and colleges of Northwestern Iowa were being founded and developed as centers of education leading to university courses, educated business training and professional preparation, the General Assembly was busy attempting legislation which should benefit every section of the State, the rural as well as the urban districts. One of the most vital of the subjects upon which largely depended a unified progress of the schools everywhere was the necessity of providing for uniformity of textbooks. The difficulty of formulating a law to bring it about was to devise a uniform classification of books which could be used in towns and cities as well as in the rural communities, the practical bearings of education differing in distinctive environments. After much debate, a bill was passed and approved which was naturally a compromise, as the strongest and most definite division of sentiment was between those who wished State uniformity or nothing, and those in favor of a local option clause on county lines and permitting free textbooks.

The bill became a law by receiving the approval of Governor Horace Boies on May 7, 1890. The distinctive feature of the law is the optional system of county uniformity. A "Board of Education," consisting of the county superintend-



ment, the county auditor and the members of the Board of Supervisors, was created for each county. If one-half of the school directors in the county should sign a petition asking for a uniform series of textbooks in the county, it became the duty of the County Board of Education to arrange for a vote on the question at the annual school election in March. In case a majority of the electors voting at the election favored the proposition, the Board of Education was required to "meet and select the school textbooks for the entire county and contract for the same under such rules and regulations as the said Board of Education may adopt." Further details of the plan were specified, and it was stated that the law did not apply to schools in cities and towns, although such schools might adopt the books selected for the county and buy them at the prices fixed by the Board of Education.

This law apparently met with general approval, for it was many years before there was further serious agitation of the textbook question. The following counties availed themselves of the provisions of this act in 1891—that is, as soon as it was legal: Appanoose, Buena Vista, Butler, Cherokee, Davis, Emmet, Greene, Grundy, Hardin, Harrison, Howard, Jasper, Johnson, Jones, Linn, Louisa, Madison, Mahaska, Mills, Mitchell, Muscatine, O'Brien, Plymouth, Polk, Ringgold, Shelby, Tama, Winneshiek and Worth. Since that time, textbook uniformity has been adopted by Adair, Adams, Benton, Black Hawk, Boone, Cerro Gordo, Chickasaw, Clay, Dallas, Des Moines, Dickinson, Fayette, Floyd, Guthrie, Ida, Monona, Sac, Taylor, Union, Warren, Washington, Woodbury and Wright. In other words, uniformity of textbooks is in operation in fifty-three of the ninety-nine counties of Iowa in all the schools excepting those in the independent districts; and twelve of the twenty counties covered by this history have adopted the plan formulated by the General Assembly in 1890.

#### ASSOCIATIONS OF TEACHERS.

It was largely through the foresight and instinctive sociability of Henry Sabin, superintendent of public instruction for two terms, 1888-90 and 1892-94, that various associations of educators throughout Iowa were formed for good

fellowship and mutual improvement. "Round tables" of schoolmasters—both men and women—principals and superintendents were formed primarily for these purposes. They were known as township associations, round tables, district associations, bi-county, tri-county or other groupings, until the four quarters of the State succeeded in establishing periodical meetings that rivaled or even excelled in some particulars the activities of the State organization. Among the earliest of these groups was the School-Masters Round Table of Eastern Iowa. In 1888, the principals and superintendents of the Fourth Congressional District formed an association. Some well known names appeared in that group, such as John B. Knoepfler, of Allamakee County, who succeeded Mr. Sabin at the end of the latter's first term as State superintendent of public instruction, and Edwin G. Cooley, later Chicago's superintendent of schools. One of the most successful of the early meetings held under the auspices of the Fourth Congressional District Association was that at the town of Sheldon, O'Brien County, which drew its attendance from neighboring territory.

A year later, the women teachers of Southeastern Iowa met in a "round table" at Cedar Rapids, which was in harmony with the association of women organized in conjunction with the general State Association. In 1889, other "round tables" came into public notice—notably the Central Iowa group meeting at Boone; the west-central educators, whose headquarters were at Carroll; the "blue grass" round table, established first at Council Bluffs, and the Mississippi round table, which included teachers from Illinois.

During 1891, Superintendent Sabin recommended that these several forms of educational gatherings should undertake to formulate plans for Iowa's educational exhibit at the approaching Columbian Exposition. Thus all units were employed in furthering the cause then being officially promoted by the general association. It was also through a call issued by Superintendent Sabin, in 1894, that the first of the large district organizations was summoned at Storm Lake, Buena Vista County. Soon after, he issued another call for a similar assembly representing the northeastern section of the State to meet at Waterloo, Black Hawk County. There



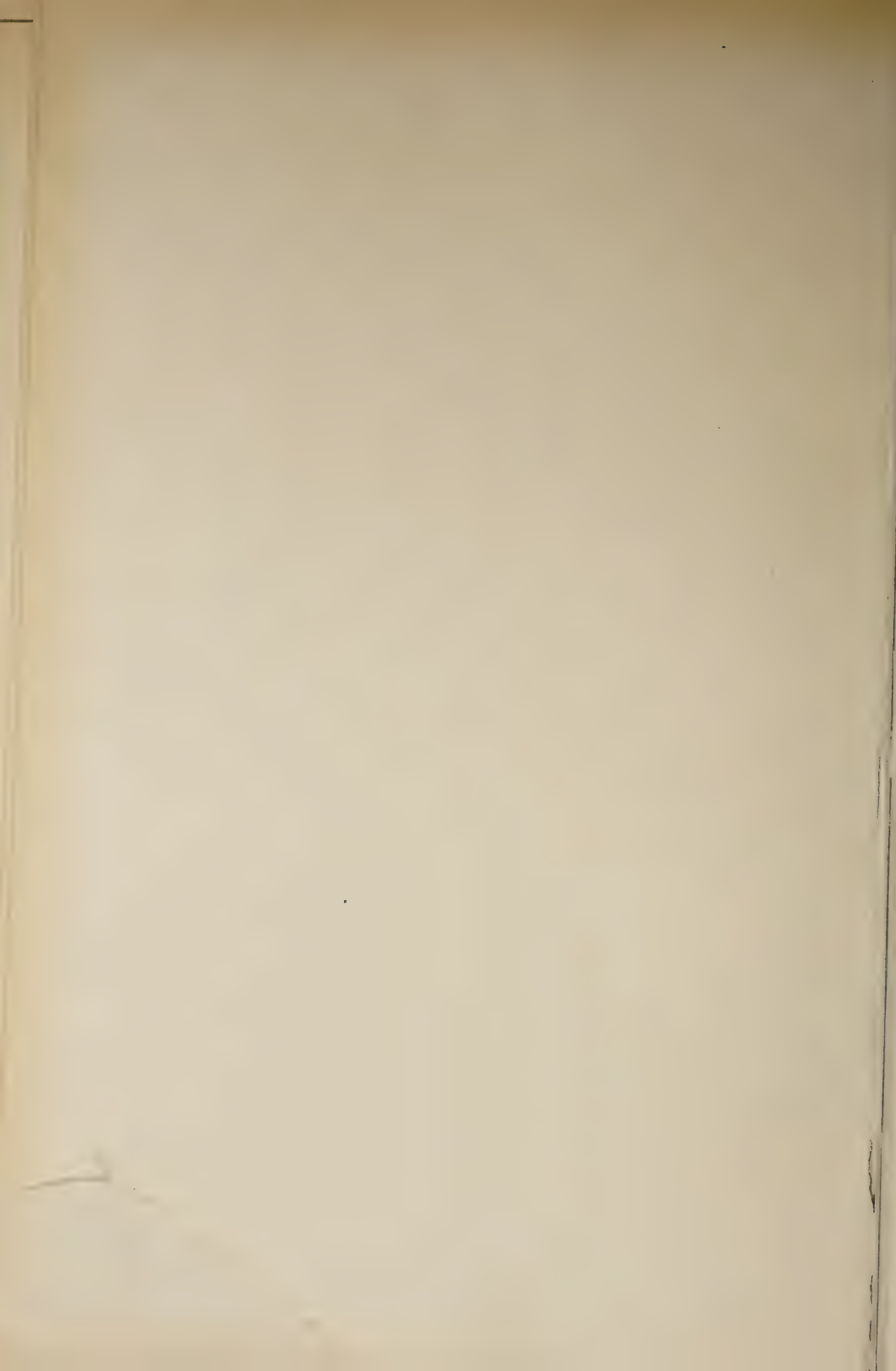


CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL, SIOUX CITY



HIGH SCHOOL, POCAHONTAS





was a large attendance at both of these assemblies. Thus the northern half of the State led in this commendable coöperative movement, the southeastern and southwestern associations being subsequently formed. While the southern district associations were being established, those of the northern were increasing in popularity and usefulness, more than eight hundred members having enrolled at Sioux City in April, 1895. The round tables were absorbed by these district associations, which were also supported by the State University and its departments. They were rightly considered as broad avenues provided by the profession throughout the State by which educational questions and problems could be discussed with those who were the personal mediums by which they could be laid before the people.

A suggestive commentary upon the significance and wide influence of these mutual benefit organizations is the following: "While these greater conventions are illustrative of what may be accomplished in bringing opportunities nearer to those interested, the cause of their popularity may be found in the large number of minor groups which were often represented in the larger assembly. For example, it was pointed out that during the year 1895 eighty-six counties had well organized associations for teachers, while fifty-seven of these had township conventions as well, which meant that, including the larger divisions, there were, during the year, a total of eleven hundred meetings. It was further shown that the number had nearly doubled in the biennial period, which indicated to some extent the effect of the larger organizations upon local interests.

"For this no one individual may be given the credit, since leaders were active everywhere. At the same time, there were some who were more conspicuous than others; and it is a fact that the teacher in the ranks was showing signs of growing into an appreciation of these mutual improvement organizations. It was Henry Sabin who had written in 1895 that 'a dead teacher in a live community is out of place. A live teacher in a dead community becomes disheartened and fails to do good work. But a dead teacher in a dead community—God pity the children!'"

## LONG STEP TOWARD EDUCATIONAL DEMOCRACY.

When the Twenty-sixth General Assembly of January-April, 1896, passed the free textbook measure, the State of Iowa took the most pronounced step toward a really free system of public education. At that, there was no compulsion in the matter as to the use of the free books thus offered; for, if he desired, the patron could still purchase the required school books at cost, but, with the two laws in force, as held by the commissioner of labor, "no one need thereafter complain that books cost too much and that pupils could not, therefore, attend school." Under the law of 1896, the electors of any school district, on a petition of one-third of their number, could secure a vote on the question. If the vote was favorable, the trustees of the district were authorized to buy textbooks, making new or revising old contracts, every five years. The statutes of 1896 provided also for a discontinuance of free books on a petition, thus offering an opportunity for any dissatisfied community to abandon the plan.

## TOWNSHIP HIGH SCHOOLS.

In many ways, Northwestern Iowa led in the development of the township high schools and the libraries which were organized both by the trustees of the school districts and the individual teachers who were alive in live communities. In other words, the counties in that section of the State were among the foremost to raise the standard of higher education in the country schools. One of its leading advocates was Prof. Jacob Wernli, founder of the Northwestern Normal School, at Le Mars, and one of the most progressive educators in the State. He proposed in 1895 that a central or union high school should be established in each township, and include in its curriculum agriculture, horticulture and book-keeping. Its teachers were to be elected by the people after nomination by the district board. They should serve one term on probation, and thereafter no contract for less than one year should be permitted. In such cases the principal of the township high school should be the head of the township schools.

In 1899, the advantages of the township high school were



fully and forcibly set forth by the principal of the Washington Township (Greene County) High School. The matter came before the county superintendents of the Northwestern Teachers' Association in that year and the opinion was unanimous for its promotion. At the time, there were thirteen points in the State where some form of the central township school was in operation. It was in 1903 that the township high school at Moorhead, Monona County, held its first commencement and attracted wide attention. Its site was a village of two hundred people and its curriculum included not more than two years of high school subjects. It was noted that of the sixteen pupils who completed its course of study only three resided in the town, and the fact that some of those in attendance had come from long distances without losing a recitation indicated the value placed upon such instruction. While the tuition in the central school was one dollar and a half a month, it had varied from two to fifteen dollars in the sub-districts. But the local prejudice against the centralized school shown by the sub-districts was too much to be then overcome, and the Moorhead experiment had to be abandoned for the time.

#### THE VALUE OF SCHOOL LIBRARIES.

For a number of years school libraries had been supported, with more or less success, both by the townships and individuals, but it was not until 1900 that they were taken under the wing of the State and officially and methodically developed. While the code of 1897 permitted the expenditure of \$25 for the purchase of books for a library without a special vote, a more liberal provision was demanded. An investigation by Richard C. Barrett, Mr. Sabin's successor as superintendent of public instruction, led to the recommendation to the General Assembly of 1900 that an act be passed to withhold a definite annual amount from the school fund for the purchase of library books. The act, as passed, required the withholding by the district treasurer of each school township and rural independent district of a sum equivalent to not less than five nor more than fifteen cents, as the board might determine, for each person of school age. The fund thus withheld

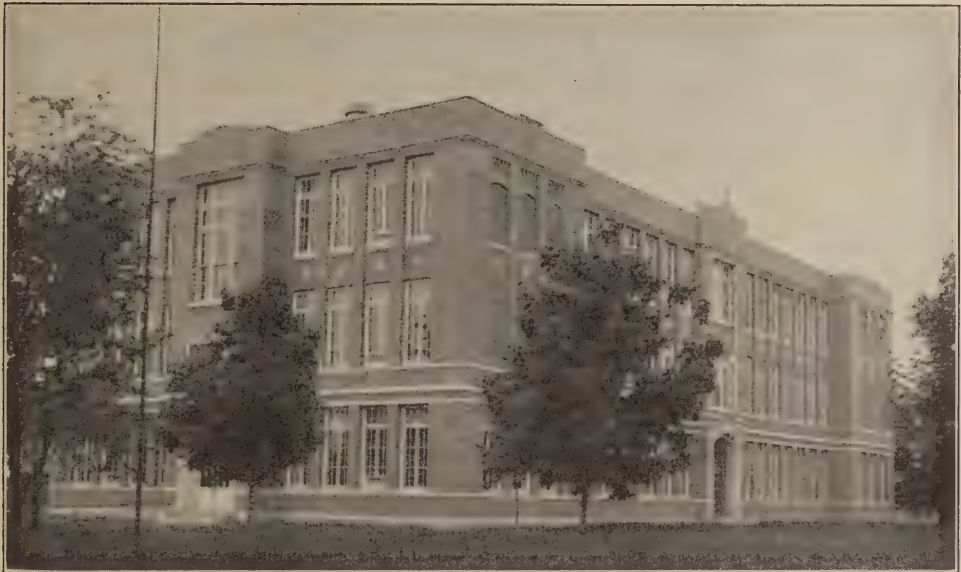
should be expended under the direction of the president and secretary of the board, in conjunction with the county superintendent, in the purchase of books selected from lists prepared by the State Board of Examiners.

At the same time, there was created a State Library Commission which should assist in the formation of school and public libraries. An opportunity was not only offered to each district to provide library facilities, but the law required action relative to the accumulation of choice books. Several of the northwestern counties led this movement in the rural districts and smaller communities of the State to encourage the taste for good literature. Aurner's "History of Education in Iowa" has this in point: "Although it must be said that some boards refused to enforce this act, it was very generally observed—but probably not at the maximum amount which the law specified. In this connection, it is worthy of mention that a citizen of O'Brien County, Mr. George W. Schee, employed his wealth in encouraging districts not only to use the full amount allowed, but also to raise additional sums by offering prizes to those most successful in Northwest Iowa. His own county was so well managed that in 1901, after a period of five years' growth, it possessed 10,500 volumes representing an expenditure of \$6,300 for the rural schools or an average of eighty books for each district in the county. At the same time, the graded school libraries of that county included 4,000 additional volumes; while a special collection of 650 volumes for teachers was maintained through the generosity of Mr. Schee, who gave \$100 annually for five years for this purpose.

"Other counties in the northwest were pursuing similar plans. Osceola County reported an average of sixty-four volumes for each rural, and ninety-four for each of the graded schools, while 400 volumes constituted the professional library for the teachers. Here, also, the influence of the money and inspiration of Mr. Schee was apparent. During the biennial period ending in 1901 the county of Palo Alto had raised \$9,000 through private subscription for library purposes, while Calhoun County increased its library equipment by 3,000 volumes during the same period. Webster County likewise had a teachers' library of 1,200 volumes,



HIGH SCHOOL, JEFFERSON



HIGH SCHOOL, LAKE CITY





with a central station from which eight traveling sets of about one hundred volumes were sent over the county for local groups of readers. No section of the State was able to equal these counties in the rapid improvement of library equipment."

#### CONSOLIDATION OF SCHOOLS.

For a number of years previous to 1900, the sentiment supporting the consolidation of schools, or, in more general terms, "centralization in education," had been gathering strength in the less settled districts, which were obliged to economize and yet, were often willing to send the children long distances to obtain educational privileges. As far as possible the State provided transportation, where the distances were too great. In 1902, an endeavor was made to amend the existing law so as to give electors an opportunity, at stated intervals, of voicing their opinion as to the consolidation of two or more districts, or an entire township. Notwithstanding this set-back to the movement, by September, 1904, thirty-five counties had permanently or temporarily put consolidation of their school districts into effect.

The greatest drawback to the consolidation plan was to provide the pupils who wished to attend the central school with adequate transportation if they came from considerable distances and away from improved highways of travel. Yet these difficulties were by no means insurmountable, as was illustrated by the county superintendent of Clay County, who, in writing of Lake Township, said in 1903: "If some evil genius had been selecting a township in the fair State of Iowa for the trial of consolidated schools, he could not have selected one in which the plan would have been better calculated to fail. Three large lakes from six to ten miles in circumference dot the landscape and the township is covered with marshes. The roads are abandoned in some cases." Nevertheless, the undertaking was declared a success from the beginning. The citizens of Lake Township, Clay County, wanted to send their children to a good central school, rather than to several inferior district schools, and they did so, in spite of poor, muddy roads. As the highways have been con-

tinuously improved in Northwestern Iowa, the consolidated school has gained in favor. Especially in 1911 did the Thirty-fourth General Assembly make more liberal provision for the transportation of children to and from school, and four years later (1915) the State aid to consolidated schools was increased from \$3,000 to \$100,000 annually.

#### THE NORMAL TRAINING HIGH SCHOOLS.

The training of teachers in the high schools of Iowa has been in operation since 1911. The last biennial report of the Department of Public Instruction for the period ending June 30, 1924, indicated that there were then 196 normal training high schools where 5,790 students were being trained to teach in the rural schools. There is annually appropriated for that work \$150,000. The Fortieth General Assembly amended the law relative to State aid for consolidated schools maintaining the normal training course, by which all consolidated schools receive the same amount of State aid as other normal training high schools.

#### THE STANDARDIZED RURAL SCHOOLS.

The standardized rural school law passed by the Thirty-eighth General Assembly marked a turning point in Iowa's educational policy, for it was the first time that that body had recognized the necessity and the desirability of extending direct financial aid and encouragement to the one-room rural school. The appropriation of \$200,000 made at that time is the first money ever sent back from the State treasury to the farmers' schools, the one-room rural schools. The significance of this fact should be realized when it is known that one-fourth of all the children of Iowa get their schooling in these little houses. The value of this law is particularly appreciated by the residents of Northwestern Iowa. The law applies to any school located in a district other than a city, independent or consolidated district not maintaining a high school course. The standardized rural school must be in operation eight months each year; must have suitable and sanitary grounds and buildings; its teacher to have a first-grade certificate or its equivalent, with an attendance of at



least ten pupils, for which the district receives \$6 for each pupil. It is rightly said by the State superintendent of public instruction, May E. Francis: "There is no appropriation made in Iowa for education which has yielded greater returns in giving better school privileges to as large a number of pupils than the money set aside to standardize the rural schools." For the school year 1923-24, the fund was not large enough to care for all the schools meeting the standards established by law, and the superintendent therefore recommended to the Forty-first General Assembly that the amount be increased to \$150,000 annually.

During the school year 1923-24 rural schools located in ninety-four counties were standardized. All but one of the twenty counties embraced in this history (Monona) made reports, as follows:

County	No. of Schools	6-Months Pupils
Buena Vista -----	7	104
Calhoun -----	10	201
Carroll -----	6	109
Cherokee -----	11	147
Clay -----	4	161
Crawford -----	27	477
Dickinson -----	6	70
Emmet -----	21	401
Greene -----	14	195
Ida -----	14	201
Lyon -----	9	202
O'Brien -----	5	65
Osceola -----	11	214
Palo Alto -----	15	235
Plymouth -----	4	72
Pocahontas -----	4	58
Sac -----	6	78
Sioux -----	12	234
Woodbury -----	3	46
Total -----	189	3,270

## A BUSY GENERAL ASSEMBLY.

There are few General Assemblies of Iowa which have passed more constructive legislation regarding the schools than the Thirty-eighth of 1919. Although much of the school legislation was new, not a few measures were also passed for the purpose of clarifying the law.

The organization of the County Board of Education, whose function it is to administer the law in regard to the uniformity of textbooks, as well as of other matters, was completely changed. Whereas, the board formerly consisted of the county superintendent, the county auditor and the county supervisors, since the law of 1919 went into effect the board has consisted of the county superintendent ex-officio and six reputable citizens of the county of either sex, of good educational qualifications, "no two of whom shall be from the same school corporation." The text of the law continues: "Each regular convention held for the election of county superintendent shall elect three members of said board, whose terms of office shall be for six years and until their successors are elected and qualified." The board acts in an advisory capacity upon all matters referred to it by the county superintendent, and coöperates with him in formulating plans and regulations for the advancement and welfare of the schools under his supervision. The first election under this law occurred on April 7, 1919. The County Board thus chosen retained its functions in regard to uniform textbooks.

## TEACHERS' MINIMUM WAGES.

The teachers' minimum wage law was completely rewritten in order to make the salaries of public school teachers more nearly adequate. The least that a college graduate with a State certificate could be paid was \$100 monthly, and, after two years of experience, \$120. It happened, too frequently, that teachers having contracted to teach in one school, received a better offer elsewhere, and entered into another contract to teach at the second place, thus leaving the first school without a teacher. Therefore, to protect school boards in the employment of teachers, a law was enacted by the Thirty-eighth General Assembly which declares that con-



HIGH SCHOOL, WHITING



HIGH SCHOOL, SPENCER





tracts with teachers who are already under contract are invalid until the "former contract shall have been released or cancelled."

#### POST-WAR LEGISLATION.

As a result of the war and the "intense antipathy toward hyphenated Americanism," several acts were passed by this assembly such as those establishing English as the medium of instruction in secular subjects taught in all public and private schools of the State, although foreign languages could be taught above the eighth grade; also providing for the teaching of American citizenship in the public and private primary and secondary schools of the State. After July 1, 1920, no teacher was to receive a certificate who had not satisfactorily completed the prescribed training in this regard. An attempt was made to pass bills either excluding all aliens from employment as teachers in the public schools and State educational institutions, or to exclude applicants of countries who had been at war with the United States, but both measures failed of passage. Another bit of post-war legislation of practical value was the passage of an act by which the public schools should be free of tuition to resident honorably discharged soldiers, sailors and marines, for as many months after becoming twenty-one as they had spent in the military service of the United States before reaching that maximum of school age.

Another act passed by this historic assembly was that granting State aid to schools that received funds for vocational education. As originally provided in 1917, the local community was required to raise an amount equal to that expended by the Federal Government; under the law of 1919 this equivalent was met by the State.

#### PART-TIME SCHOOLS.

An attempt was made to bring the child labor law and the compulsory school attendance legislation more into harmony. Heretofore all children under sixteen years of age (except those over fourteen who had work certificates or were employed in a store where less than eight people were

employed, or worked in establishments or occupations owned or operated by their parents, or had an eighth grade education or its equivalent) were required to go to school. For the benefit of the children between the ages of fourteen and sixteen who are allowed to work instead of attend school, or have an eighth-grade education and are not engaged in a useful occupation, the legislation of 1919 authorizes the establishment of part-time schools in which may be taught "any subject given to enlarge the civic or vocational intelligence" of the pupils. There must be not less than eight hours of instruction a week between the hours of 8 A. M. and 6 P. M. Such schools were to be established when there were fifteen eligible pupils in the district, and the attendance is compulsory.

#### LATE LEGISLATION AND PRESENT LAWS.

The regular and extra sessions of the Fortieth General Assembly, extending from January, 1923, to July, 1924, brought out much school legislation, some of which materialized into laws. The old question of making the office of county superintendent of schools elective instead of appointive was argued around several bills, as it had been for a decade. But nothing came of the wrangle.

On the other hand, the statute governing the transportation of pupils in districts where the schools have been closed was amended so that the county board was compelled to furnish transportation only where the distance is two miles or over. Formerly transportation had been furnished pupils who lived one and a half miles from the school to which they had been assigned.

One of the most constructive measures enacted by the Fortieth General Assembly provided that physical education be introduced and required of all pupils in public elementary and secondary schools after September 1, 1924. In preparation for such instruction, every state college and high school which offers normal courses must provide for physical training in the curriculum.

Three laws evidently intended to inspire higher ideals were enacted by the Fortieth General Assembly. One made



services in connection with the raising of the United States flag in schools compulsory rather than optional. Another fittingly requires officials to raise the flag over schools and other public buildings on Mother's Day. The third act designates March 21st as State Bird Day, and makes it the duty of all public schools to observe the day by a special study of birds and their protection.

#### VOCATIONAL EDUCATION.

A subject which vitally affects Northwestern Iowa is vocational education, especially as it concerns the farmers. It is developing very rapidly, and the school districts are fast taking advantage of the Smith-Hughes Act, under the provisions of which Iowa receives about \$100,000 annually in furtherance of vocational education. The general subject concerns itself with three types of instruction—those relating to agriculture and the industries, and domestic or home-making education.

In her last biennial report, May E. Francis, state superintendent of public instruction, has this to say of vocational agriculture: "Prior to the enactment of the Smith-Hughes law, Federally-aided instruction in agriculture was available only to students at the land-grant colleges, or to adult farmers that were reached through the agricultural workers of the state extension service.

"Statistics show that only a small per cent of the pupils who graduate from high school ever go to college. With this fact in mind the Smith-Hughes law, or the vocational education act, was proposed and enacted. The law provides reimbursement or Federal aid to help schools extend practical instruction in agriculture to pupils of high school age. This plan offers technical and practical instruction to students who are unable to go to college, enabling them to go at once upon the completion of the high school course into the productive occupation of farming.

"The state funds that are appropriated are used for administrative purposes only. No part of this fund is reimbursed to the school districts. The Federal funds used for reimbursement to the districts are matched, dollar for dollar, by the funds of the local district.

"The intent of the law is carried out as follows: First, by training teachers for this special type of agricultural teaching. Second, by the district conducting the work in agriculture in a more practical and useful manner, and over a period of two years rather than from one-half to one year. This intent of the law is further carried out by the district offering a course in practical farm shop work, instead of the prevailing type of manual training work, which consists largely of cabinet work and furniture making. The results obtained are three-fold.

"Through contact with the pupils of the grades, the teacher of agriculture can bring before these pupils the thought of taking up the work in vocational agriculture when they enter upon the high school work. Much excellent pre-vocational work can be done.

"While teaching the classes of farm shop and agriculture, the teacher can give his pupils a vision of the useful and practical side of farming. The students realize that farm work is something more than drudgery and are able to see that it is a vastly interesting field of work. The best way to study any subject is to actually perform the details of that operation. The project that the pupil carries and the practical farm problems that arise, afford an excellent opportunity for the instructor to put his teaching on a 'doing basis.' The carrying out of the project offers an opportunity to study the many different phases of farming and to develop an interest in that work.

"The third field of service for the teacher of vocational agriculture is that of community service. In each school where agriculture is taught, it is very desirable and essential to have the moral support of the rural patrons. The teacher of agriculture can render service to the adults through giving assistance in the practical farm problems, and through serving as a leader in community meetings and organizations."

#### ENROLLMENT AND AVERAGE DAILY ATTENDANCE.

Those matters which are most intimately related to the development of education in Northwestern Iowa have been traced, and, oftentimes, specific mention made of the useful



MANNING HIGH SCHOOL



NEW HIGH SCHOOL, SHELDON





participation of that section of the state in the general progress of institutions and measures in vital educational growth. The total enrollment in the ninety-nine counties of the state of those of school age, five to twenty-one years, was for the school year 1923-24, 561,873 and the average daily attendance, 449,391. The twenty counties of Northwestern Iowa covered by this history made the following showing:

County	Enrollment	Average Daily
Buena Vista -----	4,480	3,716
Calhoun -----	4,101	3,337
Carroll -----	3,656	2,943
Cherokee -----	3,700	3,057
Clay -----	4,063	3,300
Crawford -----	4,449	3,589
Dickinson -----	2,851	2,325
Emmet -----	3,479	2,774
Greene -----	4,420	3,468
Ida -----	2,800	2,241
Lyon -----	3,873	3,055
Monona -----	4,714	3,631
O'Brien -----	4,366	3,578
Osceola -----	2,509	1,955
Palo Alto -----	3,876	2,986
Plymouth -----	5,417	4,214
Pocahontas -----	3,541	2,766
Sac -----	4,151	3,461
Sioux -----	5,416	4,386
Woodbury -----	20,146	16,580
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Totals -----	96,008	77,362





## CHAPTER XIII.

### THE PRESS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

NEWSPAPERDOM GETS Foothold in Northwestern Iowa—THE SIOUX CITY JOURNAL AND GEORGE D. PERKINS—THE SIOUX CITY TRIBUNE—OTHER PAPERS PUBLISHED IN WOODBURY COUNTY—NEWSPAPER EXPANSION FROM THE SOUTHEAST—THE BOYER VALLEY RECORD, OF DENISON—THE DENISON REVIEW—THE DENISON BULLETIN—OUTSIDE OF DENISON—THE CARROLL HERALD—THE CARROLL TIMES—NEWSPAPERS OUTSIDE THE COUNTY SEAT—GREENE COUNTY NEWSPAPERS—ESTHERVILLE VINDICATOR AND REPUBLICAN—FRONTIER JOURNALISM—THE ESTHERVILLE DEMOCRAT AND ESTHERVILLE ENTERPRISE—OTHER NEWSPAPERS OF THE COUNTY—FRONTIER JOURNALISM OF THE '70s—THE SPIRIT LAKE BEACON—CLAY COUNTY'S NEWSPAPERS—PRESS OF CHEROKEE COUNTY—THE SECOND CHEROKEE CHIEF—A STIRRING SENTINEL—SAC AND MONONA COUNTIES—O'BRIEN A PIONEER NEWSPAPER COUNTY—NEWSPAPER KING OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—OSCEOLA COUNTY NEWSPAPERS—LYON COUNTY'S FIRST EDITOR—PRESS OF IDA AND SIOUX COUNTIES—INTERIOR NEWSPAPER COUNTIES—THE STORM LAKE PILOT—FIRST CALHOUN COUNTY NEWSPAPERS—JOURNALISTIC SPIRIT APPEARS IN PALO ALTO COUNTY—PIONEER NEWSPAPER CONVENIENCES—FONDA TIMES, POCAHONTAS COUNTY—REPRESENTATIVE WESTERN JOURNALISM.

Most of the newspapers of Northwestern Iowa were founded after the Civil war, although the press of the state commenced to take root in the eastern and southeastern sections of the commonwealth thirty years after the close of the war of the rebellion. Dubuque, Fort Madison, Burlington, Davenport and Iowa City all blossomed as newspaper towns in the late '30s, and the Burlington Gazette and Hawk-Eye are still in the race as leading representatives of the press in the state. After 1840, papers sprang up in all parts of the territory. In an enumeration made a few years later, of twenty papers in existence, nine were democratic, eight were whig and one was content with "liberty" as a political creed, while religion and agriculture had the benefit of one newspaper each.

## NEWSPAPERDOM GETS Foothold IN NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

The Civil war was nearly upon the country before Northwestern Iowa was sufficiently out of her swaddling clothes to toddle into journalism. To carry out a figure of speech founded on the facts, on July 4, 1857, Sioux City fluttered into the newspaper field through the Sioux City Iowa Eagle. It is said that the mechanical work of this pioneer was far above the average of the day, and that its local columns were brisk and fresh concerning the goings and comings of the few hundred settlers of Woodbury and Plymouth counties. Seth W. Swiggett, an experienced newspaper man of Cincinnati, and a brilliant writer, had an ambition to cover a broader field, as announced in the sub-head lines of the Eagle, which announced itself to be an "independent local journal devoted to the interests of the great Northwest, particularly of Iowa. It will contain the local news of Iowa, Minnesota, Nebraska and Kansas." A news item, upon which the Eagle generously comments is this: "We learn a paper is to be established at Sergeant's Bluff—also another at Fort Omaha, Nebraska Ty. Pitch in: there is room for all of us!"

Sure enough, the second paper to be established in Northwestern Iowa was established at Sergeant's Bluff in August, 1857, and was called the Western Independent. It was ventured by Cummings & Ziebach, and seven months afterward was moved to Sioux City and its name changed to the Register. It was a democratic journal, and in 1860 was consolidated with the Eagle. Although it did not lead a vigorous life, it survived until 1871. The Sioux City Times, which was started as a republican newspaper in March, 1860, was given a much shorter lease of life.

## THE SIOUX CITY JOURNAL AND GEORGE D. PERKINS.

Some time in June, 1863, the Sioux City Journal was first published, but on account of the illness of its editor, E. B. Stillman, was suspended after a few weeks of uncertain existence. The Register of August 15, 1863, thus announces its demise:

"Died—In this city on the 11th inst., after a lingering



GEORGE D. PERKINS





illness of about nine weeks, The Sioux City Journal, second son of the republican party of Northwestern Iowa."

This was the first short chapter in the long and substantial life of the Sioux City Journal.

On August 20, 1864, the Journal reappeared under the editorship of J. V. Baugh. The surviving and democratic Register, in its issue of August 27th, thus heralds its rebirth: "Mr. Baugh, who has come among us to resuscitate the twice-dead Sioux City Times and the late defunct Journal, appears like a pleasant gentleman and an agreeable citizen. We are sorry to see so good a fellow inveigled into so thankless and unprofitable an undertaking as that of publishing a republican paper at this place." Mr. Baugh retired from the Journal in October, 1864, selling his interest to S. T. Davis, register of the United States land office, who was succeeded in November by Mahlon Gore, who continued its manager, editor and proprietor for a period of about four years.

There was soon to enter a rich and stalwart personality into the very fabric of the Journal and vitalize it as one of the most forceful newspapers of the Northwest. In the spring of 1869, Mr. Gore, who had enlarged the paper several times, sold it to George D. Perkins, a practical printer and trained newspaper man, who, with his brother, Henry A., had published the Gazette at Cedar Falls from 1860 to 1866 and prior to that had had newspaper experience at Baraboo, Wisconsin. The first number of the Journal published with Mr. Perkins at the helm was that of May 13, 1869. With characteristic energy, foresight and ability, Mr. Perkins at once made radical improvements, in form, appearance and mechanical facilities of the Journal. In the holiday season of 1869, he ventured a little daily paper called the Journal, Jr., and the effort was so kindly received that a permanent daily was decided upon. Early in 1870, Henry A. Perkins bought a half interest in the Journal, and the first number of the daily was issued on April 19th of that year. In 1876 Henry A. severed his connection with the paper to accept the office of state binder, which he retained for two terms. In 1878 he rejoined the Journal and continued as one of the proprietors until his death on November 22, 1884.

George Douglas Perkins, the younger of the Perkins

brothers, continued to be the great force in the upbuilding of the Journal and a leader in the public affairs of Sioux City and the State of Iowa. His living influence never weakened until the day of his death, February 3, 1914, and the breadth and strength of his character and the significance of his acts live after him. In all the essential developments of a metropolitan newspaper he was the guiding master, and both as a pictorial agent of the world and the state and an honest and honored voice in its affairs George D. Perkins was dominant in the Christian spirit of morality and tolerance. Whether in the public service of the state or nation, particularly that of a congressman for twelve years, Mr. Perkins inevitably rose to the high standard of his conscience and abilities.

Under the significant title of "A Journalist of Purpose," George D. Perkins is thus thoughtfully and justly sketched in *The Palimpsest* of August, 1924: "The service of Representative Perkins in Congress, as in the State Senate, during a period altogether of twelve years, was notable for the same characteristics of sincerity and ability that distinguished him as an editor. One sample only of his work in the State Senate need be cited here—the feat of securing a special act authorizing the bonding of the heavy floating debt of a number of northwestern counties. Perkins accomplished this by sheer power of logic, by persistent urgency of the truth and necessity of the case in the face of an overwhelming original adverse majority in both houses led by Senator Larrabee, then and long, justly the most influential man in the Legislature. In the end he won the assent of Senator Larrabee himself and a sufficient majority to pass the measure, which proved to be of great importance in the progress of Northwestern Iowa. At Washington, he was the same man merely transferred to the National Congress, adequate to its responsibilities, indefatigable, thorough, and so acquitting himself as to be relied upon there also for support and counsel.

"He was an effective public speaker. His spoken, like his written word, was the purest English, terse, pregnant. As his own conclusions were reached by deliberation, so he addressed himself to the reason of his hearers and readers. Not



a stentorian orator, he spoke in good voice with power of emphasis. His discussions were luminous and logical, pointed by a ready wit, always impressive by sincerity and solidity of substance. He was averse to the theatrical and sensational. It is impossible to imagine him laboriously confecting metaphors and polishing epigrams for mere rhetorical display in a legislative hall or other forum where men were met for real business. Reason and conscience were the lights which guided him, and his way in private and in public was to hold up those lights to other men.

“The power of George D. Perkins was the power of character, the influence of the strong-minded, true-hearted man of whom other men know that he will never do a thing or say a thing unless he believes it to be true. He had the vision to see and the force within him to open the door of opportunity in a wide theater of the Northwest during an era of unrivaled human interest. In journalism, he rose to a high place of leadership in his own state and the West. There, and in a still broader field, he won his way by worth to permanent public approval and confidence in the not overcrowded ranks of those strong men who by right and by necessity always have constituted, and always will constitute, the power behind the throne greater than the throne itself.”

At the time of Mr. Perkins' death in 1914, when in his seventy-fourth year, he had been editor of the Journal for nearly forty-five years. The marked steps in the mechanical progress of the Journal were the installation of a Hoe web press in 1886—the first of its kind in the State of Iowa; and the establishment of its first battery of Mergenthaler linotype machines, in which it was also the pioneer. This latter innovation, in 1894, was also in advance of every other newspaper in Iowa. On June 9, 1890, the Journal established the first Monday morning edition of any paper in the state. In February, 1892, it purchased the Sioux City Daily Times and continued to publish it as an evening edition, and it was published as such for a number of years. The name was then changed to the Journal, and the Times disappeared from the newspaper field of Sioux City.

Following the death of Mr. Perkins, the Journal passed

to his sons and daughters, who have continued its publication under the same corporate name, viz., Perkins Bros. Company.

#### THE SIOUX CITY TRIBUNE.

The Sioux City Tribune originated in the Sioux City Daily and Weekly Times, which was first issued in May, 1869. The Times was established by a company of printers from Omaha, with Charles Collins as editor. After a time, Mr. Collins became sole proprietor, and the daily issue was changed from a morning to an evening paper. After three years, the daily was discontinued; Collins continued the weekly some four years longer, and then sold to H. L. Warner and Mahlon Gore, who changed the name to the Sioux City Tribune, the title under which the paper is still published. Warner & Gore issued the first number of the Sioux City Tribune on March 24, 1876. During the following four years there were a number of changes in the proprietorship. Mr. Warner retired, after a few months; was succeeded by C. R. Smead, who sold an interest in the paper to Albert Watkins; Watkins & Smead conducted it until May, 1879, when Watkins became sole proprietor. On the 1st of January, 1880, John C. Kelly, of the Des Moines Leader, bought the entire plant of Mr. Watkins. The Daily Tribune was established September 15, 1884, and from that time until his death on October 27, 1920, Mr. Kelly was its editor. Mr. Kelly was succeeded by his sons, John H. and Eugene, who have continued its publication as editor and business manager respectively.

#### OTHER PAPERS PUBLISHED IN WOODBURY COUNTY.

Such a prosperous and progressive community as Sioux City attracted many ambitious newspaper men to the local field. Some succeeded with various degrees of success; others promptly succumbed to unappreciated efforts and a scant treasury and others dragged their enterprises wearily along "sustained by an unflinching trust" that their abilities would be recognized by rewards of dollars and cents. But journalism of whatever American section has more graves than temples.

A few of the earlier publications may be mentioned as still in the land of the living. The Sioux City Volksfreund, a German paper, was founded May 7, 1885, by Prof. C. Alexander, who died in April of the following year. Oscar A. Hoffman succeeded to the business and the editorship, and in October transferred the plant to a company, he being retained as a member and the editor.

The Stylus, one of the oldest publications devoted to social, dramatic and personal matters, was founded in Sioux City in the summer of 1889.

The organ of the Swedish element, the Svenska Monitoren, was founded in 1895.

The oldest of the scholastic newspapers is the Collegian Reporter, established in 1895, and devoted to the special interests of Morningside College. Publishing offices of the Wilson Bulletin, a quarterly founded in 1889 and devoted to ornithological subjects, were transferred to Sioux City in 1925.

The commercial and trade interests centering in Sioux City are represented by the Live Stock Record, established in 1901, and the Daily Commercial Reporter.

The American Legion Monthly was founded in 1920.

In Woodbury County, outside of Sioux City, the press is creditably represented.

Sloan, in the southwestern part of the county, which has long been a large cattle handling center, established one of the early newspapers of that section in the Star, which was founded by A. B. Thatcher in October, 1883. Other newspapers were published at Sloan, but the Star is the only one which still shines. Danbury and Smithland, in the southeastern part of Woodbury County, have had their ups and downs in newspaper publication, and in the '80s made a number of attempts to place journals where they would stay. At present writing Danbury has its Review, which dates from 1883, and Smithland, its Sioux Valley Tribune, which commenced publication as late as 1917. The Correctionville News, in the northeastern part of the county, was established in 1882; the Merville Mail, about fifteen miles to the west, in 1887; the Pierson Progress, farther north near the Plymouth County line, in 1909, and the Morningside News, rep-



representative of the expansion of Sioux City's attractive suburb, in 1921.

#### NEWSPAPER EXPANSION FROM THE SOUTHEAST.

Outside of Sioux City the earliest rise and expansion of journalism in Northwestern Iowa occurred in its southeastern counties—Crawford, Carroll and Greene. Soon after the establishment of the town of Denison in Crawford County, its founder, Jesse W. Denison, decided that the interests of the new community demanded some medium for the dissemination of news. The answer: A newspaper. So Mr. Denison purchased a printing plant in Cincinnati; a Washington hand press, some job type, printer's ink and other simple articles comprised the outfit of this printing office which ushered in the birth of the northwestern press in this section of the state.

#### THE BOYER VALLEY RECORD, OF DENISON.

Mr. Denison called his five-column four-page paper the Boyer Valley Record. It was established in 1860. He was responsible for it as manager and publisher, but he hired H. H. Crowell as printer and editor and Newton Brogden, afterward of Deloit, as Crowell's assistant.

The publication of the Boyer Valley Record was continued until Crowell became engaged in a quarrel with I. N. Allen, in the course of which the latter was struck on the head with some heavy, blunt instrument, rendered unconscious and died a few hours afterward. Crowell was taken to Sioux City for trial, but was acquitted on the ground of self-defense. But, as no printers were available, the affair ended the existence of the Record, and Mr. Denison stored the type and machinery in a little building on the site of the present city hall.

#### THE DENISON REVIEW.

In 1866, G. W. Stephens and M. H. Money had established the Jefferson Bee in Greene County and, hearing of the Record's idle plant at Denison, now a promising railroad town, leased it and revived the newspaper enterprise under the

name of the Denison Review. The date of its first issue was May 3, 1867. The paper was a six-column folio, or a four-page publication. After struggling two years against many difficulties and, discouraged by the business situation and the crop ravages of the grasshoppers, Mr. Stephens suspended publication of the Review. The absence of a newspaper, after enjoyment of the luxury, was severely felt by the people of Denison, and on July 16, 1869, the Review was revived by J. D. Ainsworth and H. C. Laub. As it has been continuously published since, it is the oldest business establishment in Crawford County operated under the same name. J. Fred Meyers, in 1874, purchased the Review, being at that time a division chief in the United States Treasury Department. From that time, until his death in 1898, he retained an almost continuous connection with the Review, either as editor or publisher, or both, taking his son, Charles K. Meyers, into partnership with him in 1884. From the latter year until 1893 the son was the active manager of the paper, J. Fred Meyers being again identified with the Treasury Department. Charles K. and F. W. Meyers, brothers, afterward became identified with the Cerro Gordo County Republican. For several years prior to 1905, F. W. Meyers was associated with various newspaper men in the ownership and management of the Review. The Review Publishing Company was then formed and in 1910 J. P. Conner purchased Mr. Meyers' interests, the paper being under the active management of his son, R. P. Conner.

#### THE DENISON BULLETIN.

G. W. Stephens, the founder of the Review, also established the Bulletin in 1873. A. B. Keith gave the Bulletin its first real start, and under his slashing pen its rival, the Review, found a bitter enemy. In the early '80s Crawford became a democratic county and the fortunes of the Bulletin were improved. There have been various changes in its editorial management, but with the exception of its refusal to support Bryan in 1896 the Bulletin has sustained democratic principles.

## OUTSIDE OF DENISON.

The Charter Oak Times was one of the first papers established along the line of the Manilla and Sioux City branch of the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railroad. The paper was founded in June, 1887, by J. Edward McMullen, a venturesome newspaper man from Centerville, South Dakota.

The Vail Observer is the oldest paper in Crawford County outside of Denison, having been founded by G. A. W. Davidson in May, 1878.

West Side, on the Boyer River and the line of the Chicago & North Western Railway, seems to have been considered a fine field for newspaper enterprise and at one time three newspapers were being published in the little village simultaneously. At the present it has but one—the Journal, established in 1891.

In January, 1900, a German paper made its appearance at Schleswig, a small village on the North Western line in the northern part of Crawford County, named the Herold, but in 1903 the bulk of its reading matter was changed to English, and the general title changed to the Leader.

On March 24, 1900, a newspaper called the Sentinel was issued at Kiron, a few miles northeast of Schleswig. Two years afterward (February 22, 1902), it was merged with the News and has since been published under that name.

So much for the Crawford County newspapers, old and young.

## THE CARROLL HERALD.

For the first twelve years in the political life of Carroll County, its citizens depended upon outside offices for its official printing; and the mortifying part of this dependence was that a neighboring county and county seat had to be called upon to supply these demands. Since 1866, a firm at Jefferson, Greene County, had been publishing a small sheet called the Bee that served the purpose of a newspaper, and did the printing for business men and public officials farther west. When the treasurer of Carroll County prepared his first delinquent tax list, he was obliged to go to Jefferson to have it printed. The sheets were printed and the publication was



made by posting them in public places. Other legal notices were published in the same way. Blanks were filled out and notices posted in the postoffices, storerooms, blacksmith shops and at cross-roads. Most of the blanks used by the county officers and other public officials were supplied by a Davenport publishing house. Occasionally a drummer dropped in to solicit orders, but most of the business was transacted through the mails.

When the North Western was built across the county and the seat of justice was moved from Carrollton to Carroll in 1867, the demand for a newspaper became imperative. O. H. Manning, then starting his business and professional career at the new county seat, in the spring of 1868 established the Enterprise, which was printed at Jefferson. This arrangement no longer satisfied the progressive business men of Carroll, such as Mr. Manning, William Gilley, J. E. Griffith, J. K. Deal and G. P. Wetherill. Mr. Gilley bought a newspaper outfit in Chicago, and J. F. H. Sugg, who had come from the East some time previously and found work as a civil engineer and clerk, was made editor of the paper now projected as the Western Herald. A small building was hired near the North Western tracks and the first issue of the newspaper appeared on the 8th of September, 1868. The Western Herald prospered and soon drifted to O. H. Manning. In March, 1871, the name of the paper was changed to the Carroll Herald, under which title it has since been published. The first association of the present management with the affairs of the Herald was in June, 1886, when J. B. Hungerford obtained an interest in it, becoming its sole proprietor in January, 1890. In March, 1919, the present ownership was formed, the senior member taking John Hungerford, Jr., into partnership under the name of J. B. Hungerford & Son. The Herald has occupied its own building since January 1, 1920.

#### THE CARROLL TIMES.

The Carroll Times was started in 1897 as the outgrowth of differences arising in the ranks of the county democracy, and in 1911, with the Carroll Herald, absorbed the Sentinel. The latter had been started at Glidden in 1877 and three

years later moved to Carroll. In the building of the Carroll Times, it is conceded that W. H. Wahl was the strongest force.

#### NEWSPAPERS OUTSIDE THE COUNTY SEAT.

Coon Rapids and Manning have been most successful in establishing newspapers outside of Carroll, in the county. The Enterprise, of the former place, has had remarkably few changes in its management, business or editorial. Very soon after it was founded in 1883, it was purchased by Samuel D. and Lyman H. Henry, and for two years was conducted by Henry Brothers. In 1885, it became the property of S. D. Henry, its present owner and editor.

The first newspaper at Manning was started shortly after the town was founded in November, 1881, by S. L. Wilson. After running the Monitor for nearly two years, he sold the newspaper to Seth Smith, one of the pioneer business men of the town. Then, for a decade, followed quite a succession of proprietors and editors, and for a number of years afterward, E. M. Funk and Erwin Funk, father and son, owned and operated it. Though a republican paper at the start, the Monitor became democratic in the middle '90s and is now classed as independent, leaning toward the democracy.

Breda, a German-American village in the northwestern part of the county, on the Chicago & North Western line, has been the home, more or less permanent, of several newspapers. Somewhat unique as to the nature of its support is the Ostfriesische Nachrichten, published in that village for nearly forty-five years. It is published in the German language in the interest of the Ostfriesen, whose forefathers migrated from the shores of the North Sea to England as part of the grand Anglo-Saxon invasion. Within comparatively recent years many of those left in the Fatherland emigrated to the United States and formed prosperous colonies in Illinois, Iowa, South Dakota, Nebraska and other states. The Ostfriesische Nachrichten is intended to serve as a connecting link between the historic Friesland of the Old World and its numerous colonies in the Northwest. It was started by Rev. L. Huending, of Dubuque, in 1882, and has been issued from Breda since 1884. It is pronounced to be the "only

real country paper in Carroll County, as the work on the paper is being done in the country four miles west of town." For fifteen years the presswork was done by the Carroll Herald, but is now being done in the office of the paper west of Breda. It has a good circulation among its country people both in the Northwest and Germany. Until within quite recent years, Rev. L. Huending, the founder of the paper, was its editor and publisher.

The Breda Watchman was started in 1890 by J. J. McMahon, then principal of the town schools and afterward editor of the Tama County Democrat. The newspaper was discontinued in 1908, and in the following year W. I. Kortright established the News.

Glidden, a village in the eastern part of the county on the North Western road, barely sustained the Sentinel, News Boy and Success, from 1880 to 1886, and it was not until four years after the Success went under that H. C. Ford, formerly owner of the Carroll Sentinel, ventured to put out the Glidden Graphic. Since the year of its establishment in 1890, the newspaper has had the usual experience of editorial and proprietorial shiftings of other publications in small towns.

#### GREENE COUNTY NEWSPAPERS.

In the course of this sketch of the progress of the press in Carroll and Crawford counties, it is evident that the Jefferson Bee, of Greene County, was to some extent its foster mother. As stated, the year of its founding was 1866. The next paper to be established in Greene County was the Globe-Portrait and News at Grand Junction, a few miles east of the county seat and a flourishing point at the junction of the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul and the Chicago & North Western lines. That publication was first issued in 1870; the Journal, of Scranton, a good town in the western part of the county, in 1879, and the Herald, another Jefferson venture, in 1894.

#### ESTHERVILLE VINDICATOR AND REPUBLICAN.

The first newspaper in Emmet County was the Northern Vindicator, the first number of which was issued December



14, 1868, by Eaton Northrop and O. C. Bates. As Emmet is in the first tier of counties south of the Minnesota line, the *Vindicator* may be said to be the pioneer newspaper of far Northwestern Iowa.

#### FRONTIER JOURNALISM.

Apropos of the tribulations of frontier journalism is the following from the writer of an Emmet County history: "Like every other frontier newspaper, the *Vindicator* fought a hard fight during the first months of its existence. The distance from railroads and civilization was a serious handicap, the work was hard, financial returns small, living difficult. The frontier editor was often regarded by his contemporaries in larger settlements as a sort of martyr, a man willing to risk bankruptcy for the sake of spreading his profession to the frontier country. Most of the men who brought journalism to the unsettled country of the West were men who found living conditions back East too crowded, who were more contented to eke out a small existence in a broader field than to combat the severe competition in more thickly settled communities. They generally brought their office materials and their mechanical apparatus with them. The hand press and the type were often those which had been discarded years before and purchased for a song. The settlers were as a rule anxious for a newspaper, but when it came to paying hard cash for the privilege many of them were reluctant. Potatoes, wood, building materials, grain and flour were taken by the editor in many cases 'on subscription.'

"In the summer of 1869 the *Vindicator* ceased publication for several weeks, which afforded the Humboldt County Independent occasion to remark sarcastically that the *Vindicator* had 'given up the ghost.' Editor Northrop, in his issue of June 17, 1869, answered: 'Our subscriptions increased so much more rapidly than we had anticipated, and our distance from rapid transportation facilities being so great, we were unable to keep up a supply of paper; we have been waiting patiently for six weeks for that which has now arrived, and henceforth the *Vindicator* will appear regularly to our patrons, who shall have no cause for complaint as regards its imprint or character as a journal.' "

Numerous editors and proprietors succeeded each other on the Northern Vindicator, and in November, 1902, it was consolidated with the Emmet County Republican, established twenty years previously. George A. Nichols had been associated with the Republican for many years when the consolidation occurred, under the title of the Vindicator and the Republican and he has since been at its helm.

#### THE ESTHERVILLE DEMOCRAT.

The Estherville Democrat, weekly, was established by Peter Johnston in 1888. The uninsured plant was completely destroyed by fire in March, 1895, but was rebuilt and publication resumed. On November 25, 1896, Mr. Johnston sold to Frank Carpenter and Edward H. Sillge, and Mr. Carpenter subsequently became sole proprietor of the paper. From February, 1901, until about a year later, the Daily Tribune was published as an afternoon edition of the Democrat (except Sunday), and has been Estherville's only venture in daily journalism.

#### THE ESTHERVILLE ENTERPRISE.

A. F. Lowe established the Estherville Enterprise in 1900. The newspaper was soon placed in the hands of a stock company, and since April, 1913, has been owned and conducted by G. C. and C. K. Allen. In the following year the plant was destroyed by fire, but in December, 1916, the Enterprise occupied a complete home of its own.

#### OTHER NEWSPAPERS OF THE COUNTY.

The Armstrong Journal was established in the fall of 1892 by S. S. Bellefield. In 1900, it was consolidated with the Armstrong Republican.

The Ringsted Dispatch was established at the village named in March, 1901, so that Eastern Emmet County is well represented by local publications.

#### FRONTIER JOURNALISM OF THE '70s.

During the '60s and the '70s, Northwestern Iowa, as a whole, was in the domain of frontierdom, although the coun-

try toward the Minnesota border was more in the wilderness than that farther to the south. In the latter decade half a dozen counties were inoculated with the newspaper fever at the very outset of the '70s. From north to south they were Dickinson, Clay, Cherokee, Plymouth, Sac, and Monona counties, and in the following decade newspapers came into all sections of Northwestern Iowa with the greater rush to that section of the state which followed more stable times, and the publicity and realization of the fact that there waved the golden banner of corn at its very best.

#### THE SPIRIT LAKE BEACON.

Dickinson followed closely after Emmet County in kindling the fire and light of intelligence as they flared through the press of Northwestern Iowa. The first newspaper published in Dickinson County was the Spirit Lake Beacon, and its first number was dated September 6, 1870; the writing and editing were done at Spirit Lake and the printing was done by the Estherville Vindicator. The county then contained about 1,200 inhabitants; Spirit Lake had a dozen buildings on its site and Milford had just been platted. But there was the field of battle which was braved by more than one frontier newspaper man. There was so much in the name that those who had decided that a paper should be, such as Orson Rice and R. L. Wilcox, rejected everything common as a title. Several claim the credit of naming the infant, and one who was particularly strong in that claim also puts these words in his own mouth: "The position which Dickinson County occupies geographically, being the most elevated portion of the state, together with our facilities for navigation"—here he paused and wet his throat with some of Roscoe's distilled lake water "makes it particularly fitting and meet that we should have a Beacon to shed its light upon the world and serve as a guide to the weary emigrant seeking a homestead; and, by the way, I will show a man a devilish good claim for ten dollars." At first the Beacon was a patent outside concern, but it commenced its second volume as a "home print." In 1872, the newspaper was sold to O. C. Bates, the founder of the Estherville Vindicator. The changes in proprietorship for nearly forty years thereafter include, as own-



ers of the Beacon, J. A. Smith, A. B. Funk and E. G. Blackert. In 1910, the firm of Funk & Blackert sold out to O. E. Smith, present editor and publisher.

Spirit Lake has had other newspapers since the Beacon was established, such as the Dickinson County Journal (republican), the Spirit Lake Democrat, Huckleberry's Paper and the Spirit Lake Pilot, but they all succumbed to inadequate support. The Milford Mail, however, which was first issued by J. A. Smith, formerly of the Spirit Lake Beacon, in 1882, has endured; Thomas McCulla is its present publisher.

Other newspapers published outside of Spirit Lake are the Lake Park News, its first number being issued on September 1, 1890, by A. B. Chrysler, and the Terril Tribune, established in 1899, by E. Taylor and John Hayden.

#### CLAY COUNTY'S NEWSPAPERS.

The News, Clay County's first permanent newspaper, was started at Peterson, an old, but still little village, in the southwestern corner of the county and located about twenty-five miles from the nearest railway. In 1871, Spencer was platted on the newly surveyed line of the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railway. As it was also near the geographical center of the county, it was not only destined for county seat honors, but as a more promising newspaper town than little old Peterson. In the fall of 1871, the voters of Clay County decided to move the seat of justice from Peterson to Spencer, and at the same time the News transferred its plant and headquarters to the new county seat.

On leaving Peterson, the News lost a considerable number of its subscribers in the southern part of the county, but the ambitious men of Spencer came to the rescue with a liberal amount of advertising, and many subscriptions were obtained from the incoming homesteaders who were settling in large numbers on the vacant government land. The paper made very satisfactory progress until the early summer of 1873, when the first invasion of the grasshoppers occurred, and its business suffered with the departure of so many citizens and families from the devastated area. The Spencer Herald was established in the summer of 1891, and its con-

solidation with the News resulted in the founding of the News-Herald, which has long been the local newspaper at Spencer.

For more than a decade after the News left Peterson, that place was without a press representative, but in April, 1882, E. J. Helms and E. G. Blackhurst established the Peterson Patriot, which is now issued by Roy A. Jarnagin. Everly and Webb, stations and shipping points on the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul line, respectively in the northwestern and the southeastern parts of the county, have newspapers—the Everly News, established in 1887, and the Webb Record, in 1900.

#### CHEROKEE COUNTY NEWSPAPERS.

The first attempt to establish a newspaper in Cherokee County was made in January, 1870, and was contemporaneous with the advent of the Illinois Central Railroad into Northwestern Iowa from Iowa Falls to Sioux City. In the fall of 1869, the section of the road from Sioux City was completed to Meriden, then known as Hazzard, where it remained until the following spring. The season of 1870 brought to Cherokee County so many emigrants that in June of that year the population had reached almost 2,000 and by December nearly 3,000. It was during the summer of 1870 that the division of the railroad from Iowa Falls to the western section which terminated at Meriden was connected with the division from Sioux City, and a continuous line formed through the state from east to west. The north and south line did not come until 1887; and these two eras of railroad building corresponded with the most pronounced activities of newspaper expansion.

It was during the boom of 1870, as the two western divisions of the Illinois Central approached their junction at Meriden, that J. F. Ford, an employe of the Boone Standard, reached Cherokee (in January) and secured a room in the old courthouse wherein to install his little six-column hand-press and a case of type. The building, then situated in the Old Town, was the only structure at the county seat; there was no farm house within half a mile of it and the postoffice

was a mile distant. Mr. Ford called his paper the Cherokee Chief.

Thomas McCulla, who years afterward made his mark as a successful newspaper man of the county, has this to say of this pioneer experiment and experimenter in Cherokee journalism: "Although inexperienced, Mr. Ford was a writer of much ability and force of expression. However, for several months his editorials were a little shy, from the fact that the columns of his paper were filled with state laws, which were dished up in eloquent style at 33 1/3 cents per 'square,' as provided by law. But fate had marked the young newspaper man, for one day he wrote these words: 'The children of the settlers grew up like the dusky savages around them.' This he said in connection with an item on the lack of public schools in the county. From that day on, he was looked upon as a public enemy. The county auditor, who had charge of the courthouse property, gave notice to him to vacate the courthouse in which his office was located. The name of the first paper, Cherokee Chief, was indeed very appropriate, and had its editor not written the harsh criticism he did, possibly the Chief would have remained the only paper in the county for some time."

The second newspaper to be established in the county was the Cherokee Times, founded in September, 1870, after the gap in the Illinois Central Railroad had been closed. The man behind the enterprise was Robert Buchanan, who had been publisher of the Plaindealer at Marquette, Michigan, and the Post, of Appleton, Wisconsin. He paid Mr. Ford \$300 to leave Cherokee County and give him the field, subscription list and good will. This amount was raised by the people, and in October Mr. Buchanan moved his newspaper and job printing outfits into a small frame building that stood on the present site of the Allison Block. "Buck," as he was popularly called, was an able editor and a high-minded, public-spirited citizen, and the Times soon reached a substantial condition in reputation and finance. But he was fearless and aggressive, and as Cherokee progressed as a live town and three other newspapers entered the local field, political and personal journalism recognized Mr. Buchanan as perhaps its leading figure. Judge Charles H. Lewis, so long



either district attorney or judge of the District Court, was Buchanan's bitterest opponent, but the attacks of the newspaper man upon the judge were long within the bounds of legal safety, until a careless proofreader was the eventual cause of "Buck's" undoing.

In a certain issue of 1884, the Times contained a squib about as follows: "A certain district judge, living not 100 miles from Cherokee, accepted a piece of land in Minnesota for rendering a decision in court." Mr. Buchanan had written "a certain district judge living not 1,000 miles from Cherokee," etc., but, in some way, either through one of the ciphers falling out of the form, by error of the compositor or the proofreader, or through a dozen other mishaps which might have occurred in any newspaper office, the 1,000 miles were cut down to 100 and the charge brought within the law of criminal libel; for no other district judge than Lewis lived within 100 miles of Cherokee. Buchanan was therefore indicted for criminal libel and a judge came from Waterloo to Cherokee to try the case. Buchanan had also been indicted in Plymouth County for the same offense, and Judge Lewis instituted a civil case asking \$10,000 damages for slander. If all these cases should be brought to trial, much time and expense would be involved and the bitterness of feeling between the political factions which had been rampant for nearly fourteen years would be increased. So the various attorneys effected a compromise by which Mr. Buchanan pleaded guilty to criminal libel in Cherokee County and the other cases against him were dismissed. A fine against him was imposed, and in January, 1885, he sold the Times to R. L. Rowe. Since that year, the Times has had many changes of editors and owners, Thomas McCulla having enjoyed a long and notable period in its development. C. and J. Barry are its present editors and publishers.

#### THE SECOND CHEROKEE CHIEF.

The second paper known as the Cherokee Chief was originally the Democrat, which was established in 1885 by W. P. Goldie. Mr. Goldie had been formerly identified with the Free Press, which had been started as a democratic organ,

and afterward donned republican garments. In 1884 the Cherokee Cyclone was first issued under the banner of the democracy, but it was absorbed by the republican Times about 1886. Then three strong democrats, J. D. F. Smith, J. V. Ward and James McConnell, determined that Cherokee County must have an organ of their political faith and established the Democrat. In 1888 the paper was bought by the Cherokeean, which had been established by W. P. Goldie in 1885. After a few issues, the paper became the Cherokee Democrat, and under that name and ownership Mr. Goldie was at the head of its growing affairs until 1921, when it passed into the hands of the Caswells (G. L., C. C. and P. H.). They restored to it the name of the Cherokee Chief, as at present known.

Marcus and Aurelia developed into the most thriving stations and shipping points along the east and west line of the Illinois Central in Cherokee County outside the county seat, and in the early '80s newspapers were established at both these villages which are still in operation. The Aurelia Sentinel was founded in March, 1881, and the Marcus News in September, 1882. No sooner did the people of Cherokee County obtain the east and west railroad connection through the Illinois Central than they commenced to agitate north and south communications. These they obtained in 1887, and soon afterward the ubiquitous newspaper man appeared at every station of any promise. Papers were started at Quimby and Larrabee, but none survived, and about the same time an assault in force was made upon Washta, farther to the south, but of the several ventures there only one had met with a measure of success. Although the first issue of the Washta Journal was printed in 1887, it was several years before it was considered established.

#### A STIRRING SENTINEL.

The LeMars Sentinel was founded by J. C. Buchanan on February 3, 1871, and its editor seemed to have had the same keen faculty of stirring the community as Robert Buchanan, of the Cherokee Times. This Buchanan, of Plymouth County, was always trying to break the county ring, and did all in his power to discourage the rush of gold seekers to the Black

Hills in 1874-77. He claimed that gold could be dug from the soil of Northwestern Iowa much more surely than from the Black Hills of Dakota. Both his editorials and his head-lines were triumphs of flaming English and typographical art. He was a master of invective and the "artillery of type." For instance, at the height of the gold excitement, when Northwestern Iowa was being emptied of its farmers, the LeMars Sentinel burst forth as follows in big black type:

"GOLD! GOLD!! GOLD!!!

"The Black Hills for Catamounts and Red Skins—FOR US, Gold Edged Furrows of Plymouth County Soil—Immense Excitement at the Gateway City, Where Half a Million Dollars has just been Invested in the Development of the Gold Placers between Cherokee County and Dakota—Room for 10,000 more men, and the one altogether Lovely—Save Your Scalps by Staying Here."

In May, 1883, Mr. Buchanan sold the Sentinel to G. H. Ragsdale, who revived the daily which Buchanan had started and conducted for a time. Buchanan drifted to Springfield, where, for a time, he was associated with the Illinois State Republican and subsequently was connected with a Kansas weekly. In 1888, Mr. Ragsdale was made State printer and associated himself with E. D. Chassell, who became a leader of Iowa republicanism and assisted in furthering the interests of the Sentinel. For nearly forty years it has been a leading newspaper of Northwestern Iowa. James C. Gillespie is the present publisher.

The LeMars Globe-Post originated in the establishment of the Globe, a democratic paper first issued in October, 1884. Its daily edition was dropped in February, 1886.

The Kingsley Times, in the southeastern part of Plymouth County, a substantial village of about 1,200 people on the Chicago & North Western Railway, was founded in 1883 at Quorn, the rival village of Kingsley. It was then known as the Quorn Lynx. It was afterward consolidated with the News, as the News-Times. Remsen, in the northeastern part of the county, on the Illinois Central line, is a village perhaps a little larger than Kingsley. The local newspaper, the Bell-Enterprise, was established in 1887 by J. P. Kieffer. A part



of the paper was printed in English as the Bell and the same matter printed in German was styled the Glocke.

Akron, a growing town of about 1,500 people on the eastern shore of the Big Sioux and a station on the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railroad, was formerly known as Portlandville. Its first paper was the Blade, established by J. W. Sheppard in 1878. Then followed the Record, the Western Delta and the Register-Tribune at Akron, the last named being established in 1896. The Merrill Record was established in 1890 and the Craig Independent in 1912.

#### SAC AND MONONA COUNTIES.

The above named counties of Northwestern Iowa, farther to the south, fell into line in the ranks of journalism in the early '70s. The pioneer of Sac County was the Sac Sun, established in July, 1871, by J. N. Miller, of Sac City. In succession came the Sac County Bulletin, 1882; the Odebolt Chronicle, established in 1887, about ten years after that progressive little village was laid out on the North Western Railway; the Wall Lake Blade and the Schaller Herald, both founded in 1890; the Lytton Star, 1904; the Lake View Resort, 1909, and the Odebolt News, 1914. Subsequently the Sac County Bulletin was absorbed by the Sac Sun.

The first newspapers in Monona County were published by the Mormons, at Preparation, where the official business was first transacted, in 1854. One was a weekly called the Messenger and the other a monthly, named Zion's Harbinger. Both were established by Charles B. Thompson, the county judge. After the Mormons moved toward the West as a body, various attempts were made by gentiles to found a stable press in their midst. The first newspaper, however, which has succeeded in reaching the present as an intact concern is the Mapleton Press, established in 1870. Its successors, which are also alive, are the Onawa Sentinel, founded in 1884, and which has been under the management of various members of the Gossard family for half of the intervening period; the Onawa Democrat, established in 1889; the Ute Independent, 1890; the Whiting Argus, 1908; the Soldier Sentinel, 1916, and the Moorhead Register, 1920.

## O'BRIEN A PIONEER NEWSPAPER COUNTY.

O'Brien County, situated west of Clay and north of Cherokee, furnished numerous pioneering ventures in the newspaper field of the Northwestern frontier. Its first paper was established in the village of Old O'Brien, located in the southeastern corner of the county where the original pioneers gathered and established their seat of justice. The O'Brien Pioneer, as it was called, although supposed to be the newspaper representative of the county by that name, was printed in Cherokee County by Robert Buchanan, of the Times. Its editor was the eccentric and talented B. F. McCormack, who for nearly forty years was connected with the business and public life of O'Brien County. The Pioneer continued under this rather distracting arrangement until May, 1872, when Col. L. B. Raymond, then publishing the Cherokee Leader, opened a printing office at Old O'Brien, and on the 24th of the month he published the first newspaper printed in O'Brien County.

## NEWSPAPER KING OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

Colonel Raymond conducted newspapers in many other Western Iowa counties, chiefly to secure the public printing and the publication of the state laws in the new and unorganized counties. The publication of the state laws enacted at each session of the Legislature was required by law and was the source of much profit to the proprietor of a weekly country newspaper. The publication of the tax lists was also considered a "fat take" for the newspaper man of the '70s and '80s, and for the purpose of monopolizing this profitable business of the frontier counties, especially in Northwestern Iowa, Colonel Raymond established a chain of printing and publishing offices where newspapers were not already in the field. So successful had he become in this undertaking that he was widely known as the Newspaper King. He finally settled at Hampton, Franklin County, in the northeastern part of the state where, for many years, he edited its chief paper, the Recorder.

The O'Brien Pioneer was moved to Primghar, the new

county seat, in the spring of 1873, and in 1880 it was transferred to Sanborn. Since 1881 it has been published as the Sanborn Pioneer.

When Sheldon was platted by the Sioux City & St. Paul Railroad in January, 1873, it started on its career as one of the leading railroad centers of Northwestern Iowa; eventually it became the junction of the Chicago, St. Paul, Minneapolis & Omaha, the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul and the Illinois Central lines, and, as a city, far outstripped any other town in O'Brien County. It has a present population of more than 3,500. Two newspapers have taken firm root in Sheldon. Soon after Sheldon was platted the Newspaper King established the Mail there. It was his second newspaper venture in the county, when, as the Colonel says, "Sheldon's inhabitants might be enumerated by counting your fingers." For two years it experienced several changes in management and ownership, and even in name, but in August, 1875, F. T. Piper became its proprietor, manager, editor and all-around developer, and continued as such until his death in 1902. Although there have been more brilliant newspaper men, and more lovable members of the profession in Northwestern Iowa than Mr. Piper, there was never one with greater general ability in the building up of a country newspaper than he, and the Mail became noticeably prosperous in that field.

Col. M. B. Darnell, a Civil war officer, was probably the most finished editorial writer that was ever connected with the journalism of the upper counties of Northwestern Iowa, and gave the Sheldon Sun a prominent literary standing, after it had been moved from Sanborn in 1898.

The Sutherland Courier was established by Harvey Hand in 1882, and it is still active, and the Paullina Times was moved from the county seat in the same year, where it had been published for a time as the Primghar Times.

In June, 1884, Hartley published its first local newspaper, the Record. Its name was changed to the Journal when Claude Charles bought the establishment in 1894. Mr. Charles sold the newspaper and left the county, but returned to Hartley in 1912 and established the Sentinel, the last journal to find a foothold in O'Brien County.



## OSCEOLA COUNTY NEWSPAPERS.

Osceola County was organized in the fall of 1871, the Sioux City & St. Paul Railroad was built in the following year and the Town of Sibley was platted on its line. There the county seat was also located in 1872, and in the summer of that year L. A. Baker established the first newspaper called the Sibley Gazette. Furthermore, the first courthouse was erected in 1872; so that the press and the county government were established in substantial form about the same time. The second newspaper at the seat of justice was founded in 1881, by Charles E. Crossly, as the Sibley Tribune, the name afterward being changed to the Osceola County Tribune.

The Town of Ashton was laid out by the land department of the Sioux City & St. Paul Railroad Company in 1872. It was first named St. Gilman, but in 1882 the name was changed to Ashton. The village is in the southwestern part of the county, and its surviving newspaper, the Leader, was established by Claude Charles in 1890.

The Burlington, Cedar Rapids & Northern Railroad crossed Osceola County in 1884, Ocheyedan being platted as one of its stations in the fall of that year. Its first buildings were soon erected, but it did not blossom forth as a newspaper town until August, 1891, when the Press came into existence under the shadow of a great personal affliction. The paper was started by D. A. W. Perkins, who intended it for his son, George W. Perkins, but while the material was still in the boxes at the freight depot, the boy was drowned in Silver Lake, near Lake Park. Under the burden of this terrible misfortune, however, Mr. Perkins issued the first number of the Press on August 7, 1891, and was for many years its editor and publisher.

## LYON COUNTY'S FIRST EDITOR.

The Lyon County Journal, the pioneer newspaper of the county, was one of those publications established to secure the official printing, and, although its editorial headquarters were at Rock Rapids, the printing was done by the LeMars Sentinel, under the management of the well known Buchanan (Buck). The first editor of the Journal, a resident of Rock

Rapids, was C. E. Bristol, a clergyman, who took up a homestead in Lyon County in June, 1871. One of the pioneers of the county writes of this first editor as follows: "He was a minister of the gospel, but did not practice what he preached to any great extent. He had a good horse and top buggy, and cut quite a swath among us who drove ox teams. He it was who told the story of tying the grass in a slough in the vicinity of his homestead and driving his horse and buggy under the arch thus formed. He was an able man and a good speaker and writer, and it was Bristol who delivered the first Fourth of July oration ever heard in the county to a large crowd assembled at Howell's Grove just north of the old Fair grounds.

"Bristol issued the first copy of the Lyon County Journal July 25, 1871. The paper was printed at Le Mars, and was issued for about six months weekly, but finally had a fall-out with old Buck, the proprietor of the Le Mars paper, where he got his paper printed; and somebody jumped his homestead about that time and Bristol jumped the county." About 1872, the Journal was moved to Rock Rapids as a whole, and has since been issued from the county seat as the Rock Rapids Review.

In order of their establishment, besides the Review the other Lyon County newspapers being published at the present time are: Rock Rapids Reporter, 1881; Larchwood Leader, 1888; Doon Press, 1889; Little Rock Free Lance, 1893; George News, 1907.

#### THE IDA COUNTY PRESS.

W. P. Evans established the first newspaper in the county at Ida Grove in March, 1872, and it was appropriately named the Ida County Pioneer. Following the Pioneer were the Ida Grove Record-Era, established in 1877; Battle Creek Times, 1880; Holstein Advance, 1886; Galva Tribune, 1892.

#### SIoux COUNTY NEWSPAPERS.

One of the Big Sioux River counties in the extreme northwestern part of the state, Sioux exhibits all the characteristic thrift of a large Dutch element which was planted in its

southeastern sections more than fifty years ago and which has since expanded into many other communities. In 1869, Henry Hospers and others from Pella, Marion County, Southeastern Iowa, visited Sioux County and made arrangements to establish another colony of Hollanders in the Big Sioux country of Northwestern Iowa. As a result, 562 preemptions were filed on government lands in the Floyd River valley of Southeastern Sioux County and in the spring of 1870 forty families from Pella settled upon them. During the summer of that year Mr. Hospers laid out the town of Orange City, in honor of their Old World hero, the Prince of Orange.

The county had been organized since 1860 and for twelve years its seat of justice had been at Calliope, a town on the Big Sioux River which had a newspaper and was quite a flourishing point before Orange City was even platted. But the coming of so many thrifty Dutch emigrants to the southeastern sections of the county threw the center of population so far to the east that in 1872 the new town founded by the Holland colony became the county seat. The Sioux County Herald was then moved from Calliope to Orange City, and in 1874, in deference to the wishes of the colony of Hollanders which centered at the new county seat, the Orange City Volksvriend was founded, and has since been published in their native language. The Orange City Journal, established in 1922, is an English publication.

It was in the late '70s that the English colonists, with headquarters at LeMars, Plymouth County, spread northward into Sioux County, forming considerable nuclei at Hawarden and Ireton. The former, a few miles south of old Calliope, in time became the junction of the east and west and the north and south lines of the Chicago & North Western Railway and, as a growing town, far outstripped any other in Sioux County. Newspapers naturally gravitated thither—the Hawarden Independent in 1878, and the Hawarden Chronicle, in 1902. The Ireton Ledger was founded in 1903.

Alton, a few miles east of Orange City, has the Democrat, which has been published since 1882. Rock Valley, a railroad junction in the northern part of the county, is a growing little town and has supported the Bee since 1884. Sioux Center follows Hawarden and Orange City in population, but has



only one line, the Chicago & North Western Railroad, for transportation, and no east and west connection, and despite its geographical location is not as well fitted for the county seat as Orange City. The Sioux Center Nieuwsblad was established in March, 1891, and is also supported mainly by the Dutch-Americans. Outside of these main centers of population two newspapers are being published in Sioux County—the Hull Index, established in 1878, and the Hospers Tribune, founded in 1908.

#### INTERIOR NEWSPAPER COUNTIES.

In the '70s, four of the interior counties of Northwestern Iowa raised the inspiring flag of the press; for, although the pioneer newspaper man knows when he goes forth to battle it means a hard campaign and often a fierce fight, there is a certain fascination about the profession which inspires and holds to the task even in the midst of dismal and discouraging surroundings. The men of type and ink who thus ventured into the counties of Buena Vista, Calhoun, Palo Alto and Pocahontas were of the stern stuff of which adventurers and pioneers in any field are made.

#### THE STORM LAKE PILOT.

In the year 1869 one A. H. Willits appeared before the Board of Supervisors of Buena Vista County and asked that body what inducement would be extended to him if he established a newspaper in the county. He was assured of all the official printing of the county, but no money bonus. As the ready cash was what Mr. Willits particularly wanted, the enterprise fell by the wayside. It sprung up, however, in the fall of 1870; for in October of that year Vestal & Young issued at Storm Lake the first number of the Pilot.

The launching of this pioneer of Buena Vista journalism was an event of absorbing public importance. The leading men of the county were present at the Pilot printing office when, on October 26, 1870, the first number of the newspaper issued from the press. After a committee had gravely certified to its genuineness, this first copy was carefully preserved and soon after put up for sale at public auction. It was

bought by L. J. Barton for \$106, after spirited bidding by the business men of the town. Colonel Vestal, the editor of the Pilot, was a versatile writer and an experienced newspaper man. His partner, who had special charge of the mechanical department, gave the paper a neat and sprightly appearance, and it soon took a leading place in Northwest Iowa journalism.

The Storm Lake Tribune was started on its way in 1877 by Jerome Rose, familiarly known by the newspaper boys as Posey. In 1896, L. H. Henry, then its proprietor, sold the newspaper to Thomas Walpole and the same year a consolidation was effected with the Pilot. Since then it has been conducted as the Storm Lake Pilot-Tribune.

Newell, a short distance east of Storm Lake on the Illinois Central, and Alta, to the west, on the same line, were placed on the Buena Vista County map as newspaper patrons after the county seat had shown its enterprise in that field. The Newell Times was founded by Col. John T. Long, a fighting democrat, in 1872, and as long as he was in the saddle politics was very lively, as both he and Colonel Vestal were pithy writers as well as slashing speakers; and Colonel Vestal was as fierce a republican as Colonel Long was a democrat. When the short-lived Times expired and Colonel Long left the county, much of the high spirit of the local politicians also departed. In 1874, Will H. White established the Newell Mirror, which still reflects the public sentiment—especially republican—of Buena Vista County.

The Alta Advertiser was founded in the spring of 1876 by C. T. Steever and still maintains the main purpose of its establishment—to promote its home town and county.

The more rural communities in the northeastern part of the county have their organs in the Marathon Republic, established in 1890, and the Albert City Appeal, founded in 1911.

#### FIRST CALHOUN COUNTY NEWSPAPERS.

The first newspapers established in Calhoun County were founded at Lake City, its first considerable center of settlement and platted town, and long the county seat. In June, 1871, the Calhoun County Pioneer was first issued there by Benjamin F. Gue, who had already served as lieutenant gov-

ernor and had become recognized as the father of agricultural education in Iowa, through his identification with the State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts. The Calhoun County Pioneer was in active charge of Edward W. Wood, who afterward purchased the paper. It was finally moved to Glidden, Carroll County, and Lake City was without a newspaper until 1874, when T. B. Hotchkiss began the publication of the Lake City Journal. The paper was afterward taken to Pomeroy and thence to Manson. In 1877, the Manson Press was issued and in 1892, the Press was succeeded by the Manson Democrat. Within still more recent years they have been consolidated as the Manson Journal and Democrat, the title of the newspaper now in operation.

After T. B. Hotchkiss disposed of the Manson Journal, he returned to Lake City, where, in 1879, he started the Lake City Blade. In 1911, that paper was consolidated with the Lake City News, which still survives under that name. Mr. Hotchkiss also issued the first number of the Lake City Graphic in December, 1886. It was first published in the old courthouse, which had been moved from the Public Square, after having been purchased by the proprietor of the Graphic.

The county seat has brought forth a number of newspaper ventures, some of which have become "establishments." In May, 1879, three years after Rockwell City was selected as the seat of justice, A. Calhoun bought a little hand-press and a small stock of type, and began the publication there of the Calhoun County Republican and it has continued to wave the flag of its political creed ever since.

Then, late in September, 1890, S. G. Gregg began the publication of the Farmers Advocate at Rockwell City. The name of the paper was subsequently changed to the Rockwell City Advocate.

In November, 1880, E. B. Stillman and his brother bought the outfit of the Avoca Mail and moved it to Lohrville, where they started the Enterprise. The Lohrville Enterprise is still among the live journals of Calhoun County.

The Pomeroy Herald began its existence soon after the great tornado of 1893. It has since absorbed the Pomeroy Gleaner. Another organ of the minor communities of the county is the Farnhamville Index, established in May, 1901.



## JOURNALISTIC SPIRIT APPEARS IN PALO ALTO COUNTY.

According to Dwight G. McCarty, the historian of Palo Alto County and the son of sturdy and prominent pioneers of Northwestern Iowa, the first newspaper of this section of the state was the Democrat, the first issue of which appeared December 4, 1869. The editor-owner was James P. White, and the paper was published at Soda Bar, a post office, stage station and little settlement not far from Staketown, or Emmetsburg, the site of which was then occupied by three or four families, half a dozen single men (including George B. McCarty) and five or six buildings. Soda Bar had a post office and was then a trifle more imposing than Emmetsburg.

The prospectus of the Palo Alto Democrat has been rescued and restored to the printed page by Mr. McCarty, in the following words: "On or before the first of November, 1869, the undersigned will issue at Soda Bar, Palo Alto County, Iowa, an Independent Democratic Newspaper bearing the above title.

"The Democrat will be a faithful and impartial expositor of the natural advantages, resources and progress of the county in which it is published, and an advocate of the social, political and financial interests of Northwestern Iowa.

"Bound by no clique and controlled by no faction, the Democrat will assume that conservative, yet progressive, stand on the political questions of the day calculated to redeem our country from the thralldom, oppression and misrule which the unlimited power of the Republican party has wielded in the interests of the few at the expense of the many. In short, its watchword will be Retrenchment and Reform, and it will labor with unswerving fidelity for the restoration of principles and the inauguration of measures calculated to secure to all classes of our people those rights and privileges which the spirit of our free institutions inspires and national dignity and our common manhood demand.

"JAMES P. WHITE,

"Editor and Publisher."

The Democrat flourished for some time, in spite of the difficulty of having the printing done at Estherville, Algona, or other places where the work could be done. In June, 1870,

George B. McCarty and E. J. Hartshorn, who had already formed a partnership in the law and land business at Emmetsburg, joined in the publication of the *Advance*, an exponent of republicanism. During the exciting campaign of 1870, the rival newspapers kept the political blood boiling; but when White lost his canvass for the county treasurership his paper suspended publication. The *Advance* also sold its plant to Bates & Hagedon, who discontinued the old name and in June, 1873, started the *Palo Alto Patriot*. After a year, the *Patriot* sold out to the Palo Alto Printing Company, which dropped the old title and began the publication of the *Palo Alto Pilot* in the Old Town of Emmetsburg on June 11, 1874.

#### PIONEER NEWSPAPER CONVENIENCES.

J. C. Bennett, who worked both on the *Patriot* and the *Pilot*, says: "When I first came in contact with it in July, 1873, it was a pretty badly mixed up outfit. It had evidently been stored in someone's barn at some time. The first ink we had to work with was half straw. The first court calendar printed for use in the county was printed in the *Pilot* office in the early part of the winter of 1873. I have a copy of that somewhere. The *Pilot* office in the Old Town was located in the building that is now occupied by McCrum as a shoe store. It was made of nothing but siding and thin ceiling. The only press was an old worn-out hand press. Had to print the calendar on the old hand press in freezing weather and it was pretty hard to do anything."

The *Palo Alto Reporter* was started by Henry Jenkins in 1876. Of these very early newspaper ventures, the *Reporter* alone has survived and is being published in Emmetsburg. The present *Democrat*, also published at the county seat, was started by P. H. Ryan in 1884, while the *Palo Alto Tribune*, a second republican paper, was established in 1893.

The town of Ruthven, in the western part of Palo Alto County, was founded in 1878, the year the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railroad was built through the county, and its importance as a shipping point was increased when it was made the northern terminus of the Des Moines & Fort Dodge (now Minneapolis & St. Louis) Railroad in 1882. In the

following year was established its local paper, the Ruthven Free Press. The period 1881-89 witnessed the building rivalry between the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul and the Burlington, Cedar Rapids & Northern (now the Chicago, Rock Island & Pacific) Railroad in Palo Alto County. West Bend, in the southeastern part of Palo Alto County, was quite agitated, and was much relieved when the rival roads adjusted their differences and the St. Paul line abandoned its projected north and south line. The town took heart and in 1889 made its first newspaper venture in the founding of the West Bend Journal. The Graettinger Times was established in 1893 and the Ayrshire Chronicle in 1895.

#### FONDA TIMES, POCAHONTAS COUNTY.

Rolfe, Pocahontas and Fonda, in the northern, central and southern parts of the county, are all flourishing little towns of more than 1,000 people and publish most of the newspapers. Fonda, in the southwestern portion of the county at the junction of the Illinois Central and Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul lines, has the honor of establishing the first permanent newspaper in Pocahontas County.

The Pocahontas Journal was established by W. D. McEwen and J. J. Bruce in 1869. Mr. McEwen was then auditor, clerk of the court and county judge, while Mr. Bruce was serving as county superintendent and member of the Board of Supervisors. The first issue of the paper was issued by this personal concentration of the county government on June 15, 1869, and several of the earlier numbers were struck from the press of B. F. Gue, at Fort Dodge. In July, 1871, Judge McEwen relinquished his interest in the paper to Thomas L. MacVey, and its publication was continued until February, 1872, by the firm of Bruce & MacVey. About this time, the Legislature repealed the law providing for the publication of the general laws in each county, which cut into its income and forced the suspension of the Journal.

The Cedarville Herald was a small weekly published at Fonda during the spring and summer of 1871, and in the fall of 1872 M. D. Skinner established the Pocahontas Times at the same place and continued to operate it for about three years.



Another Pocahontas Times was established at Old Rolfe by W. D. McEwen on April 6, 1876, and Judge McEwen says in his salutatory: "In taking charge of a newspaper, we fear the many difficulties that beset our way, especially after having engaged actively for five years in other business. We commence again the publication of a newspaper, feeling that Pocahontas County has been too long neglected by reason of the lack of a live one. As there is no one disposed to embark in this enterprise, we have established the Pocahontas Times and propose to make it a success, if possible. Our little sheet is not what we would like our first number to have been, but if our friends will have patience we will soon enlarge to twice its present size. With our long acquaintance with the people of this county, we feel satisfied that we shall receive a full share of support and the Times will be devoted to developing the resources of Pocahontas County. Since there can be no reform without discussion, we invite farmers to send us their observations in the matter of improvements, that your neighbors may be benefited by your experience, your light burning none the less brightly while lighting another. We propose to chronicle faithfully and impartially the events of the day, domestic and foreign, in addition to the local items that may come under our observation. We shall uphold and advocate the principles of the republican party and aim to promote truth, justice and good will to all."

The Spirit Lake Beacon cast its enlightening rays on Editor McEwen in this friendly fashion: "W. D. McEwen, editor of the Pocahontas Times, is a very versatile gentleman, being an attorney, a merchant and postmaster, which in addition to the laborious duties of a journalist, is business enough for one man; he is also at this time serving his county, to the satisfaction of all concerned, as county treasurer and Centennial commissioner."

In October, 1876, the place of publication was changed from Old Rolfe to Pocahontas Center, at the time of the removal of the records to the new county seat. Notwithstanding his versatility, in November, 1877, Mr. McEwen leased the Times to another in order to give his entire attention to his official duties. The office of the Times was moved from Pocahontas to Fonda in May, 1878, and in November of the

following year passed into the possession of George Sanborn, one of the pioneer homesteaders of Cedar Township. He continued to own and edit the paper for twenty years, changing its name to the Fonda Times in November, 1897. In October, 1883, the entire plant and outfit of the Times was consumed by fire, and while preparing to resume publication at Fonda it was printed on the press of the Manson Journal. Becoming thus accustomed to a larger size, the Times adopted it permanently. The Times did much to make and preserve the history of Pocahontas County. In 1898, during the latter part of Mr. Sanborn's ownership and editorship of the Times, the paper published a history of Pocahontas County, which was very creditable for those days. The Fonda Times is therefore the oldest existent newspaper in the county.

The Pocahontas Record was first issued from the county seat on April 24, 1884, with Port C. Barron as its editor and proprietor. Mr. Barron died in July, 1900, and for several years thereafter the enterprise was continued by the wife of its founder, Mary E. Barron.

The Pocahontas County (now the Laurens) Sun was established by Louie E. Lange in June, 1885, and for some time was printed in, and issued from a barn. Mr. Lange continued in charge of it for more than fifteen years, during which it became one of the leading newspapers of the county. When, in August, 1900, he sold it to George M. Long, of Peterson, it was changed from a democratic to a republican newspaper.

Old Rolfe was the first county seat of Pocahontas. New Rolfe commenced to be when the survey of the Des Moines & Fort Dodge Railroad crossed that of the Toledo & Northwestern in May, 1881. In the following year, E. W. Duke founded the Reporter at the junction town and the Reveille was started in 1888. In 1890, the Reporter and Reveille were consolidated in a republican combination, and in the following year the Argus, a democratic paper, was established by Lawrence J. Anderson. In 1898, the Rolfe Tribune was started by Joseph H. Lighter, as a semi-weekly, but was discontinued after several years. It has been the only experiment of the kind in the county; the weekly, the Rolfe Arrow, was first issued in 1910.

## REPRESENTATIVE WESTERN JOURNALISM.

The foregoing is the surface record of the newspaper field as it stretches over Northwestern Iowa, as fair and enterprising a country as can be found in the United States. Lying between the great basins of the Mississippi and the Missouri, its pioneer editors and publishers ventured into many frontiers, realizing that they had hard times, scoffs and jeers before them, and that they were destined to meet many trials as hard to bear as though they were going against the savage or wild beast. Some took the ventures with foresight; others with bravado; but all with some higher motive than of mere money-making. These pioneers prepared the way for a more refined, cultured and broad-minded journalistic class which has materially contributed to the originality and brilliancy of the literary men and women of the Hawkeye State. It is hoped that from these sketches and pictures, these facts and stories, a fair idea may be gained of this feature of higher development, through homely and wearing trials, which is characteristic of American life and progress.





## CHAPTER XIV.

### THE JUDGES AND LAWYERS.

PROFESSIONAL CONTRIBUTIONS FROM NORTHWESTERN IOWA—BIRTH OF JURISPRUDENCE AND PRACTICE—NEW ENGLAND DIGNITY SHOCKED—JUDGES MOORE AND HUBBARD—EPOCH IN NORTHWESTERN JUDICATURE—A JUDICIAL CONTRAST—CIRCUIT COURTS CREATED—ADDISON OLIVER—OTHER CIRCUIT COURT JUDGES—JUDGES OF THE THREE DISTRICT COURTS SINCE 1887—LOT THOMAS—JAMES P. CONNER—SUPREME COURT JUDGES FROM NORTHWESTERN IOWA—GIFFORD S. ROBINSON, SCOTT M. LADD AND FRANK R. GAYNOR—LESLIE M. SHAW, A NATIONAL CHARACTER—NORTHWESTERN IOWA LAWYER-CONGRESSMEN—ISAAC S. STRUBLE, ELBERT H. HUBBARD AND WILLIAM D. BOIES.

The great northwestern frontier of what are now Northeastern Nebraska and Northwestern Iowa, for several years before the constitution of the Hawkeye State was ratified, centered its legal and judicial activities at Sioux City and Dakota City. Most of the unorganized counties in Northwestern Iowa were attached to Woodbury for revenue and judicial purposes, and whatever law business there was in the frontier country east of the Big Sioux and Missouri rivers was done at Sioux City. It was also the outfitting post for all the trains leaving for the forts and Indian agencies on the Upper Missouri, an important steamboat landing and the gateway to civilization for the Black Hill miners. These influences all contributed to the volume and variety of business transacted in the courts, and gave to the attorneys a larger range of business than is usual in the frontier town.

Then, too, the United States District Court for the northern district of Nebraska Territory was held at Dakota City for several years; and many of the counties in Northeastern Nebraska were attached to Dakota County for judicial purposes. At both Sioux City and Dakota City were United States land offices, at which, from time to time, almost every kind of land contest was tried. Thus on either side of the

Missouri River was a nucleus of legal and judicial procedures, with the preponderance of activities in favor of Sioux City, the most rapidly growing of the two communities. In a brief view of the latter is found the natural commencement of this chapter.

#### BIRTH OF JURISPRUDENCE AND PRACTICE.

For several years before the meeting of Iowa's third constitutional convention in 1857, Woodbury County was in the Seventh Judicial District. The first term of court was held September 3, 1855, Samuel H. Riddle presiding. The most interesting matter brought before the judge who presided at the birth of jurisprudence and formal legal practice in Northwestern Iowa was the case of the State of Iowa against William B. Thompson charging the defendant with manslaughter. The record recites that he appeared in person and demanded a fair and speedy trial. This giant frontiersman was one of the first settlers of the county and proprietor of the Town of Floyd's Bluff, the first county seat of Waukau, now Woodbury County. At a dance near Sergeant's Bluff, at which a crowd of French, half-breeds and Indians participated and whisky flowed freely, Thompson got into a quarrel with a white man and, in the general row which followed, beat him with a gun, inflicting wounds from which he soon after died. When the case was called in September, the names of the witnesses did not appear on the back of the indictment, as was legal, and the state entered a nolle, the defendant giving bonds to appear before the next grand jury.

Then, when A. C. Ford, of Council Bluffs, and H. C. Bacon, of Sioux City, had been admitted to practice in the district court, the court adjourned to April, 1856. A grand jury was empaneled and another indictment was returned against Thompson. To make it constitutional, the charge was made murder, instead of manslaughter, as at the September term. One Shook, who lived near Correctionville, was also indicted for the murder of a young man who lived alone in his cabin and who had been shot as the result of a quarrel over a land claim. Both Thompson and Shook were desperate characters. The county had no jail and, while



nominally in the hands of the sheriff, they were at large, as no one cared to protest. A change of venue was taken to Harrison County. At the appointed time, the defendants appeared for trial, but neither was convicted; but why not, is one of the mysteries of those far-off days. It is rumored that the officers of the state were not very zealous in the prosecution, in face of the fact that Thompson and Shook had both made suggestions of what might happen in case of a conviction. Truly, the status of justice meted out to criminals has not much changed from then to now.

#### NEW ENGLAND DIGNITY SHOCKED.

Other cases were tried and procedures taken, but the docket appears to have been cleared; for the April term of 1857 was not held. This appears to have been a great disappointment to the few attorneys then in practice who were hungry—for business. One of the members of the struggling fraternity was William L. Joy, a young Vermont lawyer, who located at Sioux City on May 5, 1857. The third constitutional convention had been adjourned several weeks and in January Woodbury County had been transferred to the Twelfth Judicial District and times fixed for holding courts therein. In the new district, with Woodbury, were Monona, Crawford, Carroll, Ida, Sac, Plymouth, Cherokee, Buena Vista, Sioux, O'Brien, Clay, Dickinson, Osceola and Buncombe (Lyon) counties.

It was a period of many changes in legal, judicial and political affairs, and the young and ambitious attorneys swarming into this Far West were eager to become established as part of the new civilization. Mr. Joy himself was at the front, and describes the situation thus: "The next term provided by law was not held. I remember well the keen disappointment felt by the bar at the failure to hold this term of court. To several of us it was to have been our first experience in the courts of the state. Anxious days and nights had been spent in exploring the mysteries of the code practice and preparing cases for trial. But when the judge arrived, instead of opening court, he repaired to the saloon with A. C. Ford, of Council Bluffs, an attorney who practiced extensively at the bars outside of the courtroom, and there,

with congenial spirits, spent the time allotted for the term, in giving the infant city a crimson tint. To those of us accustomed to the dignified and formal proceedings of a New England court, where the judge was attended in his walks to and from his chambers to the bench by a liveried and armed attendant, such proceedings sadly marred one of the idols of our early days, and taught us that even those in high positions are of the earth, earthy."

Soon after settling at Sioux City, Mr. Joy formed a partnership with N. C. Hudson, and the firm of Hudson & Joy continued until 1866. He then became associated with C. L. Wright. The firm of Joy & Wright led in the legal practice of Woodbury County and Northwestern Iowa for twenty years. It represented all the leading railroads of that section of the state, Mr. Joy himself being especially prominent in that field. He accumulated property as a result of his practice and also became prominent as a banker. In fact, both as a pioneer and a leading citizen of a comparatively late period, Mr. Joy was one of the strong men of the state. But he refused both judicial and political honors.

#### JUDGES MOORE AND HUBBARD.

M. F. Moore and John Cassady were the pioneer lawyers of Sioux City, with the honors favoring the former. As partners, they also started a real estate and banking business, about 1855. In the fall of 1857, before the constitution went into effect, Mr. Moore was elected judge of the Twelfth Judicial District, and held the first term of court on December 7th of that year. The case involving a contest over the county judgeship which came before him probably blocked his judicial or political advancement. Dr. John K. Cook, the father of Sioux City, had been a candidate for reelection and John L. Campbell, a lawyer and his competitor, contested Dr. Cook's alleged election. Upon the trial, the court went behind the returns of the canvassing board and declared Mr. Campbell entitled to the office. He was duly installed as county judge, but was afterward compelled to resign at the point of a revolver.

Judge Moore's term expired in December, 1858. It is said: "The duties of judge interfered with his gay and fes-

tive ways of life, and he gladly put off the ermine, which he had worn for a brief term. He was a man of integrity, a graduate of Yale College and had a fair knowledge of elementary law, but knew little of what the courts had held, and did not remain long enough upon the bench to learn much about the decisions of other courts."

At the fall election of 1858, A. W. Hubbard, a native of Connecticut with an Indiana education and some political experience, succeeded Judge Moore by election. He had been but two years in Woodbury County, locating at Sioux City the year after Judge Moore. In March, 1858, the General Assembly, in pursuance of the authority delegated to that body by the new constitution of 1857, reorganized the judicial districts of the state so that eighteen of the twenty counties in the Northwestern Iowa of this history were included in the Fourth district, viz., Monona, Crawford, Woodbury, Ida, Sac, Buena Vista, Cherokee, Plymouth, Clay, O'Brien, Sioux, Buncombe (Lyon), Osceola, Dickinson, Emmet, Palo Alto, Pocahontas and Calhoun. Carroll and Greene counties were placed in the Fifth district.

#### EPOCH IN NORTHWESTERN JUDICATURE.

Judge Hubbard held the first term of court for the Fourth district in August, 1859, and a writer of those times truly says: "With this term of Court began a new epoch in the judicial proceedings of Northwestern Iowa. Judge Hubbard brought to the discharge of his duties the knowledge and experience gained by many years of active practice, and a familiarity with the code practice and the decisions of the courts that was of great value in settling the practice under the code of 1851 and revision of 1860. Rules of court were adopted and something like order took the place of the chaotic proceedings of the earlier terms and the foundations were laid for a legitimate practice. The bar and the community owe more to Judge Hubbard than they realize for his labors in shaping the practice, expediting the transaction of court business, and giving dignity to the tribunal that compelled respect for the court and its decisions. It was fortunate for Northwestern Iowa that a man of his experience, knowledge of law and ability was prevailed upon to take the position, from which



he retired all too soon for the good of the district, when elected to Congress in the fall of 1862. His clear and fearless exposition of the law, his desire that justice be done under its forms, his recognition of and adherence to the cardinal truth that all judicial proceedings should be conducted with a view to the attainment of justice and the protection of the rights of the citizens, left their impress upon the court and bar of Northwestern Iowa."

In 1862, Judge Hubbard was elected by the republicans to represent the Sixth Iowa District in Congress, which included nearly one-third of the counties in the state. He served for three terms, 1863-69, and during the entire period was active in securing the enactment of laws to encourage railroad building in Iowa. Upon retiring from Congress, he became one of the founders of the First National Bank of Sioux City, and his death occurred in that city on September 22, 1879.

#### A JUDICIAL CONTRAST.

Isaac Pendleton was Judge Hubbard's successor. He was elected in the fall of 1862, and entered upon the discharge of his duties with a limited experience in the practice of his profession, and, following Judge Hubbard upon the bench, the contrast between age and experience and youth and fire was great. It was a hard place to fill, but the business of the courts was light. The Civil war was at its height and, amid the clash of arms, the voice of the laws was suppressed. But few litigated cases were tried. This gave Judge Pendleton an opportunity for study and preparation for the more arduous duties that came with the return of peace. He had the advantage of a collegiate education, was accustomed to mental labor and had fine natural ability. But he never delighted in the technicalities of the law. He saw clearly the right of a case and endeavored to do justice between litigants. The manner of attaining the end was of minor importance. The judge improved and became more familiar with the practice, although procrastination was a general complaint against him. On the whole, he exceeded the expectations of his friends, but was not as well adapted for the discharge of his

duties as a judge as of an advocate. In the presentation of questions of fact to a jury, and in the knowledge of what influences and controls men, he had few superiors. His term of office expired in January, 1867, when he returned to the practice of his profession in Sioux City, where for many years he enjoyed an extensive criminal practice.

In the fall of 1866, Henry Ford, of Harrison County, who had been district attorney, was elected to succeed Judge Pendleton. He held his first term of court in April, 1867. After his election he moved to Sioux City and held the office for two terms, or until 1875. Judge Ford had a fine presence and presided with dignity. He had a good legal mind, but was never very industrious, which made it necessary for the attorneys who came before him to fully present the authorities which sustained any legal questions involved in their cases. When this was done, Judge Ford's judgment upon questions of law was very clear and accurate. He had many admirable traits of character which brought him warm friends and supporters, and had he not been overcome by his weakness for strong drink his career would have been brilliant.

Charles H. Lewis, of Cherokee, who had also been district attorney, was elected judge of the Fourth district in the fall of 1874, and served from 1875 to 1890, inclusive. During the later part of his term he resided in Sioux City. He was popular and able and made many friends and admirers. During a portion of his sixteen years of service he was the sole presiding judge of the district, which then composed twenty counties. In 1876, the Fourteenth and Sixteenth districts were created, leaving nine counties in the Fourth. Judge Lewis retired from the bench in the face of a united regret formally expressed by the leaders of the bar in the district which he had so long honored.

#### CIRCUIT COURTS CREATED.

The General Assembly of 1868 divided the state into two circuits, in each of which was established a Circuit Court. While the court was in operation the district courts were being reorganized by legislative enactment and the counties were often shifted from one circuit to the other.

## ADDISON OLIVER.

Addison Oliver, of Onawa, Monona County, was the first judge to serve on the first circuit of the Fourth district. He remained on the bench until the fall of 1874, when he was elected a member of Congress from the Ninth district and retired from the bench. He served in the Forty-fourth and Forty-fifth Congresses. Judge Oliver brought to the bench a well cultivated mind, a good knowledge of the law, fearlessness in its execution and an earnest desire to do justice. He had but little use in his court for forms which did not accomplish this end, and swept away the refuges of lies in language sometimes more forceful than polite. At one time when a druggist reported to his court, under the statute, the amount of liquor sold during the quarter, an amount assuming immense proportions, Judge Oliver inquired if there had been any epidemic in the community, and when assured that it had been a season of unusual health, informed the druggist that his court "could not be made a partner in the saloon business."

While holding court at Sioux City, an application was made by a defendant for a change of venue on the ground of the prejudice of the judge, and, in support of the motion, were read the affidavits of disreputable hangers-on of one of the dives on Second Street, of whom the judge had never before heard and who, from the very circumstances of the case, could know nothing of his knowledge or feelings in the matter. As the attorney proceeded in the reading, it was apparent to the lookers-on that the judge was taking in the magnitude of the falsehood. As soon as the reading ceased, he ordered the venue changed, remarking that he "should hate that anyone should think he was prejudiced in favor of the defendant."

## OTHER CIRCUIT COURT JUDGES.

In the fall of 1874, J. R. Zuver, then of Harrison County, afterward of Sioux City, was elected Judge Oliver's successor and held the position two terms. He brought to the bench a limited experience and knowledge of the law and such a mental make-up that at first he could not see a lively legal fight progress before him without taking a hand in it. His



zeal was often so great that he became a dangerous ally for the party whose cause he espoused. The judge had a good mind and a desire to do right; was a hard worker and gave the litigants the best of his judgment in the matter before him. Experience corrected many of the errors of his early career and untiring industry brought its reward. The judge was becoming a strong man in his position, when disease blighted all his prospects and drove him from the bench and the practice of his profession.

Judge Zuver was succeeded on the Circuit bench by D. D. McCallum, of Osceola County, who held the position until the General Assembly abolished the Circuit Court in 1887.

When the legislative act of March, 1876, created the Fourteenth district and thereby changed the boundaries of the Fourth, there was a general shifting of the judicial circuits. John N. Weaver, of Kossuth County, was elected the first circuit judge of the Fourteenth district, and was succeeded by J. H. Macomber, of Ida Grove, Ida County, who continued in office until the Circuit Court was abolished by the act of the General Assembly passed April 10, 1886.

#### JUDGES OF THE THREE DISTRICT COURTS SINCE 1887.

On April 10, 1886, an act dividing the state into eighteen judicial districts was approved. Under its reorganization, the northwestern counties were arranged in the following districts:

Fourth District—Cherokee, O'Brien, Osceola, Lyon, Sioux, Plymouth, Woodbury, Harrison and Monona.

Fourteenth—Buena Vista, Clay, Palo Alto, Kossuth, Emmet, Dickinson, Humboldt and Pocahontas.

Sixteenth—Ida, Sac, Calhoun, Crawford, Carroll and Greene.

At the general election of 1886, C. H. Lewis, then of Cherokee, S. M. Ladd, of Sheldon, O'Brien County, and George W. Wakefield, of Sioux City, were chosen judges of the Fourth district. Judge Wakefield continued his service on the District bench until 1905. As a young man he had served in the Civil war from Illinois, and in 1868, soon after being admitted to the bar, entered practice at Sioux City. Judge

Ladd presided, by assignment of the three judges, over Plymouth County. He possessed a fine legal mind, first evinced as a practicing attorney at Sheldon. Judge Ladd served on the bench of the Fourth district until November, 1896, when he was elected judge of the Supreme Court. He honored the highest court of the state until his retirement at the conclusion of his fourth term; for two of these terms he was chief justice.

Other judges of the Fourth district have been: Frank R. Gaynor, of LeMars, Plymouth County, 1891-1913; George W. Paine, Carroll, 1891-94; Anthony Van Wagenen, Rock Rapids, Lyon County, 1892-94; John F. Oliver, Onawa, Monona County, 1895-1914; William Hutchinson, Alton, Sioux County, 1897—; J. L. Kennedy, Sioux City, 1905-06; David Mould, Sioux City, 1906-14; George Jepson, Sioux City, 1913-21; W. D. Boies, Sheldon, O'Brien County, 1913-18; W. G. Sears, Sioux City, 1915-22; John W. Anderson, Onawa, Monona County, 1915-20; C. C. Hamilton, Sioux City, 1920—; Miles W. Newby, Onawa, Monona County, 1921—; Robert H. Munger, Sioux City, 1923—; Albert O. Wakefield, Sioux City, 1923—.

The judges of the Fourteenth district who have been appointed from the counties embraced in this history were: E. R. Duffie, Sac City, 1877-84; Lot Thomas, Storm Lake, Buena Vista County, 1885-98; George H. Carr, Emmetsburg, Palo Alto County, 1887-94; F. H. Hellsell, Sioux Rapids, Buena Vista County, 1898-1900; Arthur Bailie, Storm Lake, Buena Vista County, 1900-13; Nels J. Lee, Estherville, Emmet County, 1913-23; James De Land, Storm Lake, Buena Vista County, 1917—; F. C. Davidson, Emmetsburg, Palo Alto County, 1924—.

#### LOT THOMAS.

Perhaps Lot Thomas was as widely known as any of the Fourteenth district judges. He served as county attorney for two terms, and while engaged in the practice of the law was connected with every important case that arose in the county. First a resident of Sioux Rapids, he moved to Storm Lake and made that his permanent home. In 1884 he was elected to the district bench, his first term commencing in

January of the following year. In 1898, after concluding his judicial service, he earned another high honor by being elected to the Fifty-sixth Congress as successor to George D. Perkins, of Sioux City, and represented the Eleventh district for three terms. Judge and Congressman Thomas thus earned a most honorable place among the leading public men of the State.

The Sixteenth district has been represented by the following judges: James P. Conner, Denison, Crawford County, 1887-90; J. H. Macomber, Ida Grove, Ida County, 1887-90; Charles D. Goldsmith, Sac City, 1890-94; George W. Paine, Carroll, 1890-94; Zala A. Church, Jefferson, Greene County, 1895-1910; S. M. Elwood, Sac City, 1895-1902; Frank M. Powers, Carroll, 1903-14; E. G. Albert, Jefferson, Greene County, 1915-24; Marion E. Hutchinson, Lake City, Calhoun County, 1911—.

#### JAMES P. CONNER.

When the Sixteenth judicial district was formed in the spring of 1886, terms of the judges to commence in January of the following year, two judges were assigned to it. Judges Conner and Macomber were the first judges to be elected and assumed their duties at the beginning of 1887. Judge Macomber had previously served two years as judge of the Circuit Court, and Judge Conner's ability in legal matters was well known. When J. P. Dolliver resigned his seat in the lower house of Congress to become United States senator, in the fall of 1900, Judge Conner was elected to the vacancy, and continued in Congress until March 3, 1909.

As will be noted from the foregoing list, Judges Conner and Macomber were succeeded, in 1891, by Judges Paine and Goldsmith. The former was a hard-headed lawyer of the olden type, largely self-educated, but possessed of a fine perception of legal points and hard to confuse. Judge Goldsmith was a man of fair ability. In 1894, he was defeated by S. M. Elwood, who stood high at the local bar of Sac City and with the profession generally, and served for two terms. Judge Church also stood well on the bench, and few of his decisions were reversed by the higher courts. He was an orator of



more than ordinary ability. Frank M. Powers, who succeeded Judge Elwood in 1903, had more than a decade of honorable service, and E. C. Albert was on the district bench for an even longer period. Marion E. Hutchinson, of Lake City, the present incumbent, was elected in 1910 as Judge Church's successor. He is the only judge of the District Court ever elected from Calhoun County.

#### SUPREME COURT JUDGES FROM NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

The first lawyer from the Northwestern Iowa of this history to ascend the Supreme bench of the state was Gifford S. Robinson, of Storm Lake, Buena Vista County. Born in Tremont, Illinois, in 1843, he was reared on a farm and educated in the district school, academy and Illinois State Normal, finally graduating from the law department of Washington University, St. Louis. He served in the Civil war and in January, 1870, located at Storm Lake, and there commenced the practice of his profession. He was county attorney for several terms and served in the Lower House of the Sixteenth General Assembly (1876) and in the Senate of the Nineteenth, Twentieth and Twenty-first assemblies (1882-86). In 1887, Judge Robinson was elected judge of the State Supreme Court of Iowa and served until December 31, 1899. After retiring from the Supreme Court, Judge Robinson, in 1900, was appointed a member of the State Board of Control and, by successive reappointments held that position for many years. The Board, which had just been created by the Twenty-seventh General Assembly of 1898, has always been considered as one of the most important of the state departments, managing, controlling and governing, as it does, all the hospitals, reformatories and other charitable and correctional institutions of Iowa. Membership on the State Board of Control was one of the deserved public honors conferred upon Judge Robinson, who remained upon the bench of the State Supreme Court for twelve years, about a quarter of that period holding the chief justiceship.

Scott M. Ladd, who sat upon the bench of the Supreme Court from 1897 to 1920, inclusive, came from the bar of Sheldon, O'Brien County. He located there in 1883, was district judge from 1887 to 1896, and in the fall of the latter

year was elevated to the Supreme Court. Judge Ladd had always been considered a careful, thorough and studious lawyer and a most creditable district judge, and the twenty-four years which he served on the bench of the State Supreme Court but strengthened that high and steadfast reputation. He was chief justice of the court in 1902 and 1908.

Frank R. Gaynor was a lawyer of LeMars in substantial standing, and for a number of years a member of the firm of Martin & Gaynor, before his election to the Supreme Court in November, 1912. He served from 1913 to the date of his death in August, 1920, and was succeeded by Thomas Arthur of Harrison County. Judge Benjamin I. Salinger, of Carroll, served on the Supreme bench from 1915 to 1920, and was chief justice in 1920.

#### LESLIE M. SHAW, A NATIONAL CHARACTER.

Governor Shaw, whose home town was Denison, Crawford County, during the early period of his public life, rose rapidly to high standing in the eyes of the state and nation because his intellectual training was thorough, his mind active and elastic, and his sincerity and honesty above question. A native of Vermont, he alternately farmed and educated himself, then taught country school in the confined surroundings of his home state, and finally, having just passed the age of legal manhood, broke bounds and started for the broad Red River Valley of the North. But he stopped, en route (as he thought) to see a farmer uncle near Mount Vernon, Linn County, got to husking corn and teaching school in the neighborhood and, before he realized it, was a pupil at Cornell College, that place. Long before he graduated, his funds ran low and he was glad to be employed temporarily by a nurseryman who was selling fruit trees in Western Iowa. Thus young Shaw was led into this land of promise which, for him, was to be one of achievement also. Having graduated from Cornell College, Mount Vernon, in 1874, and from the Iowa College of Law, Des Moines, in 1876, he decided upon Denison, as his ideal home town. Several considerations prompted him to make this decision. He believed it to be a promising community, and he met The Girl there whom he loved and married. These were two good reasons

certainly. His practice and residence at Denison for nearly twenty years gave him a standing and an experience which were of pronounced value to him when he entered a public life of broader scope.

Governor Shaw did not evince a deep interest in national politics until the campaign of 1896 had fairly opened. Bryan came to Denison and spoke on the silver standard of values, and Mr. Shaw, then also in the banking business, answered him with ammunition drawn from statistics and his own experience as farmer, land owner, banker and lawyer. He traversed the state as an earnest champion of sound money, and, the campaign over, returned to his practice and other interests centering at Denison. But the republican leaders of the state had been attracted to him as a coming figure in their councils and progress and in 1897 their different factions united upon him as their candidate for governor. He was elected by a plurality of more than 56,000 over his democratic and "people's" opponent.

Governor Shaw's administration of two terms was straightforward and strong. During that period (1898-1902) was created the Board of Control in the keeping of which body was placed all state institutions other than educational—thus centralizing responsibility. The first part of his administration was largely absorbed in the work of aligning Iowa to do her part in the Spanish-American war. The vigorous initiative of the chief executive and the promptness and efficiency of Adjutant General M. H. Byers won deservedly high praise from the War Department and the people of Iowa. A most important action taken by the Twenty-seventh General Assembly of 1898 was a joint resolution to amend the constitution providing for biennial elections instead of annual. This amendment was ratified in 1904.

Governor Shaw refused to be considered a gubernatorial candidate for a third term and was appointed, in 1902, as secretary of the treasury in President Roosevelt's cabinet. On Secretary Shaw's retirement from public life in 1907, two years before the close of Roosevelt's second administration, he assumed the presidency of the Carnegie Trust Company, New York, and later of the First Mortgage Guarantee & Trust Company of Philadelphia. He is now living in par-



tial retirement at Washington, D. C., one of the most honored and honorable men who has made Iowa history. Aside from his professional, financial and public services, Governor Shaw is perhaps best known for his leadership in the M. E. Church. He was a lay delegate to four successive general conferences of that denomination and was variously honored in those assemblages. He has held the position of trustee of Cornell College for more than thirty years, and has obtained degrees from that institution, from the Iowa College of Laws and from Simpson College, Iowa, as well as from several eastern institutions.

#### NORTHWESTERN IOWA LAWYER-CONGRESSMEN.

Lawyers have always preponderated in the Congress of the United States and Northwestern Iowa has sent some fine representatives of the profession to the national House of Representatives. The list embraces the following:

Asahel W. Hubbard, Sioux City, Woodbury County, 1865-71, Sixth District, Thirty-eighth, Thirty-ninth and Fortieth congresses.

Addison Oliver, Onawa, Monona County, 1875-79, Ninth District, Forty-fourth and Forty-fifth congresses.

Isaac S. Struble, LeMars, Plymouth County, 1883-91, Eleventh District, Forty-eighth, Forty-ninth, Fiftieth and Fifty-first congresses.

James P. Conner, Denison, Crawford County, 1899-1909, Tenth District, Fifty-sixth to Sixtieth congresses, inclusive.

Lot Thomas, Storm Lake, Buena Vista County, 1899-1905, Eleventh District, Fifty-sixth, Fifty-seventh and Fifty-eighth congresses.

Elbert H. Hubbard, Sioux City, Woodbury County, 1905-12, Eleventh District, Fifty-ninth, Sixtieth, Sixty-first and Sixty-second congresses, up to the time of his death, June 4, 1912.

George C. Scott, also of Sioux City, succeeded Mr. Hubbard, filled out his unexpired term and also served in the Sixty-third Congress, 1913-15, and the Sixty-fifth Congress, 1917-19.

W. D. Boies, Sheldon, O'Brien County, 1919-27, Eleventh District, Sixty-sixth to Sixty-ninth congresses, inclusive.

In connection with the various courts of the state, sketches have already been given of A. W. Hubbard, Addison Oliver, Lot Thomas and James P. Conner. Isaac S. Struble, of Le-Mars, was among the earlier congressmen from Northwestern Iowa, and entered Congress without having had any experience in judicial or public life. His opponent in the nominating convention of 1890 was George D. Perkins, of the Sioux City Journal, who was nominated on the forty-third ballot. In the ensuing campaign which resulted in Mr. Perkins' election, Mr. Struble unqualifiedly supported his journalistic rival. During his own long period in service as congressman, Mr. Struble became unusually prominent as a member and chairman of the Committee on Territories, and had much to do with the shaping of legislation in reference to the organization of the Territory of Oklahoma.

Elbert H. Hubbard, of Sioux City, had ably served in both houses of the General Assembly, and the very fact that at his death he was approaching the end of his fourth term is sufficient commendation of his work by his constituents of the Eleventh District. It is even more significant that on the very day of his death, in the summer of 1912, he received a notification of his nomination for his fifth congressional term.

William D. Boies, now serving as representative in Congress from the Eleventh District, practiced law at Sheldon for a period of thirty-two years. In 1873, when a boy, he came to Buchanan County, Iowa, with his parents. When twenty-three years of age, he graduated from the Law Department of the State University of Iowa, and in October, 1881, the year after receiving his degree and immediately after his marriage, located at Sheldon. There he practiced continuously until January, 1913, when he was appointed to the bench of the Fourth Judicial District. On a division of the district, he became judge of the Twenty-first, and at the general election in 1914 was elected for a term of four years. He resigned from that bench in March, 1918, to become a candidate for the republican nomination for Congress, and was elected to the Sixty-seventh, Sixty-eighth and Sixty-ninth congresses.

## CHAPTER XV. MEDICAL HISTORY.

By DR. J. N. WARREN.

DEVELOPMENT OF MEDICINE AND SURGERY—PIONEER DOCTORS—SIOUX CITY PHYSICIANS—SIOUX CITY COLLEGE OF MEDICINE—SIOUX VALLEY MEDICAL ASSOCIATION—SIOUX CITY HOSPITALS—PRACTITIONERS IN WOODBURY COUNTY—POCAHONTAS COUNTY (NOTES BY DR. A. W. PATTERSON)—THE PROFESSION IN BUENA VISTA COUNTY—MEDICAL MEN OF PLYMOUTH COUNTY—CLAY COUNTY—PRACTITIONERS OF THE O'BRIEN COUNTY MEDICAL SOCIETY—CARROLL COUNTY MEDICAL MEN—PALO ALTO COUNTY—MEDICAL HISTORY OF OSCEOLA COUNTY—ITS PRACTITIONERS—DICKINSON COUNTY (NOTES BY DR. C. S. SHULTZ)—SIOUX COUNTY PHYSICIANS—DICKINSON COUNTY PHYSICIANS, 1886-1926—DOCTORS OF EMMET COUNTY—MEDICAL HISTORY OF SAC COUNTY—MONONA COUNTY—MEDICAL HISTORY OF IDA COUNTY (NOTES BY DR. G. C. MOORHEAD).

It is claimed that history is the fountain head of human knowledge. In the evolution of the human family we come to the time when man commenced to record the facts coming to his knowledge, thus we have the initiation of all the sciences, art, music, and the doings of mankind. Huxley says that the initiative of all the sciences comes from medicine.

The study of geology and astronomy shows that nature has made a record of the past that is positive. We know that in prehistoric times the treatment of the ills of humanity was practiced.

Things supernatural we believed to be evidence of anger of the gods. Garretson states that anthropology establishes that cuneiform hieroglyphic mimic, and palm-leaf inscriptions all indicate that the folk-ways of early medicine, whether Acadian or Scandinavian, Stoic or Celtic, Roman or Polynesian, have been the same. In each case it was an affair of charms and spells, plant-love and psychotherapy, to stave off the supernatural agencies. Disease or injury was thought to be caused by some supernatural power.



Here we have the cradle of superstition, which continues to the present. If ignorance and superstition could be eliminated we would be a happy and contented people. They are the greatest obstruction to advancement of knowledge among the uneducated. Prejudice is the strong companion of superstition. Primitive man believed that spirits or some supernatural agency were the cause of disease. Early medicine was sealed to primitive modes of religion. Burnt offerings were given to placate the offended gods. This was nature worship followed by fetish worship. The priests were possessors of medical knowledge which they carefully guarded from the public. They took charge of the treatment of the sick. Prehistoric man commenced with chipped flint instruments for surgical and other use. This is supposed to be the first step in civilization. Anthropology teaches that the advancement in the Stone Age led from the Paleolithic period to the Neolithic period, as manifested in more polished and special forms. These flint instruments were employed by the ancient Egyptians and Hebrews. We know that the ancient Hindus performed almost every major operation known to surgery.

#### DEVELOPMENT OF MEDICINE AND SURGERY.

The primitive races were continually at war which necessitated medical and surgical care. The latter was most prominent. The Egyptians had a long list of medical herbs. Garretson states the first physician was an Egyptian, I-em-he-*te*p, of the third dynasty (4500 B. C.). Among the Egyptians we have the first specialists. One treated the eye, another the teeth, one the head and one specialized in wounds. This was an Egyptian law. The Babylonians followed the same custom.

The Bible describes the Jewish physicians. They were the founders of public hygiene. Hippocrates was the founder of scientific medicine. He separated medicine from theology and philosophy. He originated the bedside study of diseased persons. Thus after centuries of primitive effort we have medicine established as a separate science. The next great Grecian physician was Galen. His teachings governed the medical world for centuries.

Robinson in his eloquent work, "Pathfinders in Medicine," enumerates after Galen, Aretocus, the forgotten physician; Paracelsus, Iconoclast of medicine; Servetus, the medical master; Vesalms, the Anatomist; Parr, the Surgeon; Scee, the Apothecary; Hunter, the natural Philosopher; Jenner, the originator of vaccination.

The next epoch in medicine was the work of Pasteur in developing the fact of micro-organisms and their behavior. Lord Lister of Edinburg accepted and adopted the facts and initiated antiseptic surgery, which led to the present aseptic surgery, which in the last fifty years has been the wonder and admiration of the thinking world.

Some day a master mind will indite a page of facts about the doctor which will awaken acknowledgment of his place in developing the betterment of mankind. Medicine has done more for the well-being and happiness of the human family than religion. Lenec and Auscultation, Simpson and Chloroform, Semmelweis, the Obstetrician Schleiden and Schwann. Schleiden was the father of the cell doctrine, yet Schwann was first to point out cell doctrine in microscopic study of human tissue.

Buchard says that the survival of the Hippocratic methods in the seventeenth century and this triumphant vindication by the concerted scientific movement of the nineteenth, is the whole history of internal medicine.

We have thus traced in a fragmentary way, the history of medicine from its inception. I have gleaned much from Garretson's "History of Medicine." It would occupy too much space to follow the history of medicine from an early date to the present.

With the advent of John Hunter, in 1728, London and Edinburgh became the medical centers of the world. After a time the medical center shifted to Paris, France, and from there to Germany; at present the United States may be said to be the medical and surgical center.

In the early medical colleges we had but two laboratories, anatomy and chemistry. Anatomy, physiology and chemistry are the great foundation rocks of the entire superstructure of modern medicine and surgery.

## PIONEER DOCTORS.

The pioneer medical men who came to the northwest were patriotic brave men. The country was sparsely settled, principally by homesteaders. These settlements were often many miles apart. There was little ready money among them and no established roads or bridges over the streams. Hence the doctor did most of his work on the credit system, often driving long distances not knowing or asking if he would receive pay for his services. In many instances he never even got a "thank you." He faced the storms of summer and the blizzards of winter. This was before the advent of fur coats and arctic overshoes. The present generation can have no adequate appreciation of the hardships and sufferings of the pioneer doctor.

The trails led across the country from one settlement to another. As the country settled up, these trails were often interrupted. An experience: The doctor starts from the village to answer a call twelve or more miles just at evening. Riding over the prairie in twilight there is a sweet delicacy, a silent elegance of nature in the great Cathedral that is enchanting. As the gloom of night's darkness deepens a profound feeling of solemnity takes possession. This reverie may be rudely broken. His horse stumbles and he finds himself on a piece of sod breaking. Thinking his team had missed the trail, and seeing a light not far distant he drives to it, bumpety bump over the sod, and finally arrives in a man's back yard. The howling and barking of dogs equals a half starved bunch of coyotes. A man comes out of the back door and in an unfriendly voice says: "Well, who be you and what do you want?" "I am doctor so-and-so from B. Z. I have started to Frank Brown's place. His wife is sick."

"Well, Doc, wait till I put on my boots and get my lantern and I will put you on the road." After reaching the ill-defined highway the following dialogue took place: "Now, Doc, you see those two lights over yonder. The second one is Frank Brown's." Doctor says, "Can I drive across the prairie?" "No, Mike Kelley is breaking up his eighty and building a sod house so you can't go that way any more. It is dark and I will get into the buggy and show you where to



turn." Doctor: "If you please, what is your name?" "Well, Doc, they call me Cranky Bill Jones. I have been here three years and know every homesteader within ten miles, and when they get into trouble they all come to Cranky Bill for help. Here's the corner, now go straight east."

Some amusing incidents occurring in the practice of Dr. J. N. Warren at Storm Lake, Iowa: A Mr. C., who resided south of the lake, was a stingy, abusive, profane man and a great talker. He had some difficulty with the doctor about settling a bill; hence was bitter in his attacks on him. "One evening he sent for me," writes Doctor Warren, "to visit his farm. On arriving there I was informed that the boys wanted me at the barn. He had two sons, one about fourteen and the other twelve. When I went to the barn I found the boys sitting around a nice shepherd dog about one year old. While they were playing with the dog in some way the dog's fore leg about midway between the foot and knee was broken. The hired man who came for me came into the barn and I asked him if Mr. C. had directed him to get me. He said 'Yes sir, he told me to go and "get that d——d smart doctor to come and fix the dog. He's only fit to doctor dogs."' I thought the matter over for a few minutes and curbed my anger. Then went to work. The fracture was easily adjusted. I made side splints, then a crutch reaching from the body to below the foot, and enveloped the whole in a plaster paris cast. Instructed the boys how to care for the dog. Had the boys bring the dog to town every few days when I looked after the dressings. At the proper time I removed the dressings, finding I had a perfect result. In a few days thereafter I sent Mr. C. a bill for \$25. He came to my office and in a rage said he would never pay the bill. If I was a dog doctor I could go to h——l for my pay. I asked him if he positively refused to pay the bill. He surely would never pay me a d——d cent. The next day I gave the account to an attorney for collection instructing him to commence suit which he did in a justice of the peace court. Mr. C. came over, after the notice had been served, and stormed around like a cyclone. He consulted an attorney, who came to me for a statement. He then informed Mr. C. that he would have to pay the bill. He declared that he would not and allowed

judgment to be found against him. An execution was got out and served, when he submitted and paid the bill and cost amounting to more than the bill.

"I received a call to go into the country and see a man suffering with 'lock-jaw.' When I arrived and saw the patient I was amused. He had lock-jaw, but it was locked open. He had a dislocation of the left lower jaw. One afternoon a lad came to my office with a fish hook imbedded in his left cheek. I said, 'My lad, you are a pretty big fish to be caught on such a small hook.' He said, 'Yes, I am a bull head and don't fight back when I am hooked.' A lady came into my office much excited, saying, 'Come quick, Doctor, I think my husband is dead.' He was dead-drunk—alcohol narcotize."

#### SIoux CITY PHYSICIANS.

Dr. John K. Cook was the first physician in Sioux City. Doctor Cook is credited with being the founder of Sioux City. It may be that this honor rightfully belongs to his son-in-law, Joseph A. Jackson, under whose direction Doctor Cook acted, and whose partnership with men of influence, capital and power made it possible to plat a town which had a chance to survive. However, Doctor Cook, even though he be shorn of the title of the father of Sioux City, must always be known as the first citizen. He was a resident agent of the company. Boarded with J. A. Leonais in a cabin until his own was built.

Doctor Cook was born in England. He was an Oxford man, and graduated from a London Medical School. First settled in Illinois, then at Council Bluffs. He was a government surveyor, and surveyed certain government lands in Northwestern Iowa. In May, 1854, he completed the survey. A post office was established in Sioux City in 1855. Doctor Cook was first postmaster. He practiced his profession only in emergencies. He was too busily engrossed in the business of town promotion.

It was related that on an occasion a woman who with her husband was stopping for a time in the town became suddenly ill. Doctor Cook was called. He administered medicine. At the door as he was leaving, the lady of the house stopped him to ask about the case. Doctor Cook said, gruffly, that what he had given the patient would either kill or cure

her. The landlady was much relieved when the patient was improved the next morning.

(I am indebted to Mr. Allen, editor of the Sioux City Journal, for the above history.)

Dr. George W. Beggs located in Sioux City in 1867. He was the first physician and surgeon to engage in active practice in the city.

He was born in Plainfield, Illinois, in 1837. Attended public school in his native town. Received M. A. degree from Evanston College, graduated Rush Medical College in 1860.

Was appointed surgeon of the One Hundred Fifth Illinois Infantry in 1861. Served four years. Was married some time after his discharge from the army in 1865. Practiced at Mapleville, Illinois, for two years, then moved to Sioux City. Doctor Beggs was a dignified studious gentleman and was a successful practitioner. He suffered many hardships as a pioneer.

At one time he answered a call a number of miles north of the city. He had to cross Perry Creek. Owing to heavy rains the creek was full to its banks. On his return in the night he attempted to cross the creek, which had risen still higher. The buggy tipped, throwing him out. He swam to shore and found he was on the side of the creek from which he started. He then swam across the creek again, regained his team and drove home in his wet clothing.

He took much interest in the upbuilding of the city and was a large property owner when he died.

Two or three years after he located here Dr. J. M. Knott came and became a partner with Doctor Beggs, and so continued for about six years. He was a member of the Woodbury County Medical and American Medical Societies. He died in 1906.

Dr. J. N. Warren was born at DeWitt, Iowa, April 30, 1846. Educated at public schools of DeWitt. Academic from Mount Carroll Seminary. Entered Cornell College at Mount Vernon, Iowa, September, 1863. In March, 1864, enlisted as a private in Company F, Forty-Fourth Iowa Infantry. One hundred day service. After being mustered out did clerical work till August, 1868, when he entered the office of Doctor Morgan at DeWitt and commenced the study of medicine.



Attended first course of lectures at the University of Michigan session in 1869-70. Graduated from the Medical Department of Miami University at Cincinnati, Ohio. Practiced at DeWitt till 1878 when he located at Storm Lake, Iowa. Took a postgraduate course at New York City, session 1883-1884. Afterward took private instructions from the late Professor Dawson of New York City, in gynecology and abdominal surgery.

Located in Sioux City, November 1, 1889. In 1891 limited his practice to surgery. Was professor of surgery in the Sioux City Medical College. Did postgraduate work at Vienna, Austria, in 1905. President of Iowa State Medical Society in 1918. Member of the Woodbury County and Iowa State Medical Societies, Sioux Valley and Western Surgical Societies. Fellow of the American College of Surgeons. Local surgeon Great Northern Railway Company. Made a tour of Europe in 1907.

His son, Dr. A. M. Warren, was associated with his father in practice from 1902 till 1925, when he moved to Bellingham, Washington.

Dr. William R. Smith was for nearly forty years one of the leading citizens of Sioux City, whether considered professionally or in the light of public service. He was of a family of artisans and in his youth and early manhood followed the trade of saddle and harness making, both in New York City and in Michigan. About the time he was of age, he returned to New York, where he studied medicine, and then commenced practice at Macon, Michigan. Doctor Smith moved to Sioux City in 1856, when he was about twenty-eight years of age. He practiced his profession diligently and successfully for eleven years. During that period, he responded promptly and ably to urgent calls outside of his practice. During the Civil war period Doctor Smith was prominent in all affairs connected with the protection of the frontier against threatened Indian forays. He was an active officer in raising the company of mounted riflemen which was posted and ready for service until relieved by United States soldiers, and was chairman of the vigilance committee organized at the time of the Indian outbreak of August, 1862. He was also a government surgeon, and in his capacity of a sanitary agent ap-

pointed by Governor Kirkwood inspected the Iowa troops then lying in front of Vicksburg. In 1863-64 he was surgeon of the Board of Enrollment of the Sixth Congressional District and several years after the Rebellion closed served as surgeon for the Pension Bureau.

Doctor Smith was elected mayor of Sioux City in 1863, and from 1865 until 1878, except for a short time in Andrew Johnson's administration, served as receiver of public moneys of the United States Land Office at Sioux City. Millions of dollars passed through his hands, but there was never a breath of suspicion that any of this vast sum ever failed to reach the United States treasury. In 1878, he served as one of the Iowa commissioners to the Paris Exposition, and in 1881 was reelected mayor. He was one of the organizers of Unity Church in 1885, and the last years of his life were devoted largely to its affairs. Until 1886, Doctor Smith's home was a fine eighty-acre farm within the corporate limits of Sioux City and embraced a productive orchard and beautiful groves of forest and ornamental trees. This high tract of land affording a wide view of the Missouri River bluffs, was then platted into lots under the name of Smith's Villa. The tract soon came to be one of the most charming residential sections in the city. Doctor Smith died on July 1, 1894, and his widow survived him until July, 1926. They had been the parents of eight sons, two of whom are living—Milton P., now commissioner of parks and public property, and R. H. Burton Smith, a practicing attorney, both of Sioux City.

#### THE LATE DOCTOR GEORGE SCHOTT.

The death of Dr. George Schott, on the 4th of July, 1926, at his home in Sioux City, called to his well-earned reward one of the oldest and most beloved of the old-time physicians of Sioux City. Only one of his profession, Dr. C. E. Clingan, is now living who was in the city when Doctor Schott came to it to reside in 1882. He was survived by his widow and three sons—Alfred M. Schott, of Florida; Dr. H. J. Schott, of Los Angeles, and Dr. John L. Schott, of Sioux City.

The deceased was born at Beloit, Wisconsin, on June 1, 1858, and passed his childhood and youth in Rochester, Minnesota. The family afterward moved to St. Louis, Missouri,

where he graduated from the Missouri Medical College. Doctor Schott first came to Sioux City in March, 1882, and, with the exception of a few years of practice in Vermilion, South Dakota, practiced in the Iowa city until his death. Aside from his private practice, which was very large, he served for thirty-eight years as surgeon of the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railway. In recent years he was dean of the medical staff of St. Vincent's Hospital.

The following graphic and appreciative sketch of Doctor Schott was written by Dean Wheeler, in July, 1926, and is taken from the Sioux City Journal:

"The passing of Dr. George Schott undoubtedly removes the widest known resident of Sioux City. Because of his profession he had a large personal acquaintance, which was greatly extended by his long residence here. He was peculiarly gifted with the attributes that made him a highly successful doctor, not the least of these being his patience and kindly attitude toward those with whom he came in contact. He was one of the last of the old school family doctor, who would go where he was called, and, besides relieving the distress of sufferers, he would listen and appear to be interested in the small affairs of the families of his patients. To his lasting credit it can be said that he "tempered the wind to the shorn lamb" in the matter of fees, and many is the middle-aged couple in Sioux City today who can look back to the time when they were struggling to make both ends meet that Doctor Schott came to their relief and charged off his services to the good of humanity.

"During the last week in his office Doctor Schott talked calmly of his approaching end. Among other things he said: 'I wanted to do some good in the world, and I hope and believe I have. I always had an ambition not to die rich, and I sure have achieved that ambition. Even though I had been permitted to live another twenty years there isn't much that I could have done, and I approach my end calmly and with a degree of satisfaction with what I have done.'

"During this interview he was in good humor, and talked much as he might have spoken of the approaching death of another. He once remarked that the medical profession held out little hope in a financial way, 'for,' he said, 'when young



couples have babies and little children they can not afford to pay large fees, and when the children grow up and the parents are able to pay they don't need a doctor.' But he always was kindly in his views and he took this situation as a matter of fact. Nature had not endowed him with the money sense.

"Because of his rather unusual name, his lovable personality and his commanding physique Doctor Schott was little short of an institution in Sioux City. A generation ago it was a very familiar sight to see a gray mare dashing along a street, drawing a buggy in which rode a large man with a silk hat, a sure token that Doctor Schott was going to the relief of some sufferer. And that well known rig was just as likely to be seen standing in front of the humblest home as in front of the most fashionable. Doctor Schott knew no caste when the services of a physician were needed. As a result his death will be felt in hundreds of Sioux City homes as a personal loss and he leaves behind personal friends to the number that it is given few men to attract to themselves."

Fellows of the American College of Surgeons from Sioux City: Dr. J. A. Dales, Dr. F. E. Franchere, T. R. Gittins, Dr. E. A. Jenkinson, Dr. William Jepson, Dr. P. E. Keefe, Dr. C. T. Maxwell, Dr. A. J. McLaughlin, Dr. P. B. McLaughlin, Dr. J. B. Naftzger, Dr. J. E. Nervig, Dr. J. E. Reeder, Dr. F. H. Roost, Dr. P. E. Sawyer, and Dr. J. N. Warren.

Among the early physicians of Sioux City was Dr. H. B. Clingan, who located there in 1877. He died ten years later. He was not a graduate of any medical college, but was licensed to practice and was fairly successful. His son, Dr. C. E. Clingan was a graduate of Rush Medical College, Chicago, was associated with his father, and at the age of seventy-five is still in active practice.

#### SIoux CITY COLLEGE OF MEDICINE.

The incorporation of this college was largely owing to Dr. William Jepson. He started with nine instructors. Each year after 1890 a class was graduated. It was a member of the American Medical College Association. The college was closed in 1909 with twenty-seven instructors and eleven assistants. Dr. J. N. Warren was dean of the faculty, and Dr. E. D. Frear, Secretary and Treasurer. Doctor Jepson occu-

plied the chair of surgery and clinical surgery till 1901 when he was appointed Professor of Surgery and Clinical Surgery of the Medical Department of the Iowa State University Faculty in 1909.

Dr. J. N. Warren, Dean, Professor of Surgery and Clinical Surgery.

Dr. E. D. Frear, Secretary and Treasurer, Professor of Dermatology and Hygiene.

Dr. J. A. Dales, Professor of Clinical Surgery and Surgical Anatomy.

Dr. H. A. Wheeler, Professor of Theory and Practice of Medicine.

Dr. F. J. Murphy, Professor of Theory and Practice of Medicine.

Dr. C. M. Wade, Orthopedic Surgery.

Dr. H. N. Brothers, Professor of Materia Medica.

Dr. F. S. Johnson, Professor of Pathology and Bacteriology.

Dr. George Park, Professor of Ophthalmology and Otology.

Dr. J. E. Nervig, Professor of Anatomy.

Dr. Milton Dailey, Professor of Pathology.

Dr. W. S. Tharp, Professor of Genito-urinary Diseases.

Dr. Arthur Wade, Professor of Medical Chemistry.

Dr. F. E. Franchere, Professor of Neurology.

Dr. A. M. Warren, Gynecology.

Dr. J. H. Talbot, Obstetrics.

Dr. A. McMahan, General Chemistry.

Dr. C. F. Thompson, Osteology Syndesmology.

Dr. William Jepson, the founder of Sioux City College of Medicine, was born in Denmark, and received his early education in his native country. He obtained his professional degrees in South Dakota, Iowa, Philadelphia and Edinburgh, Scotland. He is a Fellow of the American College of Surgeons and a member of various local societies, as well as of the American Medical Association. His practice has been in Nebraska and Sioux City, and in his professional capacity has served both on the Mexican border and as chief of the surgical staff of Camp Bowie, Texas, in 1918-19. Doctor Jepson was president of the Iowa State Medical Society in

1906 and also served as chairman of the State Board of Medical Examiners.

#### SIOUX VALLEY MEDICAL ASSOCIATION.

The Sioux Valley Medical Association was organized in June, 1896, at Sioux Falls, South Dakota. The territory embraced in this society is Northwestern Iowa, Southern Minnesota, Eastern South Dakota and Northwestern Nebraska.

It had thirty-seven charter members. This society has steadily grown in importance as a scientific body. It has attracted noted medical men from distant points east, west, north and south.

Some of the most noted teachers in this country have read papers or delivered lectures before this organization. It meets twice a year, at Sioux Falls for the annual meeting; at Sioux City for the Western meeting.

#### SIOUX CITY HOSPITALS.

The Methodist Hospital was established in Sioux City, Iowa, as a result of the gift of the Hospital Building located at Fourteenth and Jones streets to the Northwest Iowa Conference of the Methodist Episcopal Church by Dr. William Jepson, in 1920. The institution was opened for the reception of patients on October 20th of that year, and the work carried on at that location until February 1, 1924, when the New Samaritan Hospital property at Seventeenth and Pierce streets was taken over under lease and operated until December 1, 1925. In the meantime a campaign for funds to build a new, modern hospital, up-to-date in all of its arrangements and equipment, was put on in Sioux City and throughout Northwest Iowa. A triangular tract of ground of unsurpassed beauty and utility, located at Twenty-ninth and Douglas streets, was purchased from the New Samaritan Hospital Association, and in August, 1924, the contracts for the new building were let. On October 20th, the corner-stone was laid by the Grand Lodge of A. F. and A. M., of Iowa; Dr. Jesse A. West, Past Grand Worshipful Master, in charge of the ceremonies. The building is a modern, fire-proof struc-



ture, with capacity for 110 patients minimum, and 125 maximum. The operating rooms, five in number, are equipped according to the highest standards. The Laboratory and X-Ray Departments have no superior in this section. The Maternity Department is one of the finest in the Northwest and is located on the third floor, entirely separate in every respect from the Operating Section on the fourth floor. The site, building, and equipment, involved an outlay of \$418,000, and is regarded one of the best built and best equipped institutions in the country for the sum expended.

The Methodist Hospital is a Class A institution, duly recognized by the American College of Surgeons. Dr. G. T. Notson, D. D., the Superintendent, has devoted many years to the building and management of hospitals under the auspices of the Methodist Episcopal Church. Previous to coming to Sioux City he led in the building of the Methodist State Hospital, Mitchell, South Dakota, which is regarded one of the most complete 100-bed hospitals in the Northwest.

Samaritan Hospital was the first one to be founded in Sioux City. It commenced operation in a two story frame building, formerly a residence, on the corner of Seventeenth and Pierce streets in 1875. In 1878 the new three story brick was finished and occupied. It continued up until 1924; capacity, 75 beds. It had fully equipped laboratories and Training School for Nurses. This hospital was under the supervision of the W. C. T. U. On account of lack of funds to keep it in proper operation it was closed. It was placed in Class A by the American College of Surgeons. It was the pioneer and leading hospital for many years.

The St. Vincent Hospital is under the management of the Benedictine Sisters. It commenced operation in a building on the corner of Seventh and Pierce streets in 1907, with a capacity of fifty beds.

In 1917 they moved into a new fire proof building on the corner of Seventh and Jennings streets; capacity, 125 beds. This hospital has fully equipped laboratories, four modern operating rooms and a Nurses' Training School with competent instructors. Mother M. Gertrude is Superintendent.

St. Joseph's Mercy Hospital, one of the most complete institutions of the kind in the Northwest, was the first Catholic

hospital in the city. On September 7, 1890, the corner-stone of the original hospital was laid a few months after the institution had been established by Sister Mary Seraphine, who had been appointed Superior of the little band of Sisters of Mercy under her. The new building, costing about \$12,000, was completed and occupied that year. It had a capacity of sixty beds. All the manual labor in the operation of the hospital was done by the Sisters. In 1902, a material addition to the capacity of the hospital was made, a school for the training of nurses having been founded two years previously. In 1911 another addition was made, the staff was increased and the graduate nurses became more numerous and efficient. The great annex to the hospital which was completed in 1926 at a cost of \$350,000 was the culmination of many years of ceaseless work and faithfulness. The obstetrical department, or maternity wing, was especially enlarged and improved. The addition lately opened was constructed under the supervision of Mother M. Ursula.

The members of the first medical staff of the hospital were: Dr. William Jepson, Dr. Frank J. Murphy, Dr. John P. Savage, Dr. Guy C. Rich and Dr. J. N. Warren. Of these, Drs. Jepson, Murphy and Warren are still in Sioux City, Doctor Savage is in the East and Doctor Rich is in California.

The Lutheran General Hospital was organized in 1901 by a number of individual Lutherans and congregations of the church in Sioux City. They formed a Hospital Association, which purchased a frame building on Twenty-seventh Street, between Pierce and Nebraska, which for some time had been used as a private hospital. After various improvements had been made, the hospital was opened to patients of any creed or nationality who needed care and treatment. The first president of the Lutheran Hospital Association was Rev. H. Wehking, of Alta, Iowa, who still holds that position; and Rev. A. Armstein, of Charter Oak, has also served as vice president during the same period. Dr. John Herman, who was chief surgeon at the hospital until his death in 1916, donated and sold a site adjoining the original building, and in the following year a two-story addition was completed. In June, 1919, a large three-story hospital building was begun, but owing to war conditions it was not completed until De-

ember, 1920. The old frame building in which the hospital was first opened was torn down in 1925 to make room for another addition which was completed in the following year at a cost of \$50,000. The Lutheran General Hospital, which now has a capacity of 100 beds, is accredited by the American College of Surgeons, and its Training School for Nurses is accredited by the State. The general superintendent, Miss Amy Schjolberg, is a graduate of the Augustana Hospital, Chicago; was superintendent of nurses at the Iowa Lutheran Hospital, Des Moines, but resigned that position and went overseas with the Red Cross. She also has been superintendent of nurses at St. Andrews Hospital, Minneapolis and Galesburg. Miss Schjolberg was a Sioux City girl.

#### PRACTITIONERS IN WOODBURY COUNTY.

Dr. Oliver N. Ainsworth, who was a graduate of the College of Physicians and Surgeons at Keokuk, was the first permanent physician to locate at Sloan in 1878, but in 1893 moved to Spearfish, South Dakota, where he died in 1898.

Dr. W. H. Dewey was the first physician to locate at Merville. He graduated from the medical department, Iowa State University, March 4, 1884. He was a classmate of the late Dr. R. E. Conniff, of Sioux City. He practiced at Fairbank, Iowa, for three years. He was married May 1st, 1887, at Fairbank. His personal account follows: "The next day thereafter we set sail in a buggy drawn by a span of good stout ponies. We were married in the M. E. Church, on the Sabbath after the regular services, and Monday morning we started spending a week's honeymoon in the journey in the great open spaces of Iowa. The railway was then being built from Kingsley to Merville. I knew just where we were coming. This town was platted, but there was but one little shack, just being shingled, when we drove over the plowed field of prospective Merville. In anticipation of the fact that the incoming people would have to have drugs and medical supplies, I opened my shop with a small stock of drugs in a shed adjacent to a temporary stable. Here I dispensed the necessaries out of a dry goods box. The drug business being a necessity, and fairly remunerative, I continued in the busi-



ness for twenty years, selling out to the Haskell Drug Company."

Dr. Dewey is a dignified, accomplished gentleman of the old school. He is precise in his observance of the ethics of the profession and demands like treatment. Notwithstanding his large practice he has kept abreast the advancement of medicine in all lines.

Dr. J. W. Hipple came here in the spring of 1888, coming from Kingsley, Iowa.

Dr. G. E. Inley was born on a farm near Moreau, Saratoga County, New York. The family moved to Warren County, where he attended public school. He took a course in the Academy at Warrensburg and taught district school for ten years. In the spring of 1872 he began the study of medicine in the office of Dr. Herman McNutt, of Warrensburg. He graduated from the Dartmouth Medical College at Hanover, New Hampshire, in 1878, and located at Conklingsville in the same year. He removed to Saratoga Springs in 1885, and came to Iowa in 1898, locating at Salix. He removed to Wisconsin, but after a few years he returned to Iowa, locating at Merville. He had a pleasant personality, was a fine conversationalist and enjoyed a lucrative practice. He died October 20, 1912, aged 65 years.

#### POCAHONTAS COUNTY (NOTES BY DR. A. W. PATTERSON).

"From what information I can find I think that Dr. J. M. Carroll was the first physician to locate in the county. The following is taken from a History of Pocahontas County:

"Carroll, Joseph M. (born 1848), Laurens, is a native of LaPorte, Indiana. He moved with his parents to Illinois in his boyhood and to a farm near Iowa City in 1855. After several years devoted to study at Iowa City he began the practice of medicine, locating at Fonda, and the next year in Pomeroy, Calhoun County. In 1874 he married Eva J. Brock of Calhoun County and in 1879 graduated from the medical department of the Iowa State University. In 1882 after a residence of nine years at Pomeroy he located at Laurens, a new town founded that year.'

"Dr. Carroll died in 1925, and further information can be had by writing to Dr. J. H. Hovenden at Laurens.

"In 1881 two other physicians located in the county: Dr. D. W. Edgar located at Fonda and Dr. W. W. Beam located at Rolfe. The latter is still living and in active practice at Rolfe and I presume you could get valuable information from him. Dr. Edgar's wife is still living here at Fonda and you can get what information you wish about him from her.

"My father was probably the next physician to locate here and I enclose clipping from paper from which you can obtain information about him. If you are the Senior Dr. Warren you knew my father, as I have heard him tell about the time when I was a baby and had the croup and he called you down from Storm Lake to see me. I know of no special tragedy and of course the hardships you know about.

"Geo. W. Bothwell was probably the second physician in Fonda, and also in the county. He came to Fonda on November 1, 1877, and was here until 1888. He practiced medicine and during the latter part of this period had an interest in a drug store. His mother and son began to reside with him in 1878 and in October of that year he married Ida Dodge, a resident of Fonda. This ceremony was performed by Rev. H. G. McBride. His son when nineteen years old had a slight mental derangement and was killed by the railroad."

Dr. M. F. Patterson, the father of A. W., was a native of Ohio. He reached manhood in Erie County, that State, and graduated from the medical department of the Western Reserve University, at Cleveland. In 1883, he located at Pocahontas, Iowa, as the first resident physician of that place. Dr. Patterson moved to Fonda in September of the following year, became a professional partner of several leading physicians there, and in 1888-95 pursued several post-graduate courses in New York and Chicago, specializing in diseases of the eye and ear. In June, 1895, Dr. Patterson moved to Des Moines, where he followed his specialty with success. His death occurred January 15, 1916, at the home of his daughter in Fonda.

Physicians in the county who served in the World war were Dr. E. W. Wilson at Rolfe and Dr. G. F. Parker at Pocahontas, and these are both located at these places at the present time.

There are three physicians located at Fonda at the present time, and nineteen in the county.

#### THE PROFESSION IN BUENA VISTA COUNTY.

Dr. L. J. Harvey was the pioneer physician at Storm Lake. He located in 1870. He was not a graduate. He resided there until about 1897, when he moved west. After several years he returned to Buena Vista County and located at Alta. He practiced there until his death in 1908.

Dr. H. F. Park located in 1872. He was a soldier in the Civil war. He opened the first drug store and confined his practice in town and conducted his drug business.

Dr. W. H. Kerr next located in about 1875. He moved to some place in Nebraska in 1880, where he died.

Dr. J. N. Warren located in 1878 and remained there until November, 1889, when he moved to Sioux City.

Dr. W. H. Kerline located in 1885 and practiced there until his death in 1910.

At present the resident physicians are Doctors James H. O'Donoghue, H. E. Farnsworth, A. G. Gran, D. H. Nusbaum, Edgar F. Smith and J. A. Swallum. Dr. James H. O'Donoghue was a captain in the World war from June, 1917, until February, 1919.

Stephen Olney opened an office in Sioux Rapids in 1871, and as a pioneer he rode long distances to answer his calls, suffering many hardships. He was very successful professionally and in business. At an advanced age he is living near Sioux Rapids, on a beautiful farm, enjoying his declining years in comfort.

Resident physicians are Doctors T. R. Campbell, Oscar Oberg and T. W. Swallum.

Dr. T. E. Hosman opened an office in Newell in 1870. After several years he moved away. Doctors Ball and John Brooks located at Newell in 1876. Dr. Ball was drowned in Storm Lake in 1878. Dr. Brooks continued a very successful practice and became wealthy, largely in speculating in farm lands. He moved to Des Moines several years ago and is in practice there at present. Resident physicians at Newell are Doctors Max A. Armstrong and Fred C. Foley.



## MEDICAL MEN OF PLYMOUTH COUNTY.

The following history of the medical men of Plymouth County was furnished by Dr. M. W. Richey of LeMars. He is a graduate of the Kentucky School of Medicine, Louisville, in 1876. Locating in LeMars in 1887, Doctor Richey has been very successful in his practice and he is a large land owner in Plymouth and O'Brien counties.

Other LeMars practitioners: Dr. M. Hilbert, a graduate of Rush Medical College. Practiced here in the early 1870's. Is now dead.

Doctors Foster and Zanton were here for a few years in the early 1870's. Both regular graduates.

Dr. William Paster located here when the town was new, 1870.

Dr. W. H. Ensminger, a regular graduate, 1870 to 1883. Now deceased.

Dr. J. C. Hackett, a regular graduate, 1879 to 1890. Now deceased.

Dr. J. W. Hines, a regular graduate, 1880 to 1893. Now deceased.

Dr. Paul L. Brick was here from 1880 to about 1900. A regular graduate.

Dr. M. W. Richey, 1887 to this date. A regular graduate.

Dr. G. L. Clark, a regular graduate, 1883 to 1890, now in Glenwood Springs County.

Dr. W. T. Gerisch, regular graduate, 1883 to about 1888. Deceased.

Dr. W. O. Prosser, regular graduate, 1882 to 1890. Deceased.

Dr. C. M. Hillebrandt, regular graduate, 1885 to 1890. Deceased.

Doctor Cole, regular graduate, about 1895 to this date.

Dr. G. H. Mammon, 1893 to 1915, regular graduate. Now in Chicago.

Doctor Somers, regular graduate, 1895 to 1912. Deceased.

Dr. J. M. Fettis, regular graduate, 1912 to date. Here now.

Dr. W. C. Shephard, homeopathic. Here from 1890 to date.

Dr. W. Shephard, homeopathic. Here from 1925 to date.

Dr. A. H. Mosher, regular graduate. Here 1905 to date.

Dr. A. M. Mauer, regular graduate. Came last year.

Dr. C. M. Keuhney, regular graduate. Was here from about 1895 to 1905.

Dr. J. L. Reeves, regular graduate. Here from 1895 to this date.

Doctor Foster, regular graduate. Now in Chicago. Was here from about 1890 to 1900.

Dr. John Brower, regular graduate, 1881. Few months.

Dr. J. A. Lamb, regular graduate. Here from 1915 to date.

Dr. Floyd Clark, regular graduate. Here from 1900 to 1918. Now in Omaha.

Dr. W. W. Larson, regular graduate. Here for past ten years.

Dr. M. J. Joynt, regular graduate. Here since about 1910.

Salix: First. Dr. W. R. Ruaney, in 1886.

Second. Dr. J. N. LeGault, in 1888.

Third. Dr. James F. Taylor, in 1892.

No physicians now in this village.

Merrill: First to locate was Doctor Jenkins. Not a graduate.

Dr. H. A. Nigg located in 1889. Iowa University (1888).

Dr. William Berner located in 1898. Moved to Belle Fourche, S. D.

Dr. W. E. Walker located in 1907.

Dr. Fred Vernon.

Kingsley: Doctor Hippel and Doctor Miller, the first resident doctors, settled in Quorm in 1880. Quorm was built on the west bank of the West Fork Railroad. Later moved to the present site and called Kingsley.

Dr. J. R. Walcott, still in active practice in Kingsley, was the first doctor to come to the present town of Kingsley. Came in 1883, November 20th. Graduated in Louisville, Kentucky, June 20, 1883. The early doctors often used to fight prairie fires in making their country calls; also ford streams, go over winding trails and through blizzards to reach their patients.

Dr. J. J. Wilder, a graduate of Missouri, came in 1885.

He was a soldier of the Civil war. At present there are three Missourians in Kingsley, Dr. J. R. Walcott, Dr. B. F. Wendell, and E. J. Leichty.

Dr. F. J. Spain, dentist, lieutenant in World war.

Sioux Center: The first doctor was S. Dirk Mulder. He located in Sioux Center in 1889. He held a degree from Holland. Several followed but cannot get the record. At present resident physicians are Dr. A. C. Jongewaard, Dr. Wm. B. Maris and Dr. S. B. DePree. Doctor DePree is a dignified, educated gentleman, has M. A. degree and is a graduate. He served in the World war as a captain at Fort Riley, and still holds his commission in the Reserves.

Akron: Through the kindness of Dr. J. H. Kerr, of Akron, I have the following history. Doctor Kerr graduated from the University of Nebraska College of Medicine in 1904 and located in Akron, 1908. He is a member of the Plymouth County, the Sioux Valley, Iowa State and American Medical societies. He is the owner of the Akron Hospital, twenty-bed capacity, under the management of his sister, a graduate nurse. Dr. John Nemans was the first physician to locate in Akron in 1868. In 1875 he sold out his practice to Dr. R. D. Clark, who as a pioneer practitioner underwent many hardships and many times without pay. He was a dignified, refined gentleman and very much loved by the citizens of his community. He was the first person in this part of Iowa to purchase an automobile—a machine having high wheels, like those of a buggy. He died in 1906 from pneumonia.

Dr. S. Cilley located in Akron in 1885, and soon became a partner with Dr. Clark. He moved to California in 1905, and died there in 1910.

Dr. G. V. Ellis located in 1885, remaining until 1904, when he moved to Salem, Oregon.

Dr. P. A. Lilley located in 1904 and removed West in 1908.

Dr. G. Y. Koch located in 1905 and remained until 1912, when he moved to Sioux City.

Present physicians of Akron: Dr. George Mattison, located here in 1913. Dr. W. J. Bruner, came in 1914. Dr. J. H. Kerr, who is one of the most active men in his profession.



## CLAY COUNTY.

Dr. Charles McAllister was born in South Lee, Mass., February 1, 1840. His early life was spent on a farm. Attended the public schools during the winter. Entered Williams College and graduated in class of 1863. Then entered Berkshire Medical College, graduating with class of 1865. Commenced practice in Stockbridge, Mass. Located in Dixon, Illinois, for two years. In 1872 located at Spencer. President Clay County Medical Society for several terms. Member of Upper Des Moines Medical Association, Iowa State Medical Society, American Medical Society and American Railway Surgeons. For over thirty years local surgeon for the C., M. & St. P. Railway. In politics is a republican. Was elected to the State Legislature in 1877. He was a large land owner, including city property. Deceased.

Dr. M. M. Hines, located in Spencer, Iowa, spring of 1871. Practiced here for five or six years; retired from practice but made his home here for several years. Moved to Fayette County where he died about twenty years ago. Could not find out whether a graduate in medicine or not.

Dr. S. J. Eggelston located in Spencer, Iowa, in 1872. Opened a drug store. Practiced very little. Later retired and spent latter years of his life in Santa Ana, California, where he died.

Dr. D. E. Knight located in Spencer, Iowa, in 1876. Practiced for ten or fifteen years. Retired from practice. Lives in Whittier, California.

Doctor Pond located in Douglas Township and later in Sioux Rapids, 1875.

Dr. H. C. Crerry located in Spencer, Iowa, in 1877.

Dr. A. K. Frain—homeopathic. Graduated from Homeopathic Department, University of Michigan, in 1872. Located in Spencer in 1876.

Dr. Mary J. Frain—homeopathic. Graduated from Michigan in 1872. Located in Spencer in 1876.

Dr. A. S. Chatterton, graduated from University of Iowa College of Medicine in 1886 and located in Peterson, Iowa, where he practiced until his death.

Dr. A. H. Bowman—Located in Spencer, Iowa, about 1882. No other data.

Dr. R. C. McDonald—Located in Spencer in 1883.

Dr. G. W. Greaves—Graduate of Rush in 1874. Located in Spencer in 1890 and practiced for many years until his death.

Dr. William Esser—Graduate of Rush in 1891. Located in Peterson, Iowa, where he still lives (I believe), but does not practice.

Dr. G. B. Snyder—Graduate of Bellevue Medical College in 1885. Located soon after in Everly, Iowa, where he practiced until about 1920. Retired and lives in New York City.

Dr. William Woodburn—Graduated in 1888. Located in Spencer the same year where he practiced until 1890. Then moved to Des Moines. Now practices at Boone, Iowa.

Dr. J. C. Collester—Graduated in 1888. Located in Spencer in 1890 where he practiced until 1916. Retired and lives in Whittier, California. First Sergeant Company G, Twenty-Third Regiment Illinois Volunteers, Civil war.

Physicians now in active practice in Clay County: Dr. John B. Wertz—Graduated from College of Medicine, State University of Iowa, in 1892. Located in Spencer in 1902 and still in practice here.

Dr. Minerva Porter Wertz—Graduated from College of Medicine, State University of Iowa, in 1893. Located in Spencer in 1903, and still in active practice here.

Dr. Elbert E. Munger—Graduate of College of Medicine, State University of Iowa, in 1894. Located in Spencer in 1895 and still here in active practice.

Dr. H. O. Green—Graduate of St. Louis College of Physicians and Surgeons in 1895. Located in Spencer soon after and is still in active practice.

Dr. Daniel S. Jones—Graduate of Starling Medical College in 1895. Located in Royal, Iowa, where he is still in active practice.

Dr. Thomas H. Johnston—Graduate Greens University, Kingston, Ontario, Canada, in 1900. Located in Webb, Iowa. Moved to Spencer in 1906 and is in active practice here now.

Dr. John M. Sokal—Graduate of Rush Medical College in 1902. Interne in Cook County Hospital in 1902-1903. Located in Spencer in 1904 where he is still in active practice.

Dr. Emory A. Rust—Graduated at Jefferson Medical Col-

lege, Philadelphia, Pa., in 1904. Located at Webb, Iowa, in 1906 where he still is in active practice.

Dr. James H. Bruce—Graduated from the General Medical College in 1906. Located in Dickens where he is still in active practice. First Lieutenant in World war. No foreign service.

Dr. Charles C. Collester—Graduated Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia, Pa., in 1909. Interne Delaware Hospital eighteen months. One year postgraduate work London, England. Resident surgeon Golden Square Hospital, London, England, in 1911 to 1912. Located in Spencer in 1912 where he still is in active practice.

Dr. Donald C. Snyder—Graduated from College of Medicine, State University of Iowa. Interne Harper Hospital, Detroit, Michigan. S. A. T. C. in World war. Located in Everly, Iowa, in 1924 where he still practices.

Dr. G. W. Adams—Graduate of College of Medicine, State University of Iowa, in 1922. Interne University Hospital Iowa City, 1922-1923. Located in Royal in 1923.

Dr. Harry G. DeGaizon—Graduate of National Medical University, Chicago, Illinois, in 1904. Located in Everly, Iowa, in 1918, where he is still in active practice.

Dr. Orlando E. Howey—Graduate of Starling Medical College in 1912. Moved to Spencer, Iowa, in 1924 from Coon Rapids, Iowa.

RESIDENT PRACTITIONERS OF THE O'BRIEN COUNTY  
MEDICAL SOCIETY.

T. Arnold	Primghar
H. L. Avery	Primghar
H. J. Brackney	Sheldon
W. R. Brock	Sheldon
G. E. Vermer	Sheldon
C. Longshore	Sheldon
J. W. Myers	Sheldon
L. L. Myers	Sheldon
Frank L. Myers	Sheldon
L. L. Corcoran	Rock Rapids
Jay M. Crowley	Rock Rapids
J. E. Dahlbo	Sutherland



T. D. Kas	Sutherland
E. Dudley	Paullina
W. A. Hamilton	Paullina
G. C. Oldag	Paullina
J. W. Levy	Sanborn
W. C. Hand	Hartley
J. W. Conoway	Hartley
E. Pfeiffer	Hartley

Dr. C. Longshore located in Sheldon, Iowa, in 1873. His mother was among the first graduated women given license to practice medicine in this country. She was a distinguished practitioner located in Philadelphia. Doctor Longshore was elected county recorder about 1876 and served one term, then returned to Sheldon, where he continued in practice until 1880, when he retired. He was a licentiate under the medical practice act. The Doctor spends the summer months at Lake Okoboji and the winters either in Sheldon or Florida.

Dr. H. T. Lanning was the second physician to locate in Sheldon, which he did in 1876, being a graduate of the Iowa State University. He served the people well during the disastrous grasshopper scourge and then went to West Branch in 1881 where his relatives lived. He died from meningitis at Luverne, Minnesota, in 1885.

Dr. C. L. Gurney, a graduate of the Keokuk Medical College, located here in 1878 and continued until about 1885. He moved to Doon, Iowa, where he continued in practice until about 1890, when he died.

Dr. W. P. Woodcock, a graduate of Bellevue Hospital Medical College, date not known, but probably in the '50s. He located in Sheldon in 1876 and continued in practice until 1890 when he made Spencer his home and started what is now the widely known "Woodcock" greenhouse. He died at Spencer in 1910.

Dr. Ralph Waldo Emerson Puckett, a graduate of the Iowa State University in 1878, located at Sheldon in June, 1881, and continued until 1885 when he removed to Rock Rapids, Iowa, where he continued for a few years and after-

wards represented the W. P. Saunders Company in this territory, selling medical publications.

Dr. F. W. Cram was born in Bangor, Maine, in 1854 and graduated at Rush Medical College in 1878. Located at Sheldon, in 1881 and practiced here until his death on August 24, 1926. He was local surgeon for the C. St. P. M. & O. Ry Co., and the C. M. & St. P. Ry. Co. from 1881 and the Sioux Falls branch of the I. C. Ry. Co. since it was built through here. He built the first telephone exchange here, but sold it to the Western Electric Telephone System in 1895. He operated the first hospital which was and is still going as a private institution.

Doctor Struble, a graduate of the Iowa State University, located in Sheldon in 1890 and continued for four years when he removed to Inwood, Iowa, where he practiced for several years, then went to Kansas.

Dr. W. H. Myers was born in 1858 and graduated from Rush in 1886 and was licensed in Iowa in 1886. After graduation he located in Aurelia, Iowa, where he practiced until 1889, when he came to Sheldon, Iowa, and continued in active practice until his death, which occurred February 7, 1922. Outside of his medical work he took great interest in educational affairs and was a member of the local school board for a great many years and chairman at the time of his death.

Dr. Frank L. Myers was born in Illinois in 1865 and graduated from the University College of Medicine at Chicago and located at Sheldon in 1888. His practice was largely limited to the eye, ear, nose and throat. He is still in Sheldon.

Dr. Walter R. Brock, born in 1870, graduated from Drake University, Des Moines, 1894, located in Sheldon, 1896. He is still in active practice, making a specialty of surgery.

Dr. H. J. Brackney, born in 1881, graduated from University of Iowa in 1905, located in Sheldon in the same year. Doctor Brackney was a captain in the Iowa National Guard, 1910-11, volunteered in World war in May, 1918, was accepted and commissioned captain. Was ordered out October, 1918, and commanded Company 50, M. O. T. C., Ft. Riley, until the war ended. Company 50 consisted of sixty-five doctors. He was commissioned major in June, 1920, and served as commanding officer, Sanitary Department, One Hundred

Thirty-Fourth Infantry, for over a year. At present is Major in Medical Relief Corps.

Dr. Judson W. Myers, born in Sheldon, 1889, graduated from the Iowa State University in 1915 and located in Sheldon the same year. In August, 1918, he volunteered in the World war service and went to Ft. Riley, Kansas. In October he was sent to the base hospital at Camp Custer, Michigan, where he remained until the close of the war.

Dr. Lynn L. Myers, born in Sheldon, 1893, was graduated from the Iowa University in 1916, locating in Sheldon the same year. In 1918 he recruited in Des Moines for the navy service, but did not have opportunity to see active service.

Doctor Wilcox, an eclectic practitioner, located in Sheldon in 1884 and removed to Huron, South Dakota, in 1892, where he died in 1906.

Dr. C. V. Page graduated from the State University homeopathic department in 1901 and located in Sheldon in 1903, but moved to St. Paul, Minnesota, in 1918, where he is still in practice.

Dr. Gerritt E. Vermer, born November 19, 1882, at Alton, Iowa, graduated June 14, 1911, Northwestern University Medical School, Chicago. Served an internship in Seattle Emergency Hospital 1911-1912. Entered practice in Osceola July 28, 1912, and left here October 28, 1912. Practiced in Rock Valley, November 1, 1912, to October 1, 1914. Returned to Sibley October 1, 1914, and practiced three and a half years as partner to Dr. F. P. Winkler and owned a half interest in Osceola Hospital. Sold to F. P. Winkler April 1, 1918, and resumed practice at Sheldon, Iowa. Joined Medical Reserve April 1, 1918. Owns and operates Samaritan Hospital at Sheldon. Belongs to the O'Brien County, Northwest Iowa, Sioux Valley, and Iowa State Medical Societies, and the American Medical Association.

#### CARROLL COUNTY MEDICAL MEN.

Dr. L. G. Patty, of Carroll, furnishes the following:

Doctor Patty is a graduate of Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, 1893, and is a Fellow of the American College of Surgeons.



Dr. A. L. Wright located in Carroll in 1874. He was a very energetic and successful practitioner. He was local, and later a division surgeon of the C. & N. W. Railway up to the time of his death. He was the first to make a specialty of surgery in Carroll. In the early '90s he converted his home into a small hospital. Afterwards he purchased the vacated Normal School building and converted it into a hospital. He continued to operate it till the Benedictine Sisters built the St. Anthony Hospital, capacity, 100 beds. Doctor Wright died in Paris, France.

J. R. C. Brainard: Regular school; address, Manning, Iowa; born in Tennessee; date of diploma, January 18, 1887.

G. M. Barber: Regular school; address, Manning, Iowa; born in Ohio; date of diploma, March 3, 1880, S. U. I.

C. A. Beiterman: Regular school; address, Arcadia; born in Pennsylvania; date of diploma, April 1, 1881, Jefferson.

Edward W. Downs: Regular school; address, Collins; born in Iowa; date of diploma, March 4, 1885, S. U. I.

Samuel C. Dunkle: Regular school; address, Glidden; born in Pennsylvania; date of diploma, June 10, 1881, Kentucky.

Adolph M. Evetz: Regular school; address, LaCrosse; born in New York; date of diploma, May 21, 1910, St. Louis.

Johann Bartels Heinrich Fenstra: Regular school; address, Arcadia; born in Netherlands; date of diploma, Reg. November 26, 1886.

Frank Vernon Gates: Regular school; address, Glidden; born in Iowa; date of diploma, May 26, 1904, S. U. I.

C. W. Henry: Regular school; address, Templeton; born in Ohio; date of diploma, February 19, 1884, Rush. Died 1925, at Coon Rapids.

B. H. Hawver: Regular school; address, Dedham; born in Illinois; date of diploma, March 1, 1881, Keokuk. Died at Carroll.

Christian H. LeDuc: Regular school; address, Templeton; born in Iowa; date of diploma, April 2, 1895, Chicago. Died from an injury sustained from handling a horse, at Breda.

M. C. McKenna: Regular school; address, Manning; born in Vermont. Not a graduate. Died from an operation at Carroll, Iowa.

Louis Moser: Regular school; address, Manning; born in Austria. State Board of M. D. Examiners.

J. M. Patty: Regular school; address, Carroll; born in Ohio; graduate. Came to Carroll June 10, 1867; practiced medicine until his death, July 31, 1884.

James Kidder Root: Regular school; address, Coon Rapids; date of diploma, March 10, 1885, S. U. I.

Edward B. Towne: Regular school; address, Dedham; born in Ohio; date of diploma, January 10, 1887.

Robert R. Williams: Regular school; address, Manning; born in Wisconsin; date of diploma, February 17, 1876, Rush. Doctor is still alive but retired at Manning, Iowa.

A. L. Wright: Regular school; address, Carroll; born in Wisconsin; date of diploma, February 17, 1874, Rush. Died in France.

#### PALO ALTO COUNTY.

Doctors George Beebe and Trale were the first medical men to locate in Ruthven, Iowa. They did not hold a county, state or national office.

Dr. H. M. Huston, First Lieutenant World war (Camp Greenleaf, Savannah, Georgia, Jacksonville, Florida). There is no hospital at Ruthven. Dr. H. M. Huston is the only M. D. in town.

Dr. George Dana is the only dentist in town.

Dr. J. J. Whiting came to Emmetsburg in 1872 or 1873 and left here in 1883. Had been a surgeon in the Civil war. Was a well qualified physician and surgeon, a man of fine personality. Believe he was the first physician in Palo Alto County.

#### MEDICAL HISTORY OF OSCEOLA COUNTY.

About a decade ago Dr. H. Neill, who, in 1875, located for practice at Sibley, and was for many years one of the oldest, ablest and best known members of the profession in Osceola County, wrote a medical history of the county, which is

largely drawn upon for this paper. Eventually, he retired to California where he died several years ago. He says: "About seventy per cent of the early settlers of Osceola County were veterans of the Civil war, and the same is true of Northwest Iowa. These veterans stacked arms, married their sweethearts, worked for a while until they could get a yoke of cattle, a few cows and a little money, and in 1871 made a location in this beautiful region. The following year they brought their families and made their permanent homes in this section of the state.

"A history of medicine in the county should commence with some account of the early practitioners. From common report, I believe that Bela D. Churchill was the first to practice in the county. He was probably an army nurse and, on his arrival, as there were no doctors, he had to do something in the way of practice. As nearly as I can learn, he met with indifferent success. Whether he ever opened an office in Sibley I have not ascertained.

"Dr. C. L. Gurney was the first man in the county who devoted his whole time to the practice of medicine. He located at Sibley in 1875, a few months prior to my appearance on the scene. He first located on a homestead near Ashton in 1872. As nearly as I can learn, he was employed in some capacity by a doctor in Fayette, Iowa, and came from that place to Ashton. He was of Quaker extraction, and a church of that persuasion being located west of Ashton, and there being no doctor anywhere in that region, the fact that he knew anything about medicine was sufficient to draft him into the work. He was a cripple, due to a tubercular trouble of the knee, and because of this affliction he was finally induced to give up farming and devote all of his time to medicine. Accordingly he sold his farm and located in Sibley, as before mentioned. I found Doctor Gurney to be an estimable man, and, considering his limitations, quite a successful practitioner. He made but little pretensions to knowing much about medicine. As I recollect, he had no surgical instruments, and his library consisted of a work on domestic medicine and Tilden's appendix to the *Materia Medica*. When he wanted a prescription, he consulted that work, in which there was a formula for every disease. I well remember a ride I



made with the Doctor. A man, a patient of the Doctor's, came to the road and displayed a fibroid tumor of the hand. Doctor Gurney told the man that it would be a pleasure for him to remove it. Afterwards, I asked the Doctor why he had not performed the operation; his reply was characteristic, 'I don't know anything about anatomy and might cut something,' meaning an artery, I suppose. At the time mentioned he enjoyed a considerable practice, but under the circumstances, it soon began to wane. Our friendship continued until his death. During his residence in Sibley he took a vacation, and graduated at the College of Physicians and Surgeons at Keokuk, Iowa, although he was only absent about six months. In 1880 he removed to Sheldon, and in 1884 became a member of the Sheldon Board of United States Examining Surgeons for Pensions, Doctor Longshore and myself being the other members. About 1886 the Doctor sold his practice to Doctor Myers, and removed to Rock Rapids, where he suffered an amputation of his diseased leg. He immediately removed to Doon, Iowa, where he opened a drug store, and in connection with his business, practiced medicine. He died there about 1900."

Doctor Neill then proceeds to instance various cases of surgery and disease which had come under his observation. He says that the first amputation in Osceola County, that of a child whose leg had been nearly severed by a reaper while he lay asleep in a wheat field, occurred in August, 1876, and the first operation for appendicitis, twelve years later. The first operation for stone in the bladder was performed in 1890 by Doctor Neill, assisted by two of his profession, upon a lad of sixteen years, with recovery. Dysentery, scarlet fever, typhoid fever and diphtheria were treated with more or less success in the early days, the two last diseases being perhaps the most widely disseminated. The greatest epidemic of diphtheria occurred in 1885, its inception having been in Eastern Lyon County in February of that year.

The Doctor gives some amusing instances of the crude means by which he was often obliged to treat his patients. He relates that in 1879 he was attending three brothers who were sick with typhoid fever in one house. Two of the brothers were convalescing at this particular visit, but the other

had a temperature of 106 degrees and was wildly delirious with other very grave symptoms. "I knew," says Doctor Neill, "that a cold bath was imperative, for cold sponging had not reduced the temperature. Of course, there was no bathtub, but there was a pork barrel outside. As the mother was tired, I filled the barrel with water from the well, removed the patient's shirt, dumped him into the barrel and watched him for fifteen minutes. When his temperature markedly subsided, I pulled him out of the barrel, dried him and shortly afterward he fell into a quiet slumber. I directed the barrel to remain, and if he became delirious again to repeat the bath. The bath was repeated twice and he eventually recovered."

#### PRACTITIONERS IN OSCEOLA COUNTY.

Dr. Frank S. Hough, one of the leading surgeons and physicians of Sibley, is a Kentuckian by birth, both of his parents being natives of Michigan. His mother, before marriage, was Candace C. Bates, the daughter of Mr. and Mrs. George Bates, the former being a first cousin of Abraham Lincoln. Dr. Hough's father was a brush manufacturer in Detroit and when only twenty-eight years of age was president of the Common Council and acting mayor. Afterward he was a member of the Michigan State Legislature and retired to California.

Doctor Hough had considerable experience as a newspaper man, both in Michigan and Ohio, before his graduation from the Michigan College of Medicine and Surgery in 1890. After practicing in Detroit and teaching on the faculty of his Alma Mater for seven years, he came to Sibley in August, 1897, and has met with marked success in his profession. In 1911, he established a private hospital in Sibley. Doctor Hough has been coroner of Osceola County and is now serving as health officer of Sibley. During the World war he served as chairman of the County Red Cross and of the local Draft Board. He volunteered for active service a year before the armistice was signed, but was retained as chairman and medical examiner of the Draft Board until August, 1918. He then enlisted, was examined at Norfolk, Nebraska, commissioned captain and in November, 1918, ordered to Fort

Oglethorpe, Georgia. Afterward he was discharged into the Medical Reserve Corps, reenlisted in that body and in July, 1924, was promoted to be major. In 1925, he was elected commander of the George E. Mudge Post, American Legion. He is a member of the County, State and American Medical organizations, and in 1920 served as president of the Northwest Iowa Medical Society.

Dr. William E. Ely was a graduate in medicine of the University of Michigan, and located at Ocheyedan in 1887. He died at Doctor Hough's hospital at Sibley in February, 1922.

Dr. Frank P. Winkler is a native of Ida Grove, Iowa, and in 1906 received his medical degree from the University of Illinois. He first practiced in Chicago, and in 1912 located at Sibley. He is a member of most of the leading medical and surgical societies and has served as president of the Northwest Iowa Medical Society. During the World war he was identified with the surgical staff of the base hospital at Camp Grant, Rockford, Illinois, and was also commissioned examiner for the United States Veterans Bureau of Northwest Iowa. Doctor Winkler is the owner and manager of a private hospital and examiner for forty-two old-line life insurance companies.

Dr. K. A. Sporre, of Harris, has received two degrees from the University of Iowa, including that of M. D., and has been mayor of the town and president of the school board.

Dr. J. B. Padgham, a graduate of the State University, has practiced at Walcott, Harris and Ocheyedan, and at present operates a hospital at the place last named.

Dr. Frank Reinsch is of Chicago birth and education. In 1917, he graduated from the Chicago College of Medicine and Surgery. He then served two years as an interne in the Cook County Hospital, and in November, 1919, after seeing service as first lieutenant in the World war, commenced the practice of medicine and surgery at Ashton.

Dr. F. E. McConoughey is a native of Iowa, graduated from both the Marion-Sims College of Medicine at St. Louis and the Creighton Medical College, at Omaha. He practiced in Southwestern Iowa, Nebraska and Colorado prior to September, 1924, when he located at Melvin.



## DICKINSON COUNTY.

(Notes by Dr. C. S. Shultz.)

I am enclosing the data I have been able to collect pertaining to the medical history of Dickinson County. I believe I have the names of all the doctors who have come to Dickinson County from the first, 1856, to the present time. Have gone through newspaper files for as many years back as there are any, and consulted all the records and histories I could find, also corresponding with all the pioneers of Dickinson County now living whom I could not interview personally.

I have blocked out for the pioneer group the doctors who located in this county during the period from 1856 to 1886, and have prepared a list of those who have registered and located here from 1886 to 1925, inclusive, with date and place of location.

The data I have been able to get together regarding the doctors of the pioneer period has been fragmentary, and it is by piecing out these fragments that I have been able to get anything like a connected statement of the early settlers of the medical profession.

Dr. Isaac H. Harriott was the first doctor to locate in Dickinson County. He was born September 24, 1833, in Boundbrook, Somerset County, New Jersey. His parents moved to Illinois when he was five years old, in 1848 removed to St. Louis, and in the following year to Pekin, Illinois, where he began the study of medicine under the tutorship of Doctor Maws of that city. His next place of residence was Atlanta, Illinois, where he continued his studies in medicine under Doctor Taney, a local physician; also, working as a clerk in a drug store. From Atlanta he went to St. Paul and Red Wing, Minnesota, beginning the practice of his profession in Red Wing. In the summer of 1856 he came to Dickinson County with three other young men, Bertell Snyder, William and Carl Granger, from Red Wing, Minnesota, and camped on the northeast shore of West Okoboji near the present location of the Okoboji post office. They were the first white men to paddle a canoe on the Okoboji lakes. Each of the party took a claim near Okoboji, and together they built a cabin on what is now known as Smith's Point.

At the time Doctor Harriott came to Okoboji the settlers around the lakes, separated from one-half to six miles, consisted of six families, and these with a few trappers and unmarried homesteaders constituted a colony of forty persons, sixteen men, eight women, and fourteen children.

Doctor Harriott was killed in the Spirit Lake Massacre on Sunday, March 8, 1857. There are two accounts of his death. In one it is stated that his body was found near his cabin with his hand gripping in death his broken gun which he must have used as a club in his last defense. The other states that his body was found in a sitting posture in a snow drift near his dwelling, his gun lying a few feet away, and his hand still holding his revolver from which one shot had been fired.

Doctor Harriott was buried, as were the other victims of the massacre, near where he was killed. In the following summer the body was taken up by his father and buried on Dixon's Beach on West Okoboji. His remains, with all others of the massacre that could be found, lie on the east side of the monument in Arnold's Park, commemorating the massacre.

Doctor Whitcomb was the fifth doctor to locate in Dickinson County. He came during the summer of 1866, and made his headquarters with one of the early settlers, Mr. George Ring, within the town site of Arnold's Park. He was in the itinerant class, and came to Iowa from Chicago, stopping at various points for a brief period as he traveled through the state. He came from Fort Dodge to Okoboji, and traveled through Iowa and Minnesota, with the latter place as headquarters, for about a year, removing to Mankato, Minnesota, where he remained for a brief period. Thence he drifted to Oregon. He conceived the idea of establishing a hospital at the southern point of East Okoboji Lake, near Ring's Outlet. He had plans for his hospital and did a few days' work on the excavation. There the work ended, apparently for lack of funds to proceed with the enterprise.

Dr. J. S. Prescott was the second physician to come to Dickinson County, but never occupied himself with the practice of medicine. His native state is Ohio. He had a college training and was educated by his parents for a physician, but disliking the practice of medicine, took up the study of law, which he practiced successfully for several years. Follow-

ing his brief career as a lawyer, he joined the Methodist Church and became one of their pioneer preachers. He was one of the original promoters and founders of the College at Appleton, Wisconsin, and, also, attempted to found a similar institution at Point Bluff, Wisconsin, in which he was only partially successful. He came to Dickinson County in April, 1857, bringing his family the following year. Having previously heard of the romantic beauty of the lake region in Northwest Iowa, he came with the idea of establishing an institution of learning there also, and selected a site on the east shore of East Lake Okoboji, which he named Tusculum, after the ancient Latin city where Cicero had his favorite residence and retreat for study and literary work. His idea was to lay out a town site and secure the most desirable tracts of land in the vicinity, holding them as a permanent endowment for the institution of learning he was promoting. His college, however, never materialized. He was a man of energy and ability, but visionary and impracticable, which probably accounts for his distaste for the practice of medicine.

Dr. James Ball was the third doctor to come to Dickinson County, and the first to come especially with a view to the practice of medicine. He came from Newton, Iowa, to Spirit Lake in the spring of 1858. He is spoken of as a highly educated man, but there are no records available to indicate whether he was a graduate from a medical college or not. He remained here until 1861, when, with the breaking out of the Civil war he went into the army service as a surgeon. He was first stationed at Sioux City, and thence he was transferred to some of the upriver posts on the Mississippi River. He built one of the first frame houses in Spirit Lake in the spring of 1859, which were the first frame houses built in Iowa north of Sioux City and west of the east fork of the Des Moines River. After Doctor Ball Dickinson County was without a physician until Doctor McDuff came in 1864.

Doctor McDuff was the fourth doctor to locate in Dickinson County. He came here in 1864, and located on a claim on the east side of East Lake Okoboji, near Tusculum, Dr. J. S. Prescott's town site. He was not a graduate from a medical college.

Dr. George Paul, fifth in chronological order of the phy-



sicians in Dickinson County, was a soldier, stationed at Spirit Lake, and mustered out of service in 1865. He married a daughter of Doctor McDuff, and later located at Homer, Hamilton County, Iowa. He was admitted to the Iowa Soldiers Home in 1900. He was out on furlough for quite a number of years, and again readmitted August 14, 1923, staying but a short time, and dropped October 2, 1924. He has a son, Grant Paul, living at Dayton, Webster County, Iowa.

Dr. W. S. Beers was the sixth physician in the county, coming in 1866. He took a claim at the southern end of Gar Lake, about two miles northeast of the town site of Milford. He lived on his claim and practiced medicine until 1872, when he moved into Milford, bought some property and engaged in business, practicing medicine as a side line. In 1874 he transferred his business interests to Spirit Lake, where he established the first drug store in the county. He died suddenly a few years later.

Dr. Elijah O. Baxter was the seventh physician to locate in Dickinson County, practicing in Spirit Lake and vicinity until about 1878. Previous to locating in Spirit Lake he had practiced in Wisconsin and one or two years at Estherville. He removed from Spirit Lake to Red Oak, Iowa; from Red Oak he went to Elliott, Iowa, and lastly practiced at Dixon, Nebraska. He established an extensive practice at Spirit Lake, enduring all the hardships of the pioneer physician. He also took an active part in local politics, and was a supporter of Horace Greeley.

Doctor Baxter was a native of Vermont. He died at the age of seventy-two, and at the time of his death was living at the home of his son, E. B. Baxter, in Marseilles, Illinois.

Dr. Elias Lawrence Brownell was born in Hamilton County, Ohio, in 1843. His parents moved to Vermont when he was seven years old, and there he received his education preparatory to entering college. However, instead of going to college he enlisted in the army, in June, 1862, as a private in Company F, Ninth Vermont Infantry, and served three and a half years. In February, 1864, he received the commission of second lieutenant, serving in that capacity until April, 1865, when he was commissioned first lieutenant, and a few

months later was advanced to the rank of captain. He was in the battle of Harper's Ferry when he, with his regiment, was captured and paroled to Chicago a few days afterward. He returned to active service in 1863, his regiment having been exchanged. Their first duty was the guarding of several thousand Confederate prisoners from Chicago to City Point, Virginia, for exchange. He served with his regiment at Yorktown and Suffolk, Virginia, New Port and New Berne, North Carolina, in the taking of Fort Harrison and the second battle of Fair Oaks. He was among the first to go into Richmond, April 3, 1865, and his regiment was on duty in that city until July, when they were sent to Norfolk, Virginia, where they remained on duty until discharged, December, 1865.

The year following his discharge from the army he entered the Medical Department of the University of Vermont, graduating June 18, 1868. He first located in St. Lawrence County, New York. In the spring of 1870 he came west, locating at Springfield (now Jackson), Jackson County, Minnesota, and at that time was the only doctor within fifty miles, except one at Fairmont, Minnesota, and one at Estherville, Iowa. In 1877 he transferred his location to Spirit Lake. He established the first permanent drug store at that place in the fall of 1878, which he managed in connection with his practice until he retired, on account of ill health, in 1904.

During the seven years Doctor Brownell practiced in Jackson County, Minnesota, he was county superintendent of the public schools. He was examining surgeon for the Pension department for many years, receiving his appointment in 1871; was division surgeon for the B., C. R. & N. Railway, and when that road was later merged into the Rock Island system he was retained on the Rock Island surgical staff as local surgeon at Spirit Lake until his death, December 2, 1914. He was postmaster at Spirit Lake during both the Cleveland administrations, October, 1886, to August, 1889, and 1892-1896. He was in active practice longer than any other physician in Dickinson County, and was the most prominent of the pioneer physicians.

Dr. H. C. Crary came to Milford in the latter part of the year 1874, practiced there six years, and then moved to Spen-

cer. He was superintendent of the public schools for several years. Mrs. Crary also taught several years in the Milford schools.

Dr. L. M. Van Buren came to Spirit Lake in 1887. He was fifty-six years old when he located there, having previously practiced in Wisconsin and six years in Iowa. He was a graduate from Berkshire Medical College, Pittsfield, Massachusetts, November 22, 1853. He retired from active practice a few years after coming to Spirit Lake, where he lived until his death, January 15, 1911.

Dr. Thomas Little was a native of Canada. He graduated from Vermont Medical College, Woodstock, June 25, 1856. He located in Spirit Lake early in the year of 1887. It is reported that he was killed about two years later while on a visit at Otega, Florida, having been mistaken by moonshiners for a revenue officer.

Dr. Isaac Tucker was a native of Vermont. He was granted a license to practice in accordance with Chapter 104, Laws of 1886, and registered in Dickinson County in March, 1887. His school of practice was Eclectic. He is spoken of by the older residents of Spirit Lake as an "herb doctor." Doctor Tucker was a soldier in the Civil war, but no record of his military service is available.

Dr. Z. E. Funk, the last of the pioneer group of Dickinson County physicians, came to Spirit Lake in April, 1882, and is still living and practicing his profession in Santa Rosa, New Mexico. He was born in La Fayette County, Wisconsin, June 5, 1855. His premedical education was acquired in the common schools and the State Normal College of Wisconsin. He graduated from Rush Medical College in 1882. Before graduation he had practiced one year at Hampton, Iowa, as an undergraduate. He practiced in Spirit Lake and vicinity four years, 1882-1886, then located at Trinidad, Colorado, practicing there ten years; thence to Cripple Creek, Colorado, eleven years, and again in Old Mexico eight years. The remaining years to the present time he has resided and continued the practice of his profession in Santa Rosa, New Mexico. In his letter the doctor says, speaking of the physicians in Dickinson County during his sojourn, "There were not enough of us to have a county medical society, but we did,



however, have a Northwest Iowa Medical Society composed of medical men from five or six of the counties located in the northwest corner of the state." And he also remarks: "It still gives me a hard chill whenever I allow myself to think of some of the drives I used to make at night across those prairies in a blizzard such as that section of the country could start with the least effort."

Doctor Fox came to Milford about 1868, and practiced there two or three years.

Doctor Everett, as a young man, located in Milford in 1872. He practiced there only a few months, returning to his former home in Illinois on account of ill health, where he died within a year.

Dr. L. C. Winsor came to Spirit Lake in December, 1886. He was the successor of Dr. Z. E. Funk. He was a native of Connecticut, and was twenty-four years of age when he came to Spirit Lake. He was a graduate of Bellevue Hospital Medical College, New York, receiving his diploma in June, 1885, and practiced at Spirit Lake about two years.

#### SIoux COUNTY PHYSICIANS.

From Dr. S. B. De Pree, of Sioux Center: "Hawarden was the first town in this county and I believe that Doctor Quigley was the first doctor there. You will no doubt recall him. Orange City was the next town which was started in this county. My grandfather, Rev. Seine Bolks, who had taken a short preceptor's course in the old country did a great deal of work in the medical line for the early Holland people here. He, however, never applied for a license to practice when that became a law, as the various places were then also supplied with doctors. Old Dr. De Lespinasse, father of Drs. Bart and A. F. H. De Lespinasse, was the first doctor at Orange City. Then there is Doctor Coad who used to be at Hull. I have made it a point to get his present address and I have obtained same from his son at Le Mars and he tells me that he would be able to give you the early medical history of Sioux County in detail, as he came to Hull in '77 or '78. The present address of Dr. N. G. O. Coad, is 3563 Twenty-Ninth Street, San Diego, California.

"So much for the early history of the county. In Sioux

Center the first doctor was Dr. Dirk Mulder; he held a degree from Holland. He located here in 1889. We have no hospital here. Three doctors here at present: Dr. A. C. Jongewaard, Dr. William B. Maris, and myself. I served in the late war at Fort Riley with the rank of captain and still hold my commission in the Reserves. We have two dentists in our town, Dr. H. De Mots and Dr. O. F. White."

The first physician in Calliope (now a part of Hawarden) was Doctor Brower (now in Spokane, Washington). Left here in 1902. Then came Doctor Ellis; also in Spokane.

Dr. N. E. Doolittle is still here.

At present we have four doctors here. Have a private hospital—Hawarden Hospital, owned by Drs. Meyer and Null.

Dr. A. Groman located in Odebolt in 1878. Preceding him was a Doctor Hall and Doctor Duval, neither being graduates. They soon moved away. The town was only eight months old when Doctor Groman located. The pioneer doctors suffered many hardships, such as long drives, and often no well marked roads. Dr. F. S. Johnson located in Odebolt in 1880 and moved to Sioux City in 1902. A small hospital is conducted by Drs. A. Groman, McAllister and Stillman.

Dr. W. A. Quigley came to Hawarden in 1882. He was a graduate of Rush Medical College in 1880. Doctor Quigley was a striking figure in the practice of medicine. A very competent man, but aggressive. He was postmaster four years. Bought and conducted the Hawarden Chronicle till his death in 1920. His editorials were often very caustic.

Orange City: The first person to render medical aid here was the Rev. Seine Bolks, who had taken a short preceptor's course in Holland. He was of much aid to the early Holland settlers. Physicians coming into the territory, he ceased practice.

Dr. De Lespinasse was the pioneer doctor at Orange City.

Resident physicians: Dr. Albert De Bey, graduate Rush, 1884; Dr. John G. De Bey, graduate University of Iowa, 1910; Dr. Adolph De Lespinasse, graduate of University of Iowa, 1901; Dr. Chester V. Fisher, graduate University of Iowa, 1919; Dr. J. Jungewaard, graduate of University of Illinois, 1924.

## DICKINSON COUNTY PHYSICIANS, 1886-1926.

Dr. L. C. Winsor, located 1886, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. Thomas Little, Dr. L. M. VanBuren, Dr. Isaac Tucker, located 1887, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. John E. Green, located 1887, at Milford.

Dr. Theodore F. Stair, and Dr. J. B. Stair, located 1890, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. C. E. Everett, located 1890, at Lake Park.

Dr. Cassius M. Coldren, located 1891, at Milford.

Dr. C. S. Shultz, located 1891, at Lake Park.

Dr. C. B. Fountain, located 1892, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. Q. C. Fuller, located 1895, at Milford.

Dr. William D. Reha, located 1895, at Superior.

Dr. John M. Ennis, located 1896, at Lake Park.

Dr. John W. Livingston, located 1897, at Superior.

Dr. A. E. Rector and Dr. Edmund D. Putnam, located 1897, at Lake Park.

Dr. L. F. Richardson, located 1901, at Terril.

Dr. Elmer A. Bare, and Dr. Emma M. Bare, located 1900, at Superior.

Dr. M. I. Powers, located 1900, at Terril.

Dr. R. C. Mollison, located 1901, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. A. H. Pearson, located 1897, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. A. W. Pearson, located 1898, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. E. D. Piper, Dr. William A. Seeley and Dr. John H. Greattrax, located 1902, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. William E. Bullock, located 1902, at Lake Park.

Dr. Clara M. Stoddard, located 1902, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. C. L. Stoddard, located 1903, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. A. L. Druet, located 1904, at Montgomery.

Dr. A. H. Schooley, located 1904, at Terril.

Dr. G. G. Fitz, located 1902, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. C. P. Soper, located 1899, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. L. W. Wuesthoff, located 1904, at Lake Park.

Dr. F. J. Smith, located 1905, at West Okoboji.

Dr. G. L. Atkins, located 1905, at Superior.

Dr. Philip Slack, located 1906, at Arnold's Park.

Dr. J. M. Jackson, located 1907, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. Morris Bachman, located 1908, at Lake Park.



Dr. J. D. Geissinger, located 1908, at Milford.

Dr. T. A. Snyder, located 1910, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. B. F. Batty and Dr. G. J. Stone, located 1914, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. C. O. Epley, and Dr. E. W. Bouslough, located 1918, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. P. G. Grimm, located 1919, at Spirit Lake.

Dr. Walter W. Kitson, located 1921, at Arnold's Park.

Dr. E. R. Leonard, located 1923, at Lake Park.

Dr. A. F. Smith, located 1922, at Milford.

Dr. Cassius Milo Coldren, located 1923, at Milford.

Physicians in Dickinson County, on January 1, 1926: Dr. W. E. Bullock, Lake Park; Dr. Cassius Mentor Coldren, Milford; Dr. Cassius Milo Coldren, Milford; Dr. Clarence O. Epley, Spirit Lake; Dr. Q. C. Fuller, Milford; Dr. P. G. Grimm, Spirit Lake; Dr. E. A. Leonard, Lake Park; Dr. A. H. Schooley, Terril; Dr. C. S. Shultz, Spirit Lake; Dr. A. F. Smith, Milford; Dr. F. J. Smith, Milford.

The hospitals in Dickinson County comprise one at Milford, owned by Dr. Q. C. Fuller, and one at Terril owned by Dr. A. H. Schooley.

#### DOCTORS OF EMMET COUNTY.

Dr. E. H. Ballard, dead. Was County Superintendent of Schools.

Dr. R. W. Salisbury; dead; homeopath.

Dr. A. Anderson; dead.

Dr. W. E. Bradley, Estherville.

Dr. C. E. Birney, Estherville Hospital (30 beds).

Dr. C. B. Adams, Los Angeles.

Dr. M. E. Wilson, Estherville.

Dr. W. E. Alton, Fort Dodge, Iowa.

Dr. E. W. Bachman, dead. Was a State Senator.

Dr. M. R. Sathe, Jackson, World war.

Dr. O. N. Bassingham, Ringsted. Moved.

Dr. George Arnold Woodcock, Armstrong. Moved.

Dr. L. E. Maker, Dolliver. Moved.

Dr. Leon F. Richardson, Collins, Iowa.

Dr. T. V. Golden, Wallingford. Moved. World war.

Dr. R. C. Coleman, Estherville; Coleman Hospital, 60 beds.

Dr. C. G. Quammen, Wallingford. Moved.

Dr. Fred A. Engstrom, Estherville (moved to Hills, Minnesota).

Dr. H. D. Mereness, Dolliver.

Dr. G. H. West, Armstrong.

Dr. James B. Kripse, Armstrong (World war).

Dr. Alice E. Stinson, Estherville.

Dr. J. A. Finlayson, Armstrong, dead.

Dr. M. T. Morton, Estherville (World war).

Dr. A. W. Rhonalt, Ringsted. Moved.

Dr. Chester Demaree, Ringsted.

Dr. George Palmer, Fort Dodge, Homeopath.

Dr. W. A. Staggs, Estherville (Homeopath, and not practicing Optician).

Dr. Wilkinson, Armstrong. Moved.

(There have been a few others who have remained but a short time.)

#### MEDICAL HISTORY OF SAC COUNTY.

(By Dr. Z. Fuller, formerly of Sac City.)

The first physician, Doctor Bence, arrived in Sac City in 1856, but remained only a short time.

The next physician, Doctor Rising, came to Sac City in 1857, remaining five years; then moved to Grant City, Sac County, where he died and was buried.

Next came Dr. Frank Stiles in 1858 or 1859 to Sac City, remaining about ten years. In the late '60s he ran a general merchandise business in Sac City.

Dr. R. G. Platt came to Sac City in 1868. After five or six years of service he abandoned his practice in this community on account of poor health and removed to Hillside, Michigan.

Dr. A. T. Brenton, who was not a graduate in medicine, came to Sac City in 1869, where he remained in active practice for more than thirty years; the first medical man to identify himself permanently with the community. Doctor Brenton did his work with energy and enthusiasm. He was

in love with his work, giving always of the best that was in him without regard to rank or station, working always under the adverse conditions of pioneer days. He also charged well for his service and collected his money. One wealthy farmer made a positive refusal to pay what he termed an exorbitant bill, to which the Doctor replied: "God has made you able, and I will make you willing to pay that bill." The bill was promptly paid as rendered. Doctor Brenton died in the home of his son Max in Havelock, Iowa, October 26, 1912.

Dr. T. B. Mansfield, a graduate of the Ohio Medical College, Cincinnati, came to Sac City in 1875 where he practiced continually until 1892. After an absence of eight years he returned to Sac City in 1900 and remained there until 1906 when he moved to Ocean Park, California, where he died on February 11, 1910. Doctor Mansfield was a member of the Pension Board of Examiners for more than twenty years; also of the Grand Army of the Republic, having enlisted at the outbreak of the Civil war at Dan McCook in the Fifty-Second Regiment of Ohio Volunteer Infantry until mustered out at the close of the war.

Dr. William Warren came to Sac County in 1870, settling on a farm in Boyer Township, where he lived for thirty years, farming and serving as a physician. Doctor Warren was born in Rutland County, Vermont, December 29, 1817. At the age of twenty-one he began the study of medicine in the office of Doctor Pratt, Somerset, New York. In 1857 he came west and finally located in Sac County, Iowa, where he died June 20, 1901.

Dr. B. F. Stevens came to Sac County from near Elgin, Illinois, in 1871. For about ten years he lived on a farm in Levey Township. He then moved to Odebolt, Sac County, where he died in 1891. Doctor Stevens was a graduate of the Bennett Medical College, 1869, and practiced about two years before coming to Iowa.

Dr. J. W. Cannon located in Grant City, Sac County, Iowa, October 12, 1874, where he continued to practice until 1883. Doctor Cannon was born in Carthage, Illinois, April 15, 1849, and graduated from the College of Physicians, Keokuk, Iowa, June 17, 1873, and in 1889 did postgraduate work at the Post Graduate College and Hospital of New York City.



Doctor Cannon later engaged in practice for a number of years in Atlantic, Iowa, upon leaving Grant City in 1883, whence he removed to Canyon City, Colorado. Later he moved to Boise, Idaho.

Dr. W. S. Duncan, a graduate of the Cincinnati Medical College and Eclectic Institution (now extinct), first came to Sac City, July 3, 1874, remaining about one year was elsewhere about four years and returned to Sac City in 1878. He continued in Sac City several years and acquired a considerable practice, having natural ability and professional skill. Doctor Duncan left Sac City sometime in the '80s and located in Sheldon, Iowa.

Dr. D. C. Cook located in what was then Fletcher (now Lake View) in 1881, and associated with L. A. Chapman in the drug business at that place. Doctor Cook's preparatory education was received at Mount Vernon, Iowa, and he graduated in medicine from the Iowa State University in March, 1873. Here in the town of Fletcher, Doctor Cook remained for several years.

Dr. Caleb Brown was born January 27, 1850, in Knox County, Ohio. His preparatory education was received in the public schools of Ohio and in the Iowa State University, having come to Iowa when twenty years of age with his parents. Doctor Brown entered the medical department of the Iowa State University in 1874, and graduated from the College of Physicians and Surgeons, Keokuk, Iowa, in 1877. He then taught chemistry, toxicology and microscopy in that institution for two years and postgraduate work for about two years was taken in Chicago. Doctor Brown located in Sac City in 1882, where he remained until his demise June 4, 1899. He was a man of marked ability, a close student and hard working practitioner, always up-to-date in his work. He was an active member of the Northwestern Iowa Medical Society, the Iowa State Medical Society, the American Medical Association, and the International Association of Railway Surgeons, and in 1894 was elected a member of the American Electro-Therapeutic Association, of which he was second vice president in 1897. Also held many positions for valuable service in his local community and was local surgeon for the North Western Railway at Sac City for several years prior

to his death. Doctor Brown was also a member of the United States Pension Examining Board for many years. During the latter years of his life he conducted a profitable drug business in addition to his medical practice in Sac City.

Dr. Z. Fuller, one of the best practitioners Sac County has ever possessed, came to Sac City in 1876. He was a graduate of the Iowa State University Medical School and remained in Sac City for many years until ill health caused him to retire from the work. He now lives in San Antonio, Texas.

#### MONONA COUNTY.

John W. Comley, located at Mapleton in February, 1889. Graduated at State University, Louisville, Kentucky, 1884. In 1888 did postgraduate work in Philadelphia.

Julius Warren Cox, located at Mapleton in May, 1884. Graduate Iowa State University, 1886.

John E. Frazier, located at Moorehead in August, 1885. He had attended one course at Iowa State University. Practiced at Imogene in 1881. Graduate Louisville Medical College, 1885.

J. J. Gingles came to Monona County in 1882. Student under Dr. F. Griffin at Mapleton. Had one course at Louisville, Kentucky. Did a country practice for one year, then moved to Mapleton. In practice till 1886. Graduate Louisville Medical College, 1887. Located at Imogene. Moved to Ute in 1889.

Harvey E. Marr, graduate Homeopathic Department Iowa State University, 1882. Practiced first at Victor, Iowa County, for two years, then moved to What Cheer, Keokuk County, in 1886. Located at Onawa.

William W. Ordway settled in Monona County in 1855. Attended Academy at Plymouth, New Hampshire, at fifteen years of age then at Academy at Roney, New Hampshire. No history of his medical education. First practiced dentistry. In the gold excitement of California he went to California with Doctor Kelley. They took \$500 worth of drugs with them. Located in San Francisco County in 1849-50. Practiced and also did a mercantile business. Was interested in a gold mine. Returned to Iowa and located at Onawa. He brought a large amount of gold. Boarded with Mr. O. B.

Smith. He went away and had \$1,200 on his person. He left a satchel containing \$3,000 which was placed under a bed. The weight excited some curiosity. A man and his wife, guests of Mrs. Smith discussed the matter. In the morning Mrs. Smith missed the satchel. Mr. Smith followed tracks from his door to some hollow trees near the bank of the river, and then to the stream. With a fishing spear he brought to the surface the satchel, but it was empty. The man who had been their guest claimed his pants had been stolen with \$112. He was kept under surveillance and the cabin searched. Finally the gold was found in a hollow tree, also the \$112 which the man claimed was stolen. Doctor Ordway was a large land owner in this county. Besides practicing medicine he loaned money. On January 2, 1885, an attempt was made to murder him. He was severely wounded, but recovered.

Samuel Polly resided on Section 26 in the town of Fairview. Studied medicine with Dr. Samuel Downing at Sultem, Randolph County. In March, 1847, commenced practice with Doctor Downing. In 1885 moved to Osceola, Clark County, where he resided till June, 1892, when he moved to Monona County. He lived on Section 25, Fairview Township, and continued practice.

Richard Stebbins was a pioneer physician and merchant; a graduate of Howard University in 1846. He took the medical course at same University, then attended the College of Physicians and Surgeons at New York City. Spent some time in Europe. He practiced a few years in New York, then came west, locating at Onawa, now a resident of Omaha.

J. Henry Talboy, graduated at State University of Iowa in 1884. Located at Onawa.

J. A. Wheeler located in Monona County in 1875. In 1877 he entered the medical department of the Iowa State University, graduating in 1881. In June, 1883, he located at Onawa.

William T. Wright located at Ute in 1889. Attended Iowa State University in 1873-74. Completed his literary education at Kenyon College, Gambier, Ohio. Graduated in Medicine at Iowa State University in 1882. Located at Denison. Practiced for five years, then moved to Onawa.



## MEDICAL HISTORY OF IDA COUNTY.

I am indebted to Dr. G. C. Moorehead of Ida Grove for the following history of medical men in his community.

Doctor Moorehead, as an early settler in Sac County, underwent the usual hardships of the pioneer physician. During these years of strenuous practice he has been a diligent student, keeping well abreast in the rapid advancement of medicine. He is at present councillor of the Eleventh Iowa District for the Iowa State Medical Society.

The Medical History of Ida County goes back to 1857. Judge Moorehead settled (a term used by pioneers to designate a permanent resident) June 24, 1856, building a commodious log house with upper rooms, in the grove northwest of town. That winter was severe and travelers stopped at the Judge's home for shelter. One man came in with frozen feet, that required amputation of several toes. Just at this time, Doctor Benine, a chance traveler, came by and performed the amputation with a hand saw and pocket knife. Later in the season, Judge Moorehead amputated several toes for travelers who had suffered freezing.

In 1873, Doctor Seeber and wife located in the new village of Ida. They were people of culture. The Doctor was a graduate and he enjoyed a good practice for those days.

In 1877, Dr. E. C. Heilman, a graduate of the Ohio Medical College, came with his wife, the Doctor forming a partnership with Doctor Seeber. Doctor Heilman had studied under Da Costa, was a young man of ability and great energy, was tactful, and soon became a favorite. Doctor Seeber soon left.

The inrush of settlement in 1878-79-80, brought a number of doctors. Dr. J. D. Miller, an eclectic; Dr. A. T. Baker, of S. U. I.; Dr. O. G. Tremaine, a homeopath; M. R. Karterman, of the University of Pennsylvania, and G. C. Moorehead, class of '79, S. U. I.; all young men without experience, but willing to be shown. Heilman, Miller, Karterman and Moorehead became great friends and cronies. There was but little practice for so many doctors, and this quartette, instead of following the advice of their teachers to devote their time to reading medicine found social converse more to their liking, and, covering a period of a number of years, they spent much of their spare time in office and home visiting, and ce-

mented a friendship that exists to the present time among the three surviving members, Drs. Miller, Karterman and Moorehead. This close intimate friendship was a marvel to many who looked upon and knew doctors as rivals and none too friendly.

In 1886, Dr. T. A. Collett, a graduate of Michigan University, and C. A. Drake, graduate of Jefferson, located in Ida Grove. Both men had seen service in the Civil war. They were men of exceptional force of character.

Francis B. Warnock, a Battle Creek boy, graduate of S. U. I., '82, located in his home town, the only other physician there being Dr. B. Graeser, a graduate of '76. Warnock was of a literary turn, studious, active and aggressive. While practicing at Battle Creek, he wrote a book entitled "Richard Hume," a story of early Maple Valley days. He loved poetry and wrote a number of good poems. He moved to Sioux City and is in active practice there.

D. W. Farnsworth, graduate of S. U. I., 1885, located at Galva in 1887. Dr. A. M. Bilby came a little later. These men did the work for this part of the county for many years. Doctor Bilby is still in active practice.

Dr. J. C. Edgar located in Holstein in the early '80s, and Dr. G. H. Crane in 1896. Doctor Crane remains, an active, energetic physician. All of these may be called pioneer physicians.

Dr. J. E. Conn, a graduate of 1892, located in Ida Grove, and a little later his brother, C. E. Conn, located at Battle Creek. In 1906, Dr. J. E. Conn opened a small hospital at Ida Grove. He enjoyed a large surgical practice, and died in 1918.

Dr. C. L. Putnam located in Holstein; Dr. M. W. Grubb succeeded Doctor Farnsworth at Galva; Dr. George Hartley located at Battle Creek, taking Dr. C. E. Conn's practice when the latter removed to Sioux City; Dr. F. M. Cole, an exceptionally capable man, opened an office at Battle Creek, and later sold to Dr. C. S. Stoakes; Dr. G. S. Millice is an assistant of Doctor Hartley; Dr. C. G. Bretthuer, the most recent acquisition, located at Holstein; Dr. T. J. Houlihan came as an assistant to Dr. J. E. Conn of Ida Grove; Dr. E. S. Heilman, son of our pioneer physician, Dr. E. S. Parker,

Dr. R. B. Armstrong and Dr. E. W. Bookhart, complete the list of Ida County physicians, fifteen in number, at the present time (1926). Doctor Heilman was the real pioneer doctor. Of indomitable will, he made long trips to the country; often was lost in snow storms and marooned by floods.

In the early '80s, diphtheria was prevalent and nearly all who contracted the disease died, some families losing five or six children. I was just out of school, and was requested to assist a family through the night. There were five children sick. During the night, two of them died. They were in bed with the other children, and I carried them out to a wash room to make room for the sick ones.

Often we did tracheotomy, hoping to save a life; after the operation, we introduced a catheter into the trachea and with our mouth sucked out shreds of membrane from the trachea. At times this afforded great relief but never saved a child. Scarlet fever was very fatal, men and women often dying from it.

Many accidents occurred to the early settlers. Rattle snake bites were common. The limb bitten swelled rapidly, was discolored and painful. Whisky was the sovereign remedy, and no deaths occurred. Amputation of legs and arms was common. Many of these accidents were due to shotgun wounds and amputation was inevitable.

One fall day, Drs. Collett and Drake asked me to go into the country with them to give chloroform to a man who had his arm torn off at the elbow in a threshing machine accident. It was a pleasant day. I was told to get a pan of water and wash the arm while they prepared the instruments. Being army surgeons, they both had beautiful rosewood instrument cases. They carried the patient out onto a porch, laid him on a horse blanket, took out their instruments, wiped them carefully with their pocket handkerchiefs, and laid them in a row on the porch floor. After completing the bath from the family basin, I gave the chloroform, and with surprising rapidity the doctors did a smooth flap operation, using a spool of black silk to tie the blood vessels; then they rinsed their hands in my basin of water, each took a chew of tobacco and sat down to talk. The flies were more than numerous, and as I tried to fight them off, I got nervous and asked why they did



not sew up the wound. One of them said to me, "Young man, you must wait for the wound to glaze." This took probably fifteen minutes or more, and as I watched it the flaps took on an almost varnished appearance. They then sewed up the flaps, asked for a towel wrung out of cold water, placed it over the stump, and bandaged it neatly. The wound did well, and the man had a rapid and excellent recovery, and a good stump.

In 1883, an epidemic of trichinosis occurred south of town in a German neighborhood, from eating summer sausage. Several died and many were sick. I sent specimens of the sausage to Iowa City for examination and later some muscle tissue from a patient's leg. All specimens were found to contain trichina. The reports got into the daily papers, and I had letters from medical colleges in a dozen States asking for specimens of the sausage.

The obstetrical work of the early days was attended with many fatalities from infections. We had no records, and all were glad we had none. My recollection is that more puerperal women had trouble than escaped it. There was no effort made to repair lacerations. In practically every case there was what we called a normal temperature of two to four degrees. Milk leg was very common; peritonitis was nearly always fatal, and was frightfully frequent. Breast infections were common and were poulticed and opened. All obstetrical cases were attended "under covers"; any other service would have been condemned and the physician ostracized.

Our summer work was largely in caring for sick children. Cholera infantum caused many deaths, the children often dying in forty-eight to seventy-two hours, with violent purging and vomiting. Enterocolitis lasted for weeks, and, if not fatal, left a skinny, wrecked child that required months to recover.

In 1900, our county medical society gave health talks in every town in the county. We obtained specimens of tubercular meats from Sioux City and displayed them on tables before the audiences and were assisted by veterinarians in explaining lesions. Drs. E. C. Heilman, J. E. Conn, George Crane, D. W. Farnsworth and George Hartley were the leading men in this work. My part was to talk about flies. I ob-

tained hundreds of pupa capsules from flies I incubated, and passed them about the audiences, and had large drawings showing the maggot, the fly emerging from the capsule, and the fly foot with drawings showing various bacteria obtained by touching the foot to a glass slide.

There has been but little change in the character, qualifications or personal traits of physicians of Ida County from the early doctors to the present time, save in the better college training of recent years. All have been graduates from the best colleges; all have been sober, industrious, active physicians.

The Ida County Medical Society has always been an active organization since December 1, 1903, meeting from three to six times a year. Since 1895, when Doctor Conn started a private hospital in Ida Grove, the private hospital idea has grown and become a fixture up to the present time. We now have three hospitals in the county: Dr. George Hartley's at Battle Creek, Dr. G. H. Crane's at Holstein and that of Doctors Parker and Armstrong at Ida Grove.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### CHURCH LIFE OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

WOODBURY COUNTY AS A RELIGIOUS CENTER—PIONEER PROTESTANT CHURCHES OF SIOUX CITY—METHODIST EPISCOPAL—THE ASSASSINATION OF DR. HADDOCK—OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES—THE METHODIST HOSPITAL—EARLY PRESBYTERIANISM—CONGREGATIONAL CHURCH—THE EPISCOPALIANS—BAPTISTS ESTABLISHED—CATHOLICITY IN SIOUX CITY—ST. JOSEPH'S HOSPITAL—ST. BENEDICT'S YOUNG LADIES' HOME—CONVENT OF THE GOOD SHEPHERD—THE EPISCOPAL CHURCHES—THE THRIFTY LUTHERANS—THE LUTHERAN GENERAL HOSPITAL—THE BAPTIST ORGANIZATIONS—DISCIPLES OF CHRIST AND OTHERS—SIOUX CITY'S AFFILIATED CHARITIES—EARLY CHURCHES OF MONONA COUNTY—THE METHODISTS OF CRAWFORD COUNTY—THE LUTHERANS IN THE COUNTY—PRESBYTERIAN CHURCHES—THE EPISCOPALIANS OBTAIN A FOOTHOLD—THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN CRAWFORD COUNTY—THE CATHOLICS OF MOUNT CARMEL—EXPANSION TO CARROLL AND ELSEWHERE—PIONEER PROTESTANT CHURCHES—THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH—TRINITY METHODIST EPISCOPAL CHURCH—OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES IN CALHOUN COUNTY—THE CONGREGATIONALISTS AND LUTHERANS—THE PRESBYTERIANS AND BAPTISTS—THE CHURCH OF CHRIST—THE CATHOLICS IN CALHOUN COUNTY—CHURCH PIONEERING IN CLAY COUNTY—"LONG TODD" AND "SHORT TODD"—RELIGIOUS OUTPOSTS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA—ESTHERVILLE AND EMMET COUNTY—PIONEER METHODISM IN O'BRIEN COUNTY—OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES—THE CONGREGATIONALISTS AND FRIENDS IN O'BRIEN COUNTY—THE LUTHERANS AND ALLIED SECTARIANS—HOW PRESBYTERIANISM IS REPRESENTED IN O'BRIEN COUNTY—THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE COUNTY—OTHER CHURCHES—FIRST RELIGIOUS SERVICES IN PALO ALTO COUNTY—THE COMING OF THE METHODISTS TO SIBLEY—CATHOLICS ALSO PIONEERS IN OSCEOLA COUNTY—OTHER CHURCHES AT SIBLEY—THE GOSPEL IN LYON COUNTY—PRESBYTERIANS, PIONEER PROTESTANTS—THE LIZARD CATHOLICS—THE METHODISTS OF ROLFE—OTHER CHURCHES—UPRISING OF BUENA VISTA CHURCHES—METHODISTS AND CONGREGATIONALISTS IN CHEROKEE—PRESBYTERIAN CHURCHES IN THE COUNTY—THE CATHOLICS—EVANGELICAL, LUTHERAN AND OTHER ORGANIZATIONS—SWINGING AROUND THE CIRCLE—PLYMOUTH COUNTY CHURCHES.

The founding and development of religious bodies in Northwestern Iowa have taken the same course as in other American sections of the West. Its people have had faith in



the promise of the Saviour that when two or three should gather together in His name He would be in their midst. Thus has religion been one of the first institutions to blossom in the northwestern wilds. This has been more literally true in those sections of the country which have been settled by diverse peoples traditionally attached to various churches such as the Lutheran, Catholic, Methodist, Congregational and even Mormon. In most of the New England communities, the population is so uniform and has received such small accessions of the foreign elements, that the formation of religious bodies is not so rapid as in the Northwest. In the latter region, whenever a few Germans, Dutch, English, Irish or other nationals have gotten together, the first thought has been of a church, with the creed and forms of which they should be familiar. The desire for a place of worship, especially with those who have planted themselves in a new country, has often preceded that of a school for the rising generations.

#### WOODBURY COUNTY AS A RELIGIOUS CENTER.

Naturally, one of the earliest and strongest centers of religion to be established in Northwestern Iowa was Woodbury County, and primarily Sioux City. The influence of the pioneer ministers of that section extended up the Big Sioux Valley and down the Missouri, and to the interior counties. In many districts the establishment of societies and churches was an independent process and other organizations sprang from them and spread in ever widening and overlapping circles. These smaller groups usually centered in distinct settlements or colonies.

Sioux City is an impressive illustration of the part which foreign immigrants and their descendants have taken in the establishment of churches in Northwestern Iowa. In a total Protestant membership of more than 20,000 people the Swedish and Danish Lutherans lead, mustering approximately one-quarter of that number, divided between nine or ten churches. The membership of the dozen or more Catholic churches approximately numbers 10,000, distributed among the Italian, Polish, Russian, Lithuanian and English speaking congregations.

## PIONEER PROTESTANT CHURCHES OF SIOUX CITY.

Omitting mention of the missionaries and circuit riders who may have traveled through the valleys of the Big Sioux and Missouri before Sioux City was platted in 1855, the Presbyterians, Congregationalists and Methodists did not formally organize into religious bodies until 1857-58.

The First Presbyterian is the oldest of them all, and dates from 1857. Rev. Charles D. Martin preached to the twelve Presbyterians of Sioux City in July, 1856, but it was not until August of the following year that the First Presbyterian Church was formed, with Rev. Thomas M. Chestnut as its pastor. The Second Presbyterian Church was not formed until thirty years later, and the Third in 1888.

In July, 1857, Rev. John Todd, of Tabor, Fremont County, visited two Congregationalists in Sioux City with a view of organizing a church, but the matter was deferred until August, when a third joined the movement and the organization of the First Congregational Church was effected. No further services were held until 1859, when Rev. George Rice, of Onawa, held communion service and added eight to the church. Union services were held with the Presbyterians in a schoolhouse on Nebraska Street until the completion of the Presbyterian Church. Early in 1861, the Congregationalists decided to call a pastor and worship alone, and in May of that year Rev. Marshall Tingley began his pastorate, preaching his first sermon in the old council chamber of the town hall. In the fall of 1868, the first frame house of worship was completed, which served the society for more than twenty years, or until the completion of the sandstone edifice corner of Nebraska and Eighth streets. The structure now occupied is one of the handsome modern churches which grace Sioux City.

## METHODIST EPISCOPAL.

On the 30th of August, 1914, the Sioux City Journal had an enlightening paper on the "Pioneer Churches of Sioux City," from which the following is extracted: "Efforts of Methodist evangelists, which resulted in the establishment of a marvelous organization in Northwestern Iowa and which led to the establishment of the Methodist culture center in

Morningside College, can be traced as far back as 1855 in those limited church chronicles of the early day which are now at hand.

"In point of time, Methodism was the first religion to be preached in Sioux City, and to Methodists belongs the credit of launching the first movement to erect a suitable building in which to hold church services. That this building was not occupied at as early a date as the Presbyterian Church was due to slowness with which funds were amassed, and also to delays on the part of the contractor.

"The first Methodist church building in Sioux City stood on the west side of Douglas Street between Eighth and Ninth streets, and Mrs. Harriet Hittle, widow of John Hittle, probably is the only Sioux Cityan who can boast of the distinction of having attended services there.

"Mrs. Hittle lives with her son, John W. Hittle, on the Pierce Street extension. She is in somewhat feeble health at the age of 79, but her memory is excellent and she talks interestingly of the pioneer days. Mrs. Hittle is a pioneer of pioneers, having settled in Sioux City in 1855. Her parents died while she was yet a girl, and she came here from Scott County, Iowa, with her uncle, Zeph Stafford. On Christmas eve, 1857, she married Mr. Hittle, who in later years served several terms as city treasurer.

" 'I well remember Sioux City's first Methodist preacher, Rev. William Black,' said Mrs. Hittle, as she sat in the pleasant country home where she is spending her declining years, 'waiting the order to cross the border,' as she puts it herself. 'I was not a member of the Methodist Church at the time he preached here in 1855, but I used frequently to attend the Methodist services. Sometimes they would be held in the Benner House, or some other hotel, and sometimes in private residences. The congregations, you may easily imagine, were small.'

"Rev. Landon Taylor not only ministered to the spiritual welfare of Sioux City Methodists, but did good work in nearby towns. His heroic fight against pioneer hardships and perils through which he passed in spreading the gospel over a territory that was overrun by Indians make a thrilling chapter in the history of Methodism in the West.



“Of all the pioneer preachers, Rev. J. K. Fuller, who came in 1858, is best remembered by Mrs. Hittle, as it was he who built the first church and regularly occupied its pulpit. The contract was let in January, 1859. The church was 36 by 56 feet in dimensions and cost \$2,050. In the meantime, Mr. and Mrs. Hittle had moved to a homestead, and it was while they were living up the Floyd Valley that the church was built. On their return to the city, however, Mrs. Hittle regularly attended services in the new church. She recalls Rev. Mr. Fuller as an eloquent preacher, filled with the combined fire of a pioneer and a Methodist, and a tireless worker in the cause of religion. Her recollection of the building is that it was of generous proportions and neat design. The Sioux City Times of 1860 speaks of it as ‘the commodious edifice which now adorns our city.’

“‘During the Civil war,’ said Mrs. Hittle, ‘the church was used as a barracks for soldiers, and war songs took the place of gospel hymns. Later, the building was moved to the south side of Second Street between Pierce and Douglas streets. There it was used for a time as a store, and afterward it became a passenger station for the Milwaukee railroad.’

“Mrs. Hittle joined the church while the Methodists were worshipping in a schoolhouse at the southeast corner of Seventh and Douglas streets. The Congregationalists used the place on Sunday mornings and the Methodists on Sunday evenings. Later, the Methodists worshipped in the Episcopal church at Seventh and Nebraska streets, and still later in the Baptist church on Fourth Street near Jackson Street.

“‘Harmony was the watchword among the churches in those days,’ said Mrs. Hittle. ‘While there was no lack of denominational zeal, and each little congregation did its best to increase its own membership, there were no petty jealousies and the true Christian spirit was always in evidence. One never stopped to ask about another person’s religion. We had some great church festivals, and it seemed as if almost everybody in town turned out to them, without regard to church affiliation.’

“The Methodists built their second church on the site where the Davidson building now stands. Next came the building at Seventh and Nebraska.”

## THE ASSASSINATION OF DOCTOR HADDOCK.

In conformity with the custom of the church, many of the most talented ministers of Iowa have, from time to time, been sent to the First Methodist Church of Sioux City. Rev. Dr. George C. Haddock was assigned to this charge in 1885 and at once assumed the leadership of the element opposed to the saloon interests. As early as April 2, 1855, the State of Iowa took a vote by counties relative to the prohibition of the sale of intoxicating liquors. Upon the canvass of the vote in Woodbury County, the returns showed that thirteen favored prohibition and eighteen opposed it. Then passed more than twenty-five years before the subject was brought before the people in a definite manner. On June 27, 1882, the people of Iowa had submitted to them the question of making it illegal to make, sell, or keep for sale, any intoxicating liquor, including ale, wine and beer. It was proposed to make this prohibitory measure a part of the constitution. It was carried in the state by nearly 30,000 majority, but became a dead letter by reason of the neglect of an enrolling clerk; but the following General Assembly enacted what is known as the Clark Law, prohibiting the sale of all liquors contemplated in the amendment. The vote in Woodbury County had stood 1,163 for the amendment and 1,220 against it. It was the Clark Law which Doctor Haddock was attempting to enforce in Sioux City when he was shot down in cold blood at the behest of the saloon element.

Into this bitter fight Doctor Haddock was projected as the acknowledged leader of the temperance people against the liquor interests. He was in deadly earnest, a large powerful man physically and absolutely fearless in the prosecution of all who violated the law. He gave no heed to threats, but was tireless in the work of collecting evidence to use in court against those who committed overt acts to uphold the contention of the lawless that "prohibition could not prohibit." Finally a saloon keepers' association was formed with the avowed purpose of crushing witnesses for the state by intimidation and personal violence. Doctor Haddock was especially singled out as one of its chief objects of attack, and in August, 1886, it is alleged that two German thugs, Albert

Koschnitski and Sylvester Granda, were selected by the association to attack him.

On the night of August 3, 1886, Doctor Haddock and a fellow worker, Rev. C. C. Turner, drove to Greenville, a suburb of Sioux City, to gather some evidence which they expected to use in a case then pending against certain violators of the law. Having returned and left his friend at his home, Doctor Haddock drove to the livery stable and, with his rubber coat wrapped about him, was starting through the rain for his home. On the way, he was waylaid by a crowd of conspirators, from which emerged the two delegated to do the cowardly work. The largest and most powerful of the pair came up behind Doctor Haddock and shot him through the neck at the base of the brain. Death was almost instantaneous. Six other men, besides the principals, were indicted by the grand jury as fellow conspirators in the perpetration of the murder. The trial which lasted twenty-two days resulted in an acquittal, since there were no witnesses to the deed except those implicated in the crime, either directly or indirectly. Several of those indicted succeeded in fleeing the country. The story of the defense and sustained by all the witnesses was that thus formulated by Sylvester Granda, or Steamboat Charley, as follows: "The plan was for Koschnitski and Granda to assault Haddock, and then the crowd were to help us out. We saw him coming down the street and commenced abusing him. I had a revolver in my hand, but did not intend to shoot him. Just then John Arensdorf grabbed the weapon I held saying, 'You are too drunk to shoot.' Then Arensdorf fired and Haddock fell to the ground, and the crowd fled."

In December, 1887, Arensdorf was tried for murder, but was found not guilty. Notwithstanding what seemed like a double mistrial of justice, Doctor Haddock's assassination caused a revulsion of feeling in Sioux City. The saloons were driven across the Missouri River into Nebraska and for a time Sioux City was bone dry. But it was not long before "holes-in-the-wall" and "blind pigs," as they were called, were numerous, and the fight against illegal liquor selling was fierce as well as continuous. Eventually the General Assembly enacted the mulct law, so called, but, liberal as the



terms of that law were, Sioux City made no pretense of conforming to them until many years later. Sioux City was terribly shocked by the Haddock murder, but it is not true to say, as has sometimes been stated, that the city was "morally regenerated" as a result of it.

#### OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES.

The Haddock Memorial Church was organized in 1886, the year of the assassination, and in 1888 was founded the Grace Methodist Episcopal Church, of Morningside, which has developed into one of the strongest organizations in the Northwest Iowa Conference. The First and Grace Methodist and Whitfield Methodist churches have all handsome and modern houses of worship.

The Norwegian-Danish Church was organized in 1881 and the German-Methodist somewhat later. An African Methodist Episcopal Church was formed in 1884.

#### THE METHODIST HOSPITAL.

The Methodist Hospital had its beginnings in 1919, when Dr. William Jepson made a gift of the St. John's Hospital property to the Northwest Iowa Conference. The building was remodeled, a nurses' home was provided, and it was opened as a general hospital for the people of the city. Its growth having been such as to demand a larger building, a slightly location was purchased in the northern part of the city, and thereon a modern hospital building, with a capacity of 100 beds, was erected. The cost of building and equipment was approximately \$500,000. The building was occupied late in 1925. Rev. Dr. G. F. Notson was the superintendent of the hospital during the construction period.

#### EARLY PRESBYTERIANISM.

Still extracting from the article in the Sioux City Journal, the establishment of the Presbyterians is thus told by one of the pioneer mothers of the church, as follows: "Sometimes when Mrs. Nancy Beck, 820 Pierce Street, the oldest surviving member of the church, attends services in the splendid First Presbyterian Church at Sixth and Nebraska streets,

she allows her mind to wander back over more than fifty years of time to a humble little frame schoolhouse which stood a block to the north, and in which her husband (John Beck) and herself were received into the Presbyterian Church when the village of Sioux City was but a mere suggestion of the Sioux City of today.

“Back in Pennsylvania, Mrs. Beck belonged to the German Reformed Church and Mr. Beck was a Lutheran. They came to Sioux City as bride and groom, attracted by stories of high wages that were being paid to carpenters. At Pittsburgh they took a boat for St. Louis to Sioux City. The boat from St. Louis, the Asa Wilgus, carried also J. C. C. Hoskins, Thomas Green and Rev. Thomas M. Chestnut and family. Thomas Sharp, a grandson of Rev. Mr. Chestnut, who also was on the boat, now lives at 1117 West Third Street. Little did the Becks realize, when they got acquainted with their fellow passengers that, in the case of Mr. Hoskins and Mr. Green, the friendship was to last for half a century, or that the genial clergyman soon was to become their own pastor in the new community to which they were bound. The boat arrived in Sioux City May 8, 1857.

“Rev. Mr. Chestnut already had preached Presbyterianism in Sioux City during the summer of 1856, delivering his first sermon in the attic of White & Coplan’s building at what is now 222 Pearl Street. Later, he preached in the land office and continued Sunday services there until the cold weather made it seem advisable to discontinue them. He had returned to Camden, Illinois, with the understanding that the following spring he would return with his family to regularly organize a Presbyterian Church and become its first pastor. While Rev. Mr. Chestnut did become Sioux City’s first Presbyterian pastor, as a matter of history he was preceded in the preaching field by Father (Charles D.) Martin, who had arrived July 9, 1856, and settled just across the river in Nebraska and occasionally delivered a sermon in Sioux City.

“ ‘When we arrived in Sioux City,’ said Mrs. Beck, ‘services under the auspices of various denominations were being held from time to time in the schoolhouse which stood on the east side of Nebraska Street just north of Seventh. We attended these services now and then and finally decided to

join the Presbyterian Church, there being no church here of either of the denominations with which we had been affiliated in the East. Rev. Mr. Chestnut received us into the church. He was a grand, good man, and everybody's friend, and the Presbyterians of Sioux City may count themselves fortunate to have had such a man to lay the foundation of their church.'

"Mrs. Beck at seventy-nine is still a sturdy woman, with a heart that is light and a memory that is clear, and it is a pleasure to listen to her stories of the 'good old days,' as she calls them, when everybody in Sioux City knew everybody else, when neighbors were neighbors and friends were friends. She expressed doubt whether the people of the present day, with all their modern conveniences, have nearly so good a time as did those of fifty years ago. She laughed as she recalled the chicken dinners and the strawberry festivals which were given by the different churches and which were real events, attracting the greater part of the townspeople of all denominations.

" 'I remember the chicken pies I used to bake for church dinners,' said Mrs. Beck, and the circle she made with her arms to describe the size of the pies suggested that at that time the price of chickens was not quite so high and the chicken not quite so rare a bird as it is today.

"One of Mrs. Beck's earliest recollections of Sioux City is of the old bell which rested on stilts at the rear of the schoolhouse, and which not only called the children to their studies and the adults to church services but made itself heard on the Fourth of July and other days of celebration. It originally was a steamboat bell on the Kate Kearney, which sank in the Missouri River some miles below Sioux City in the '50s. It was taken from the wreckage and brought to Sioux City by the Asa Wilgus. Rev. Mr. Chestnut by subscription raised \$225 and purchased it. \* \* \*

"The Presbyterians are accorded the distinction of having erected the first church building in Sioux City. Mrs. Beck well remembers how in 1859, \$1,000 was raised by subscription in money, lumber and labor, and G. R. McDougall was given the contract to complete the building for \$500. \* \* \* The church was dedicated September 25, 1859. It was 24 by



36 feet in dimensions. Later, it was enlarged and served the Presbyterians as a home until 1875."

#### CONGREGATIONAL CHURCH.

The Congregational Church of Sioux City was born on the morning of August 9, 1857, in the house at the southeast corner of Ninth and Nebraska streets then known as the Bigelow home. Practically all of Sioux City was down near the Missouri River bank when William H. Bigelow commenced to erect his neat frame cottage in that locality, "out in the country." Rev. John Todd, a picturesque clergyman of the pioneer school, rode into Sioux City on horseback, July 25, 1857, to investigate the prospects of founding a Congregational church. He found Mr. Bigelow and H. D. Clark, who were members of that denomination, and Prof. E. C. Foster, who was willing to profess the faith. On Monday, August 9, 1857, Father Todd gathered his tiny flock at the Bigelow cottage and there laid the foundation of the First Congregational Church of Sioux City. Church services were often held in the earlier years in the Council Chamber, at Seventh and Douglas streets. In 1862, the society secured a building of its own, a small frame structure that stood in Douglas Street and which afterward was used for school purposes. In November, 1868, on the east side of Douglas Street between Fifth and Sixth streets, the Congregationalists dedicated what was then considered the finest religious edifice in Sioux City.

#### THE EPISCOPALIANS.

The first Episcopal church service in Sioux City was conducted by a missionary from Council Bluffs in 1857. Until 1859, other services followed at intervals in stores and private residences and in the little schoolhouse on the side of the hill in Nebraska Street near Seventh. The Episcopal parish of St. Thomas was incorporated in November, 1859, and on January 10th of the following year the vestry held a meeting to formulate plans for building a church. As a result of the committee's efforts, the Episcopalians were worshipping in their own church home before the close of the war.

Rev. Dr. Melancthon Hoyt was the first rector of St. Thomas, and the Sioux City Times said of him not long after he was called to the parish: "As a theologian, he is clear, though thought by some to be erratic. He officiates in the pulpit with considerable dignity and is, we are informed, popular with the young men of the city. We are not astonished at this, for we never knew a clergyman more willing to unfrock himself and say to his surplice and his dignity, 'Stay there, while I go yonder and indulge in a little harmless amusement.' On such occasions, his sallies of wit will sometimes bring down an entire social circle. He seems quite well adapted for a pioneer preacher, readily mingling with the masses, always ready and willing to do as the Romans do, and, if necessary, show how the Romans do it."

#### BAPTISTS ESTABLISHED.

Six men and six women on November 8, 1860, gathered in the little home of Mr. and Mrs. Hiram W. Pratt at Dace and Wall streets to organize a Baptist Church. They had been taking part occasionally in the services of the Presbyterians, the Congregationalists, the Methodists and the Episcopalians, but they wanted a church and a pastor of their own.

The meeting at the Pratt home was held under the direction of a traveling Baptist preacher—one of those pioneer evangelists who knew no home but the saddle and who recognized no parish limits but the horizon. The old Pratt home was long revered by the Baptists of Sioux City as the birthplace of their local church. Mrs. John Hagy outlived all of the other original members of the church, and about a dozen years ago had this to say about her first church home: "It was not until 1865 that the Baptists bought property. The site of our first church was where the Singer hardware store is now located, at 614 Fourth Street. I have been told we paid \$100 for the ground, but I have no personal knowledge to that effect. We bought the old Tremont Hotel, which stood at Third and Jennings streets, and moved it to the lot on Fourth Street. Mr. Hagy had been landlord of that hotel in 1858-59. In 1865, however, we were running the Hagy

House, at Second and Water streets—where the Sioux City Service Company's power house now stands. We made the hotel into a church building and it served us nicely for some time. We also built a parsonage, which stood near the southwest corner of Fourth and Jackson streets."

Mrs. Hagy recalled the first pastor, Rev. J. E. Rockwood, as a somewhat stern man who occasionally offered personal reproof from the pulpit. On one occasion, when a member of the congregation took out his watch, the preacher stopped in the middle of his sermon and suggested that persons desiring to look at their timepieces would have plenty of time to do so after the services. The indiscreet one turned red in the ears, but gave no other sign of his guilt as he quietly slipped the chronometer back into his vest.

On another occasion a small dog wandered into the church and up to the pulpit, and began rubbing his back on the preacher's shins while he was addressing the congregation. The incident so affected the organist that she tittered right out in meeting, whereupon the preacher made a few more or less well chosen remarks as to the unseemliness of laughter in the Temple of the Lord, with the result that the organist later tendered her resignation and sought church affiliations elsewhere. Difficulty was encountered, too, in maintaining the enthusiasm of the Sunday School scholars under the strictures of the first pastor.

#### CATHOLICITY IN SIOUX CITY.

There is some question as to when and where the first mass was celebrated by Catholics in Sioux City, but a number of old-time residents seem to place the event some time in the early summer of 1857. The late L. McCarty, a pioneer of Sioux City, whose son is Rev. Thomas J. McCarty, rector of the Cathedral of the Epiphany, names that event as the "foundation of Catholicity in Sioux City."

On May 23, 1857, there landed in Sioux City a little band of Irish Catholics, which included John Fitzgibbon, Jeremiah Kelly, Daniel R. Hartnett and others, with their wives and families, while John Donovan and others came later the same summer, all bringing their strong Irish faith and their desire for religious exercises, instruction and consolation. From



the historical souvenir prepared by L. McCarty, in commemoration of the golden jubilee of the founding of Catholicism in Sioux City, September 8, 1907, is taken the following extract: "The event which is best attested by several witnesses occurred in the latter part of June, 1857, at the house of Mrs. McGlinn, familiarly known as Mother McGlinn, which was situated in the bend of Perry Creek, between Third and Fourth and west of Water Street, in the rear of where the City Mill and Simmons hardware house now stand.

"Mr. Jeremiah Kelly, who died last February and whose memory was clear and bright to the last, said that he came here on May 23, 1857, and boarded at Mrs. McGlinn's for several months afterwards. About a month after his arrival Father (Jeremiah) Treacy came down from St. John's, Nebraska, and sent word around to all the Catholics who could be reached that he would hear confessions that evening and celebrate mass on the following morning; which he did at this boarding house, to the great joy of the faithful few who attended. Mrs. Desy, who still lives at 1309 Leech Street, remembers the event very distinctly, as she brought her first child there to be baptized. Mr. William Graham, still living at Hubbard, Nebraska, who was a resident of Sioux City at the time, attended this mass and remembers it distinctly; and there may be others, but it is difficult to locate them. This is the event which will be commemorated at the Cathedral on September 8th, as the foundation of Catholicity in Sioux City.

"Father Treacy continued to visit Sioux City occasionally thereafter, celebrating masses at the houses of Mr. Letellier, Mr. Fitzgibbons, Mr. Kelly and others; and later, in vacant stores, offices and halls; notably in Cassady's Hall and O. C. Treadway's office. For the next five years mass was celebrated by the priests stationed at St. John's."

In 1859, Sioux City, Council Bluffs and the immediate country were temporarily attached to a new diocese, with headquarters at Omaha instead of Dubuque. The priests who attended Sioux City came from St. John's (now Jackson, Nebraska). Then, in the summer of 1862, the twenty-six good Irish Catholics at Sioux City decided that they must have a church and a pastor of their own. Under the lead of

John Fitzgibbon they raised \$25 (by a mighty effort) and bought a lot for a church site at the corner of West Seventh and Perry streets. They were offered timber by fellow Catholics on the other side of the Missouri River, if they would cut it and take it away. So, armed with axes, saws, etc., they sought the tall timber on the Nebraska side and worked day by day, chopping and hewing logs until they had sufficient, when they floated them across the river to the sawmill at the mouth of Perry Creek. Part of the logs were given—one half for sawing the other half—and part of the sawing was paid for in labor for the mill. This was principally cottonwood, of which most of the houses of that period were built; but the heavy oak timbers for sills, corners, plates and bridge-like roof were chopped and hewn on the farm of Paul Paquette, at what is now North Riverside. This, with the other lumber, was hauled to the site selected for the new church, when Rev. Almire Fourmont, who had been sent to take charge of the Sioux City mission, came along. He said the lot was too small and wanted them to buy the adjoining one, but they explained they did not have the money. When told that it could be bought for \$25, he immediately produced it from his pocket, gave it to Mr. Fitzgibbon, who next day purchased lot 2, block 37, Sioux City, from George Chamberlain and wife, in the name of Bishop Clement F. Smith. The deed was dated September 25, 1862.

Although the price paid was only \$25, the seller inserted the consideration as \$100, to make it appear that the lots were advancing. This is a sample of the way western towns were boomed in those days.

As completed, this first wooden Catholic chapel in Sioux City was about 25 by 40 feet in dimensions, with 14-foot posts and twelve square windows. It had no tower or steeple; no attempt at ornamentation was made; only a plain cross on the front gable indicated its character. The interior was not plastered or finished for some time afterwards. But the little band of Catholics was satisfied. They had their house of worship. After the Indian alarms of 1862 were over, new settlers came into the country, the attendance at St. Mary's increased and the little church itself was somewhat improved in appearance.

In 1862, also, a small colony of French-Canadians settled about twelve miles northwest of Sioux City in what was then Dakota Territory, which had been just opened to settlement. This colony was augmented year by year by other arrivals from Canada, until the settlement became quite large; but they were at first dependent on occasional visits of priests from St. John's or Sioux City, or from traveling missionaries.

In February, 1870, Rev. Thomas F. Gunn was appointed pastor of Sioux City, the first from the Dubuque diocese, and his first work was to secure land for a Catholic cemetery and plat the original twenty acres of Calvary Cemetery.

The completion of the Illinois Central and the Sioux City & St. Paul railroads brought thousands into Northwestern Iowa, and as Sioux City was then the nearest point in a dozen counties of that great domain where there was a Catholic church, with a settled priest, many of the faith were drawn to that locality as a recognized center. In March, 1872, at the commencement of this period of Catholic expansion, Rev. T. M. Lenehan, then stationed at Fort Dodge, was appointed pastor at Sioux City, and for fourteen years, under his charge, St. Mary's had a pronounced growth. So energetically did he urge and promote the building of a more suitable church than the "old frame," which had long been outgrown, that in August, 1875, a handsome brick church, located diagonally across from the courthouse, corner Sixth and Pierce streets, was dedicated under the patronage of St. Mary. This was called "the second St. Mary's." At first the old church building was used by temperance and other societies, but in 1881 was remodeled as its first parochial school. Father Lenehan resigned his charge in Sioux City in February, 1886, his transfer to Denison and Boone being deeply regretted by Catholics and Protestants alike. During Rev. John F. Bowen's short stay in Sioux City in 1886, the parish of St. Boniface was organized. Its original members comprised about twenty-five families of German-speaking Catholics. Rev. John A. Gerlemann, who had served for three years as assistant pastor at St. Mary's, and was well acquainted with the people and their circumstances, was appointed to take charge of the new parish. Their first house of worship



and parochial school, corner of West Fifth and Main streets, was opened in a frame building at that locality.

Rev. Timothy Treacy, who followed Father Bowen, served St. Mary's even longer than Father Lenehan, and during the first of his pastorate it was found necessary to organize an east side church, known first as St. Rose of Lima, to accommodate the crowds of worshipers which were drawn from the east side. Rev. M. C. Daly was its first pastor, but before he could start to build a church his health failed and he was obliged to relinquish his work. His successor, Rev. R. W. Fowler, renamed the parish St. Joseph's and structures to accommodate church, school and rectory were built at Eighth and Iowa streets.

The parish of St. Jean Baptiste was organized in 1889 by a number of French-Canadian Catholics, who wished to have a church of their own, where the language and customs would remind them of their early environments. A frame church and rectory were erected at Seventh and Water streets, and the first pastor appointed was Rev. M. C. Sullivan, who had been educated in Canada and spoke French. But the church society did not much prosper until Rev. L. P. Dagnault became connected with it in 1898, when a change for the better rapidly and steadily set in. As stated, the parish was founded originally for the French-speaking Catholics of the city, but on account of its central and convenient location, especially after the coming of Father Dagnault, its influence extended to many people of other nationalities.

Another of the important works accomplished while Father Treacy was in charge of St. Mary's was the building of the beautiful Cathedral School, which was occupied in September, 1890. The old church building which had been occupied for school purposes since 1881 was then abandoned.

Then commenced the promotion and fulfilment of the plans to build a house of worship to stand as an adequate representation of the growth and strength of St. Mary's parish. It had been decided to sell the property, and the half block at Tenth Street between Pearl and Douglas streets had already been purchased, and what became known as the Cathedral School was erected. In 1890 and 1891, the church properties at Sixth and Pierce and West Seventh and Perry

streets were sold, and while the new house of worship was being erected at Tenth and Douglas streets, services were held in a skating rink and in the large hall in the third story of the new school building. It was during the occupancy of this hall as a temporary church that Rev. T. J. McCarty celebrated his first mass there, in April, 1892. He had been raised in Sioux City from childhood, had been an altar boy for many years in both of the churches formerly used, and was the first Sioux City boy to be ordained as a priest.

In June, 1892, the new church at Tenth and Douglas was under roof and was dedicated under the patronage of St. Mary, Help of Christians, like its predecessors. On account of financial conditions, the large basement of the edifice was used for church purposes for a decade. In July, 1893, the title of dean was conferred on Father Treacy by Archbishop Hennessy, who had lately been elevated from a bishopric. In January, 1902, the archdiocese was divided and the diocese of Sioux City established. The new diocese comprised twenty-four counties of Northwestern Iowa. In the following March, Right Rev. Philip J. Garrigan, D. D., then vice rector of the Catholic University at Washington, was appointed first bishop of the diocese of Sioux City and was consecrated at Springfield, Massachusetts, on May 25th, following.

The time of Bishop Garrigan's arrival in Sioux City, June 18, 1902, was a great gala day in its history. The procession of church dignitaries, the attendant crowd of representative people irrespective of creed, and the concluding banquet attended by all the priests of the new diocese, were significant and impressive. The usual installation ceremonies were performed, including the main address by Archbishop Keane, an address of welcome by Very Rev. B. C. Lenehan, and a response by the new bishop himself. In accepting his charge, Bishop Garrigan announced that the church hitherto known as St. Mary's would henceforth be known as the Cathedral of the Epiphany. In August following the installation of the bishop, the first diocesan synod was held, and Very Rev. B. C. Lenehan, of Boone, was appointed vicar general and Rev. James P. Barron, of LeMars chancellor and secretary. Soon afterward, work on the cathedral was resumed and it was completed and dedicated on September 8, 1904. In the pre-

vious fall, Rev. T. J. McCarty had come to the Sioux City diocese from the archdiocese of Dubuque, where he had been pastor at Holy Cross for ten years, and was appointed chancellor of the diocese and secretary to the bishop. He is still the beloved rector of the Cathedral.

Substantially, within the last twenty years, the Catholics of the Sioux City diocese have been organized into several strong parishes covering the outskirts of the district. The expansion especially of the stockyards territory has brought about this expansion of Catholic institutions. Leeds, Morningside and North Riverside are all illustrations of this churchly expansion from Sioux City proper. The Immaculate Conception parish was established in 1904, through the coöperation of the Hawkeye Land Company, the Union Stock Yards Company and Bishop Garrigan. The privileges of church, school and home in the district of daily employment were the aims to be secured by the formation of this parish, which was finally organized in 1905. The church dedicated in that year is situated in West Morningside, about a mile east of the stockyards on high land overlooking the Missouri Valley. Still later, a parish was organized for the Polish Catholics employed at the stockyards, mass being celebrated at St. Joseph's Church and elsewhere.

At Leeds, four miles northeast of the business section of Sioux City, the Catholics formed St. Michael's parish in 1906, and in the following year Sacred Heart parish was organized at North Riverside, nearly five miles to the northwest. They both have their own homes, wherein they meet for worship and other activities.

The parish most recently organized is that of the Church of the Blessed Sacrament, on the north side.

#### ST. JOSEPH'S HOSPITAL.

The Catholicity of the Sioux City diocese is further evidenced by such institutions of practical Christianity as St. Joseph's Hospital, St. Vincent's Hospital, St. Benedict's Young Ladies' Home, the Convent of the Good Shepherd and St. Anthony's Orphanage. St. Joseph's Hospital, the oldest and most prominent of the Catholic institutions of the kind, was established in 1890 under the management of Mother



Agatha of Mercy Hospital, Dubuque. For this purpose she bought a large house at Twenty-ninth and Jennings streets of John Peirce, but it was soon overcrowded with patients, and the Sisters, headed by their mother superior, came into possession of Mr. Peirce's home, together with six acres of land around it. A large brick building, for the hospital proper, was then erected, and the former Peirce home reserved for the nursing Sisters. By 1899, the project had exceeded all anticipations, and the handsome and spacious three-story brick and stone building now occupied was erected. St. Joseph's Hospital is modern in every way. It has a complete nursing and medical staff and a large training school for nurses. The Nurses' Home is a separate, handsome building.

St. Vincent's Hospital, overlooking the business district of the city, is conveniently located for emergency cases. It was organized in 1907, but in 1917 it was found necessary to erect a new building. The growth and efficiency of St. Vincent's Hospital were largely due to the sagacity and good business management of Mother M. Gertrude, of the Benedictine Sisters, who was also the founder of the St. Benedict's Young Ladies' Home.

#### ST. BENEDICT'S YOUNG LADIES' HOME.

In June, 1898, the Benedictine Sisters, under the guidance of Mother Gertrude, purchased the Fred Evans property on Seventh and Pierce streets, consisting of a large three-story brick house with three large lots in the very heart of Sioux City. After remodeling and refitting it, she opened it in the following October as St. Vincent's Young Ladies' Home, where young ladies working in the city might find a home with all the advantages of spiritual, intellectual and moral environments at a moderate cost. There were no religious restrictions and it was largely patronized from the first by young women of all religious denominations. After a few years the home became overcrowded and a large addition was built to the original structure. In 1907, it was decided to utilize this enlarged building for hospital purposes; St. Vincent's Hospital was thus founded. About two blocks distant, a modern house was purchased, enlarged and remodeled and in March, 1907, was opened what has since been known

as the St. Benedict's Young Ladies' Home, the change of name being adopted that it might not be confused with St. Vincent's Hospital.

#### CONVENT OF THE GOOD SHEPHERD.

On the invitation of Rt. Rev. Bishop Garrigan, two Sisters of the Good Shepherd from St. Louis arrived in Sioux City in April, 1903, to look after a location for a branch house of that beneficent organization. They finally secured a small frame house on Twenty-first Street. After nearly two years of struggles to maintain the growing institution and obtain a suitable location for it, the Sisters were able to secure nearly a block of ground at Twenty-fourth and Boulevard streets, on which they erected a large brick building for the care and protection of wayward girls. It is another of the institutions and another phase of the work which is well illustrative of the activities of Catholicity in Sioux City.

#### THE EPISCOPAL CHURCHES.

The St. Thomas Episcopal Church is one of the oldest religious organizations in the city. It was founded in 1857 and two years later the parishioners erected a frame chapel. It was located at a corner of Seventh and Nebraska streets. St. Paul's Episcopal Church erected its first house of worship in 1885, on the corner of West Sixth and Center streets, and Calvary, at Morningside, in 1889.

#### THE THRIFTY LUTHERANS.

The Lutherans lead in Sioux City as church members, the Swedes being almost solid in support of that faith. The oldest Lutheran church is known as the First Swedish Mission, and the site of its house of worship is the corner of Seventh and Court streets. The Swedish Lutheran Augustana Church worships in one of the finest edifices in the city, at Sixth and Court streets. It was founded in 1890. At Eleventh and Nebraska stands the fine new church building occupied by the Trinity English Lutherans, who organized in 1886. There is also a strong Danish Lutheran Society, worshipping in a handsome church. The German Evangelical

Church on Jennings Street is the home of the society formed in 1889. These are representative Lutheran organizations.

#### THE LUTHERAN GENERAL HOSPITAL.

The Lutheran General Hospital was organized in 1902 by a number of individual Lutherans and Lutheran congregations in Sioux City and adjacent territory. After a struggle on the part of the workers who founded it, the hospital became established and commenced to grow. By 1910, it was found that there was inadequate room in the building. This necessitated an enlargement that year, followed by still further expansion in 1920 and in 1925.

#### THE BAPTIST ORGANIZATIONS.

The First Baptist Church is one of the strongest organizations in the city. It was formed as early as 1860 and its meeting house, standing in the heart of the city, is massive and imposing, yet elegant. Then there are the First Swedish Baptist, formed in 1874; the Immanuel Church, established in 1886, and the Fourth Baptist, organized in 1888.

#### DISCIPLES OF CHRIST AND OTHERS.

The Christian churches, or the sect known as the Disciples of Christ, have been established in Sioux City since 1888. The First and the Emerson Heights Christian churches were both organized in that year. The First Christian Church has a noticeably fine house of worship.

The First Church of Christ Scientist is among the late religious organizations showing marked growth and the Unitarians have an active congregation.

#### SIoux CITY'S AFFILIATED CHARITIES.

Mention has been made of hospitals and other charities closely affiliated with the church work of Sioux City. Besides those noted are a number of institutions such as the Florence Crittenton Home for Unmarried Mothers, St. Monica's Home for Abandoned Babies and St. Anthony's Home for Orphans (two years and over). Medical attention is given those too poor to pay for it through the Family Wel-



fare Bureau, Sioux City Day Nursery for Babies, Tuberculosis Association, Visiting Nurses' Association and the Woodbury County Free Medical Dispensary. These organizations are financed through public donations to the Bureau of Social Agencies, of which they are members.

#### EARLY CHURCHES OF MONONA COUNTY.

The planting of churches in Monona County was commenced by the Mormons, who spread northward from Council Bluffs in the early '50s. First the town of Preparation was founded by them and their church, and in 1857, after its abandonment, Onawa was platted by the same religionists. As the Mormons came in colonies, they obtained the balance of political power and in 1858 the town of Onawa, which they had founded and overrun, became the county seat. About the same time, the pretty village to the north was founded by Edwin Whiting and his people, and several Protestant rural organizations were organized in this beautiful and prosperous region of farms and kine and (in later years) of groves. Mapleton, in the northeastern part of the county, came into being as a product of the Chicago & North Western Railway twenty years after the founding of Onawa and Whiting.

Not only were the missionaries of the Mormon Church abroad in this country in the late '50s, but also traveling clergy of Methodism and Congregationalism. Of the recognized Protestant denominations, the Congregationalists established the first permanent religious society in Monona County with a continuous record. Its history dates from June 27, 1858, when a group of seven people met at the schoolhouse and organized the Congregational Church of Onawa City. The first pastor was Rev. George Gaby Rice, who together with his wife, was among the original seven members. He died at Council Bluffs, on the 18th of October, 1922, at the remarkable age of 103 years.

The earlier meetings of the Congregational Church were held in the courthouse, and Mr. Rice remained in charge only a year. From 1859 to 1866 there was no pastor. Rev. George L. Woodhull, who was placed in charge in 1866, began at once to plan for a church building, and he started practical

operations by going out into the woods, felling trees and drawing the timber with his own team to the selected site. And this was not all. Daily he joined the carpenters at their work of church building until his health was undermined and he died before the meeting house was finished. The dedication occurred in December, 1878. The most outstanding pastorate in the history of the church was that of Rev. Charles N. Lyman, who served his people for twenty years from January, 1871. In 1923, the building was remodeled and re-decorated, making it modern and attractive.

In the meantime, the Methodist Episcopal Church had secured its own building and otherwise reached a substantial footing. It is said that services were held as early as 1857 by Rev. William Black and Rev. David Havens. The record of the organization, however, is only continuous since 1870. In October of that year, a class was organized by Rev. J. T. Walker, who held services in the schoolhouse and courthouse. The first separate house of worship was finished and dedicated in June, 1873, and a parsonage erected in 1894. The handsome edifice now occupied was erected in 1902, and remodeled and enlarged twenty years thereafter.

#### THE METHODISTS OF CRAWFORD COUNTY.

The Latter Day Saints, migrating northward from Pottawattamie, Harrison and Shelby counties, spread into Crawford County in the early '50s, and Jesse Mason and his family settled at what afterward became Mason's Grove on the West Boyer River. Others of the faith located both north and south, and the settlements known as Deloit and Dow City were under way before J. W. Denison platted his town in 1856. Although the Mormons were the first to come into the Boyer Valley for purposes of settlement, at first they made no effort at church organization; so that the Methodists became the pioneer church builders of Crawford County.

How this seed of Methodism was thus planted is described in these words: "The fathers could not have planned a more effective instrument for the evangelization of a new and growing country than the itinerant system of the Methodist

Church. At the annual conference each preacher receives appointment for the year from the presiding bishop to which he is bound to go. Thus it was that Landon Taylor was appointed to be presiding elder of the Sioux City district of the Upper Iowa Conference and William Black to the Crawford-Carroll Mission. The Sioux City District, be it known, covered all of Northwestern Iowa and the Dakotas, and the Crawford-Carroll Mission had appointments as follows: Smithland, Mapleton, Denison or Mason's Grove, Carrollton, Lake City, Sac City and Ida Grove.

"The first sermon, which was also the first Gospel message in Crawford County, was preached by Rev. William Black, at the home of Rufus Richardson near Mason's Grove, just east of Deloit, October 16, 1856. At this meeting a class was formed and arrangements made for regular services. The class numbered seven and the class leader was George C. King, who with his wife, now Mrs. A. F. Bond, Mr. and Mrs. Rufus Richardson, Mr. and Mrs. O. F. Wight, and Morris McHenry, composed the first organization of the Methodist Church in this county. Five more members were added soon: Mr. and Mrs. J. B. Huckstep, Mr. and Mrs. W. B. Todd and Mrs. Vincent Cheadle.

"In the early days, the quarterly meeting and presiding elder's sermon were great events. The first quarterly meeting for Crawford-Carroll Mission was at the schoolhouse in Mason's Grove, Presiding Elder Landon Taylor and Pastor William Black both present. Landon Taylor was a great and good man of large ability, deep concentration and strong emotions. In the course of his sermons his face would shine and his eyes overflow, and this caused him to be called the Weeping Prophet. He is entitled to larger space, but information concerning him is all too meager."

At the session of Des Moines Conference in September, 1876, Denison was made a station, Dow City having been made the leading point in a new circuit, and about 1887 a handsome house of worship was built.

The Methodist Church at Dow City was formed in 1863; that at Manilla, in 1881 and that at Charter Oak in 1886. Organizations were also formed at Deloit, West Side and Vail. The Charter Oak Methodist Church is the only one in



Crawford County which did not spring directly or indirectly from the original planting in Mason's Grove.

#### THE LUTHERANS IN THE COUNTY.

The first Lutheran organization in Crawford County to be formed was the German Evangelical Zion's Congregation at Denison in January, 1868. The society was small, as there were then but few Germans in the vicinity, but they clung tenaciously to the religion of the Fatherland, and now they have a substantial church congregation and parochial school.

St. John's Evangelical Lutheran Church of Charter Oak was organized in 1881, several years before the town was founded by the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railway. The first church was built in 1888, services being conducted both in German and English.

St. Paul's Evangelical Lutheran Church of Charter Oak was organized in 1896 and the German Evangelical Lutheran Peace Congregation of Manilla in 1906.

#### PRESBYTERIAN CHURCHES.

The Presbyterians of Crawford County have churches at Denison, Vail, Manilla and Charter Oak. Presbyterianism was brought into the eastern part of Crawford County by Dr. James DeWolf and his family, who, in the fall of 1870, became the first bona fide settlers of the Town of Vail. In March of the following year, Rev. R. Burgess, a missionary of the Presbytery of Missouri River, organized the First Presbyterian Church of Denison, and its house of worship was dedicated in October, 1874. Continued increase of membership and expansion of all church activities made a larger and more modern building necessary, which was completed and dedicated in 1898. The next Presbyterian Church to be formed in the county was that at Manilla in 1880. It is a direct descendant of the Fairview Union Sabbath School, organized in May of that year at the Barber schoolhouse, three miles north of the present Town of Manilla, but regular preaching was not established until 1885. The fourth Pres-

byterian Church to be organized in Crawford County was that at Charter Oak, which was formed in 1895.

#### THE EPISCOPALIANS OBTAIN A FOOTHOLD.

The history of the Episcopal Church in Crawford County has to do almost solely with the towns of Vail and Denison. The first services were held at Vail in 1872, while the organization at Denison had its inception in 1875. From 1876 to 1879, Rev. William Wright, of Denison, conducted services once or twice a month at the schoolhouse in Deloit, and in what was then called the Weatherhold Schoolhouse, two miles south of the center of Otter Creek Township.

An account of Fred Whiting states that several families from England, having settled in the neighborhood of Vail and being members of the Church of England, a desire was felt by them for public worship. In accord with this desire, morning prayer was said in the Vail schoolhouse on Christmas day, 1872, H. Herbert Mundy officiating. This was the first Episcopal service held in Crawford County. The first Episcopalian minister to conduct public worship was Rev. Frederick T. Webb, of St. Paul's Church, Council Bluffs, in the summer of 1875.

On the 27th of June, 1875, an organization was formed at Denison under the name of the Episcopal Association of Denison, Iowa. The first meeting was held in the old courthouse, the stated object being to build up an Episcopal Church in that town. On October 10, 1875, Rev. Sydney Smith, of Des Moines, held services at Denison, both morning and evening, and at Vail in the afternoon. In November, Rev. William Wright officiated for the first time in Denison, and in December the Episcopal Association was formed into a parish under the name of Trinity. Its first church was dedicated on March 1, 1876.

#### THE CATHOLIC CHURCH.

For fifteen years, the Catholic Church in Crawford County was in a purely missionary state of development, and the mother church at Denison did not have a house of worship until 1872. Several Catholics of that town, with the

support of a few settlers from Jackson, Soldier and Iowa townships, perfected an organization and built and dedicated the first Catholic church in the county on the 9th of October, 1872. In the spring of 1886, Rev. B. C. Lenehan was installed as the first Catholic pastor having a permanent home in Denison. It is known as the St. Rose of Lima Church, and its present edifice was erected in 1896.

The extension of the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railway to Sioux City in 1886, and the establishment of Manilla as a division station, called the attention of that village to its desirability as a center of Catholic activities. Up to that year, services were held occasionally at Aspinwall, a few miles to the east of the new station, but in November, 1887, the edifice at Manilla was completed and services have been held there ever since. The name of the church is the Sacred Heart. St. Joseph's Church, Buck Grove, which was attended by pastors from Manilla, was erected in 1888. The history of Charter Oak parish dates from the early '80s. Ute and Kenwood are attended from that point.

#### THE CATHOLICS OF MOUNT CARMEL, CARROLL COUNTY.

Although it is claimed that there was a class of Methodists at Carrollton soon after it was platted and designated as the county seat in 1856, the Catholics who settled at and around Mount Carmel, several miles to the northwest, were the first to establish a formal and substantial church organization. The rural communities of Carroll County are largely composed of Germans or of German-Americans. There is but one tier of townships which is an exception—the eastern row. This invasion was of slow growth, widening from a nucleus small and weak at the outset. In Kniest Township, where in 1867 Lambert Kniest acquired much of the land in that part of Carroll County, was launched a successful colonizing project from Dubuque which centered in the little Catholic Mission at Mount Carmel. For several years it was the only Catholic organization in the county, and Carroll had grown to be a place of some pretensions before it was established as a parish and a house of worship erected. During this germinating period, the Carroll communicants worshiped at Mount Carmel, and for a time a hack was operated to bring



them to and from services. Besides the church there was little there to distinguish the place from the surrounding farms, as the tiny hamlet was and is quite a distance from the Chicago and North Western Railway. In May, 1883, a handsome edifice which had been erected at Mount Carmel three years before was destroyed by fire, but it was rebuilt the same year. Several church buildings which preceded it were either burned or struck by lightning, because of the elevated site which they occupied. The Mount Carmel congregation now worships in a beautiful edifice, surrounded by schools and the other adjuncts and conveniences which distinguish a growing religious community. It has been the mother of eighteen or twenty Catholic churches in Carroll County.

#### EXPANSION TO CARROLL AND ELSEWHERE.

In 1872, Rev. Father Heimbucher, of Mount Carmel, said the first mass in Carroll in a private house, and his successor, Rev. John F. Kempker, organized the congregation two years later. He built a small frame church in the Third Ward and then transferred his residence to Carroll. Within the succeeding decade, a larger church was built, a priest's house erected and a convent established—the last named by the Franciscan Sisters from La Crosse, Wisconsin. In 1885, the German speaking members of the parish organized and built what is now SS. Peter and Paul Church, Rev. B. H. Fendrich becoming its first pastor and dying shortly afterward. The parochial school was opened in 1889 by the Franciscan Sisters who, in 1903, commenced the erection of St. Anthony's Hospital, which was opened in June, 1905. The same religious order organized St. Angela's Domestic Science School and housed it in a massive three-story brick structure. Its first class was graduated in 1910.

When the German speaking Catholics of Carroll organized SS. Peter and Paul's Church, the English speaking Catholics continued at the old stand, presided over, as before, by Rev. P. J. O'Connor. In 1892, he built the present stone church occupied by St. Joseph's parish.

A number of Catholic churches, worthy of mention, have been established in Carroll County, outside of Carroll and Mount Carmel. Roselle Township was settled soon after the

first pioneers came to Mount Carmel. In 1875, a small post station named Hillsdale was located on the mail route between Boone and Carroll counties. It was renamed Roselle in that year, and Rev. John Kempker, of Mount Carmel, who had been attending to the spiritual wants of the Catholics of that region, had a small frame church erected. It was the predecessor of the handsome church and the schoolhouse and Sisters' residence which now stand at Roselle.

In the early '70s, Arcadia, in the western part of the county, was settled and platted, and a number of German Catholics, under the care of Rev. John Kempker, organized St. John's parish, erecting their first house of worship in 1875. Afterward a brick church, priest's house and parochial school were assembled.

The Chicago & North Western Railway built a northern branch to Mapleton in 1877, and two years afterward Rev. William Pape, then a resident priest of Carroll, helped to organize a congregation and erect a church there. A large brick school was erected in 1893 and in the following year the old frame church building was fitted up as a convent for the Franciscan Sisters.

The Catholic congregation at Willey, Pleasant Valley Township, dates from 1882. Several additions to the original church building have been made, and the plant also comprises a parochial school and a priest's residence.

In the spring of 1883, Bishop John Hennessy commissioned the pastor of St. Joseph's Church, at State Center, Marshall County, to visit from time to time the new towns established in Carroll County along the recently built line of the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul Railroad. The result was the establishment of a new parish at Templeton, known as Sacred Heart, and the founding of churches at Coon Rapids, Dedham, Manning and other railroad towns, in the middle and late '80s. The Sacred Heart Cemetery was also founded at Templeton, which has become quite a Catholic center for Southern Carroll County.

#### THE PIONEER PROTESTANT CHURCHES.

The Protestants of Carroll County entered the religious field with the advent of the Congregational Church to the

county seat on the 26th of November, 1872. On that date a society was organized, with Charles L. Bailey, Mrs. Delia L. Bailey, Mrs. E. O. Price, Mrs. H. Look, George W. Paine and Mrs. F. B. Paine as members. The first church building was completed in the following year.

For several years, the Methodists had been looking forward to an organization and a religious home, and in the summer of 1873 had raised sufficient pledges to commence building. The building was located just north of the courthouse square in Carroll. The dedication of the church occurred in October, 1874, and the following ministers assisted in the services: Rev. J. M. Phillips, of the Presbyterian Church; and Rev. D. M. Collins, E. W. Brady, Joseph Manning and W. C. Smith, of the Methodist Church. The sermon was preached by Mr. Collins.

In November, 1874, the Presbyterian Church of Glidden was dedicated. The society had been organized by Rev. George R. Carroll, of Cedar Rapids, and the dedicatory sermon was preached by Rev. J. S. Dunning.

The First Presbyterian Church of Carroll dedicated its meeting house in November, 1875. It had been organized as a society since 1868 and incorporated July 4, 1873. At the time, J. E. Griffith, M. A. Hoyt, William Gilley, J. L. Green and E. R. Hastings were chosen as a Board of Trustees. When the meeting house was completed it was the largest edifice of the kind in town. It was burned within a few years and in September, 1880, a larger and better edifice was finished and dedicated. Among those who contributed to the building fund were such prominent Chicago firms as Field, Leiter & Co., J. V. Farwell & Co., Hibbard, Spencer & Co., William Blair & Company, Keith Brothers, C. M. Henderson & Co., Fuller & Fuller, McCormick Machine Co., and Pitkin & Brooks.

A German Presbyterian Church, in Wheatland Township six miles north of Arcadia, was dedicated in February, 1878.

The Presbyterian Church of Arcadia was dedicated in August, 1879. Its pastor was Rev. J. H. Sammis, who also preached to the Glidden congregation.

In the extreme northwest corner of Carroll County, only a short distance from the Crawford and Sac County lines, is



a church building which has been a landmark of that locality for many years. It is the church of the German Presbyterian congregation of Wheatland Township. Among the settlers of that part of the county who were recognized pioneers were H. F. Garrels, G. Von Glan, R. Freese, R. Ohden, R. Wessels, G. Janssen and Frank Flink, most of whom had arrived in 1874. Some of them came from Illinois and others from Grundy and Butler counties, Iowa. Rev. E. A. Elfeld, from Freeport, Illinois, and other ministers of the Gospel, had preached there at different times, and in the spring of 1877 a church was organized by the Presbytery of Fort Dodge. Through the kindness of friends in the East and the financial assistance of the Presbyterian Board of Church Erection, a quarter of the \$1,600 required to build a church was raised, and the meeting house was dedicated on the 17th day of February, 1878. The site for the church, together with an additional five-acre tract of land, was donated by Mr. Von Glan, on whose 160-acre farm the building was erected.

During the summer of 1878, Rev. L. Huendling, then a theological student at McCormick Seminary, Chicago, was asked to supply the church and in the spring of 1879 a pastoral call was extended to him. After his ordination not long afterward, he became the pastor of the church. This is interesting, although written in 1912: "With the exception of two years, spent as instructor in the seminary in Dubuque, Rev. Mr. Huendling has served the church as pastor until the present day. He is, without doubt, in length of service, the oldest pastor in Carroll County. The church has never had another pastor and the pastor has never had another church." For many years the field of labor was a large one, extending from four or five miles north of West Side, in Crawford County, through Carroll County, to where the town of Ulmer, in Sac County, is now situated. Later, the field was divided and is now served by three pastors in three churches. In 1898, the church was enlarged and remodeled and, although not large, presents a neat appearance.

Still another Presbyterian church was completed at Manning in August, 1883, making it evident that the denomination which supports it is among the strongest in Carroll County.

## EARLY CHURCHES FOUNDED IN CALHOUN COUNTY.

Calhoun County, one of the prosperous, intelligent, moral and progressive interior counties of Northwestern Iowa, has been building up its religious life and institutions for seventy years. In the chronological order of their establishment, the principal denominations have thus stabilized themselves in this county: Christians, Methodists, Congregationalists, Lutherans, Presbyterians, Catholics and Baptists.

There is always a dispute as to precedence in church matters which hinge upon the definition of terms. The Methodists and Christians were undoubtedly the pioneer denominations to be established in Calhoun County; their missionaries came to Lake City about the time the county seat was laid out, but that branch of the Christian Church, commonly known as the New Lights, seems to have first effected a substantial organization, which could be dignified with the name of a Church, and its people undoubtedly erected the first house of worship in the county, which they shared with the Methodists. Before the Christian Church was completed in 1874, members of both denominations met for worship in residences, the schoolhouse and the courthouse. All in all, it would appear that the Christian, rather than the Methodist Church, has the stronger claims to the first establishment of a firm foothold as a religious body of Calhoun County.

## THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.

A few years after the first settlement was founded in the southwestern part of the county, Rev. Moses McDaniel, a minister of the New Lights, came to Lake City and preached first at the house of Peter Smith, one of the most prominent of the pioneers in that region. Peter Smith, Christian Smith, James O. Smith, their wives and a few others, organized themselves into a regular church society, which increased in numbers as time passed, and in 1872 steps were taken to build a place of worship. Work on it was commenced in the summer of 1873, and it was dedicated early in 1874. This was the first building erected in Calhoun County exclusively as a place of religious worship, and its site is one block north of the northwest corner of the public square. Although not as

strong as in former years, the congregation still maintains its organization and holds regular services.

#### TRINITY METHODIST EPISCOPAL CHURCH.

The Methodists of Lake City organized classes and held services for nearly twenty years before any attempt was made to organize a formal church society. On January 8, 1875, the Methodist Episcopal Church of Lake City was incorporated by John Offenback, E. S. Clow, D. E. Rogan, J. D. McVay and J. M. Toliver. Six days later F. E. Stevenson sold to the church a lot for a house of worship which was soon afterward erected. New articles of incorporation were filed in September, 1909, when the name was changed to Trinity Methodist Episcopal Church, with H. M. Humphrey, C. H. Packard, D. W. McCrary, H. H. Feige and J. M. Miller as trustees. The large brick church now occupied was completed in the following year upon the site of the old meeting house.

#### OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES IN CALHOUN COUNTY.

In 1866, a few Methodists living in the northeastern part of the county organized a Sunday school and a class. Meetings were held at the residence of Joseph Yates and at the schoolhouse until the Dubuque & Sioux City Railroad was constructed through the northern part of the county and the town of Manson was platted on the site of a settlement which had already sprung up. It became a station on that line and the society which had been forming in the Yatesville neighborhood was transferred to Manson, where it gradually developed into the Grace Methodist Episcopal Church, which was incorporated in 1899. At first the Methodists worshipped in the church erected by the Congregationalists in 1873, their handsome and substantial brick edifice having been completed soon after their incorporation as Grace Church.

The Methodist Episcopal Church of Rockwell City was organized in the spring of 1878, with Rev. W. F. Gleason, of the Manson charge, as the first minister. The society was incorporated in 1882 and in the following year a frame house of worship was completed. This was used until 1907, when



the present church building, which is more in keeping with the large and increasing membership of the society, was completed.

There are about a dozen other Methodist organizations in Calhoun County, the leading churches of which are those at Somers, established in 1880; at Farnhamville, founded the same year; at Lohrville, in 1888; at Jolley, about the same time; at Pomeroy and Gregg, in 1890, and at Knierim and Lavinia, 1895 and 1899, respectively.

#### THE CONGREGATIONALISTS AND LUTHERANS.

The Congregationalists in the Yatesville neighborhood commenced to hold meetings in 1866, organized a regular church in the following year and a few years afterward transferred their headquarters to the new railroad town of Manson. There they built their first house of worship, which was used for several years both as a meeting house by the Methodists and as a public hall by the community at large. That was in 1874. Six years later the society was incorporated and in 1900 the church erected another meeting house, which was then considered one of the best appointed edifices for the purpose in Northwestern Iowa. In 1883, the Alna Congregational Church of Farnhamville was incorporated, and in 1897 the First Congregational Church of Manson furnished a number of members to form the Congregational Church of Center Township.

In several localities in Calhoun County there are a number of Germans or Swedes who were brought up in the Lutheran faith. These peoples have organized a number of churches of that denomination and most of the societies are prosperous. Probably the oldest Lutheran Church in the county is the Swedish Lutheran Church at Manson, which was organized on May 5, 1871, with Rev. P. H. Pilgren as the first pastor. The first meetings were held in a schoolhouse just across the line in Sherman Township, and the church was incorporated in 1883. The German Lutherans in Lincoln and Sherman townships were holding meetings soon after the first settlements were made, but did not formally organize until August, 1887, when the St. Paul's German Evangelical Church of Manson was incorporated. There are

two German Lutheran churches in the town of Pomeroy that are among the early organizations of this denomination in Calhoun County, namely: the Immanuel and St. John's churches. The German Evangelical Lutheran Church of Lincoln Township was incorporated in 1884, and Skarabarg Church, a Swedish Lutheran society of Logan Township, was incorporated in 1892, while St. Peter's German Evangelical Lutheran Church of Farnhamville was thus organized in 1893 and Immanuel's Church of Center Township in 1894.

The first of the Evangelical churches, or those connected with the Evangelical Association of North America, was organized at Pomeroy, in 1879, and there are two others in the county of later date.

#### THE PRESBYTERIANS AND BAPTISTS.

In October, 1875, a committee from Fort Dodge Presbytery visited Pomeroy for the purpose of organizing a church; which was duly effected. The building erected by the society was blown down by the tornado of 1893, but was restored in the following year. The First Presbyterian Church of Lake City was organized in 1881 and incorporated in 1895; that of Lohrville in 1882 and of Rockwell City, in 1883.

The first Baptist church in Calhoun County was organized at Lake City; it was incorporated in 1882. In the latter year a meeting was held at Lohrville and a majority of those present voted to incorporate the First Baptist Church of Union. After several years the effort of the Baptists of Lohrville to found a church was abandoned.

#### THE CHURCH OF CHRIST.

About the close of the Civil war a number of Disciples, or members of the Church of Christ, organized the first church of this faith at Lake City. Rev. A. C. Corbin was the first pastor and under his charge the membership increased. The church was incorporated in 1882. The present handsome house of worship, known as the Woodlawn Church, was dedicated in 1896. The society is one of the strongest in the county. The Lohrville Christian Church is an old organization, and in the early '90s Rev. E. M. Miller came to Calhoun

County and organized churches at Jolley, Rockwell City and Rands.

#### THE CATHOLICS IN CALHOUN COUNTY.

The oldest Roman Catholic parish in Calhoun County is that of St. Thomas, at Manson, which was established in 1880. Before that time, the Catholic families in the northern part of the county attended the Lizard Church, which is the mother of half a dozen parishes. Rev. Father Lenehan, of Fort Dodge, was the first priest. In 1890, Archbishop Hennessy appointed Father M. C. Daly resident priest, with missions at Barnum and Pomeroy. St. Joseph's parish at Lohrville was organized soon after the town was started in 1881. About the same time, St. Mary's parish was organized at Pomeroy, although a number of Catholic families had been holding the services of their faith for ten or twelve years. The first mass in Rockwell City was celebrated by Rev. Father Carroll, of Fonda, Pocahontas County, in 1884, when there were less than a dozen Catholics in the town. In 1906 the parish was regularly organized under the name of St. Francis of Assisi. St. Mary's Catholic Church of Lake City was organized as a mission in 1892, and purchased the old frame house of worship of the Woodlawn Christian Church. As a mission of Lohrville it was regularly attended by the priest from that parish.

#### CHURCH PIONEERING IN CLAY COUNTY.

In a history of Clay County published some years ago, "Pioneer" writes as follows regarding the planting of the first religious organizations in Clay County: "Dr. S. Snyder, if the writer is correctly informed, was the first minister to carry the glad tidings to the people of Clay County. That was back in the later '50s. Mr. Snyder's home at that time, we believe, was at Boone, Iowa. From the settlements along the Des Moines River at and near Boone he crossed the great waste of uninhabited prairie until he struck the settlement on the Little Sioux at Sutherland, O'Brien County, where he preached the first sermon ever delivered in that section of Iowa. Working his way up the Little Sioux, he afterward preached at Correctionville, Cherokee, Peterson and Sioux



Rapids. Spencer was not in existence at that time, the only settlements in the county being near the southern border along the Little Sioux.

"So few and so scattered were the settlers that there were no organized churches with regular services until about 1869 or 1870. The first church building in the county was erected by the Welsh Baptists in Douglas Township in 1869, and was known as the Pioneer Church. About that time a Methodist Episcopal Church was organized in Peterson and Rev. C. W. Clifton, a zealous, earnest young man, was placed in charge. Mr. Clifton preached in Peterson each alternate Sunday morning, and devoted the remainder of his time to outlying settlements, as homesteaders by that time had begun to come in and occupy the land."

In 1866, the first settlers located on the site of Spencer. Among them were D. N. Coates, a Free Baptist minister. The settlers soon organized themselves into a church society, and Mr. Coates preached to them, the meetings being held in the settlers' cabins. From the nucleus then formed grew the present Free Baptist Church of Spencer.

#### "LONG TODD" AND "SHORT TODD."

"Soon after the establishment of religious services by the Free Baptists," continues "Pioneer," "the Methodists began to work in the same field. Among the pioneer Methodists to preach here was Rev. John Webb, a man of much energy and considerable ability. A little later a couple of young men named Todd preached here. Although having the same name, the two Todds were not related. One of the Todds was a very tall man and was commonly designated as 'Long Todd;' the other was a rather short man and was generally alluded to as 'Short Todd.' Each of the Todds had ability and each became a presiding elder before drifting from this conference. 'Long Todd' was an eloquent, forceful speaker, who could almost hypnotize his audience. He was a master at story telling, and could be somewhat 'sporty' when out with the boys. 'Short Todd,' on the other hand, was a quiet, serious man, who indulged in no levity. He was scholarly, and a ready, pleasing speaker. His sermons were character-

ized more by their careful preparation and good thought than by their eloquence.”

The church records show that the Peterson M. E. circuit was organized in August, 1855, by Rev. Orange S. Wight, who preached a part of the year, once in every two weeks. Rev. T. D. Adams followed and Rev. Seymour Snyder formally organized a class of eight members in the fall of 1863. The Peterson M. E. Church has continued to grow to the present time. Maple Grove is an out-appointment.

The Baptist Society of Peterson was one of the earliest to be organized in the county (1871). It held its meetings in the old courthouse and the Good Templars' Hall. When the railroad went through in 1880 and the Methodists and Congregationalists were organized, the Baptist society was absorbed and never revived.

The First Congregational Church of Peterson was organized by Rev. J. B. Chase in April, 1882, and its first house of worship erected in the following year.

The old Spencer Free Baptist Church was organized August 10, 1867, with Solomon Wells and wife, Caroline Wells, David Nelson Coates and wife, Betsy E. Coates, and Romanzo Coates, who afterward became the pastor, his wife, Lephy Coates, Frank M. Wells and wife, Susan, and John F. Calkins, as well as the wife of Stephen Calkins. Rev. David N. Coates was the first regular pastor, and after serving as such five years was succeeded by his son, R. A. Coates, who was in charge of the church seven years. The church was incorporated in 1873 and erected a house of worship in 1882. The Baptist Church itself was established in 1874.

The Spencer circuit of the Methodist Episcopal Church was formed in September, 1871. Rev. Charles B. Winter was the first local pastor. Its first house of worship built in 1873, was destroyed by fire, and the second was not erected until 1880. It is also a matter of record that the German Methodists organized themselves into a church in 1868. The Catholics of Spencer commenced holding services as the Sacred Heart Parish in 1879 and their house of worship was dedicated in 1884. The St. Stephen's Episcopal Church was founded in 1880 and the Church of Christ was organized in the following year. A Friends' (Quakers') church was or-

ganized in 1890, and for some years was in a flourishing condition.

#### RELIGIOUS OUTPOSTS OF NORTHWESTERN IOWA.

In 1856, when a far northwestern frontier was established at the region of the Okoboji and Spirit lakes, in what was to become Dickinson County, religious movements soon followed. The first religious services were held in the old Gardner cabin, on Sunday, May 11, 1857; in the locality of which was one of the main centers of tragedy connected with the Indian massacre of the previous March. Rev. J. S. Prescott conducted the meeting, and on that Sunday morning some fifteen or twenty settlers gathered from a wide area to hear the man of God. "It was an unique sight," says an old settler, "especially to those who had just come from the East, to see those rough looking, hardy pioneers on their way to church, come filing along, either singly or in parties of two or three, dressed in their red shirts, without coats or vests and with their rifles in their hands, their ammunition slung from their shoulders and leather belts around their waists, from most of which dangled revolvers. Singular as such a spectacle would be at the present time, it was strictly in keeping with the surroundings on that occasion. As the parties arrived, they disposed of their arms by standing them in the most convenient corner and then arranged themselves about the room on stools and benches or anything else that would do duty as a seat. The parties were mostly strangers to each other at that time, and whether they were about to listen to the wild harangues of a professional 'Bible whanger,' as a certain type of frontier preachers were then designated, or to be treated to an intelligent and interesting discourse on some live topic, they did not know, nor did they much care. It was a change, and the novelty was enough to bring them out." From all accounts of Doctor Prescott which have come down to the present, they listened then and many times afterward to an eloquent and inspiring missionary, who is credited with inducing the Methodist Conference of 1859 to send Rev. Cornelius McLean to the circuit then established; it comprised not only Dickinson, but Emmet, O'Brien and Clay counties. The headquarters were at Okoboji.



During the pastorate of Rev. J. E. Cohenour the Methodists erected their first house of worship at Spirit Lake. That was in 1878. Previously, they had worshiped in the courthouse.

The German Lutherans first came into Dickinson County in 1869-70, locating in Spirit Lake and Diamond Lake townships, northwest of Spirit Lake. They have erected two houses of worship, the first in 1869. Since 1884, the charge in which they are situated includes Spirit Lake, Estherville and Jackson.

It is said that a Presbyterian society existed at Spirit Lake at an early date, but the first recorded organization of that denomination was authorized by the Presbytery of Fort Dodge at its meeting held at Jefferson, Iowa, on the 28th of April, 1871.

In the winter of 1872-73, the Baptists first organized themselves into a society in Dickinson County, and in 1874 erected a church building at Spirit Lake. Rev. J. L. Copoc was its second pastor, and it was one of his brothers who was executed for his participation in the John Brown raid at Harper's Ferry.

The first Catholic services were held in 1873 at the home of Oliver Sarazine, the meeting being conducted by Rev. J. J. Smith, of Emmetsburg. Until 1898, the church in Spirit Lake was in charge of the pastor at Spencer, Clay County; then transferred to the Estherville pastor. The new house of worship was dedicated in October, 1907.

The Congregationalists, Methodists and Catholics have obtained firm footholds in Milford. The Home Missionary Society of the Congregational Church first organized meetings in Milford through Rev. J. R. Upton, services by him being conducted at the Case House in 1872. Societies were formed both at Milford and Lakeville. The first resident pastor was Rev. L. R. Fitch, who came in 1890. The first house of worship was finished in 1891. The Methodists erected the pioneer church building in Milford, its dedication occurring in 1883. The Baptist Church was organized in the summer of 1882, and the Catholics held the first services of their faith at the home of Daniel Ryan, three miles southeast of Milford, in 1884. St. Patrick's Church was built in 1889.

Since the early '70s, the Methodists, Presbyterians, Baptists and German Lutherans have been organized for religious work in Lake Park, Superior and other sections in the eastern and northeastern parts of the county.

#### ESTHERVILLE AND EMMET COUNTY.

The main center of religious extension in Emmet County, also in the first tier of far Northwestern counties, was and is Estherville. The Methodist circuit to which its name was given was established in 1868, and included Spirit Lake, Dickinson County. Prior to that year the circuit had included Clay and O'Brien counties, but the latter withdrew. One preacher had charge of both Emmet and Dickinson counties, and the able and beloved young circuit "rider," Rev. Cornelius McLean, was the man placed in charge. His itinerary included services once every three weeks as follows: Estherville and Emmet, Emmet County; Spirit Lake and Okoboji (headquarters), Dickinson County; and Peterson and Waterman, then both in O'Brien County. R. A. Smith, in his History of Dickinson County (1902), writes of Mr. McLean: "He was an ideal representative of that class of educated, conscientious young men who have, in all periods of our country's history, struck for the frontier and labored honestly and earnestly to do what good they could and exert what influence they might, in forming public opinion and directing public sentiment along the lines of mental and moral advancement. He was a young man and this was his first charge, and, as before stated, he was the first preacher on this charge." In 1879, during the county seat fight, a church building was constructed by the Methodists, which was also the first house of worship in Emmet County. The building was erected principally because Estherville wished to have an added advantage in claiming the county seat. It was used by the society until the present house of worship was dedicated in March, 1908.

The First Free Will Baptist Church of Estherville was organized in the spring of 1870 and its own home was completed in 1882. The society was incorporated in the following year. The '80s proved a great period of expansion for the

Estherville churches. The first Presbyterian society in the county was incorporated at Swan Lake in August, 1880; the Presbyterians of that place and of Estherville, organized in 1880 and 1881; the Norwegian Evangelical Church of Estherville was founded in 1887; the First Church of Christ and the Grace Episcopal Church, of the same place, in 1888 and 1889, respectively. At a later date, were established the First Baptist Church, 1890; the First Church of Christ, Scientist, 1899; the Immanuel Evangelical Lutheran Church, 1902; the Free Methodist Church, 1901, and St. Patrick's Roman Catholic Church, 1912.

During the summer of 1874 was organized the Methodist Episcopal Church of Armstrong, followed by the Free Methodist Church in 1887, the First Presbyterian, in 1891, the First Church of Christ, Scientist, 1898, and the St. Mary's Roman Catholic Church, 1912.

The oldest church at Ringsted is the Danish Lutheran, known as the St. Ausgar's Church, organized in 1884, and continued as a unit until 1897, when St. John's Church split from the parent body. The First Presbyterian Church was incorporated in 1903.

Outside of Estherville, Armstrong and Ringsted, the Evangelical Lutherans, Methodists, Presbyterians and other denominations have churches of more or less stability.

#### PIONEER METHODISM IN O'BRIEN COUNTY.

The first Methodist activities, as well as the first religious activities of any kind, commenced in O'Brien County prior to its organization, even as early as 1858, and services were held in shacks and shanties and little backwoods schoolhouses, when they began to appear. Father James Bicknell preached the first sermon at Old O'Brien, probably in 1858. He was a local preacher and resided, for many years, with his son, J. J. Bicknell, near Peterson, Clay County.

In 1858 a mission was formed known as the Little Sioux mission, extending from Spirit Lake to Cherokee, with Rev. O. S. Wright as pastor and Rev. George Clifford as presiding elder. During that year Mr. Wright received forty dollars from the missionary fund and twenty-seven dollars from the



brethren on the circuit. In 1860 there was not even a schoolhouse on the entire charge and services were necessarily held in private houses. In 1859-62 Cherokee and Peterson were left without a supply, but in 1863 were included in the Smithland charge. Rev. Seymour Snyder was the regular minister at Old O'Brien in 1863-64. His work extended into Minnesota and southward to Peterson. He carried his rifle, Bible and hymn book as companions, and was ready to expound the gospel from each. In 1869-70 Rev. C. W. Clifton was the pastor and lived with his family in a loft. The effort to build a parsonage at Old O'Brien failed. It was in the record for the year 1870 that Rev. Mr. Clifton makes this entry: "I traveled three thousand miles and preached one hundred sermons," and of one of his protracted meetings, or revivals, he says that there was a "general awakening, but few conversions."

Schoolhouses were now being built in various places and it was the practice of Mr. Clifton and other pioneer preachers to organize small classes in them, but in the spring of 1871, the settlers in the central part of the county, who had commenced to rebel at the assumption of the citizens in and around the southeastern village of Old O'Brien, decided to have a house of worship set apart solely for religious services. Section 33 of Center Township was selected for the honor. It was right in the midst of the prairie country, and when the exact site had been selected the homesteaders turned out in a body with their breaking plows and turned up a lot of tough, thick sod for building material. Soon, by united effort, there arose a sod church of good size, quite comparable with the homes of those constructing it, and almost without cost in money expenditure, except for a few windows. This sod church was built in a manner like the old-fashioned raising bee in a timbered country, substituting sod for logs. Mr. Clifton preached in it during 1871, its interior showing bare rafters and window sashes without glass. The old settlers used to say that Rev. Mr. Clifton had nearly as many holes in his clothes and shoes as there were in the roof and windows of that first sod church in O'Brien County. In 1872 the county seat was moved from Old O'Brien, tucked away in

the southeast corner of the county, to the new railroad town of Primghar, in its geographical center. This brought many new settlers to that locality. In 1878, under the pastorate of Rev. W. H. Drake, the first edifice of the Trinity Methodist Episcopal Church of Primghar was erected. It was destroyed by a cyclone in 1882, and two other houses of worship have since been built, the last one in 1900.

#### OTHER METHODIST CHURCHES.

At Sheldon, the Methodist Episcopal Church was organized in the pioneer days of the town. It is said that the first sermon preached in the town by a Methodist minister was by Rev. Ira Brashears in 1872, and that the meeting house was the depot of the Chicago, St. Paul & Omaha Railroad. The first church building was erected in 1881, and the present house of worship was dedicated in March, 1900.

The Methodist Church at Paullina was organized in 1883, and there are other societies of this denomination at Archer, Calumet and Moneta and in Waterman Township.

#### THE CONGREGATIONALISTS AND FRIENDS IN O'BRIEN COUNTY.

The first organized body of Congregationalists was formed in October, 1871, in Grant Township, at the initiative of a council of ministers and lay delegates from Congregational churches in the "Sioux Country." It was designated as the First Congregational Church of O'Brien County. A building for worship was erected in 1876. Other Congregational churches were organized at Sheldon, Primghar and Gaza, each in the order named. The First Congregational Church of Primghar was organized in March, 1888.

The Society of Friends has many yearly meetings scattered over the country, which may be called the parent bodies. The conservative branch conducts one of these yearly meetings in the State known as the Iowa Yearly Meeting of Friends, of which the assembly known as the Paullina Monthly Meeting of Friends is a subordinate branch. This was organized in 1885 and in the following year a meeting house was erected in Highland Township. Several school-houses have since been erected and conducted by the Friends.

## THE LUTHERANS AND ALLIED SECTARIANS.

The Evangelical churches are quite strong in O'Brien County. One of the pioneer organizations is the Evangelical Lutheran St. John's Church, organized in 1883 at the quiet little hamlet of Germantown, Caledonia Township. It is in the southwestern part of the county and even set apart from railroad connection and bustle. A substantial church building, a neat parsonage, a well conducted school, a cemetery—what more could be needed for a quiet life and a peaceful death?

The St. John's Evangelical Church at Sanborn was formed in 1886; the Norwegian Evangelical Lutheran Church at Paullina in 1888; the German Evangelical Lutheran Zion Church, at the same place, in the following year, as well as a society of the Evangelical Association at Hartley. Within the last twenty-five years, two Lutheran churches have also been formed at the latter place, so that the northern part of O'Brien County is particularly strong as a home of Lutheranism.

The Reformed Church of North America and the Christian Reformed Church have substantial organizations at both Sanborn and Sheldon.

## HOW PRESBYTERIANISM IS REPRESENTED IN O'BRIEN COUNTY.

The First Presbyterian Church at Paullina was organized in the fall of 1881, and a house of worship completed in 1883. Societies were also formed at Sanborn in 1881 and at Hartley in 1889.

## THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE COUNTY.

Catholicism in O'Brien County had its origin in St. Patrick's parish, Sheldon. Rt. Rev. T. M. Lenehan, who was pastor of old St. Mary's Church, Sioux City, had charge at an early day over the few scattered families in six or seven counties in Northern Iowa, and was the first priest who came to Sheldon and vicinity. He celebrated mass for the first time in Sheldon parish at the home of Michael Burns, who then (about 1873) lived in Floyd Township. Rev. Father Lenehan attended the Catholics of the parish in 1873-76, and



in 1879 Rev. Patrick Lynch was appointed its first resident pastor by Rt. Rev. John Hennessy, Bishop of the diocese of Iowa. In 1880, the Catholics at Sheldon erected their first house of worship, and for more than thirty years it fulfilled its mission. In 1912, the edifice was completed which still stands for the growth and devotion of St. Patrick's parish.

Very Rev. J. J. Smith, pastor of the Catholic Church of Emmetsburg, was the first priest to say mass in the Sanborn parish. In 1879, soon after the coming of Father Smith, Rev. Patrick Lynch was stationed at Sheldon as pastor, with Sanborn, Primghar, Ashton, Sibley, Rock Valley, Rock Rapids, Hull and Hospers as outside stations. In 1882, the first Catholic house of worship was built in Sanborn, and in 1893 the first resident pastor was assigned.

The first regular service received by the Catholics of Primghar was from Rev. Timothy Sullivan; the time, the fall of 1887; the place, the courthouse. The Catholics of Primghar bought their present church from the Methodists, moved it to the site owned by them, and afterward improved it without and within.

Sutherland was first attended from Sheldon by Rev. Father Sullivan, in 1885-88, but in the latter year the Catholics of that place built a little church which, in 1891, was destroyed by a cyclone. Rev. Father Sullivan was also the first priest to hold services at Paullina, about 1885.

#### OTHER CHURCHES IN O'BRIEN COUNTY.

Besides the religious organization already mentioned there are Evangelical churches at Hartley and Sheldon, Reformed churches at Sheldon and Archer and Christian Science churches at Primghar, Archer, Sheldon and Sutherland.

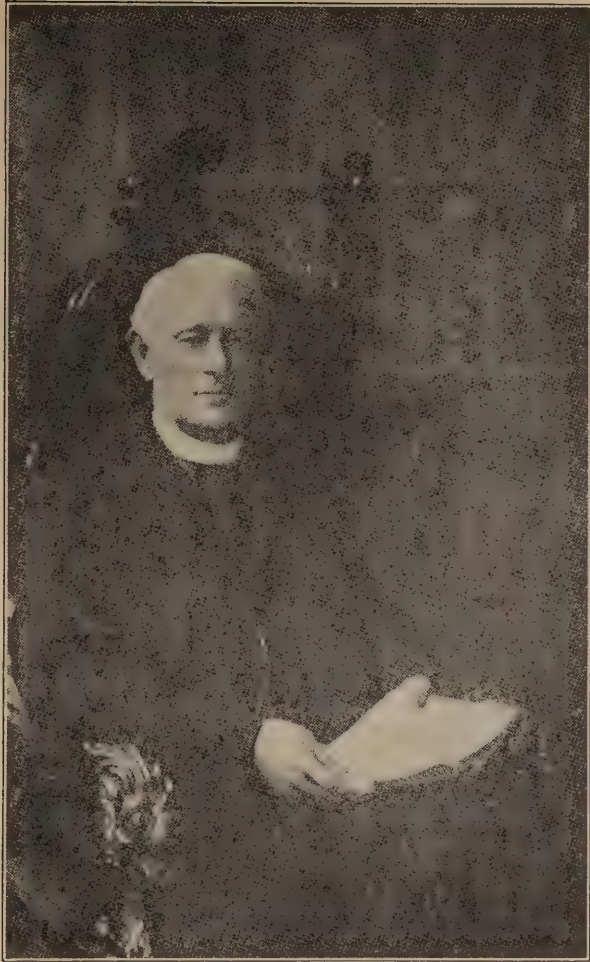
#### FIRST RELIGIOUS SERVICES IN PALO ALTO COUNTY.

Charles McCormick, a pioneer of Palo Alto County, who settled at West Bend in 1858, treats this topic as follows: "The first religious service held in the county was by Rev. Father Marsh, of the Catholic Church, in the year 1859 or 1860. Rev. Father McComb, a Presbyterian minister, held the first Protestant service in the summer of 1860. This service was held in my father's cabin in Fern Valley Town-

ship. A Presbyterian church was organized and services held at my father's house. Services were also held at Carter's, at old West Bend, at McKnight's Point and at Powhattan, Pocahontas County. The Struthers, Hendersons, Frazers and others joined this little body of church-going people among whom were Seth Sharp, Percy Nowhan, James and John Jolliffe and Abel Hais, and they all did their best to sustain this little Presbyterian church. The church survived, though at times it was nip and tuck, but in the end all came out right."

Dwight G. McCarty, whose father, George B., came to Old Emmetsburg from McGregor, Eastern Iowa, in 1869, gives other details to this effect: "The Catholic Church was the first church in the old town. It was erected in 1871, through the efforts of Father Lenehan of Fort Dodge. Before this, the settlers had gathered logs to build a church, but a fire swept over the prairie and destroyed all the results of their hard labor. This new church was a large structure for those early days. Rev. Father J. J. Smith was the first pastor. He arrived at Emmetsburg in December, 1871, when the new church was only partially completed. With fearless energy and boundless faith the young priest began his life work in the new field. He completed the church and organized the parish. There were only thirty-nine Catholic families in the county then, but his sphere of activity was much broader. His parish contained eight counties, but as resident priest he had charge not only of Northwest Iowa from Hancock to the State line on the west, but also all those counties lying north of Humboldt, Pocahontas, Buena Vista and Plymouth. In addition to his charge in Iowa, he attended to Southwest Minnesota and Eastern Dakota. In the Iowa territory there are today (1910) twenty-seven priests where the territory was once attended by him alone. Moreover, in the tireless and willing discharge of his duties on the wild and desolate frontier plains, he ministered to the needs of all, and was the kind and cheery friend and adviser of all the settlers, regardless of church or creed.

"Very Rev. J. J. Smith was ordained a priest in Dublin, Ireland, June 26, 1870. After coming to Dubuque on August 30, 1870, he was assistant priest at the cathedral for three



REV. J. J. SMITH





months. He was then appointed pastor at Clermont, Fayette County, whence he was moved to Emmetsburg in December, 1871.

"In the winter of 1871-72, the scattered Protestant families organized a Union church, John L. Lang being the leading spirit, and Rev. B. C. Hammond, who lived on a homestead five or six miles northeast of town, preached for them. This Union Church was afterwards duly incorporated and was the forerunner of the present First Congregational Church of Emmetsburg. A Union Sunday School was also organized by Mr. Lang and conducted by him in the spring and summer of 1872. In August, 1872, that Little Giant of Methodism, Col. E. S. Ormsby, located in the old town, and it did not take him long to gather together that remnant of the tribe of Israel known as Methodists, and organize a Methodist Episcopal Church and Sunday School which have both been flourishing ever since."

All the leading denominations are now represented at Emmetsburg; the Catholics, Methodists and Lutherans have churches at Graettinger; the Catholics, Lutherans, Latter Day Saints and Methodists at Mallard; the Presbyterians at Rodman; Catholics, Adventists, Free Methodists and Methodists at Ruthven, and the Catholics, Lutherans, Methodists and Presbyterians at West Bend.

#### THE COMING OF THE METHODISTS TO SIBLEY.

The first settlers began coming to Osceola County in the spring of 1871. Slight improvements were made during the summer and most of the settlers returned to their former homes in the fall to avoid the long winter under poorly prepared conditions.

The first preaching service was held at the house of Elbridge Morrison, one and a half miles west of Sibley, by Rev. S. Aldrich, who was making Osceola County his home at this time. Rev. Ira Brashears, a one-armed soldier of the Civil war, was assigned to the missionary field of O'Brien, Sioux, Lyon and Osceola counties. Rev. John Webb, who was in charge of the work at Spirit Lake, was directed to divide his time with Sibley. Accordingly on the 19th of April, 1872, the Rev. Messrs. Webb and Aldrich met about a score of good

Methodists at the house of A. M. Culver, one and a half miles south of Sibley, and there organized a class—the first religious organization in Osceola County.

At the first session of the Northwest Iowa Conference, held at Fort Dodge, in September, 1872, Rev. John Webb was assigned to the Sibley mission, which embraced Osceola County. In the following year, a substantial frame meeting house was completed. Twenty years afterward, then living in Des Moines, Rev. Mr. Webb had this to say of his early experiences in Osceola County: "In June, 1872, in company with Mr. James Block, I left Fayette County, this State, to visit my son and others, who had gone to Osceola County to locate on government claims. I was directed from Lakeville to go to Ocheyedan Mound, and was told that when on the mound I could in all probability see the tents in which McCausland, Brooks and W. W. Webb were living. I went to the mound and on top of it, but could see no signs of life in any direction. Mr. Block and myself then went down to the banks of the Ocheyedan and camped for the night. The next morning we started in search of the boys, and about noon found them one mile east of where Sibley now is. We spent a few days with them and our horses were picketed out by the foreleg. While the horses were thus secured, something gave them a fright, when they ran the full length of the rope and brought up so suddenly that both turned somersaults and one of them was killed. I liked the country and that fall took charge of the Spirit Lake circuit; the next year took charge of the Sibley circuit, and formed the first class ever formed in Osceola County at the house of A. M. Culver. I built the first Methodist Episcopal church, or enclosed it, and Rev. Mr. Brashears finished it.

"While I was living at Sibley at that early day a young lawyer came to town, who was not very scrupulous, and he persuaded the Board of Supervisors to pay him \$20,000 to recover certain moneys due from Woodbury County to Osceola. I heard of it and going to the courthouse where the board was in session, requested them to hear me and they consented. I told them they would regret the day that they issued the warrant and gave the general reasons why such an official act should not be done; and even as an outsider I



made a motion to the board and the crowd that Blackmer be allowed \$500 retainer and a per cent afterwards; and I added to the motion that the hiring include all the lawyers, or the remainder would be coming in for a share. J. T. Barclay, Esq., who was standing close by me, moved an amendment that the preachers also be added, but they were not. This was the last ever heard of the suit against Woodbury County.

“When our Methodist church at Sibley was ready for dedication, we met Sabbath morning, and just before the time to commence public worship and while some of us were standing on the steps of the church, it was discovered that something was coming from the Northwest, which looked like a cloud; but still it could be seen that it was not a cloud, and upon its nearer approach we could then see that it was a swarm of grasshoppers. This so disconcerted and discouraged the people that it was impossible to hold them for the purposes of dedication that day, and it was deferred. The ravages of these pests which followed are known to old settlers.”

In 1896, the original church of the Sibley Methodists was sold to the German Presbyterians, and a new building was erected on the old site.

#### CATHOLICS ALSO PIONEERS IN OSCEOLA COUNTY.

Osceola is one of the counties of Northwestern Iowa in which the Catholics obtained a strong foothold at an early day. In Osceola County they were the first of the religionists to organize. The centers of their activities were at Ashton and Sibley. The German Catholic families settled at and near Ashton, and the Irish Catholic families in the Sibley neighborhood.

The first Catholic settlers in Osceola County were Nicholas Boor and John Streit, who came on the 19th of June, 1871, and filed on claims in Gilman Township. The first mass celebrated was in May, 1873, on the southeast quarter of section 16, Holman Township, at the home of Patrick Larkin, by an assistant priest of Rev. Father Lenehan, of Sioux City. This was the commencement of the Sibley parish and the St. Andrew's Roman Catholic Church. The parish was first served by priests from Sioux City, LeMars and Sheldon. In 1883,

the congregation bought the old Sibley schoolhouse for church purposes, but in 1897 erected a house of worship and purchased cemetery grounds.

In 1880, the part of the congregation residing in the Ashton neighborhood consisting of German Catholic families had greatly increased in numbers, and decided to form a separate organization. In September of that year a meeting was held to decide upon a location for a church building. The Sioux City & St. Paul Railroad Company had offered to donate five acres of land if the Catholics would build the church near the Ashton station, but John Streit donated the same amount of land from his farm, two and a half miles from the station, but nearer to the center of the settlement. Mr. Streit's offer was accepted, and in September, 1880, Rev. Father P. J. Lynch, resident priest at Sheldon, celebrated mass in Mr. Streit's house. In March of the following year, Rev. Father Lynch said mass for the first time in the new but unplastered little church, representing the parish of Our Lady of Perpetual Help. The congregation did not grow much until the church was moved to the railroad station in 1885. Land was then bought for a parish cemetery. The first resident priest was Rev. James McCormack, who came in June, 1888, and in the following spring erected a substantial building for a parochial school, which he placed in charge of the Sisters of St. Francis. In October, 1893, a new and worthy house of worship was erected, and five years later the growth of the parish and consequent increase of child population made it necessary to have a larger and more complete school building and an enlarged Sisters' residence. These expansions and accommodations have made the Sibley congregations secondary to the church at Ashton.

#### OTHER CHURCHES AT SIBLEY.

In the fall of the year that the Methodists organized their first class at Sibley (1872) the Congregationalists organized a society in the public schoolhouse. Most of its members lived east of Ocheyedan Creek. The home missionary on the field and first pastor of the new church was Rev. Benjamin A. Dean. In the year following the organization of the church it was admitted to membership in the Sioux Association of

Congregational Churches, a district association of the State body. In 1875, the first meeting house of the society was erected opposite the northeast corner of the courthouse square—the building which was purchased by the German Lutheran Church in 1896. In the latter year, the Congregationalists built their larger church, one of the features of which is a fine memorial window placed in honor of Mrs. Ellen P. Dean, wife of the first pastor, both of whom did so much to establish the organization. The First Congregational Church of Sibley is one of the strongest religious bodies in Osceola County.

The German Lutheran Church of Sibley is a flourishing organization and its pastor also serves congregations at Harris and in Viola Township. The Baptists have also supported a church since 1874; and there is a German Presbyterian Church, which dates from 1895.

Besides the Catholic Church at Ashton, the Methodists have been well organized since 1882. Ocheyedan, in the northern part of the county, is the center of quite a religious field, represented by the Methodist Episcopal Church, which has been in existence since 1872 and owes it to Rev. John Webb, the first Methodist minister of Sibley; the Congregational Church, organized in 1888, and the St. Peter's Evangelical Lutheran Church, established in 1901.

The first German Lutherans of Horton Township came into Osceola County from Will County, Illinois, in 1883, and in 1887 organized a church known as the Evangelical Lutheran Church. About 1896, some Presbyterian Germans in West Holman Township, a few miles west of Sibley, organized Hope Church, and in 1899 the First Methodist Episcopal Church of Harris was dedicated by Rev. Dr. Wilson S. Lewis (afterward Bishop Lewis). These are three representative churches of the rural districts.

#### THE GOSPEL IN LYON COUNTY.

The first settlers of Lyon County located in the valley of the Big Sioux and that of its branch, the Rock River. Beloit and Doon, in the southern part, and Rock Rapids, farther north, were the first prominent villages. The first attorney to be admitted to the bar in Lyon County was D. C.



Whitehead, who was admitted to the bar in July, 1872, the year after he had been elected clerk of the courts at the time the county was organized. He was one of the brave, genial, able pioneers of the country, who brought a large family into the Rock Rapids region, of which he was the first and chief promoter. The Monlux family also settled early in that locality, and one of its members, George Monlux, writes as follows regarding the planting of the gospel in Lyon County: "The first sermon preached was delivered by Rev. Ellef Oleson, at Beloit, on September 6, 1870. But the first sermon I ever heard preached in the county was by Rev. Mr. Runyon, who lived down on the Rock River below Doon. This was early in 1871, and in the audience was Mr. Whitehead, who was noted in those days for his liberal views on theology. Mr. Runyon took for his text, 'The fool hath said in his own heart there is no God.' He directed his remarks at Whitehead and proceeded to show, in strong language, the awful condition of the unbeliever."

It is said that Whitehead took these direct and personal scathings good naturedly, and told Runyon this bear story as descriptive of his predicament and his plea for fair play: "A miner and hunter in the Rocky Mountains was at one time cornered by a grizzly bear. His gun was not loaded, the bear was coming on and the hunter knew he could not run away from bruin; he knew that he must fight for his life. So he thought a little prayer might do some good and could do no harm. So his prayer ran: 'O Lord, you know that I never bothered you before, but I am in a tight place, and if you will help me this time I will never bother you again; but if you can't help me, for God's sake don't help the bear. Just lay low and keep cool and you will see one of the best bear fights you ever saw in the Rocky Mountains.'"

Continuing the narrative, Mr. Monlux says: "The Rev. C. E. Bristol preached many times during the summer of 1871, at Rock Rapids and Little Rock.

"The Presbyterian was the first church organized. It was a mission church. The date of organization was August 13, 1873. The first building erected for church purposes, the little building which still stands west of the Christian Church, was built by the Rev. Mr. Allen of the Congregational denomi-

nation, I believe, who built it for a parsonage. Much of the lumber and all of the labor for this building were donated by the good citizens of the town. It is related that Mr. James P. Gilman labored on the erection of this parsonage. When the job was completed, Mr. Allen was very profuse in passing around his thanks to the boys for their kindness in helping him get his building finished; and addressing Mr. Gilman as the most benevolent and sanctimonious of the crowd he said, 'Mr. Gilman, I don't want you and your friends to do this work for nothing, but you must take your pay in preaching.' With considerable alarm manifested in his countenance at this suggestion, Mr. Gilman replied: 'Just consider the debt paid, Mr. Allen; consider it paid, and I will give you a receipt in full.' "

Since these early struggling times of the pioneer clergy and churchmen in Lyon County, the religious organizations have multiplied in number and increased in strength. At Doon are Baptist, Catholic, Congregational and Reformed churches; Inwood has organized Methodist, Norwegian Lutheran, Reformed and Christian societies, and Larchwood, Catholic, Congregational, German Evangelical and Methodist churches.

#### PRESBYTERIANS, PIONEER PROTESTANTS.

The first Protestant religious services in Pocahontas County were conducted by Rev. David S. McComb, of Algona, Kossuth County, who, visiting the northeast part of Pocahontas, in the spring of 1859, organized the Unity Presbyterian Church with a membership of fifteen. These members were drawn from Kossuth, Humboldt, Palo Alto and Pocahontas counties. The services were held once every two weeks at the homes of the settlers. A frequent place of meeting was the cabin of Edward McKnight, a Pennsylvanian who, in 1856, had erected a large log house in the grove of natural timber near the county line on the eastward curve of the Des Moines River, now known as McKnight's Point. As soon as it was ready for occupancy in 1860, the courthouse at Old Rolfe became the regular place of meeting, and at a later date the brick schoolhouse. Rev. David S. McComb ministered to this congregation nearly thirteen years. He was the

first moderator of the Presbytery of Fort Dodge in 1865, and several years afterward located on a homestead in Palo Alto County, a mile west of Rodman, where he died in 1888. In 1880, the new town of Rolfe had been located in Clinton Township, and the place of meeting of the Unity Presbyterian Church was transferred thither and rechristened the Second Presbyterian Church of Rolfe. In 1888, its first church building was erected.

#### THE LIZARD CATHOLICS.

The tortuous Lizard Creek which waters a large portion of Pocahontas County flows smoothly through a varied, beautiful and fertile country, and in 1855 the country commenced to be settled by an industrious and intelligent class of Irishmen, many of them with their families. This Lizard settlement, as it was soon called, was the first considerable gathering of population west of the Des Moines River in the Fort Dodge area. Nearly all the pioneers of the Lizard settlement had been reared in the Roman Catholic faith and for more than twenty years their spiritual needs were supplied by priests from Fort Dodge; but the first religious services in the settlement were held at the home of Sylvester Griffin, on August 15, 1855, in Jackson Township, and conducted by Rev. Father Amonds of Iowa City. Rev. John Vahy, the first priest located at Fort Dodge, held his first services in the Lizard settlement at the home of James T. White, same township, during the summer of 1856. By the last year of the Civil war, the parish extended from Fort Dodge to Emmetsburg. In 1871, while Rev. Thomas M. Lenehan was serving the people of the Lizard settlement, its first church was erected. He established new preaching stations at Fonda, Pocahontas, Pomeroy and Manson, and his congregation became as strong as the one at Fort Dodge. Rev. Stephen Norton became the first resident pastor in 1881, and died six years afterward while still in service. Lizard afterward became a part of the Gilmore City parish.

#### THE METHODISTS AT ROLFE.

The Methodist Episcopal Church of Rolfe is the oldest organization of that denomination in Pocahontas County.



Services were established in the courthouse at Old Rolfe in the '60s by the Des Moines Conference, a parsonage was erected there in 1874 and the charge embraced the inhabited portion of the northern part of the county. In 1883, the services were transferred to the new town of Rolfe, and in the following year the first house of worship was dedicated there.

#### OTHER CHURCHES.

There are also Danish and Norwegian Lutheran churches at Rolfe, and various denominations have organized at Pocahontas, the county seat—the Catholics in 1875, the Baptists in 1885, the Presbyterians in 1894 and the Methodists and members of the Christian Church, still later in the '90s. There are Presbyterian, Catholic and Methodist churches at Gilmore City, all organized in the late '80s.

In the '70s, the Lutherans outside of the centers of population were active in the establishment of churches; of this period were the Swedish Evangelical Lutheran Church of Colfax Township and the Norwegian Evangelical Lutheran Church of Grant Township.

#### UPRISING OF BUENA VISTA CHURCHES.

The birth of religious activities in Buena Vista County is credited to the region of Storm Lake and it came about before the arrival of the Dubuque & Sioux City Railway and the platting of the town. On October 4, 1868, Rev. Thomas Whitely, a Methodist circuit preacher, conducted the first services and preached the first sermon of his faith in Buena Vista County, on the Chamberlain farm, directly south of the Mineral Springs at the west end of the lake. The circuit of which Rev. Mr. Whitely was pastor reached south to Ida Grove, west to Cherokee and north to Peterson. In the spring of 1869, Rev. Mr. Whitely preached a second time at the Chamberlain farm and organized a Methodist class of eight or nine members. In the autumn of 1870, Rev. J. R. Horsewell was appointed pastor of the Storm Lake circuit and preached the first sermon in town at the freight depot of the Illinois Central Railroad. About one hundred persons were present and a class of fifteen was organized, with Thomas

Whitely as leader. The first house of worship in Storm Lake was erected by the Presbyterians at the corner of Third Street and Lake Avenue, in 1872. It was shared by them with the Methodists until the latter erected a meeting house of their own in 1875. In the latter year the circuit was divided into the Storm Lake and Alta charges, Rev. C. B. Winter being appointed to Storm Lake and Rev. Henry Brown to Alta.

Rev. George R. Carrol and Rev. Alexander M. Darley, in behalf of the Presbyterian Board of Home Missions for Western Iowa and Nebraska, visited Storm Lake in August, 1870. After making several other visits, a Presbyterian Church was formed in December of that year. In June, 1871, Rev. Mr. Darley was elected permanent moderator, being the Presbyterian missionary for the counties of Cherokee and Buena Vista. The Presbyterians, Baptists and Methodists held services in a rented building, until the Presbyterians completed their church in the winter of 1871-72. A Congregational Church was organized in May, 1883, and in 1895 it united permanently with the Presbyterian society. From this union dates the Lakeside Church. The Presbyterians sold their house of worship to the German Lutherans and built a brick addition to the edifice already erected by the Congregationalists. The united organization is one of the strongest and most progressive in the county.

The Catholic Church at Storm Lake commenced to function when Rev. Father McNulty, of Sioux City, said mass at the home of William Malloy, then section foreman on the Sioux City & Dubuque (Illinois Central) Railroad. The priest also obtained a promise from J. D. Eddy, the station agent, that the town lot company would donate the site for a new church. It was accordingly built in the fall of 1872. A brick edifice followed in 1885.

Liberal Christian beliefs obtained recognition at Storm Lake in 1874, when an organization was formed known as the Liberal Christian Association, which, in 1881, developed into the First Universalist Church of Storm Lake.

The German Society of the Methodist Episcopal Church began its existence at Storm Lake, in May, 1876; the St. John's Evangelical German Lutheran Church in the same

year; the Seventh Day Adventists planted themselves in 1883, the First Baptist and the Scandinavian Free churches in 1891; and the Disciples of Christ organized in 1895.

For many years, Sioux Rapids has had Methodist, Lutheran, Congregational, Baptist and Seventh Day Adventist churches. The Methodist Episcopal Church really dates from 1859, when Rev. O. S. Wight, of Cherokee, preached a sermon at the home of Luther H. Barnes, near the present site of the town. Rev. Mr. Wight was looking for promising places in which to hold meetings, but was evidently not favorably impressed with this locality, for it is not recorded that he returned to the Sioux Rapids region. In 1864, however, Rev. Seymour Snyder made trips to the settlement on the Little Sioux River in Buena Vista County and preached at the homes of G. W. Struble and W. S. Lee. In 1872, Rev. Rufus Fancher, who had a homestead east of Sioux Rapids, was appointed by the Northwest Iowa Conference to supply the charge, and several years afterward the circuit was divided, the west half being assigned to Peterson. The Sioux Rapids circuit included several stations both in Clay and Buena Vista counties. The first church building for the Methodists of Sioux Rapids was erected in 1876.

The Norwegian Evangelical Lutheran Church was organized in May, 1871, and the First Congregational Church of Sioux Rapids in 1875. The Baptists first organized in August, 1881, and there is a Seventh Day Adventist Church at Sioux Rapids which was founded a quarter of a century ago.

Alta, a few miles west of Storm Lake, is closely joined in its church history with the county seat. In 1870, Rev. Thomas Whitely and Rev. J. R. Horsewell, who had commenced their work at Storm Lake, extended Methodism to Alta, and several classes were formed in that neighborhood. In 1875 a church building was erected at Alta and Rev. Henry Brown was called as the first resident pastor of the charge. Its church accommodations were increased and a brick meeting house was erected in 1906.

When that part of the county which lies near Alta was settled in 1870, and the years that followed, many of the new families that arrived were of Scandinavian birth, moving



largely from Rockford and Chicago, Illinois. They located in Nokomis and Elk townships, while a few secured homes in Maple Valley. There were also others who came directly from their native land. Many of the Swedes having been connected with the Lutheran Augustana Synod in Illinois, it is no wonder that they felt the need of a church in their new homes. Consequently, in May, 1874, representatives of sixteen families, both Swedish and Norwegian, met at the home of A. F. A. Rokkan, and adopted a church constitution recommended by the Augustana Synod. The organization of the Lutheran Trinity Church of Alta was soon after effected and a meeting house erected—the first in town. In 1881, a larger and more convenient house of worship was erected, and an agreement reached by which the cemetery originally laid out by the Swedish people was to be shared by the Norwegians and Danes of the church.

In August, 1880, various Swedes, Danes and Norwegians, who had separated from the Lutheran Church on matters of creed and discipline, organized the Scandinavian Free Mission Church. Unsectarianism and absolute freedom of worship were at the foundation of the movement, and for the main part its minister has been selected from the congregation. Usually, the services are conducted in the Swedish language.

The Danish Lutheran Church was also formed at Alta in 1880, the Presbyterian Church in 1883 and the Christian Church in 1898.

Marathon, a station at the junction of the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul and the Chicago & North Western lines, in the northeastern part of the county, is the seat of quite a number of churches. One of the first to hold meetings in that locality was the society known as the Church of God which was organized in 1870. As an organization it is sometimes known as the First Day Adventists to distinguish it from the Seventh Day Adventists, with whom they were at one time consolidated.

The First Methodist Church of Marathon was organized about 1883 and a building for worship erected in 1889. Laurens and Fairfield were added to the Marathon charge in

1884. The Swedish Lutheran Church was formed in 1884 by Rev. J. S. Benzon, who was pastor of the Swedish Lutheran Church at what is now Albert City. The First Baptist Church in Marathon was formed in 1890, and the Swedish Free Mission Church of the same place in 1899.

Albert City, in the eastern part of the county on the St. Paul road, is purely a Swedish town, and its churches have been organized accordingly. In April, 1873, the Swedish Evangelical Lutheran Church was formed just west of the present site of Albert City, nearly twenty years before the town was platted on George R. Anderson's farm. The Swedish Evangelical Free Church was organized in the early '80s and the Swedish Evangelical Mission Church in 1887. A Methodist society is conducted from Marathon.

The southwestern part of Buena Vista County is thickly settled by German Americans; and the same may be said of the nearby townships in Cherokee, Ida and Sac counties. Some of the pioneers came to the fertile and beautiful Maple Valley in 1870, and since that year their colony has gradually extended in numbers, wealth and influence. One of their largest and most prosperous religious and educational communities is that known as St. John's Church at Hanover. It was organized in the fall of 1879 and embraces a flourishing society and a substantial house of worship, as well as two schools thoroughly organized and largely attended.

The German Evangelical Synod of North America has two branches or congregations in Buena Vista County, outside of the towns both organized in 1888 and serving Brooke and Grant townships.

#### METHODISTS AND CONGREGATIONALISTS IN CHEROKEE.

One of the most insistent demands made by the Cherokee Times, the first newspaper of Cherokee County to become really established, was that a house of worship should be built. "Cherokee needs a church," it writes. "It would not cost a great deal to build a plain, yet commodious building. The present way of dodging around from house to house reflects discredit upon the village. It is time now that a stir be made in the matter. Who will be the first to move?" It

seems that there was some movement to that end, for in its issue of November 17, 1871, under the heading, "New Church," the Times says: "A neat edifice crowns the hill on the west side of the town. The first of the kind ever erected in Cherokee—a church. Among the civilizing influences that ennoble and elevate man, raising his mind above the sordid ideas that characterize western progress, nothing wields an influence equal to the divine teachings which inculcate all the charities of true benevolence.

"The building is the property of the M. E. Church, but the Presbyterian body is to have the use of it one-half of the time. There is still a considerable amount to raise before the building can be finished, and it is surely not asking too much that everyone who possibly can will give toward the work." That the citizens did give, is evidenced from the fact that the church was dedicated free of debt, on the 21st of January, 1872.

Previous to that time, the Methodists had formed societies, or classes, in Pilot Township (December, 1869), and in Amherst Township, in 1870.

The second church of the Cherokee Methodists was dedicated in 1889, and that was soon outgrown with the expansion of their activities.

The Congregational Church at Cherokee was organized in 1870 under these conditions: Rev. J. R. Upton, one of the pioneer missionaries of the faith in Northwestern Iowa, was better known as Father Upton, of Spirit Lake, and was the first of his coworkers to visit Cherokee County. On June 5, 1870, he appointed a meeting of a preliminary nature to be held at Hazard (now Meriden). It was held at Hazard, because no room could be procured at Cherokee, the Presbyterian brethren having preempted the only available room for that day for the purpose of organizing a church at that place. The meeting at Hazard resulted in an adjournment to the old courthouse at Cherokee, where, on June 12th (1870) was organized the First Congregational Church of Cherokee. Its first house of worship was dedicated in March, 1874, and the handsome brick structure representing the second was finally occupied in September, 1899.



## PRESBYTERIAN CHURCHES IN THE COUNTY.

The First Presbyterian Church of Cherokee was organized June 5, 1870, being the same day on which was held the preliminary meeting for the formation of the First Congregational Church. It was the second religious organization to erect a place of worship and its house of worship was dedicated in August, 1873. In 1910 a much larger and more modern edifice was erected nearly in the center of the town; it was dedicated in November, 1911.

The Presbyterians first effected the organization of a church at Meriden in 1882 and in Liberty Township during the same year. In 1887, the East Cedar Presbyterian Church was incorporated at Larrabee.

## THE CATHOLICS.

Although the Catholics of Cherokee County are not as strong as some of the other denominations, they early settled in Rock and Sheridan townships in the central part of the county, and in the Marcus region, toward the northwest. The most noticeable collection was at Marcus, and, with the building of the railroad, both Irish and German Catholics had formed quite a settlement in that locality by 1876. In the following year they built their first church at Marcus, a small frame structure, but sufficient for all their needs at that time. It was then attended as a mission from Storm Lake. A larger house of worship was erected in 1882, a parsonage in 1885 and a convent school in 1890.

The Catholics organized at Cherokee at a later date than at Marcus. The culmination of their growth at the county seat came in December, 1908, when the fine new Church of the Immaculate Conception and the mother house and convent of St. Mary, were dedicated by Bishop Garrigan, assisted by a number of priests, on the feast day of the parish.

## THE EVANGELICAL, LUTHERAN AND OTHER ORGANIZATIONS.

In Grand Meadow Township, the Evangelical Church was formed in 1882, and in 1889 it erected a neat house of worship. In Amherst Township, the German Lutherans held regular services in the '80s, and in 1889 built a good church

on section 29. That denomination was also strong in Liberty Township and already had its own house of worship.

The Christian churches have a large membership in Cherokee County. They organized at Meriden at an early day and dedicated their home in November, 1888. The First Church of Christ of Marcus was organized in the fall of 1883, and the society has erected two buildings, so rapid has been its growth; the first one was completed in 1884 and the second, in 1906. In 1896, the First Church of Christ of Cherokee was organized and two houses of worship have been erected commensurate with the expansion of its activities.

#### SWINGING AROUND THE CIRCLE.

By returning to Plymouth County in this general survey of the religious bodies of Northwestern Iowa, the writer has passed through most of the counties in this section of Iowa. The start was made in Woodbury County and the finish of the survey is in Plymouth, immediately to the north.

It is claimed that the first church edifice in Plymouth County was erected in Plymouth Township by an Evangelical Church organization at the close of the war of the rebellion. It was a little frame church which stood on the southwest quarter of section 34, at the old Town of Melbourne, which had been platted since 1860 and was for several years the county seat. The society had been organized since 1858. So the Evangelical Church of Melbourne may be said to be the mother of religious bodies in Plymouth County.

In 1869 a little band of Methodists met in a log school-house, just south of the LeMars plat, but before the town was even named or laid out, and there formed a denominational class. When the Sioux City & Dubuque Railroad came along in the following year and its shanty of a depot was erected, the Methodist people papered the shack both for looks and warmth and held their meetings there for a number of months. They cheerfully made other make-shifts to obtain a temporary meeting house. Not long afterward the railroad company donated a lot, corner of Clark and Seventh streets, upon which the first church building was erected.

The Congregational Church of LeMars was organized in July, 1871, and its first pastor, Rev. Rufus M. Sawyer, died

in November of the following year. Two edifices have been erected for worship—a frame church, at the corner of Clark and Sixth streets in 1873, and a larger and more modern building, in 1899, on the corner of Main and Third streets.

The German Methodists organized at LeMars in the fall of 1873, the Free Will Baptist Church in 1875 and the German Evangelical Church in 1879. The St. John's Evangelical Lutheran Church was formed in 1883, and in the same year the St. James Catholic Church was founded. They all have substantial memberships and adequate houses of worship.

In 1874, an Evangelical Church was formed in Stanton Township which adjoins Plymouth Township on the east. It was organized by a class belonging to the Floyd Valley Church, and was known as the Stanton Mission. The Village of Merrill, which was platted in 1872, soon had several religious organizations in its midst, the Methodists being well planted in 1878. The Catholics and German Lutherans also have churches.

Akron, formerly a thriving and growing river town, was platted as Portlandville in 1871. The Methodists were early on the ground and organized a church. The First Baptist Church of Akron was organized on the west side of the Big Sioux River in what is now South Dakota in March, 1871. After the mill was built at this point and a village started on the Iowa side, regular services were held in the new school-house. In 1878 the society erected its own meeting house.

Kingsley is the chief town in the southern part of Plymouth County and is a flourishing station on the Chicago & North Western Railway. It was not platted until 1883 and was incorporated in the following year. The Methodists organized a class almost as soon as the plat was surveyed, and in 1885 erected a neat building in which to worship. The First Congregational Church was formed in 1886 and the Baptist society a few months afterward in the same year. Still later, in 1889, was formed the St. Michael's Roman Catholic Church of Kingsley. There is also a society organized by the Church of the Brethren.

Remsen, on the Illinois Central in the northeastern part of the county, is about the size of Kingsley. The Lutherans and Catholics there have churches of substantial membership.



The Evangelical Lutheran Society was formed in 1884, a frame church building erected in 1888 and a resident minister secured in 1889.

The first Catholic church was blown down by a cyclone in 1885, but another one was erected the same year; a parsonage was built in 1886 and a parochial schoolhouse, with rooms for the Sisters and boarders, in 1888.





























